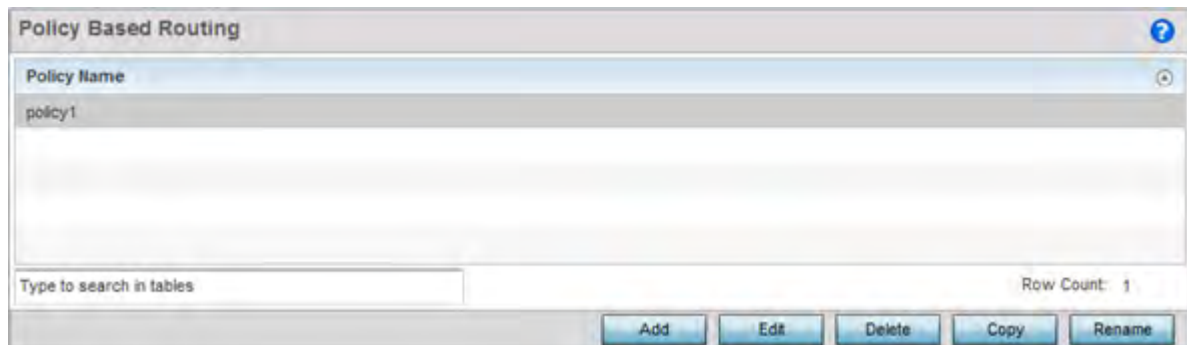


- 3 Select **Policy Based Routing**. The Policy Based Routing screen displays by default.



**Figure 7-1** Policy Based Routing screen

- 4 Either select **Add** to create a new PBR configuration, **Edit** to modify the attributes of an existing PBR configuration or **Delete** to remove a selected PBR configuration.
- 5 If creating a new PBR policy assign it a **Policy Name** up to 32 characters to distinguish this route map configuration from others with similar attributes. Select **Continue** to proceed to the Policy Name screen where route map configurations can be added, modified or removed. Select **Exit** to exit without creating a PBR policy.

Precedence	DSCP	Role Policy	User Role	Access Control List	WLAN	Incoming Interface
3	0	STORES	Role3	from_ipad_to_windo	RF1WLAN	vlan2

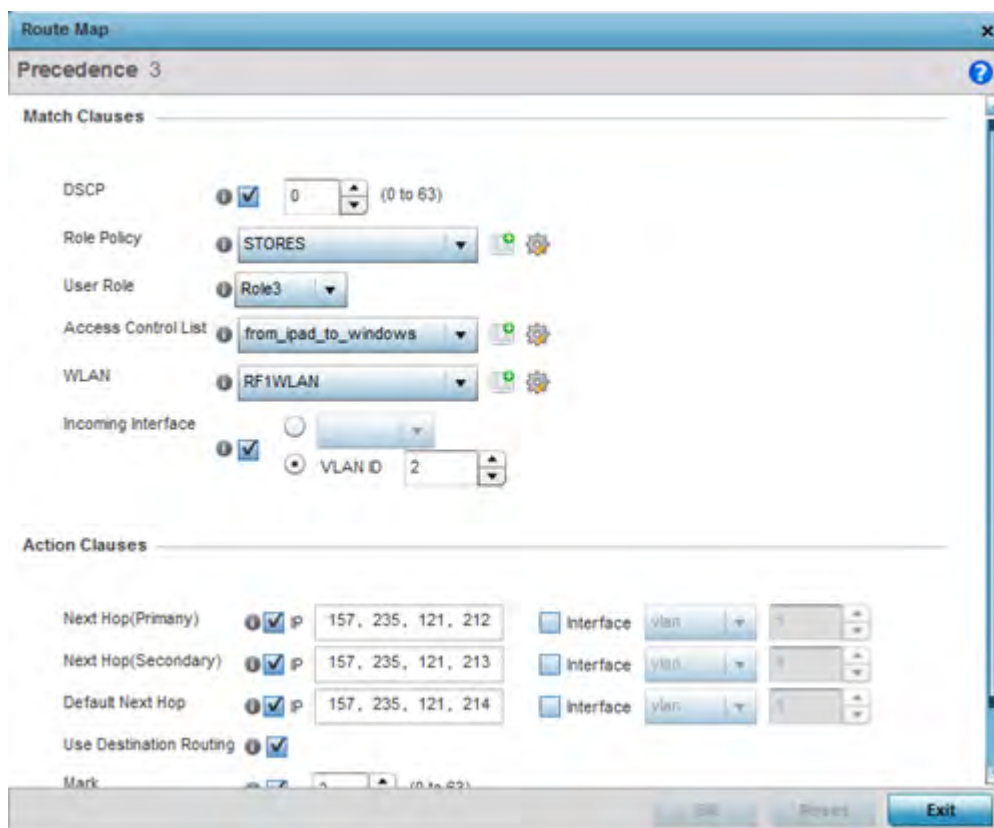
**Figure 7-2** Policy Based Routing, Policy Name screen

- 6 Refer to the following to determine whether a new route-map configuration requires creation or an existing route-map requires modification or removal:

<b>Precedence</b>	Lists the numeric precedence (priority) assigned to each listed PBR configuration. A routemap consists of multiple entries, each carrying a precedence value. An incoming packet is matched against the route-map with the highest precedence (lowest numerical value).
<b>DSCP</b>	Displays each policy's DSCP value used as matching criteria for the route map. DSCP is the <i>Differentiated Services Code Point</i> field in an IP header and is for packet classification. Packets are filtered based on the traffic class defined in the IP DSCP field. One DSCP value can be configured per route map entry.

<b>Role Policy</b>	Lists each policy's role policy used as matching criteria.
<b>User Role</b>	Lists the user role defined in the Role Policy.
<b>Access Control List</b>	Displays each policy's IP ACL used as an access/deny filter criteria for the route map.
<b>WLAN</b>	Displays each policy's WLAN used as an access/deny filter for the route map.
<b>Incoming Interface</b>	Display the name of the Access Point WWAN or VLAN interface on which the packet is received for the listed PBR policy.

- 7 Select **Add** or **Edit** to create or modify a route-map configuration. Configurations can optionally be removed by selecting **Delete**.



**Figure 7-3** Policy Based Routing screen - Add a Route Map

- 8 If adding a route map, use the spinner control to set a numeric **Precedence** (priority) for this route-map. An incoming packet is matched against the route-map with the highest precedence (lowest numerical value).
- 9 Refer to the **Match Clauses** field to define the following matching criteria for the route-map configuration:

<b>DSCP</b>	Select this option to enable a spinner control to define the DSCP value used as matching criteria for the route map.  DSCP is the <i>Differentiated Services Code Point</i> field in an IP header and is for packet classification. Packets are filtered based on the traffic class defined in the IP DSCP field. One DSCP value can be configured per route map entry.
-------------	---

<b>Role Policy</b>	Use the drop-down to select a Role Policy to use with this route-map. Click the <i>Create</i> icon to create a new Role Policy. To view and modify an existing policy, click the <i>Edit</i> icon.
<b>User Role</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select a role defined in the selected Role Policy. This user role is used while deciding the routing.
<b>Access Control List</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select an IP based ACL used as matching criteria for this route-map. Click the <i>Create</i> icon to create a new ACL. To view and modify an existing ACL, click the <i>Edit</i> icon.
<b>WLAN</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the Access Point WLAN used as matching criteria for this route-map. Click the <i>Create</i> icon to create a new WLAN. To view and modify an existing WLAN, click the <i>Edit</i> icon.
<b>Incoming Interface</b>	Select this option to enable radio buttons used to define the interfaces required to receive route-map packets. Use the drop-down menu to define either the Access Point's <i>wwan1</i> or <i>pppoe1</i> interface. Neither is selected by default. Or, select the VLAN ID option to define the Access Point VLAN to receive route-map-packets.

- 10 Set the following **Action Clauses** to determine the routing function performed when a packet satisfies match criteria. Optionally fallback to destination based routing if no hop resource is available.

<b>Next Hop (Primary)</b>	Define a first hop priority request. Set either the <i>IP</i> address of the virtual resource or select the Interface option and define either a <i>wwan1</i> , <i>pppoe1</i> or a <i>VLAN</i> interface. In the simplest terms, if this primary hop resource is available, its used with no additional considerations.
<b>Next Hop (Secondary)</b>	If the primary hop request were unavailable, a second resource can be defined. Set either the <i>IP</i> address of the virtual resource or select the Interface option and define either a <i>wwan1</i> , <i>pppoe1</i> or a <i>VLAN</i> interface.
<b>Default Next Hop</b>	If a packet subjected to PBR does not have an explicit route to the destination, the configured default next hop is used. This value is set as either the IP address of the next hop or the outgoing interface. Only one default next hop can be defined. The difference between the next hop and the default next-hop is in case of former, PBR occurs first, then destination based routing. In case of the latter, the order is reverse. Set either the next hop IP address or define either a <i>wwan1</i> , <i>pppoe1</i> or a <i>VLAN</i> interface.
<b>Use Destination Routing</b>	It may be a good idea to select this option to default back to destination based routing if none of the defined hop resources are reachable. Packets are dropped if a next hop resource is unavailable and fallback to destination routing is disabled. This option is enabled by default.
<b>Mark</b>	Select this option and use the spinner control to set IP DSCP bits for QoS using an ACL. The mark action of the route maps takes precedence over the mark action of an ACL.

- 11 Select **OK** to save the updates to the route-map configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 7.2 L2TP V3 Configuration

---

L2TP V3 is an IETF standard used for transporting different types of layer 2 frames in an IP network. L2TP V3 defines control and encapsulation protocols for tunneling layer 2 frames between two IP nodes.

Use L2TP V3 to create tunnels for transporting layer 2 frames. L2TP V3 enables WiNG managed wireless devices to create tunnels for transporting Ethernet frames to and from bridge VLANs and physical ports. L2TP V3 tunnels can be defined between WiNG devices and other vendor devices supporting the L2TP V3 protocol.

Multiple pseudowires can be created within an L2TP V3 tunnel. WiNG Access Points support an Ethernet VLAN pseudowire type exclusively.

---



**NOTE:** A pseudowire is an emulation of a layer 2 point-to-point connection over a *packet-switching network* (PSN). A pseudowire was developed out of the necessity to encapsulate and tunnel layer 2 protocols across a layer 3 network.

---

Ethernet VLAN pseudowires transport Ethernet frames to and from a specified VLAN. One or more L2TP V3 tunnels can be defined between tunnel end points. Each tunnel can have one or more L2TP V3 sessions. Each tunnel session corresponds to one pseudowire. An L2TP V3 control connection (a L2TP V3 tunnel) needs to be established between the tunneling entities before creating a session.

For optimal pseudowire operation, both the L2TP V3 session originator and responder need to know the pseudowire type and identifier. These two parameters are communicated during L2TP V3 session establishment. An L2TP V3 session created within an L2TP V3 connection also specifies multiplexing parameters for identifying a pseudowire type and ID.

The working status of a pseudowire is reflected by the state of the L2TP V3 session. If a L2TP V3 session is down, the pseudowire associated with it must be shut down. The L2TP V3 control connection keep-alive mechanism can serve as a monitoring mechanism for the pseudowires associated with a control connection.

---



**NOTE:** If connecting an Ethernet port to another Ethernet port, the pseudowire type must be Ethernet port, if connecting an Ethernet VLAN to another Ethernet VLAN, the pseudowire type must be Ethernet VLAN.

---

To define an L2TP V3 tunnel configuration:

- 1 Select **Configuration** > **Network** > **L2TPv3**.

Name	Cookie Size	Hello Interval	Reconnect Attempt	Reconnect Interval	Retry Count	Retry Time Out	Rx Window Size	Tx Window Size	Failover Delay	Force L2 Path Recovery
default	0	1m 0s	0	2m 0s	5	5s	10	10	5s	X

**Figure 7-4** L2TP v3 Policy screen

The L2TP V3 screen lists the policy configurations defined thus far.

- 2 Refer to the following to determine whether a new L2TP V3 requires creation or modification:

<b>Name</b>	Lists the 31 character maximum name assigned to each listed L2TP V3 policy, designated upon creation.
<b>Cookie size</b>	Displays the size of each policy's cookie field present within each L2TP V3 data packet. L2TP V3 data packets contain a session cookie which identifies the session (pseudowire) corresponding to it. If using the CLI, cookie size can't be configured per session, and are the same size for all sessions within a tunnel.
<b>Hello Interval</b>	Displays each policy's interval between L2TP V3 hello keep alive messages exchanged within the L2TP V3 connection.
<b>Reconnect Attempt</b>	Lists each policy's maximum number of reconnection attempts available to reestablish the tunnel if the connection is lost.
<b>Reconnect Interval</b>	Displays the duration set for each listed policy between two successive reconnection attempts.
<b>Retry Count</b>	Lists the number of retransmission attempts set for each listed policy before a target tunnel peer is defined as not reachable.
<b>Retry Time Out</b>	Lists the interval the interval (in seconds) set for each listed policy before the retransmission of a L2TP V3 signaling message.
<b>Rx Window Size</b>	Displays the number of packets that can be received without sending an acknowledgement.
<b>Tx Window Size</b>	Displays the number of packets that can be transmitted without receiving an acknowledgement.
<b>Failover Delay</b>	Lists the time (in either seconds or minutes) for establishing a tunnel after a failover (VRRP/RF Domain/Cluster).
<b>Force L2 Path Recovery</b>	Lists whether force L2 path recovery is enabled (as defined by a green checkmark) or disabled (as defined by a red X). Once a tunnel is established, enabling this setting forces server and gateway learning behind the L2TPv3 tunnel.

- 3 Select **Add** to create a new L2TP V3 policy, **Edit** to modify the attributes of a selected policy or **Delete** to remove obsolete policies from the list of those available. Existing policies can be copied or deleted as needed.

The screenshot shows a configuration window for an L2TP V3 policy. The title bar indicates the policy name is 'default'. The 'Policy Details' section contains the following parameters:

- Cookie Size:** 0
- Hello Interval:** 1 Minutes (range: 1 to 60)
- Reconnect Attempt:** 0 (range: 0 to 8)
- Reconnect Interval:** 2 Minutes (range: 1 to 60)
- Retry Count:** 5 (range: 1 to 10)
- Retry Time Out:** 5 Seconds (range: 1 to 250)
- Rx Window Size:** 10 (range: 1 to 15)
- Tx Window Size:** 10 (range: 1 to 15)
- Fallover Delay:** 5 Seconds (range: 5 to 60)
- Force L2 Path Recovery:**

Buttons for 'OK', 'Reset', and 'Exit' are located at the bottom right of the window.

**Figure 7-5** L2TP V3 Policy Creation screen

- If creating a new L2TP V3 policy assign it a **Name** up to 31 characters. Remember, a single L2TP V3 policy can be used by numerous L2TP V3 tunnels.
- Define the following **Policy Details** to add a device to a list of devices sanctioned for network operation:

<b>Cookie size</b>	L2TP V3 data packets contain a session cookie which identifies the session (pseudowire) corresponding to it. Use the spinner control to set the size of the cookie field present within each L2TP V3 data packet. Options include 0, 4 and 8. the default setting is 0. If using the CLI, the cookie size can't be configured per session, and are the same size for all sessions within a tunnel.
<b>Hello Interval</b>	Define an interval in either <i>Seconds</i> (1 - 3,600), <i>Minutes</i> (1 -60) or <i>Hours</i> (1) between L2TP V3 hello keep alive messages exchanged within the L2TP V3 control connection. The default setting is 1 minute.
<b>Reconnect Attempt</b>	Use the spinner control to set a value (from 0 - 8) representing the maximum number of reconnection attempts initiated to reestablish the tunnel. The default interval is 0.
<b>Reconnect Interval</b>	Define an interval in either <i>Seconds</i> (1 - 3,600), <i>Minutes</i> (1 -60) or <i>Hours</i> (1) between two successive reconnection attempts. The default setting is 2 minutes.
<b>Retry Count</b>	Use the spinner control to define how many retransmission attempts are made before determining a target tunnel peer is not reachable. The available range is from 1 - 10, with a default value of 5.
<b>Retry Time Out</b>	Use the spinner control to define the interval (in seconds) before initiating a retransmission of a L2TP V3 signaling message. The available range is from 1 - 250, with a default value of 5.

<b>Rx Window Size</b>	Specify the number of packets that can be received without sending an acknowledgement. The available range is from 1 - 15, with a default setting of 10.
<b>Tx Window Size</b>	Specify the number of packets that can be transmitted without receiving an acknowledgement. The available range is from 1 - 15, with a default setting of 10.
<b>Failover Delay</b>	Set the time in <i>Seconds</i> (5 - 60) or <i>Minutes</i> (1) for establishing a tunnel after a failover (VRRP/RF Domain/Cluster). The default setting is 5 seconds.
<b>Force L2 Path Recovery</b>	Determine whether force L2 path recovery is <i>enabled</i> or <i>disabled</i> . Once a tunnel is established, enabling this setting forces server and gateway learning behind the L2TPv3 tunnel. The default setting is disabled.

6 Select **OK** to save the updates to the L2TP V3 policy. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 7.3 Crypto CMP Policy

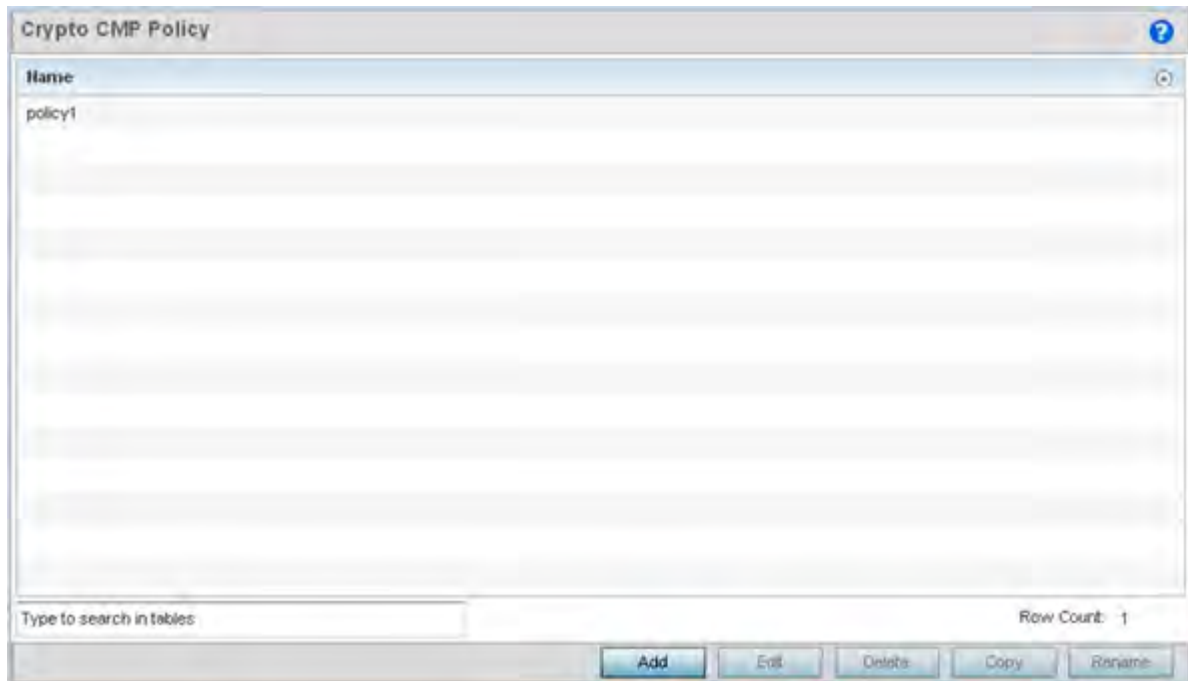
*Certificate Management Protocol* (CMP) is an Internet protocol to obtain and manage digital certificates in a *Public Key Infrastructure* (PKI) network. A *Certificate Authority* (CA) issues the certificates using the defined CMP.

Using CMP, a device can communicate to a CMP supported CA server, initiate a certificate request and download the required certificates from the CA server. CMP supports multiple request options through for device communicating to a CMP supported CA server. The device can initiate a request for getting the certificates from the server. It can also auto update the certificates which are about to expire.

The CMP client on the controller, service platform or Access Point triggers a request for the configured CMS CA server. Once the certificate is validated and confirmed from the CA server it is saved on the device and becomes part of the trustpoint. During the creation of the CMP policy the trustpoint is assigned a name and client information. An administrator can use a manually created trustpoint for one service (like HTTPS) and use the CMP generated trustpoint for RADIUS EAP certificate based authentication.

To review, create or edit a Crypto CMP policy:

- 1 Select **Configuration** > **Network** > **Crypto CMP Policy**.



**Figure 7-6** *Crypto CMP Policy screen*

The **Crypto CMP Policy** screen lists the policy configurations defined thus far.

- 2 Select **Add** to create a new Crypto CMP policy, **Edit** to modify the attributes of a selected policy or **Delete** to remove obsolete policies from the list of those available. Existing policies can be copied or renamed as needed.



The screenshot shows the 'Crypto CMP Policy Creation' configuration window. It includes a 'Name' field at the top. Below it is the 'Crypto CMP Policy Details' section with the following settings: Certificate Renewal Timeout (14 days), Certificate Update (checked), Certificate Validate (unchecked), Auto-gen Unique ID (unchecked), and Certificate Key Size (2048 bits). The 'CMS Server Configuration' section contains a table with one row for an IPsec tunnel, with columns for Enable, IP, Path, and Port. The 'Trust Points' section contains an empty table with columns for Name, Subject Name, Reference ID, Secret, Sender Name, and Recipient Name. The 'Subject Alt Name' section has fields for SAN Type and SAN Value. 'Reset' and 'Exit' buttons are located at the bottom right.

**Figure 7-7** *Crypto CMP Policy Creation screen*

- 3 If creating a new Crypto CMP policy assign it a **Name** up to 31 characters to help distinguish it.
- 4 Set the **Certificate Renewal Timeout** period to trigger a new certificate renewal request with the dedicated CMP server resource. The range is 1-60 days. The default is 14 days.  
The expiration of the certificate is checked once a day. When a certificate is about to expire a certificate renewal is initiated with the server via an existing IPsec tunnel. If the tunnel is not established, the CMP renewal request is not sent. If a renewal succeeds the newly obtained certificate overwrites an existing certificate. If the renewal fails, an error is logged.
- 5 Select **Certificate Update** to update the renewal data of the certificate. This setting is enabled by default.
- 6 Select **Certificate Validate** to validate the cross-certificate when enabled. This setting is disabled by default.
- 7 Select **Auto-gen Unique ID** to add (prepend) an autogenerated ID in both the subject and sender fields. This setting is disabled by default.
- 8 Use the **Certificate Key Size** spinner control to set a key size (from 2,048 - 4096 bits) for the certificate request. The default key size is 2,048.

- 9 Select **+ Add Row** and define the following **CMS Server Configuration** settings for the server resource:

<b>Enable</b>	Use the drop-down menu to set the CMS server as either the <i>Primary</i> (first choice) or <i>Secondary</i> (secondary option) CMP server resource.
<b>IP</b>	Define the IP address for the CMP CA server managing digital certificate requests. CMP certificates are encrypted with CA's public key and transmitted to the defined IP destination over a typical HTTP or TLS session.
<b>Path</b>	Provide a complete path to the CMP CA's trustpoint.
<b>Port</b>	Provide a CMP CA port number.

- 10 Set the following **Trust Points** settings. The trustpoint is used for various services as specifically set the controller, service platform or Access Point.

<b>Name</b>	Enter the 32 character maximum name assigned to the target trustpoint. A trustpoint represents a CA/identity pair containing the identity of the CA, CA specific configuration parameters, and an association with an enrolled identity certificate. This field is mandatory.
<b>Subject Name</b>	Provide a subject name of up to 512 characters for the certificate template example. This field is mandatory.
<b>Reference ID</b>	Set the user reference value for the CMP CA trust point message. The range is 0-256. This field is mandatory.
<b>Secret</b>	Specify the secret used for trustpoint authentication over the designated CMP server resource.
<b>Sender Name</b>	Enter a sender name up to 512 characters for the trustpoint request. This field is mandatory.
<b>Recipient Name</b>	Enter a recipient name value of up to 512 characters for the trustpoint request.

- 11 Use the **SAN Type** drop-down menu to provide an alternative name (disguise) for the subject. Options include *email*, *IP Address*, *Distinguished Name*, *FQDN* and *string*.
- 12 Use the **SAN Value** field to enter a 128 character maximum alternative value for the subject.
- 13 Select **OK** to save the updates to the CMP Crypto policy, **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration, or **Exit** to close the screen.

## 7.4 AAA Policy

*Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting* (AAA) provides the mechanism by which network administrators define access control within the network.

Controllers, service platforms and Access Points can interoperate with external RADIUS and LDAP Servers (AAA Servers) to provide user database information and user authentication data. Each WLAN can maintain its own unique AAA configuration.

AAA provides a modular way of performing the following services:

*Authentication* — Authentication provides a means for identifying users, including login and password dialog, challenge and response, messaging support and (depending on the security protocol), encryption. Authentication is the technique by which a user is identified before allowed access to the network. Configure AAA authentication by defining a list of authentication methods, and then applying the list to various interfaces. The list defines the authentication schemes performed and their sequence. The list must be applied to an interface before the defined authentication technique is conducted.

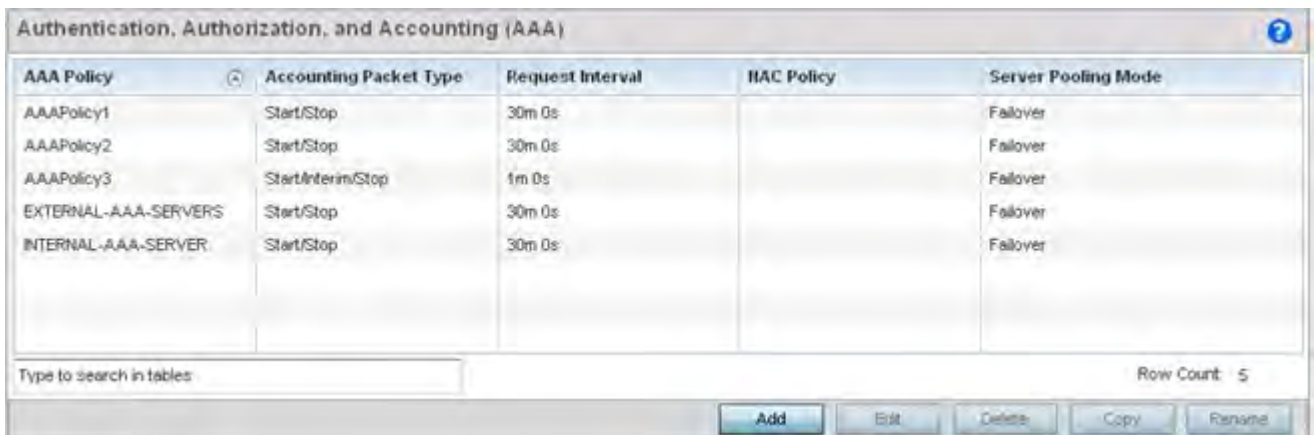
*Authorization* — Authorization occurs immediately after authentication. Authorization is a method for remote access control, including authorization for services and individual user accounts and profiles. Authorization functions through the assembly of attribute sets describing what the user is authorized to perform. These attributes are compared to information contained in a database for a given user and the result is returned to AAA to determine the user's actual capabilities and restrictions. The database could be located locally or be hosted remotely on a RADIUS server. Remote RADIUS servers authorize users by associating *attribute-value* (AV) pairs with the appropriate user. Each authorization method must be defined through AAA. When AAA authorization is enabled it's applied equally to all interfaces.

*Accounting* — Accounting is the method for collecting and sending security server information for billing, auditing, and reporting user data; such as start and stop times, executed commands (such as PPP), number of packets, and number of bytes. Accounting enables wireless network administrators to track the services users are accessing and the network resources they are consuming. When accounting is enabled, the network access server reports user activity to a RADIUS security server in the form of accounting records. Each accounting record is comprised of AV pairs and is stored on the access control server. The data can be analyzed for network management, client billing, and/or auditing. Accounting methods must be defined through AAA. When AAA accounting is activated, it's applied equally to all interfaces on the access servers.

To define unique WLAN AAA configurations:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Network > AAA Policy** to display existing AAA policies.

The **Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting (AAA)** screen lists those AAA policies created thus far. Any of these policies can be selected and applied.



AAA Policy	Accounting Packet Type	Request Interval	HAC Policy	Server Pooling Mode
AAAPolicy1	Start/Stop	30m 0s		Failover
AAAPolicy2	Start/Stop	30m 0s		Failover
AAAPolicy3	Start/Interim/Stop	1m 0s		Failover
EXTERNAL-AAA-SERVERS	Start/Stop	30m 0s		Failover
INTERNAL-AAA-SERVER	Start/Stop	30m 0s		Failover

Type to search in tables Row Count: 5

Add Edit Delete Copy Rename

**Figure 7-8** Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting (AAA) screen

- 2 Refer to the following information listed for each existing AAA policy:

<b>AAA Policy</b>	Displays the name assigned to the AAA TACACS policy when it was initially created. The name cannot be edited within a listed profile.
-------------------	---

<b>Accounting Packet Type</b>	Displays the accounting type set for the AAA policy. Options include: <i>Start Only</i> - Sends a start accounting notice to initiate user accounting. <i>Start/Stop</i> - Sends a start accounting notice at the beginning of a process and a stop notice at the end of a process. The start accounting record is sent in the background. The requested process begins regardless of whether the start accounting notice is received by the accounting server. <i>Start/Interim/Stop</i> - Sends a start accounting notice at the beginning of a process and a stop notice at the end of a process. A notice is also sent at the completion of each interim packet transmission during the process.
<b>Request Interval</b>	Lists each AAA policy's interval used to send a RADIUS accounting request to the RADIUS server.
<b>NAC Policy</b>	Lists the name <i>Network Access Control</i> (NAC) filter used to either <i>include</i> or <i>exclude</i> clients from access.
<b>Server Pooling Mode</b>	The server pooling mode controls how requests are transmitted across RADIUS servers. Selecting <i>Failover</i> results in working down the list of servers if a server is unresponsive or unavailable. <i>Load Balanced</i> uses all available servers transmitting requests in round robin.

- 3 To configure a new AAA policy, click the **Add** button. To modify an existing policy, select it from amongst those available and select the **Edit** button. Optionally **Copy** or **Rename** the AAA policy as needed.

Server Id	Server Type	Host	Port	Request Proxy Mode	Request Attempts	Request Timeout	DSCP	NAI Routing Enable	NAC Enable
1	Host	172.168.1.104	1,812	Through Wirele	3	3s	0	×	×
2	onboard-contr		1,812	None	3	3s	0	×	×

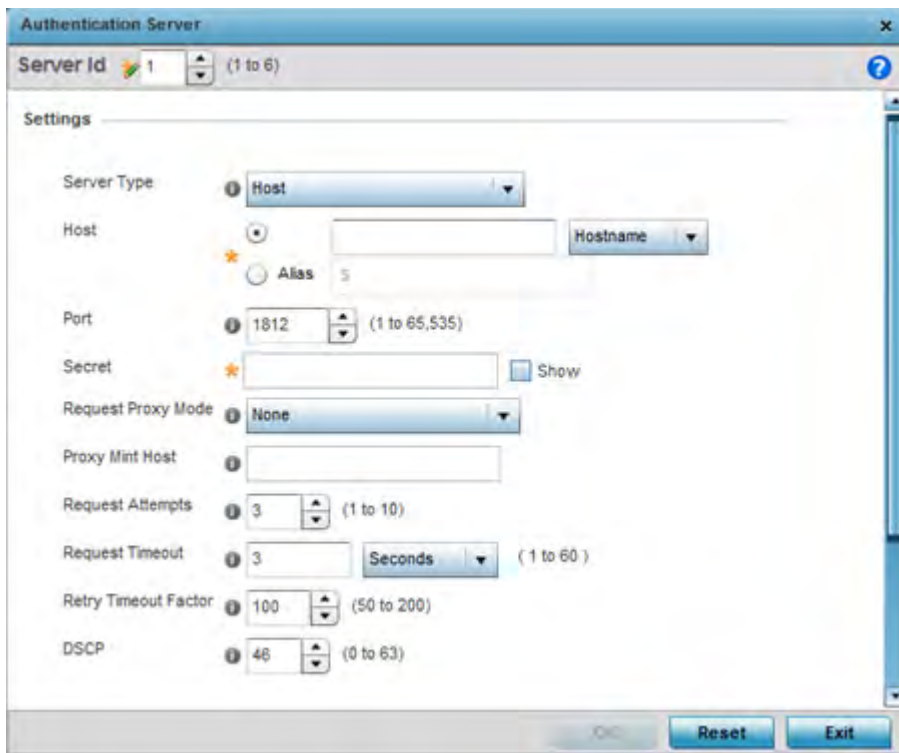
**Figure 7-9** AAA Policy - RADIUS Authentication screen

- 4 Refer to the following AAA authentication policy data:

<b>Server ID</b>	Displays the numerical server index (1-6) for the accounting server when added to the list available.
<b>Server Type</b>	Displays the type of AAA server in use either <i>Host</i> , <i>onboard-self</i> , or <i>onboard-controller</i> .
<b>Host</b>	Displays the IP address or hostname of the RADIUS authentication server.

<b>Port</b>	Displays the port on which the RADIUS server listens to traffic within the network. The port range is 1 to 65,535. The default port is 1812.
<b>Request Proxy Mode</b>	Displays whether a request is transmitted directly through the server or proxied through the Access Point or RF Domain manager.
<b>Request Attempts</b>	Displays the number of attempts a client can retransmit a missed frame to the RADIUS server before it times out of the authentication session. The available range is between 1 and 10 attempts. The default is 3 attempts.
<b>Request Timeout</b>	Displays the time (from 1 - 60) seconds for the re-transmission of request packets. The default is 3 seconds. If this time is exceeded, the authentication session is terminated.
<b>DSCP</b>	Displays the DSCP value as a 6-bit parameter in the header of every IP packet used for packet classification. The valid range is from 0 - 63 with a default of 46.
<b>NAI Routing Enable</b>	Displays NAI routing status. AAA servers identify clients using the NAI. The NAI is a character string in the format of an e-mail address as either user or user@ but it need not be a valid e-mail address or a fully qualified domain name. The NAI can be used either in a specific or generic form. The specific form, which must contain the user portion and may contain the @ portion, identifies a single user. The generic form allows all users to be configured on a single command line. Each user still needs a unique security association, but these associations can be stored on a AAA server. The original purpose of the NAI was to support roaming between dialup ISPs. Using NAI, each ISP need not have all the accounts for all of its roaming partners in a single RADIUS database. RADIUS servers can proxy requests to remote servers for each.
<b>NAC Enable</b>	A green check defines NAC as enabled, while a Red X defines NAC disabled with this AAA policy.

- 5 Select a configuration from the table and select **Edit**, or select **Add** to create a new RADIUS authentication policy. Optionally **Delete** a policy as they become obsolete.



**Figure 7-10** AAA Policy - Add RADIUS Authentication Server

6 Define the following **Settings** to add or modify a AAA RADIUS authentication server configuration:

<b>Server ID</b>	If adding a server, define the numerical server index (1-6) for the authentication server when added to the list available.
<b>Server Type</b>	Select the type of AAA server in use either <i>Host</i> , <i>onboard-self</i> , <i>onboard-controller</i> or <i>onboard-centralized-controller</i> .
<b>Host</b>	Specify the IP address or hostname of the RADIUS authentication server. Hostnames cannot include an underscore character.
<b>Port</b>	Define or edit the port on which the RADIUS server listens to traffic within the network. The port range is 1 to 65,535. The default port is 1812.
<b>Secret</b>	Specify the secret used for authentication on the selected RADIUS server. By default the secret will be displayed as asterisks. To show the secret in plain text, check the Show box.
<b>Request Proxy Mode</b>	Select the method of proxy that browsers communicate with the RADIUS authentication server. The mode could either be <i>None</i> , <i>Through Wireless Controller</i> , <i>through-centralized-controller</i> , <i>Through RF Domain Manager</i> , or <i>Through Mint Host</i> .
<b>Request Mint Host</b>	Specify a 64 character maximum hostname (or Mint ID) of the Mint device used for proxying requests. Hostnames cannot include an underscore character.
<b>Request Attempts</b>	Specify the number of attempts a client can retransmit a missed frame to the RADIUS server before it times out of the authentication session. The available range is between 1 and 10 attempts. The default is 3 attempts.

<b>Request Timeout</b>	Specify the time between 1 and 60 seconds for the re-transmission of request packets. The default is 5 seconds. If this time is exceeded, the authentication session is terminated.
<b>Request Timeout Factor</b>	Specify the amount of time between 50 and 200 seconds between retry timeouts for the re-transmission of request packets. The default is 100.
<b>DSCP</b>	Specify the DSCP value as a 6-bit parameter in the header of every IP packet used for packet classification. The valid range is between 0 and 63 with a default value of 46.

7 Set the following **Network Access Identifier Routing** values:

<b>NAI Routing Enable</b>	Check to enable NAI routing. AAA servers identify clients using the NAI. The NAI is a character string in the format of an e-mail address as either user or user@ but it need not be a valid e-mail address or a fully qualified domain name. The NAI can be used either in a specific or generic form. The specific form, which must contain the user portion and may contain the @ portion, identifies a single user. The generic form allows users to be configured on a single command line. Each user still needs a unique security association, but these associations can be stored on a AAA server. The original purpose of the NAI was to support roaming between dialup ISPs. Using NAI, each ISP need not have all the accounts for all of its roaming partners in a single RADIUS database. RADIUS servers can proxy requests to remote servers for each.
<b>Realm</b>	Enter the realm name in the field. The name cannot exceed 50 characters. When the RADIUS server receives a request for a user name the server references a table of usernames. If the user name is known, the server proxies the request to the RADIUS server.
<b>Realm Type</b>	Specify whether the <i>Prefix</i> or <i>Suffix</i> of the username is matched to the realm.
<b>Strip Realm</b>	Check strip to remove information from the packet when NAI routing is enabled.

8 Select the **RADIUS Accounting** tab.







<b>NAI Routing Enable</b>	Displays NAI routing status. AAA servers identify clients using the NAI. The NAI is a character string in the format of an e-mail address as either user or user@ but it need not be a valid e-mail address or a fully qualified domain name. The NAI can be used either in a specific or generic form. The specific form, which must contain the user portion and may contain the @ portion, identifies a single user. The generic form allows all users to be configured on a single command line. Each user still needs a unique security association, but these associations can be stored on a AAA server. The original purpose of the NAI was to support roaming between dialup ISPs. Using NAI, each ISP need not have all the accounts for all of its roaming partners in a single RADIUS database. RADIUS servers can proxy requests to remote servers for each.
---------------------------	---

- 10 To edit an existing accounting profile, select the profile then **Edit**. To add a new policy select **Add**. Optionally **Delete** a policy as they become obsolete.

**Figure 7-12** AAA Policy - Add RADIUS Accounting Server

- 11 If creating a new AAA Accounting Server configuration as a user database and user authentication resource, assign it a **Server ID** from 1 - 6.
- 12 Define the following **Settings** to add or modify AAA RADIUS accounting server configuration.

<b>Server Type</b>	Select the type of AAA server as either <i>Host</i> , <i>onboard-self</i> , <i>onboard-controller</i> or <i>onboard-centralized-controller</i> .
--------------------	--

<b>Host</b>	Specify the IP address or hostname of the RADIUS accounting server. Hostnames cannot include an underscore character. Select <i>Alias</i> to define the hostname alias once and use the alias character set across different configuration items.
<b>Port</b>	Define or edit the port on which the RADIUS accounting server listens to traffic within the network. The port range is 1 to 65,535. The default port is 1813.
<b>Secret</b>	Specify the secret (password) used for authentication on the selected RADIUS server. By default the secret is displayed as asterisks. To show the secret in plain text, select <i>Show</i> .
<b>Request Proxy Mode</b>	Select the method of proxy that browsers communicate with the RADIUS authentication server. The mode could either be <i>None</i> , <i>Through Wireless Controller</i> , <i>through-centralized-controller</i> , <i>Through RF Domain Manager</i> or <i>Through Mint Host</i> .
<b>Request Mint Host</b>	Specify a 64 character maximum hostname or the Mint ID of the Mint device used for proxying requests. Hostnames cannot include an underscore character.
<b>Request Attempts</b>	Displays the number of attempts a client can retransmit a missed frame to the RADIUS accounting server before it times out of the authentication session. The available range is 1 - 10 attempts. The default is 3 attempts.
<b>Request Timeout</b>	Specify the time from 1 - 60 seconds for the re-transmission of request packets. The default is 5 seconds. If this time is exceeded, the authentication session is terminated.
<b>Retry Timeout Factor</b>	Specify the amount of time from 50 - 200 seconds between retry timeouts for the re-transmission of request packets. The default is 100.
<b>DSCP</b>	Displays the DSCP value as a 6-bit parameter in the header of every IP packet used for packet classification. The valid range is between 0 and 63 with a default value of 34.

13 Set the following **Network Access Identifier routing** values for the accounting server:

<b>NAI Routing Enable</b>	Check to enable NAI routing. AAA servers identify clients using the NAI. The NAI is a character string in the format of an e-mail address as either user or user@ but it need not be a valid e-mail address or a fully qualified domain name. The NAI can be used either in a specific or generic form. The specific form, which must contain the user portion and may contain the @ portion, identifies a single user. The generic form allows all users in a given or without a to be configured on a single command line. Each user still needs a unique security association, but these associations can be stored on a AAA server. The original purpose of the NAI was to support roaming between dialup ISPs. Using NAI, each ISP need not have all the accounts for all of its roaming partners in a single RADIUS database. RADIUS accounting servers can proxy requests to remote servers for each.
<b>Realm</b>	Enter the realm name in the field. The name cannot exceed 50 characters. When the RADIUS server receives a request for a user name the server references a table of usernames. If the user name is known, the server proxies the request to the RADIUS server.
<b>Realm Type</b>	Specify whether the <i>Prefix</i> or <i>Suffix</i> of the username is matched to the realm.

<b>Strip Realm</b>	Check strip to remove information from the packet when NAI routing is enabled.
--------------------	--

14 Select the **Settings** tab.

The screenshot shows the 'AAA Policy WaveSpot' configuration page with the 'Settings' tab selected. The 'RADIUS Accounting' section is expanded, displaying the following settings:

- Protocol for MAC, Captive-Portal Authentication:** PAP (selected), CHAP, MS-CHAP, MS-CHAPv2, Cisco VSA Audit Session Id.
- Accounting Packet Type:** Start/Stop (selected).
- Request Interval:** 30 (selected), Minutes (selected), (1 to 60).
- Accounting Server Preference:** Prefer Same Authentication Server Host (selected).
- Accounting Delay Time:** (empty field).
- Accounting Multi Session Id:** (empty field).
- Chargeable User Id:** (empty field).
- Add Framed IP Address:** (empty field).
- Framed MTU:** 1400 (selected), (100 to 1,500).
- RFC5580 Location Information:** None (selected).
- RFC5580 Operator Name:** (empty field).
- Service-Type:** framed (selected).
- NAS IPv6 Address:** (empty field).
- Proxy NAS Identifier:** originator (selected).
- Proxy NAS IPv4/IPv6 Address:** proxy (selected).

Other sections visible include RADIUS Address Format (Format: Dash Delimiter, Case: Uppercase, Attributes: Username / Password), Server Pooling (Server Pooling Mode: Failover selected), and EAP Wireless Client Settings (Client Attempts: 3, Request Timeout: 30).

**Figure 7-13** AAA Policy - Settings screen

15 Set the **Protocol for MAC, Captive-Portal Authentication**.

The authentication protocol *Password Authentication Protocol (PAP)*, *Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP)* MS-CHAP or MS-CHAPv2 when the server is used for any non-EAP authentication. PAP is the default setting.

16 Set the following **RADIUS Accounting** settings:

<b>Accounting Packet Type</b>	Set the RADIUS Accounting request packet type. Options include <i>Stop Only</i> , <i>Start/Stop</i> and <i>Start/Interim/Stop</i> . Start/Stop is the default setting.
<b>Request Interval</b>	Set the periodicity of the interim accounting requests to 1 hour, 1 - 60 minutes or 60 - 3600 seconds. The default is 30 minutes.

<b>Accounting Server Preference</b>	<p>Select the server preference for RADIUS accounting. The options include:</p> <p><i>Prefer Same Authentication Server Host</i> - Uses the authentication server host name as the host used for RADIUS accounting. This is the default setting.</p> <p><i>Prefer Same Authentication Server Index</i> - Uses the same index as the authentication server for RADIUS accounting.</p> <p><i>Select Accounting Server Independently</i> - Allows users to specify a RADIUS accounting server separate from the RADIUS authentication server.</p>
-------------------------------------	--

17 Set the following **RADIUS Address Format** settings:

<b>Format</b>	Select the format of the MAC address used in the RADIUS accounting packets.
<b>Case</b>	Select whether the MAC address is sent using uppercase or lowercase characters. The default setting is uppercase.
<b>Attributes</b>	Select whether the format specified applies only to the username/password in MAC Auth requests or for all attributes including a MAC address, such as <i>calling-station-id</i> or <i>called-station-id</i> .

18 Set the **Server Pooling Mode**:

<b>Server Pooling Mode</b>	Control how requests are transmitted across RADIUS servers. <i>Failover</i> implies traversing the list of servers if any server is unresponsive. <i>Load Balanced</i> means using all servers in a round-robin fashion. The default setting is Failover.
----------------------------	---

19 Set the following **EAP Wireless Client Settings**:

<b>Client Attempts</b>	Defines the number of times (1 - 10) an EAP request is transmitted to a client before giving up. The default setting is 3.
<b>Request Timeout</b>	Set the amount of time after which an EAP request to a client is retried. The default setting is 3 seconds.
<b>ID Request Timeout</b>	Define the amount of time (1 - 60 seconds) after which an EAP ID Request to a client is retried. The default setting is 30 seconds.
<b>Retransmission Scale Factor</b>	Set the scaling of the retransmission attempts. Timeout at each attempt is a function of the request timeout factor and client attempts number. 100 (default setting) implies a constant timeout at each retry; smaller values indicate more aggressive (shorter) timeouts, larger numbers set more conservative (longer) timeouts on each successive attempt.

20 Set **Access Request Attributes**.

<b>Cisco VSA Audit Session Id</b>	Set a <i>vendor specific attribute</i> (VSA) to allow CISCO's <i>Identity Services Engine</i> (ISE) to validate a requesting client's network compliance, such as the validity of virus definition files (antivirus software or definition files for an anti-spyware software application). This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Accounting Delay Time</b>	Select this option to enable the support of an accounting delay time attribute within accounting requests. This setting is disabled by default.

<b>Accounting Multi Session Id</b>	Select this option to enable the support of an accounting multi session ID attribute. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Chargeable User Id</b>	Select this option to enable the support of chargeable user identity. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Add Framed IP Address</b>	Select this option to add an IP address attribute to access requests. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Framed MTU</b>	Set the framed MTU attribute (from 100 - 1500) used in access requests. The default setting is 1400.
<b>RFC5580 Location Information</b>	Select a support option for the RFC5580 location attribute. Options include <i>None</i> , <i>include-always</i> and <i>server-requested</i> . The default setting is <i>None</i> .
<b>RFC5580 Operator Name</b>	Provide a 63 character maximum RFC5580 operator name.
<b>Service-Type</b>	Set the service type attribute value. Options include <i>framed</i> (default setting) and <i>login</i> .
<b>NAS IPv6 Address</b>	Select this option to provide support for NAS IPv6 formatted addresses when not proxying. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Proxy NAS Identifier</b>	Select a RADIUS attribute NAS identifier when proxying through the controller or RF Domain manager. Options include <i>originator</i> (default setting) or <i>proxier</i> .
<b>Proxy NAS IPv6 Address</b>	Sets the RADIUS attribute NAS IP address and NAS IPv4 address behavior when proxying through the controller or RF Domain manager. Options include <i>None</i> and <i>proxier</i> (default setting).

21 Select **OK** to save the updates to the AAA configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 7.5 AAA TACACS Policy

*Terminal Access Controller Access - Control System+* (TACACS) is a protocol created by CISCO Systems which provides access control to network devices (routers, network access servers and other networked computing devices) using one or more centralized servers. TACACS provides separate authentication, authorization, and accounting services running on different servers.

TACACS controls user access to devices and network resources while providing separate accounting, authentication, and authorization services. Some of the services provided by TACACS are:

- Authorizing each command with the TACACS server before execution
- Accounting each session's logon and log off event
- Authenticating each user with the TACACS server before enabling access to network resources.

To define a unique AAA TACACS configuration:

- 1 Select the **Configuration** tab from the Web UI.
- 2 Select **Network**.
- 3 Select **AAA TACACS Policy** to display a high level display of existing AAA policies.

The **Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting (AAA) TACACS** screen lists existing AAA policies. Any of these policies can be selected and applied to a controller, service platform or Access Point.

AAA TACACS Policy	Accounting Access Method	Authentication Access Method	Authorization Access Method
new	All	All	Telnet

Type to search in tables Row Count: 1

**Figure 7-14** Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting (AAA) TACACS screen

- 4 Refer to the following information for each existing AAA TACACS policy to determine whether new policies require creation or existing policies require modification:

<b>AAA TACACS Policy</b>	Displays the name assigned to the AAA TACACS policy when it was initially created. The name cannot be edited within a listed profile.
<b>Accounting Access Method</b>	Displays the connection method used to access the AAA TACACS accounting server. Options include <i>All</i> , <i>SSH</i> , <i>Console</i> , or <i>Telnet</i> .
<b>Authentication Access Method</b>	Displays the method used to access the AAA TACACS authentication server. Options include <i>All</i> , <i>SSH</i> , <i>Console</i> , <i>Telnet</i> , or <i>Web</i> .
<b>Authorization Access Method</b>	Displays the method used to access the AAA TACACS authorization server. Options include <i>All</i> , <i>SSH</i> , <i>Console</i> , or <i>Telnet</i> .

- 5 Select **Add** to configure a new AAA TACACS policy. Optionally **Copy** or **Rename** a policy as needed.
- 6 Provide a 32 character maximum name for the policy in the **AAA TACACS Policy** field. Select **OK** to proceed. The **Server Info** tab displays by default.



AAA TACACS Policy new

Server Info Settings

Authentication

Server Id	Host	Port	Secret	Request Timeout	Request Attempts	Retry Timeout Factor	
1	1.1.1.1	49	newqwer	3	3	100	

+ Add Row

Authorization

Server Preference authenticated-server-host

Authorization Server Details

Server Id	Host	Port	Secret	Request Timeout	Request Attempts	Retry Timeout Factor	

Accounting

Server Preference authenticated-server-host

Accounting Server Details

Server Id	Host	Port	Secret	Request Timeout	Request Attempts	Retry Timeout Factor	

Ok Cancel Exit

**Figure 7-15** AAA TACACS Policy - Server Info

- 7 Under the **Authentication** table, select **+ Add Row**.

Add Row

Settings

Server Id 1 (1 to 2)

Host Hostname

Port 49 (1 to 65,535)

Secret Show

Request Attempts 3 (1 to 10)

Request Timeout 3 Seconds (3 to 60)

Retry Timeout Factor 100 (50 to 200)

Exit

**Figure 7-16** AAA TACACS Policy - Authentication Server - Add Row

8 Set the following Authentication settings:

<b>Server Id</b>	Set numerical server index (1-2) for the authentication server when added to the list of available TACACS authentication server resources.
<b>Host</b>	Specify the IP address or hostname of the AAA TACACS server. Hostnames cannot include an underscore character.
<b>Port</b>	Define or edit the port on which the AAA TACACS server listens to traffic. The port range is 1 - 65,535. The default port is 49.
<b>Secret</b>	Specify (and confirm) the secret (password) used for authentication between the selected AAA TACACS server and the controller, service platform or Access Point. By default the secret is displayed as asterisk. To show the secret in plain text, select <i>Show</i> .
<b>Request Attempts</b>	Set the number of connection request attempts to the TACACS server before it times out of the authentication session. The available range is from 1 - 10. The default is 3.
<b>Request Timeout</b>	Specify the time for the re-transmission of request packets after an unsuccessful attempt. The default is 3 seconds. If the set time is exceeded, the authentication session is terminated.
<b>Retry Timeout Factor</b>	Set the scaling of retransmission attempts from 50 - 200 seconds. The timeout at each attempt is the function of the retry timeout factor and the attempt number. 100 (the default value) implies a constant timeout on each retry. Smaller values indicate more aggressive (shorter) timeouts. Larger numbers define more conservative (larger) timeouts on each successive attempt. The default is 100.

9 Select **OK** to save the changes or **Exit** to close the screen.

10 Set the **Server Preference**, within the **Authorization** field, to specify which server, in the pool of servers, is selected to receive authorization requests. Options include *None*, *authenticated-server-host*, and *authenticated-server-number*. If selecting *None* or *authenticated-server-number* select **+ Add Row** and set the server's ID, host, port, password and connection attempt parameters.

11 Set the following **Authorization Server Details**:

<b>Server Id</b>	Lists the numerical server index (1-2) for each authentication server when added to the list available to the controller, service platform or Access Point.
<b>Host</b>	Displays the IP address or hostname set for the AAA TACACS authentication server.
<b>Port</b>	Displays the port the TACACS authentication server listens to traffic. The port range is 1 - 65,535. The default port is 49.
<b>Secret</b>	Specify (and confirm) the secret (password) used for authentication between the selected AAA TACACS server and the controller, service platform or Access Point. By default the secret is displayed as asterisks. To show the secret in plain text, select <i>Show</i> .
<b>Request Attempts</b>	Displays the number of connection attempts before the controller, service platform or Access Point times out of the authentication session. The available range is from 1 - 10. The default is 3.
<b>Request Timeout</b>	Specify the time for the re-transmission of request packets after an unsuccessful attempt. The default is 3 seconds. If the set time is exceeded, the authentication session is terminated.

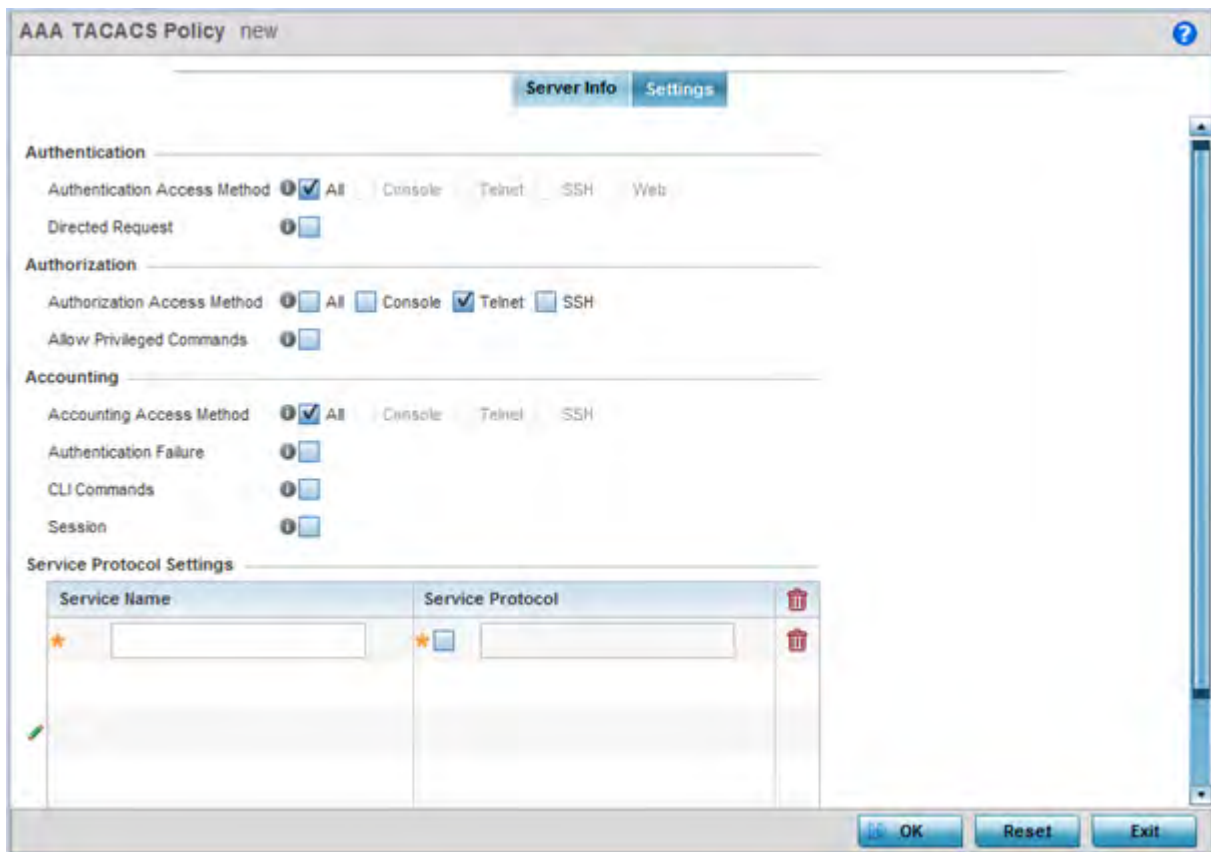


<b>Retry Timeout Factor</b>	Set the scaling of retransmission attempts from 50 - 200 seconds. The timeout at each attempt is the function of the retry timeout factor and the attempt number. 100 (the default value) implies a constant timeout on each retry. Smaller values indicate more aggressive (shorter) timeouts. Larger numbers define more conservative (larger) timeouts on each successive attempt. The default is 100.
-----------------------------	---

- 12 Click **OK** to save the changes, **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration or **Exit** to close the screen.
- 13 Set the **Server Preference**, within the **Accounting** field, to select the accounting server, from the pool of servers, to receive accounting requests. Options include *None*, *authenticated-server-host*, *authenticated-server-number*, *authorized-server-host* and *authorized-server-number*. The default is *authenticated-server-host*. If selecting *None*, *authenticated-server-number* or *authorized-server-number* select **+ Add Row** and set the server's ID, host, port, password and connection attempt parameters.
- 14 Set the following **Accounting Server Details**:

<b>Server Id</b>	Lists the numerical server index (1-2) for each authentication server when added to the list available to the controller, service platform or Access Point.
<b>Host</b>	Displays the IP address or hostname set for the AAA TACACS authentication server.
<b>Port</b>	Displays the port the TACACS authentication server listens to traffic. The port range is 1 - 65,535. The default port is 49.
<b>Secret</b>	Specify (and confirm) the secret (password) used for authentication between the selected AAA TACACS server and the controller, service platform or Access Point. By default the secret is displayed as asterisks. To show the secret in plain text, select <i>Show</i> .
<b>Request Attempts</b>	Displays the number of connection attempts before the controller, service platform or Access Point times out of the authentication session. The available range is from 1 - 10. The default is 3.
<b>Request Timeout</b>	Specify the time for the re-transmission of request packets after an unsuccessful attempt. The default is 3 seconds. If the set time is exceeded, the authentication session is terminated.
<b>Retry Timeout Factor</b>	Set the scaling of retransmission attempts from 50 - 200 seconds. The timeout at each attempt is the function of the retry timeout factor and the attempt number. 100 (the default value) implies a constant timeout on each retry. Smaller values indicate more aggressive (shorter) timeouts. Larger numbers define more conservative (larger) timeouts on each successive attempt. The default is 100.

- 15 Select **OK** to save the changes, **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration or **Exit** to close the screen.
- 16 Select the **Settings** tab.



**Figure 7-17** AAA TACACS Policy - Settings screen

17 Set the following AAA TACACS **Authentication** server configuration parameters:

<p><b>Authentication Access Method</b></p>	<p>Specify the connection method(s) for authentication requests.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>All</i> – Authentication is performed for all types of access without prioritization.</li> <li>• <i>Console</i> – Authentication is performed only for console access.</li> <li>• <i>Telnet</i> – Authentication is performed only for access through Telnet.</li> <li>• <i>SSH</i> – Authentication is performed only for access through SSH.</li> <li>• <i>Web</i> – Authentication is performed only for access through the Web interface.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Directed Request</b></p>	<p>Select to enable the AAA TACACS authentication server to be used with the '@&lt;server name&gt;' nomenclature. The specified server must be present in the list of defined Authentication servers.</p>

18 Set the following AAA TACACS **Authorization** server configuration parameters:

<p><b>Authorization Access Method</b></p>	<p>Specify the connection methods for authorization requests:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>All</i> – Authorization is performed for all types of access without prioritization.</li> <li>• <i>Console</i> – Authorization is performed only for console access.</li> <li>• <i>Telnet</i> – Authorization is performed only for access through Telnet.</li> <li>• <i>SSH</i> – Authorization is performed only for access through SSH.</li> </ul>
---	---

<b>Allow Privileged Commands</b>	Select this option to enable privileged commands executed without command authorization. Privileged commands are commands that can alter/change the authorization server configuration.
----------------------------------	---

19 Set the following AAA TACACS **Accounting** server configuration parameters:

<b>Accounting Access Method</b>	Specify access methods for accounting server connections. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>All</i> – Accounting is performed for all types of access with none given priority.</li> <li>• <i>Console</i> – Accounting is performed for console access only.</li> <li>• <i>Telnet</i> – Accounting is performed only for access through Telnet.</li> <li>• <i>SSH</i> – Accounting is performed only for access through SSH.</li> </ul>
<b>Authentication Failure</b>	Select the option to enable accounting upon authentication failures. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>CLI Commands</b>	Select this option to enable accounting for CLI commands. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Session</b>	Select this option to enable accounting for session start and session stop events. This setting is disabled by default.

20 Select **+ Add Row** and set the following **Service Protocol Settings** parameters:

Service Name	Provide a 30 character maximum shell service for user authorization.
Service Protocol	Enter a protocol for user authentication using the service.



**NOTE:** A maximum of 5 entries can be made in the **Service Protocol Settings** table.

21 Select **OK** to save the updates to the AAA TACACS policy. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 7.6 IPv6 Router Advertisement Policy

An IPv6 router policy allows routers to advertise their presence in response to solicitation messages. After receiving a neighbor solicitation message, the destination node sends an advertisement message, which includes the link layer address of the source node. After receiving the advertisement, the destination device replies with a neighbor advertisement message on the local link. After the source receives the advertisement it can communicate with other devices.

Advertisement messages are also sent to indicate a change in link layer address for a node on the local link. With such a change, the multicast address becomes the destination address for advertisement messages.

To define a IPv6 router advertisement policy:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Network > IPv6 Router Advertisement Policy**.

IPv6 RA Policy Name	RA Interval	Suppress RA	Default Router Lifetime	Router Preference	Advertise MTU	Advertise Hop Count
default	5m 0s	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	25m 0s	Medium	X	X

Type to search in tables Row Count: 1

**Figure 7-18** Network IPv6 Router Advertisement Policy screen

- 2 Select **Add** to create a new IPv6 router advertisement policy, **Edit** to modify the attributes of a selected policy or **Delete** to remove obsolete policies from the list of those available. Existing policies can be copied or renamed as needed.

Provide a 32 character maximum name for the policy in the **IPv6 RA Policy Name** field. Select **OK** to proceed. The **IPv6 RA Policy Name** screen displays.

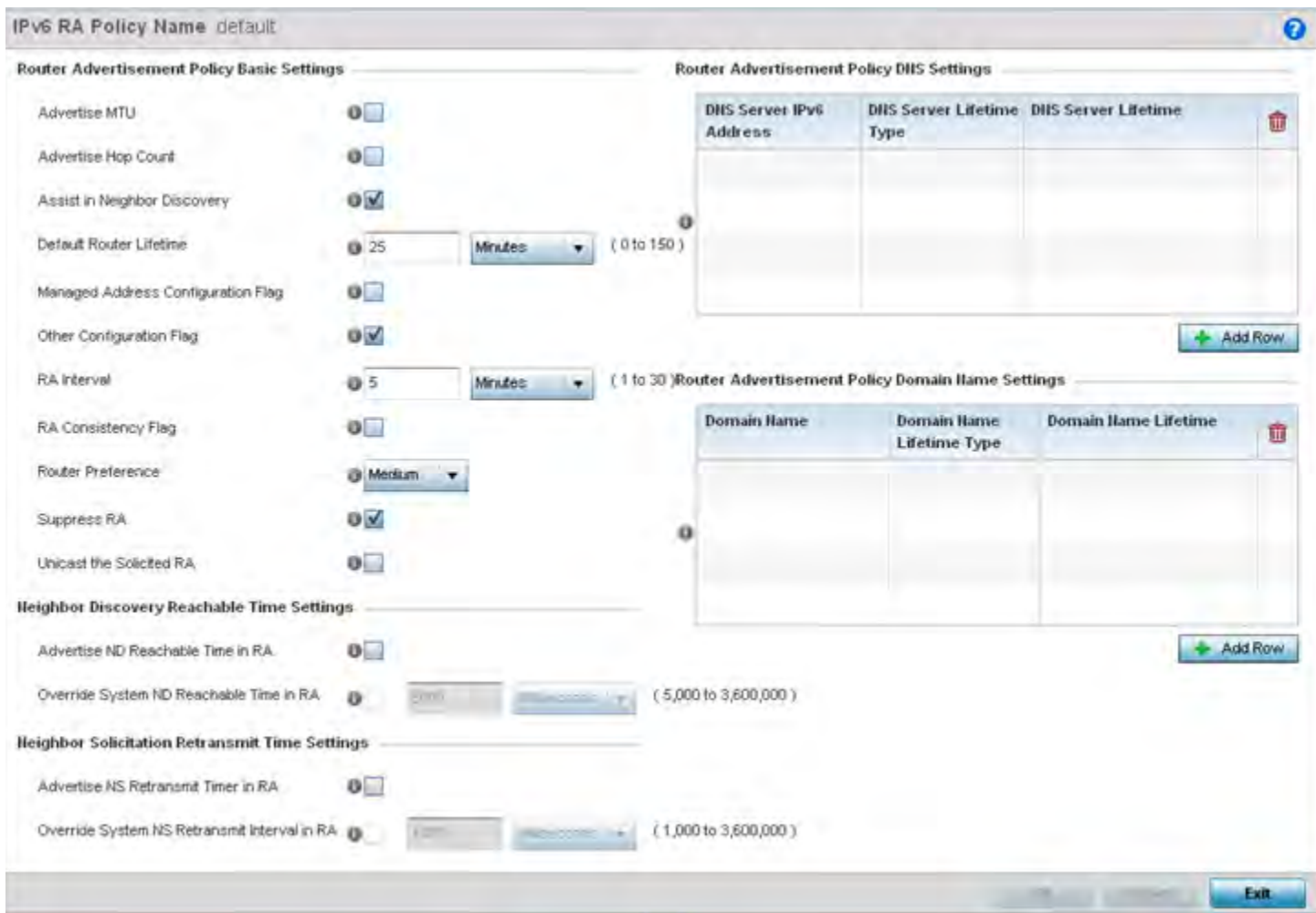


Figure 7-19 Network IPv6 RA Policy Name screen

3 Set the following **Router Advertisement Policy Basic Settings**:

<b>Advertise MTU</b>	Select this option to include the <i>Maximum Transmission Unit</i> (MTU) in the router advertisements. The default setting is disabled.
<b>Advertise Hop Count</b>	Select this option to include the hop count in the header of outgoing IPv6 packets. The default setting is disabled.
<b>Assist in Neighbor Discovery</b>	Select this option to send the source link layer address in a router advertisement to assist in neighbor discovery. The default setting is enabled.
<b>Default Router Lifetime</b>	Set the default router lifetime availability for IPv6 router advertisements. A lifetime of 0 indicates that the router is not a default router. The router advertisement interval range is 0 - 9000 <i>Seconds</i> , 0 - 150 <i>Minutes</i> , or 0 - 2.5 <i>Hours</i> . The default is 30 minutes.
<b>Managed Address Configuration Flag</b>	Select this option to send the managed address configuration flag in router advertisements. When set, the flag indicates that the addresses are available via DHCP v6. The default setting is disabled.

<b>Other Configuration Flag</b>	Select this option to send the other configuration flag in router advertisements. When set, the flag indicates other configuration information (DNS related information, information on other servers within the network) is available via DHCP v6. The default setting is disabled.
<b>RA Interval</b>	Set the interval for unsolicited IPv6 router assignments. The router advertisement interval range is 3 - 1800 seconds or 0 - 150 minutes. The default is 5 minutes.
<b>RA Consistency Flag</b>	Select this option to check if parameters advertised by other routers on the local link are in conflict with those router advertisements by this controller, service platform or Access Point. This option is disabled by default.
<b>Router Preference</b>	Set a <i>High</i> , <i>Medium</i> or <i>Low</i> preference designation on this router versus other router resource that may be available to the controller, service platform or Access Point. The default setting is medium.
<b>Suppress RA</b>	Use this setting to enable or disable the transmission of a router advertisement within the IPv6 packet. This setting is enabled by default.
<b>Unicast Solicited RA</b>	Select this option to enable the unicast (single destination) transmission of a router advertisement within the IPv6 packet. This setting is disabled by default.

4 Set the following **Neighbor Discovery Reachable Time Settings**:

<b>Advertise ND Reachable Time in RA</b>	Select this option <i>not</i> specify the neighbor reachable time in the router advertisements. When unspecified, the neighbor reachable time configured for the system is advertised. The default setting is disabled.
<b>Override System ND Reachable Time in RA</b>	Set the period for sending neighbor reachable time in the router advertisements. When unspecified, the neighbor reachable time configured for the system is advertised. The interval range is from 5,000 - 3,600,000 milliseconds. The default is 5000 milliseconds.

5 Set the following **Neighbor Solicitation Retransmit Time Settings**:

<b>Advertise NS Retransmit Timer in RA</b>	Select this option to <i>not</i> specify the neighbor solicitation retransmit timer value in router advertisements. The default setting is disabled.
<b>Override System NS Retransmit Interval in RA</b>	Set the period for sending the neighbor solicitation retransmit timer in router advertisements. When unspecified, the setting configured for the system is advertised. The interval range is from 1000 - 3,600,000 milliseconds. The default is 1000 milliseconds.

6 Select **+ Add Row** under the **Router Advertisement Policy DNS Settings** table and set the following:

<b>DNS Server IPv6 Address</b>	Use a DNS server to resolve host names to IPv6 addresses. When an IPv6 host is configured with the address of a DNS server, the host sends DNS name queries to the server for resolution. This field is mandatory
<b>DNS Server Lifetime Type</b>	Set the lifetime afforded to the DNS server resource. Options include <i>expired</i> , <i>External</i> (fixed), and <i>infinite</i> . The default is External (fixed).
<b>DNS Server Lifetime</b>	Set the maximum time the DNS server is available for name resolution. The interval range is from 1000 - 3,600,000 milliseconds. The default is 10 minutes.

- 7 Select **+ Add Row** under the **Router Advertisement Policy Domain Name Settings** table and define the following settings:

<b>Domain Name</b>	Enter a <i>fully qualified domain name</i> (FQDN) is an unambiguous domain name available a router advertisement resource. To distinguish an FQDN from a regular domain name, a trailing period is added. For example, somehost.example.com. This field is mandatory
<b>Domain Name Lifetime Type</b>	Set the DNS Server Lifetime Type. Options include <i>expired</i> , <i>External</i> (fixed), and <i>infinite</i> . The default is <i>External</i> (fixed).
<b>Domain Name Lifetime</b>	Set the maximum time the DNS domain name is available as a name resolution resource. The default is 10 minutes.

- 8 Select **OK** to save the changes, **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration or **Exit** to close the screen.

## 7.7 BGP

*Border Gateway Protocol* (BGP) is an inter-ISP routing protocol for establishing routes between ISPs. ISPs use BGP to exchange routing and reachability information between *Autonomous Systems* (AS) on the Internet. BGP makes routing decisions based on paths, network policies and/or rules set by network administrators. The primary role of a BGP system is to exchange network reachability information with other BGP peers. This includes AS information the reachability information traverses. This information is sufficient to create a graph of AS connectivity from which routing decisions are created and rules enforced.

An *Autonomous System* (AS) is a set of routers under the same administration using *Interior Gateway Protocol* (IGP) and common metrics to define how to route packets. AS uses inter-AS routing to route packets to other ASs. For an external AS, an AS appears as a single coherent interior routing plan and presents a consistent picture of reachable destinations.

Routing information exchanged through BGP supports only destination based forwarding (it assumes that a router forwards packets based on the destination address carried in the IP header of the packet).

BGP uses TCP as its transport protocol. This eliminates the need to implement explicit update fragmentation, retransmission, acknowledgment, and sequencing. BGP listens on TCP port 179. The error notification mechanism used in BGP assumes TCP supports a *graceful* close (all outstanding data is delivered before the connection is closed).

Refer to the following to configure access lists, path lists, IP prefix lists, community lists and external community lists for BGP:

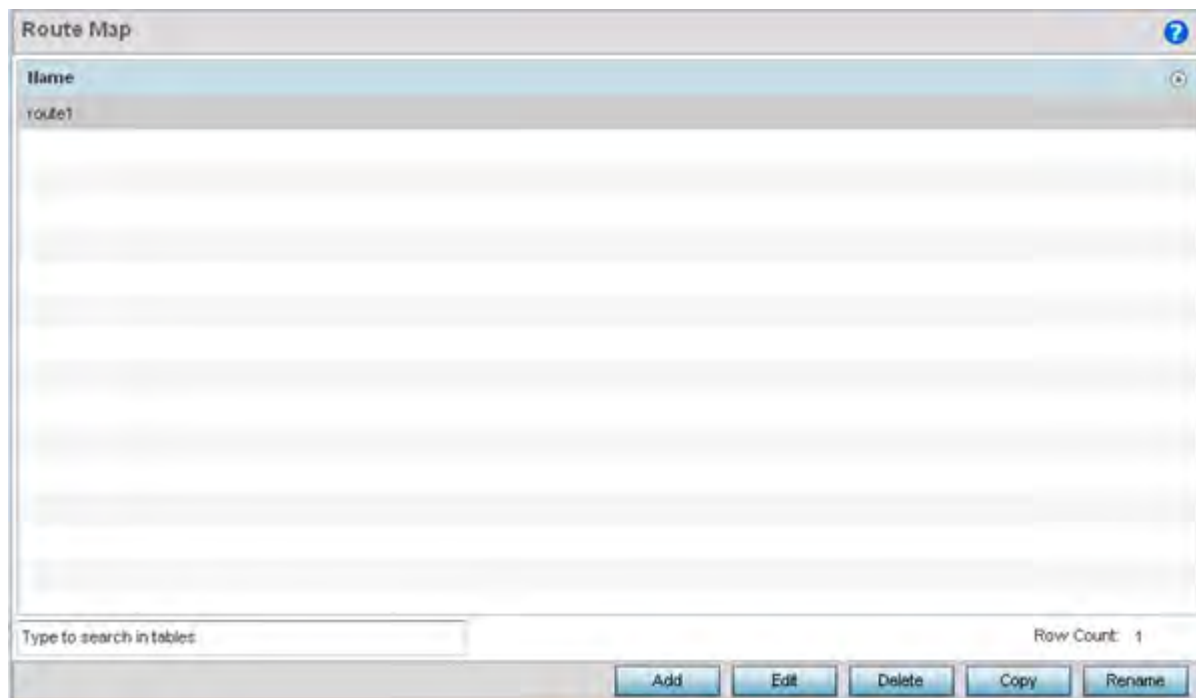
- [IP Access List](#)
- [AS Path List](#)
- [IP Prefix List](#)
- [Community List](#)
- [External Community List](#)

To review existing BGP configurations or potentially create new ones:

- 1 Select the **Configuration > Network > BGP**.  
Expand the BGP menu to display its submenu options.
- 2 Select **Route Map**.



In a BGP implementation, a route map is a method to control and modify routing information. The control and modification of routing information occurs using route redistribution rules.



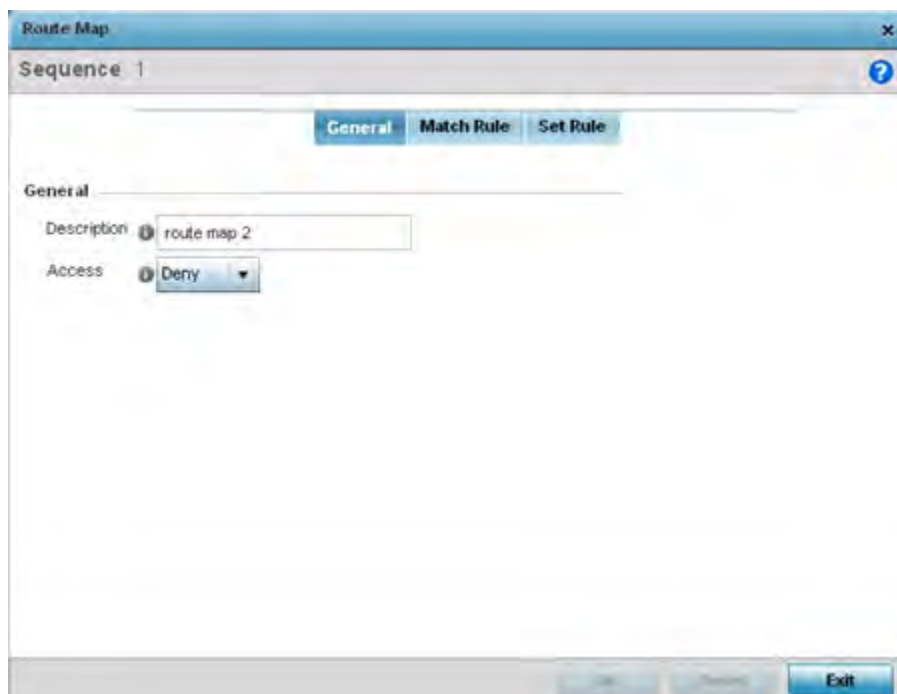
**Figure 7-20** Network BGP Route Map screen

- 3 Select **Add** to create a new route map, **Edit** to modify the attributes of a selected route. Existing route map configurations can be copied or renamed as needed.

The **Route Map Rule** screen lists existing rules and their access permissions.

The **General** tab is displayed by default when adding or editing route maps.



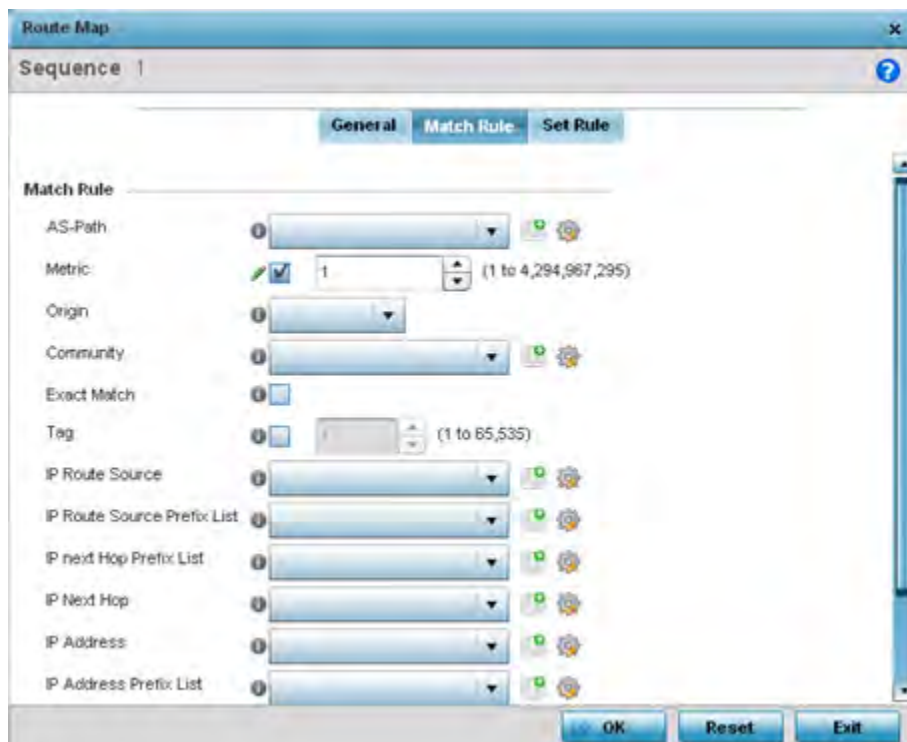


**Figure 7-21** Network Route Map Name - General screen

- 4 Set the following **General** settings:

<b>Description</b>	Provide a 64 character maximum description to help distinguish this route map from others with similar access permissions.
<b>Access</b>	Set the <i>permit</i> or <i>deny</i> access designation for the route map. The default setting is deny.

- 5 Select the **Match Rule** tab.



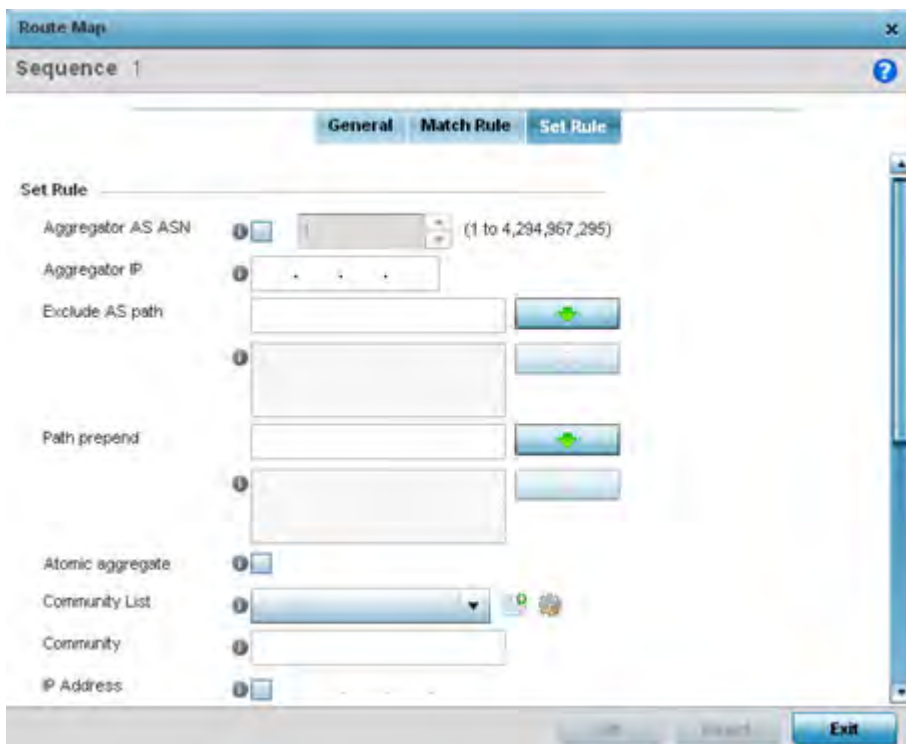
**Figure 7-22** Network Route Map Name - Match Rule screen

6 Set the following **Match Rule** settings:

<b>AS-Path</b>	An AS path is a list of <i>Autonomous Systems</i> (AS) a packet traverses to reach its destination. From the drop-down menu, select a pre-configured AS-Path list. Use the <i>Create</i> icon to create an AS-Path list or select an existing one and use the <i>Edit</i> icon.
<b>Metric</b>	Select this option to define the exterior metric (1 - 4,294,967,295) used for route map distribution. BGP uses a route table managed by the external defined. Setting a metric provides a dynamic way to load balance between routes of equal cost.
<b>Origin</b>	Use the drop-down menu to set the source of the BGP route. Options include:  <i>egp</i> - Matches if the origin of the route is from the <i>exterior gateway protocol</i> (eBGP). eBGP exchanges routing table information between hosts outside an autonomous system.  <i>igp</i> - Matches if the origin of the route is from the <i>interior gateway protocol</i> (iBGP). iBGP exchanges routing table information between routers within an autonomous system.  <i>incomplete</i> - Matches if the origin of the route is not identifiable.

<b>Community</b>	Use the drop-down menu to set the autonomous system community. A new community can be defined by selecting the <i>Create</i> icon, or an existing autonomous system community can be modified by selecting the <i>Edit</i> icon. Options include:  <i>internet</i> - Advertises this route to the Internet. This is a global community. <i>local-AS</i> - Prevents the transmit of packets outside the local AS. <i>no-advertise</i> - Do not advertise this route to any peer, either internal or external. <i>no-export</i> - Do not advertise to BGP peers, keeping this route within an AS. <i>aa:nn</i> - The first part (aa) represents the AS number. The second part (nn) represents a 2-byte number.
<b>Exact Match</b>	When matching the <i>Community</i> , use exact matching. The default setting is disabled.
<b>Tag</b>	The <i>Tag</i> is a way to preserve a route's AS path information for routers in iBGP. The default setting is disabled.
<b>IP Route Source</b>	The <i>IP Route Source</i> is a list of IP addresses used to filter routes based on the advertised IP address of the source. Use the drop-down menu to set the IP route source. A new route source can be defined by selecting the <i>Create</i> icon, or an existing one can be modified by selecting the <i>Edit</i> icon.
<b>IP Route Source Prefix List</b>	The <i>IP Route Source Prefix List</i> is a list of prefixes used to filter routes based on the prefix list used for the source. Use the drop-down menu to set the IP route source prefix list. A new list can be defined by selecting the <i>Create</i> icon, or an existing AS-Path can be modified by selecting the <i>Edit</i> icon.
<b>IP Next Hop Prefix List</b>	The <i>IP Next Hop Prefix List</i> is a list of prefixes for the route's next hop determining how the route is filtered. Use the drop-down menu to set the IP next hop prefix list. A new list can be defined by selecting the <i>Create</i> icon, or an existing IP next hop prefix list can be modified by selecting the <i>Edit</i> icon.
<b>IP Next Hop</b>	The <i>IP Next Hop</i> is a list of IP addresses used to filter routes based on the IP address of the next hop in the route. Use the drop-down menu to set an IP next hop. A new next hop can be defined by selecting the <i>Create</i> icon, or an existing IP next hop can be modified by selecting the <i>Edit</i> icon.
<b>IP Address</b>	The <i>IP Address</i> parameter is a list of IP addresses in the route used to filter the route. Use the drop-down menu to set the IP address. A new address can be defined by selecting the <i>Create</i> icon, or an existing IP address can be modified by selecting the <i>Edit</i> icon.
<b>IP Address Prefix List</b>	The <i>IP Address Prefix List</i> is a list of prefixes in the route used to filter the route. Use the drop-down menu to set the IP address prefix list. A new community can be defined by selecting the <i>Create</i> icon, or an existing IP address prefix list can be modified by selecting the <i>Edit</i> icon.

- 7 Use the drop-down menu to set the **Math Rule Experimental Feature** External Community setting. A new External Community setting can be defined by selecting the **Create** icon, or an existing External Community setting can be modified by selecting the **Edit** icon.
- 8 Select the **Set Rule** tab.



**Figure 7-23** Network Route Map Name - Set Rule screen

9 Define the following **Set Rule** parameters:

<b>Aggregator AS ASN</b>	Select the <i>Autonomous System Number</i> (ASN) for the BGP aggregator. Aggregates minimize the size of routing tables. Aggregation combines the characteristics of multiple routes and advertises them as a single route. Select the ASN for this aggregator. Set a value from 1 - 4,294,967,295. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Aggregator IP</b>	Provide the IP address of the route aggregator. BGP allows the aggregation of specific routes into one route using an aggregate IP address.
<b>Exclude AS path</b>	Enter an AS, or a list of ASs, excluded from the AS path.
<b>Path prepend</b>	Enter an AS, or a list of ASs, prepended to the AS path.
<b>Atomic Aggregate</b>	When a BGP enabled wireless controller or service platforms receives a set of overlapping routes from a peer, or if the set of routes selects a less specific route, then the local device must set this value when propagating the route to its neighbors. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Community List</b>	The <i>Community List</i> is a list of communities added to the route. A BGP community is a group of routes sharing a common attribute.
<b>Community</b>	The <i>Community</i> is the community attribute set to this route.
<b>IP Address</b>	Set the IP address for this route.
<b>Enable (Next hop peer)</b>	Select this option to enable the identification of the next hop address for peer devices. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Local Preference</b>	Select this option to enable the communication of preferred routes out of the AS between peers. This setting is disabled by default.

<b>Metric</b>	BGP uses a route table managed by the external metric defined. Setting a metric provides a dynamic way to load balance between routes of equal cost. Set a metric value for this route from 1 - 4,294,967,295.
<b>Origin</b>	Select the origin code for this BGP route. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>egp</i> - Sets the origin of the route to eBGP.</li> <li>• <i>igp</i> - Sets the origin of the route to iBGP.</li> <li>• <i>incomplete</i> - Sets the origin of the route as not identifiable. Set this if the route is from a source other than eBGP or iBGP.</li> </ul>
<b>Originator ID</b>	Set the IP address of the originator of this route map.
<b>Source ID</b>	Set the IP address of the source of this route map.
<b>Tag</b>	The <i>Tag</i> is a way to preserve a route's AS path information for routers in iBGP. Set a tag value from 1 - 65535.
<b>Weight</b>	Select this option to enable the assignment of a weighted priority to the aggregate route. The range is 1 - 4,294,967,295.

10 Set the following **Set Rule Experimental Feature** settings:

<b>Route Target Community</b>	Enter a 254 character maximum route target community name.
<b>Site of Origin Community</b>	Enter a 254 character maximum origin community associated with the route reflector.

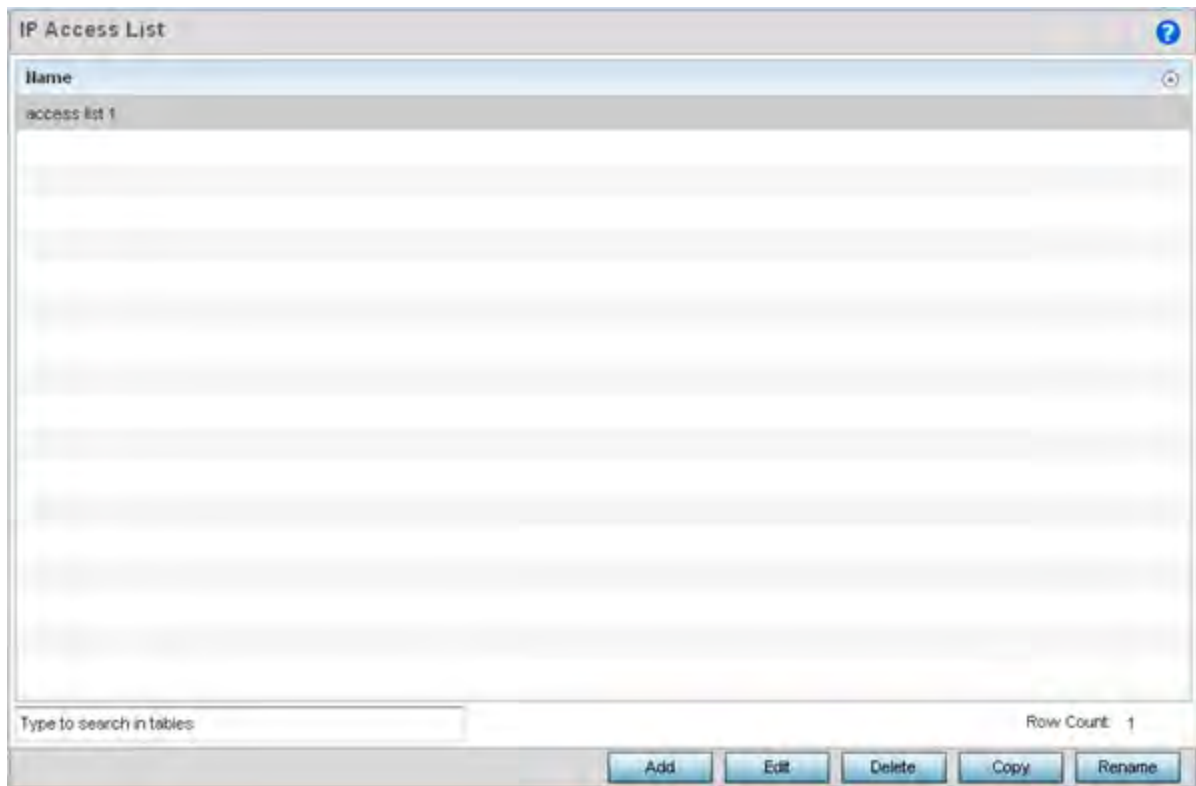
11 Click **OK** to save the changes, **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration or **Exit** to close the screen.

## 7.7.1 IP Access List

BGP peers and route maps can reference a single IP based access list. Apply IP access lists to both inbound and outbound route updates. Every route update is passed through the access list. BGP applies each rule in the access list in the order it appears in the list. When a route matches a rule, the decision to permit or deny the route is applied. No additional rules are processed.

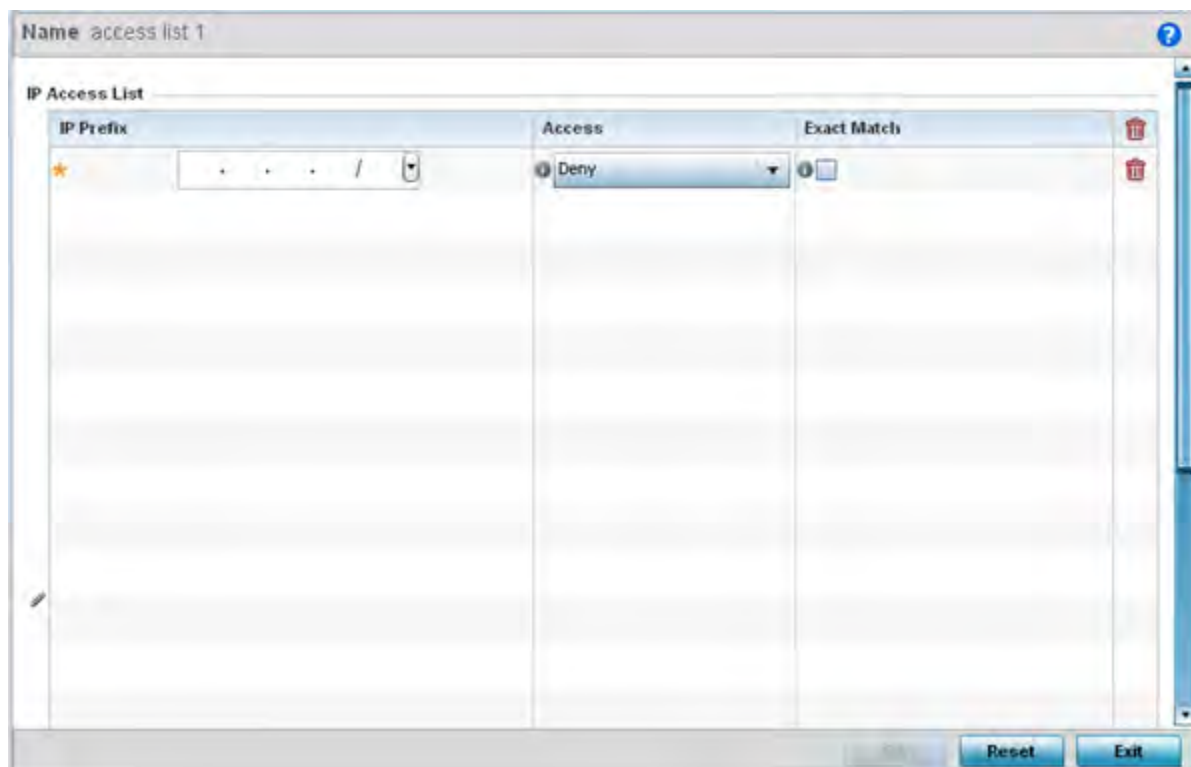
To define a IP access list:

- 1 Select the **Configuration > Network > BGP**.  
Expand the BGP menu to display its submenu options.
- 2 Select **IP Access List**.



**Figure 7-24** Network BGP IP Access List screen

- 3 Select **Add** to create a new IP access list, **Edit** to modify the attributes of a selected list or **Delete** to remove an obsolete list. Existing policies can be copied or renamed as needed.



**Figure 7-25** Network BGP IP Access List Name screen

- 4 Set the following **IP Access List** settings:

<b>IP Prefix</b>	Provide the IP address used to define the prefix list rule.
<b>Access</b>	Use the drop-down menu to <i>Permit</i> or <i>Deny</i> requests for network access originating from IP addresses with the IP prefix. The default setting is deny.
<b>Exact Match</b>	Check to require an exact match for the IP prefix before access is granted. Permit and deny apply only when there is an exact match between the regular expression and the autonomous system path. This setting is disabled by default.

- 5 Click **OK** to save the changes, **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration or **Exit** to close the screen.

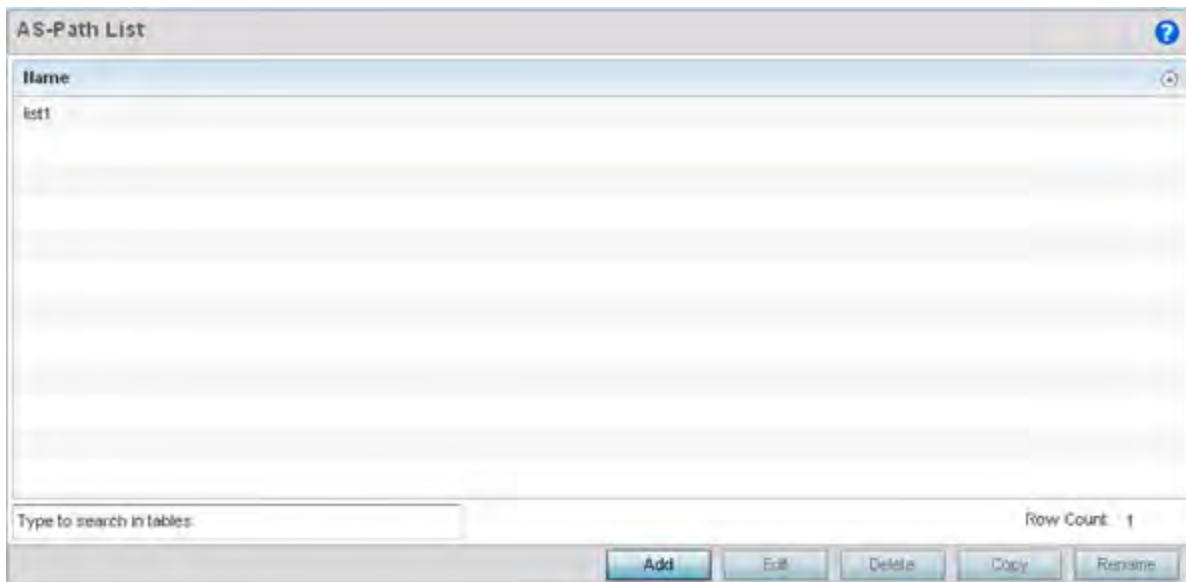
## 7.7.2 AS Path List

BGP uses a routing algorithm to exchange network reachability information with other BGP supported devices. Network availability and reachability information is exchanged between BGP peers in routing updates. This information contains a network number, path specific attributes and the list of autonomous system numbers a route transits to reach a destination. This list is contained in the *AS path*. BGP prevents routing loops by rejecting any routing update that contains a local autonomous system number, as this indicates the route has already traveled through that autonomous system and a loop would be created. BGP's routing algorithm is a combination of a distance vector routing algorithm and AS path loop detection.

The AS path contains a set of numbers for passing routing information. A BGP supported device adds its own autonomous system number to the list when it forwards an update message to external peers.

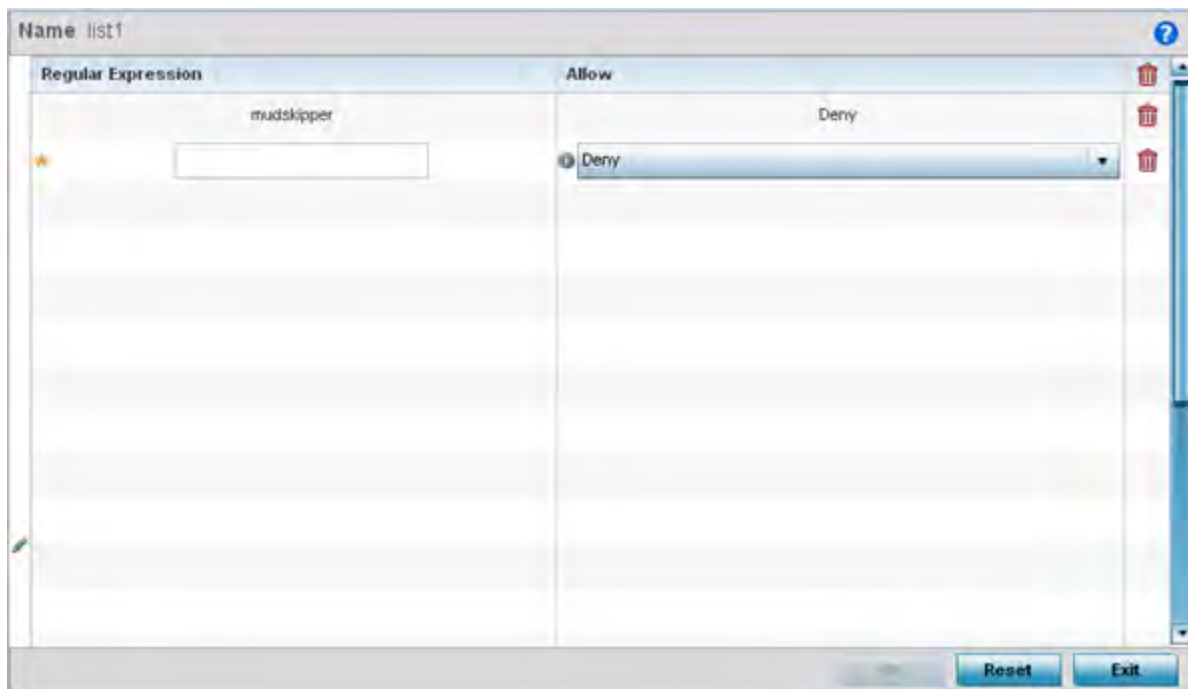
To define an AS path list:

- 1 Select the **Configuration > Network > BGP**.  
Expand the BGP menu to display its submenu options.
- 2 Select **AS Path List**.



**Figure 7-26** Network BGP AS Path List screen

- 3 Select **Add** to create a new AS path list or **Edit** to modify the attributes of a selected path list. Existing policies can be copied or renamed as needed.



**Figure 7-27** Network BGP AS Path List Name screen



- 4 Set the following **AS Path List** settings:

<b>Regular Expression</b>	Provide a 64 character maximum regular expression unique to the AS path list rule. Regular expressions are used to specify patterns to match community attributes.
<b>Allow</b>	Use the drop-down menu to <i>Permit</i> or <i>Deny</i> requests for network access using the defined AS path list. The default setting is deny.

- 5 Click **OK** to save the changes, **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration or **Exit** to close the screen.

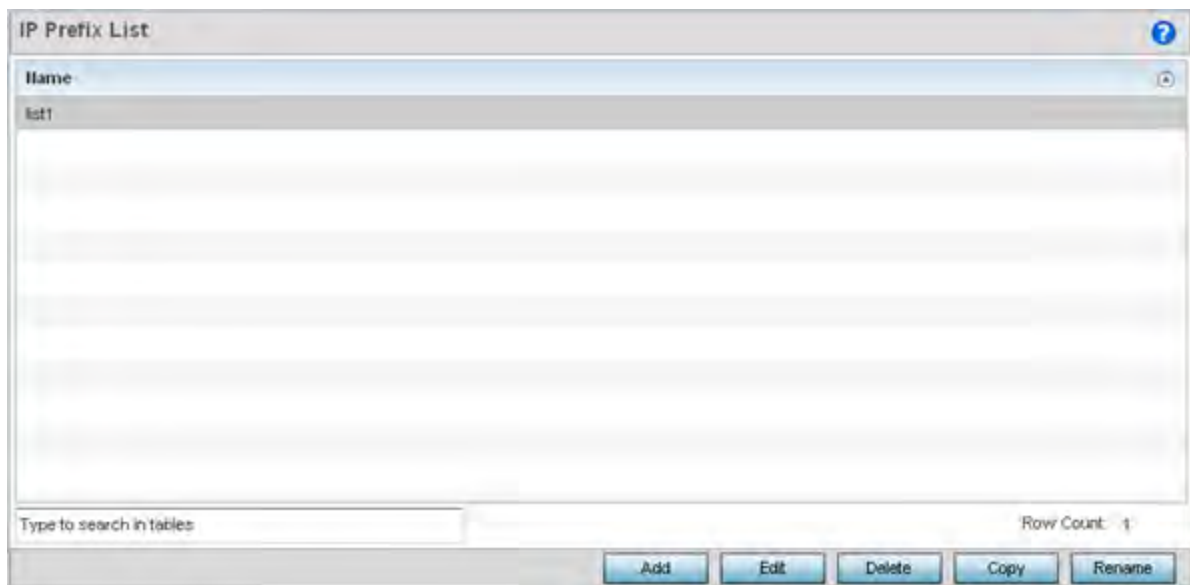
### 7.7.3 IP Prefix List

IP prefix lists are a convenient way to filter networks in BGP supported networks. IP prefix lists work similarly to access lists. A prefix list contains ordered entries processed sequentially. Like access lists, the evaluation of a prefix against a prefix list ends as soon as a match is found.

To restrict the routing information advertised, use filters consisting of an IP prefix list applied to updates both to and from neighbors.

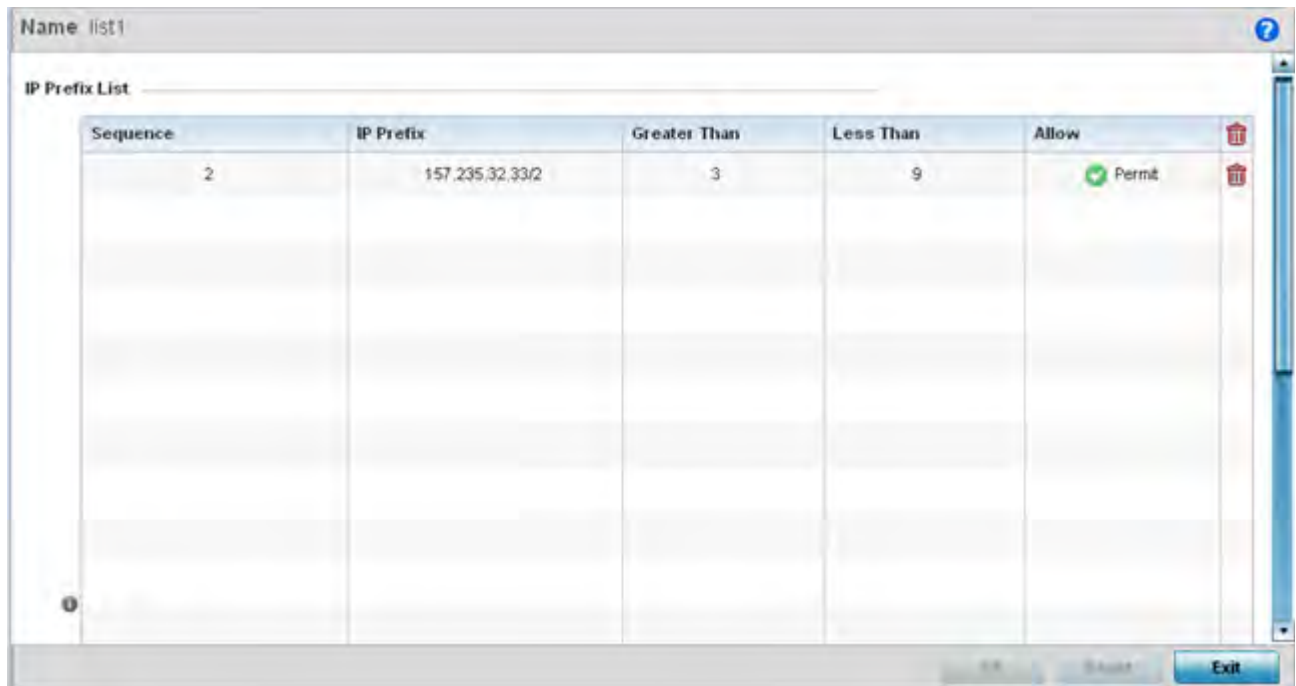
To define an IP prefix list:

- 1 Select the **Configuration > Network > BGP**.  
Expand the BGP menu to display its submenu options.
- 2 Select **IP Prefix List**.



**Figure 7-28** Network BGP IP Profile List screen

- 3 Select **Add** to create a new IP prefix list or **Edit** to modify the attributes of a selected list. Existing policies can be copied or renamed as needed.



**Figure 7-29** Network BGP IP Prefix List Name screen

- 4 Define the following **IP Prefix List** settings:

<b>Sequence</b>	Supply a sequence number to determine the prefix utilization order for existing lists.
<b>IP Prefix</b>	Set the IP prefix used as an prefix list rule.
<b>Greater Than</b>	Specify a greater than or equal to value for an IP prefix range.
<b>Less Than</b>	Specify a less than or equal to value for an IP prefix range.
<b>Allow</b>	Use the drop-down menu to set a <i>Permit</i> or <i>Deny</i> designation to the rule configuration.

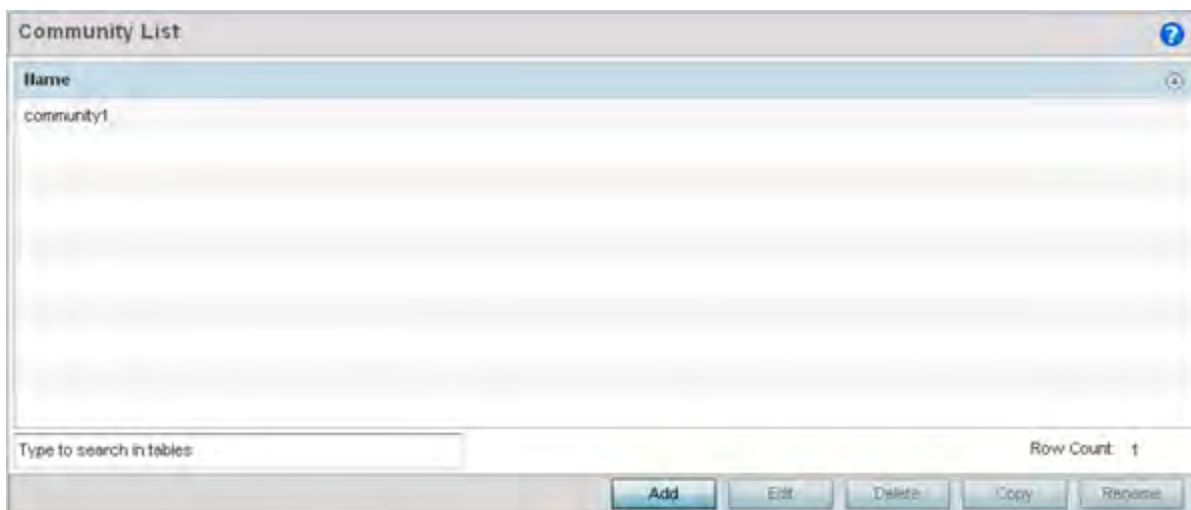
- 5 Click **OK** to save the changes, **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration or **Exit** to close the screen.

## 7.7.4 Community List

A BGP community is a group of routes sharing a common attribute. The BGP list enables an administrator to assign names to community lists and increase the number of community lists configurable. A community list can be configured with regular expressions and numbered community lists. All the rules in numbered communities apply to named community lists, except there is no limitation in the number of community attributes configurable for a named community list.

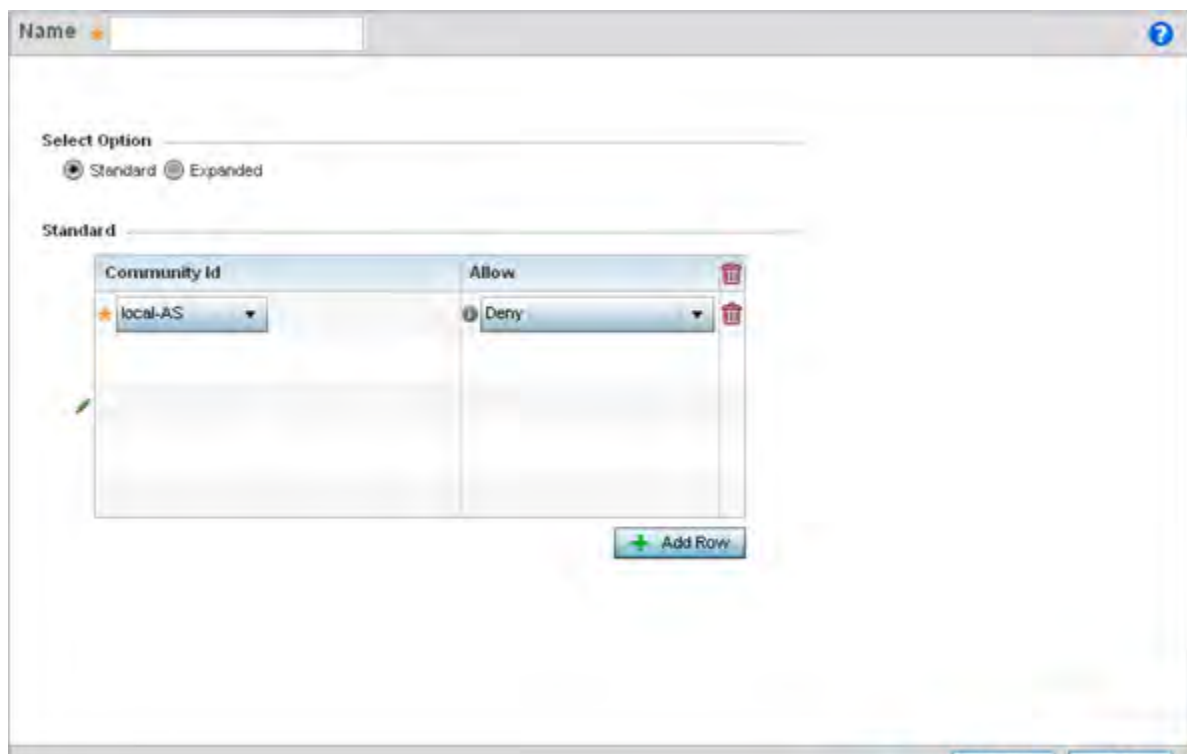
To define a BGP community list:

- 1 Select the **Configuration > Network > BGP**.  
Expand the BGP menu to display its submenu options.
- 2 Select **Community List**.



**Figure 7-30** Network BGP Community List screen

- 3 Select **Add** to create a new community list or **Edit** to modify the attributes of a selected list. Existing lists can be copied or renamed as needed.



**Figure 7-31** Network BGP Community List Name screen

- 4 Define whether the list is **Standard** or **Expanded**.  
*Standard* community lists specify known communities and community numbers. *Expanded* community lists filter communities using a regular expression that specifies patterns to match the attributes of different communities.

5 Set the following Community List settings:

<b>Community Id</b>	Provide a community ID unique to this particular rule. The following are available: <i>internet</i> - Advertises this route to the Internet. This is a global community. <i>local-AS</i> - Prevents the transmit of packets outside the local AS. <i>no-advertise</i> - Do not advertise this route to any peer, either internal or external. <i>no-export</i> - Do not advertise to BGP peers (keeping) this route within an AS. <i>aa:nn</i> - The first part (aa) represents the AS number. The second part (nn) represents a 2-byte number.
<b>Allow</b>	Use the drop-down menu to <i>Permit</i> or <i>Deny</i> requests for the community ID. The default setting is deny.

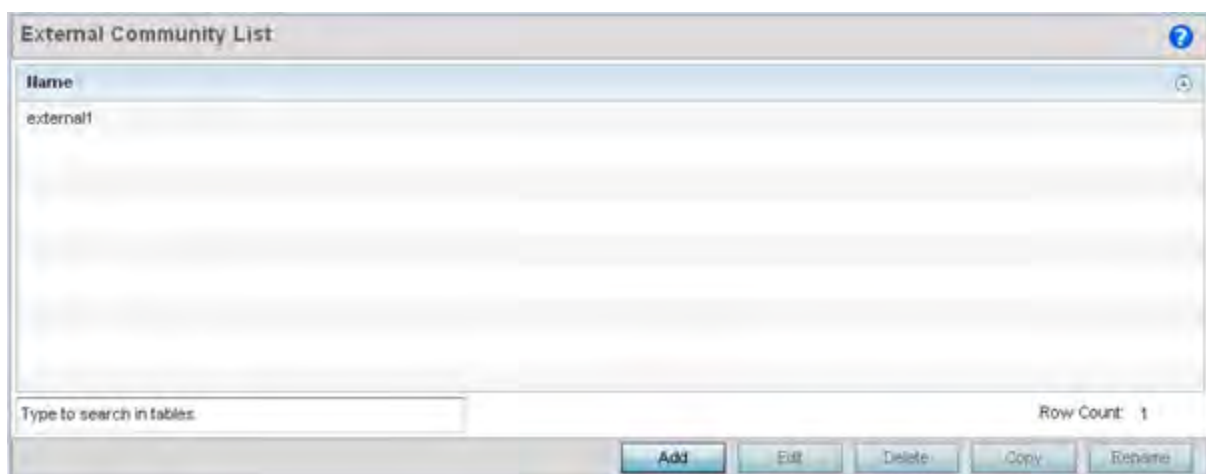
6 Click **OK** to save the changes, **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration or **Exit** to close the screen.

## 7.7.5 External Community List

A BGP external community is a group of routes sharing a common attribute, regardless of their network or physical boundary. By using a BGP community attribute, routing policies can implement *inbound* or *outbound* route filters based on a community tag, rather than a long list of individual permit or deny rules. A BGP community list is used to create groups of communities to use in a match clause of a route map. An external community list can be used to control which routes are accepted, preferred, distributed, or advertised.

To define a BGP external community list:

- 1 Select the **Configuration > Network > BGP**.  
Expand the BGP menu to display its submenu options.
- 2 Select **External Community List**.



**Figure 7-32** Network BGP External Community List screen

- 3 Select **Add** to create a new external community list, **Edit** to modify the attributes of a selected list or **Delete** to remove an obsolete list from those available. Existing lists can be copied or renamed as needed.



**Figure 7-33** Network BGP External Community List Name screen

- 4 Define whether the list is **Standard** or **Expanded**.

*Standard* community lists specify known communities and community numbers. *Expanded* community lists filter communities using a regular expression that specifies patterns to match the attributes of different communities.

- 5 Set the following based on the Standard or Extended option selected:

<b>Community Id</b>	If selecting <i>Standard</i> , enter a numeric community ID unique to this particular rule. If selecting <i>Extended</i> , enter a regular expression unique to this particular rule.
<b>Allow</b>	Use the drop-down menu to <i>Permit</i> or <i>Deny</i> requests for the external community ID. The default setting is deny.

- 6 Click **OK** to save the changes, **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration or **Exit** to close the screen.

## 7.8 Alias

With large deployments, the configuration of remote sites utilizes a set of shared attributes, of which a small set of attributes are unique for each location. For such deployments, maintaining separate configuration (WLANs, profiles, policies and ACLs) for each remote site is complex. Migrating any global change to a particular configuration item to all the remote sites is a complex and time consuming operation.

Also, this practice does not scale gracefully for quick growing deployments.

An alias enables an administrator to define a configuration item, such as a hostname, as an alias once and use the defined alias across different configuration items such as multiple ACLs.

Once a configuration item, such as an ACL, is utilized across remote locations, the Alias used in the configuration item (ACL) is modified to meet local deployment requirement. Any other ACL or other configuration items using the modified alias also get modified, simplifying maintenance at the remote deployment.

Aliases have scope depending on where the Alias is defined. Alias are defined with the following scopes:

- *Global aliases* are defined from the **Configuration > Network > Alias** screen. Global aliases are available for use globally across all devices, profiles and RF Domains in the system.
- *Profiles aliases* are defined from the **Configuration > Devices > System Profile > Network > Alias** screen. Profile aliases are available for use to a specific group of wireless controllers or Access Points. Alias values defined in a profile override the alias values defined within global aliases.
- *RF Domain aliases* are defined from the **Configuration > Devices > RF Domain > Alias** screen. RF Domain aliases are available for use for a site as a RF Domain is site specific. RF Domain alias values override alias values defined in a global alias or a profile alias configuration.
- *Device aliases* are defined from the **Configuration > Devices > Device Overrides > Network > Alias** screen. Device aliases are utilized by a singular device only. Device alias values override global, profile or RF Domain alias configurations.

Using an alias, configuration changes made at a remote location override any updates at the management center. For example, if an network alias defines a network range as 192.168.10.0/24 for the entire network, and at a remote deployment location, the local network range is 172.16.10.0/24, the network alias can be overridden at the deployment location to suit the local requirement. For the remote deployment location, the network alias work with the 172.16.10.0/24 network. Existing ACLs using this network alias need not be modified and will work with the local network for the deployment location. This simplifies ACL definition and management while taking care of specific local deployment requirements.

For more information, refer to the following:

- [Network Basic Alias](#)
- [Network Group Alias](#)
- [Network Service Alias](#)

## 7.8.1 Network Basic Alias

A *basic alias* is a set of configurations consisting of *VLAN*, *Host*, *Network* and *Address Range* alias configurations. A VLAN alias is a configuration for optimal VLAN re-use and management for local and remote deployments. A host alias configuration is for a particular host device's IP address. A network alias configuration is utilized for an IP address on a particular network. An address range alias is a configuration for a range of IP addresses.

To set a network basic alias configuration:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Network** from the Web UI.
- 2 Select **Alias** from the Network menu options on the left-hand side of the UI.  
The Alias screen displays with the Basic Alias tab displayed by default.

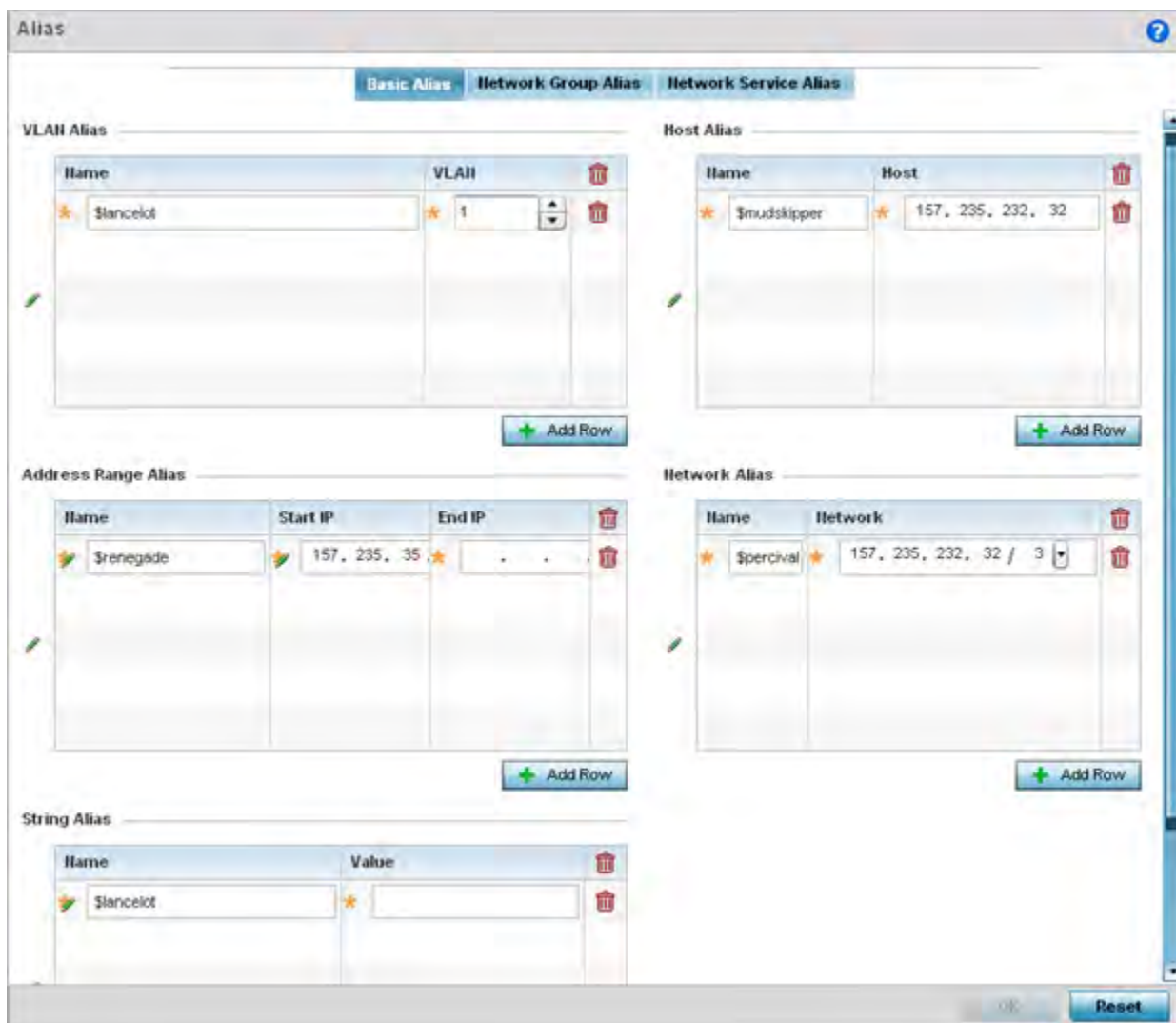


Figure 7-34 Basic Alias screen

3 Select **+ Add Row** to define **VLAN Alias** settings:

Use the **Vlan Alias** field to create unique aliases for VLANs that can be utilized at different deployments. For example, if a VLAN ID is set as 10 for the central network, and the VLAN is set as 26 at a remote location, the VLAN can be overridden at the remote location using an alias. At the remote location, the network is functional with an ID of 26, but utilizes the name defined at the central local network. A new VLAN need not be created specifically at the remote location.

<b>Name</b>	If adding a new <i>VLAN Alias</i> , provide it a distinguishing name up to 32 characters. The alias name always starts with a dollar sign (\$).
<b>Vlan</b>	Use the spinner control to set a numeric VLAN from 1 - 4094.

4 Select **+ Add Row** to define **Address Range Alias** settings:

Use the **Address Range Alias** field to create aliases for IP address ranges that can be utilized at different deployments. For example, if an ACL defines a pool of network addresses as 192.168.10.10 through 192.168.10.100 for an entire network, and a remote location's network range is 172.16.13.20 through 172.16.13.110,



the remote location's ACL can be overridden using an alias. At the remote location, the ACL works with the 172.16.13.20-110 address range. A new ACL need not be created specifically for the remote deployment location.

<b>Name</b>	If adding a new <i>Address Alias</i> , provide it a distinguishing name up to 32 characters. The alias name always starts with a dollar sign (\$).
<b>Start IP</b>	Set a starting IP address used with a range of addresses utilized with the address range alias.
<b>End IP</b>	Set an ending IP address used with a range of addresses utilized with the address range alias.

- 5 Select **+ Add Row** to define **String Alias** settings:

Use the **String Alias** field to create aliases for hosts that can be utilized at different deployments. For example, if the main domain at a remote location is called loc1.domain.com and at another deployment location it is called loc2.domain.com, the alias can be overridden at the remote location to suit the local (but remote) requirement. At one remote location, the alias functions with the loc1.domain.com domain and at the other with the loc2.domain.com domain.

You can also use a string alias to configure the Bonjour Service instance name. Once configured, use the string alias in the Bonjour Gateway Discovery Policy context to specify the Bonjour service instance name to be used as the match criteria. For more information, see [Configuring a Bonjour Discovery Policy](#)

<b>Name</b>	If adding a new <i>String Alias</i> , provide it a distinguishing name up to 32 characters. The alias name always starts with a dollar sign (\$).
<b>Value</b>	Provide a string value to use in the alias.

- 6 Select **+ Add Row** to define **Host Alias** settings:

Use the **Host Alias** field to create aliases for hosts that can be utilized at different deployments. For example, if a central network DNS server is set a static IP address, and a remote location's local DNS server is defined, this host can be overridden at the remote location. At the remote location, the network is functional with a local DNS server, but uses the name set at the central network. A new host need not be created at the remote location. This simplifies creating and managing hosts and allows an administrator to better manage specific local requirements.

<b>Name</b>	If adding a new <i>Host Alias</i> , provide it a distinguishing name up to 32 characters. The alias name always starts with a dollar sign (\$).
<b>Host</b>	Set the IP address of the host machine.

- 7 Select **+ Add Row** to define **Network Alias** settings:

Use the **Network Alias** field to create aliases for IP networks that can be utilized at different deployments. For example, if a central network ACL defines a network as 192.168.10.0/24, and a remote location's network range is 172.16.10.0/24, the ACL can be overridden at the remote location to suit their local (but remote) requirement. At the remote location, the ACL functions with the 172.16.10.0/24 network. A new ACL need not be created specifically for the remote deployment. This simplifies ACL definition and allows an administrator to better manage specific local requirements.

<b>Name</b>	If adding a new <i>Network Alias</i> , provide it a distinguishing name up to 32 characters. The alias name always starts with a dollar sign (\$).
<b>Network</b>	Provide a network address in the form of <i>host/mask</i> .

- 8 Select **OK** when completed to update the set of basic alias rules. Select **Reset** to revert the screen back to its last saved configuration.

## 7.8.2 Network Group Alias

A *network group alias* is a set of configurations consisting of host and network configurations. Network configurations are complete networks in the form of 192.168.10.0/24 or an IP address range in the form of 192.168.10.10-192.168.10.20. Host configurations are in the form of a single IP address, 192.168.10.23.

A network group alias can contain multiple definitions for a host, network, and IP address range. A maximum of eight (8) Host entries, eight (8) network entries and eight (8) IP addresses range entries can be configured inside a network group alias. A maximum of 32 network group alias entries can be created.

To set a network group alias configuration:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Network** from the Web UI.
- 2 Select **Alias** from the Network menu options on the left-hand side of the UI.
- 3 Select the **Network Group Alias** tab. The screen displays existing network group alias configurations.

Name	Host	Network
\$from_ipad_to_windows	172.168.6.53	
\$from_windows_to_ipad	172.168.6.64	
\$One_seventy_two		172.168.1.0/24
\$towindowsserverhost	172.168.1.200	

**Figure 7-35** Network Group Alias screen

<b>Name</b>	Displays the administrator assigned name used with the network group alias.
<b>Host</b>	Displays all the host aliases configured in the listed network group alias. Displays a blank column if no host alias is defined.
<b>Network</b>	Displays all network aliases configured in the listed network group alias. Displays a blank column if no network alias is defined.

- 4 Select **Add** to create a new policy, **Edit** to modify the attributes of an existing policy or **Delete** to remove obsolete policies.
- 5 Select the added row to expand it into configurable parameters for defining the network alias rule.

The screenshot shows a configuration window titled "Name networkalias1". It has several input fields and buttons:

- Host:** A text field containing "192.168.0.24" with a dropdown arrow to its right.
- Network:** A text field containing "255.255.255.24" with a dropdown arrow to its right.
- Range:** A table with two columns: "Start IP" and "End IP".
 

Start IP	End IP
192, 168, 0, 25	192, 168, 0, 48

 Below the table is a "+ Add Row" button.
- Buttons:** "OK", "Reset", and "Exit" buttons are located at the bottom right.

**Figure 7-36** Network Group Alias Add screen

- If adding a new **Network Alias Rule**, provide it a name up to 32 characters. The network group alias name always starts with a dollar sign (\$).
- Define the following network alias parameters:

<b>Host</b>	Specify the Host IP address for up to eight IP addresses supporting network aliasing. Select the down arrow to add the IP address to the table.
<b>Network</b>	Specify the netmask for up to eight IP addresses supporting network aliasing. Subnets can improve network security and performance by organizing hosts into logical groups. Applying the subnet mask to an IP address separates the address into a host address and an extended network address. Select the down arrow to add the mask to the table.

- Within the **Range** table, use the **+ Add Row** button to specify the **Start IP** address and **End IP** address for the alias range or double-click on an existing an alias range entry to edit it.
- Select **OK** when completed to update the network alias rules. Select **Reset** to revert the screen back to its last saved configuration.

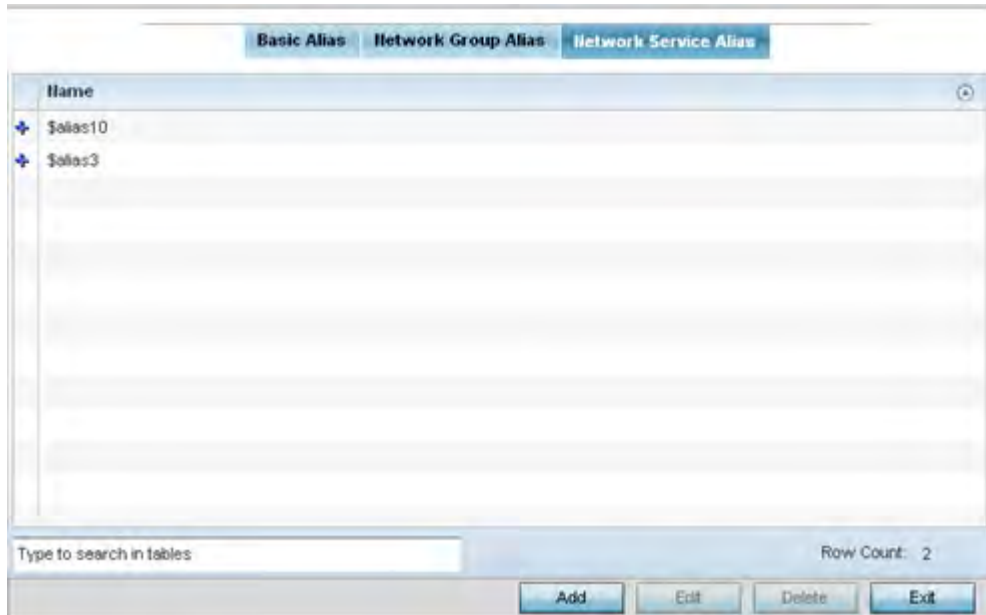
### 7.8.3 Network Service Alias

A *Network service alias* is a set of configurations that consist of protocol and port mappings. Both source and destination ports are configurable. For each protocol, up to 2 source port ranges and up to 2 destination port ranges can be configured. A maximum of 4 protocol entries can be configured per network service alias.

Use a service alias to associate more than one IP address to a network interface, providing multiple connections to a network from a single IP node.

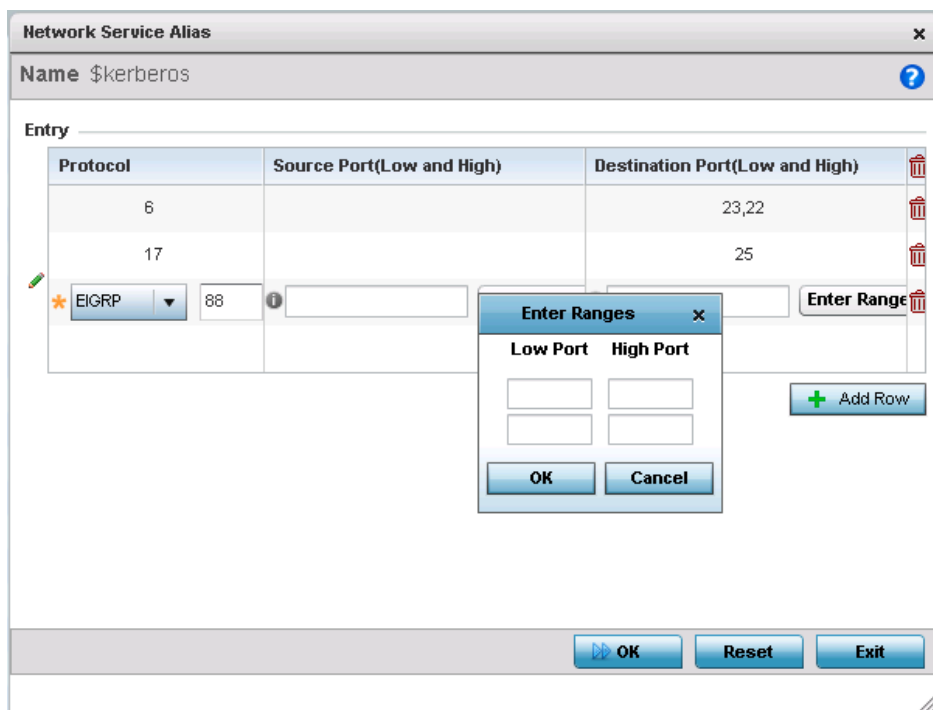
To define a service alias configuration:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Network** from the Web UI.
- 2 Select **Alias** from the Network menu options on the left-hand side of the UI.
- 3 Select the **Network Service Alias** tab. The screen displays existing network service alias configurations.



**Figure 7-37** Network Service Alias screen

- 4 Select **Add** to create a new policy, **Edit** to modify the attributes of an existing policy or **Delete** to remove obsolete policies.
- 5 Select the added row to expand it into configurable parameters for defining the service alias rule.



**Figure 7-38** Network Service Alias Add screen

- 6 If adding a new **Service Alias Rule**, provide it a name up to 32 characters. Ensure a \$ precedes the name.
- 7 Select **+ Add Row** and provide the following configuration parameters:

<b>Protocol</b>	Specify the protocol for which the alias has to be created. Use the drop down to select the protocol from <i>eigrp, gre, icmp, igmp, ip, vrrp, igp, ospf, tcp</i> and <i>udp</i> . Select <i>other</i> if the protocol is not listed. When a protocol is selected, its protocol number is automatically selected.
<b>Source Port (Low and High)</b>	This field is only relevant if the protocol is either <i>tcp</i> or <i>udp</i> . Specify the source ports for this protocol entry. A range of ports can be specified. Select the <i>Enter Ranges</i> button next to the field to enter a lower and higher port range value. Up to eight (8) such ranges can be specified.
<b>Destination Port (Low and High)</b>	This field is only relevant if the protocol is either <i>tcp</i> or <i>udp</i> . Specify the destination ports for this protocol entry. A range of ports can be specified. Select the <i>Enter Ranges</i> button next to the field to enter a lower and higher port range value. Up to eight (8) such ranges can be specified.

- 8 Within the **Range** field, use the **+ Add Row** button to specify the **Start IP** address and **End IP** address for the service alias range or double-click on an existing service alias range entry to edit it.
- 9 Select **OK** when completed to update the service alias rules. Select **Reset** to revert the screen back to its last saved configuration.

## 7.9 Application Policy

When an application is recognized and classified by the WING application recognition engine, administrator defined actions can be applied to that specific application. An application policy defines the rules or actions executed on recognized applications (for example, Facebook) or application-categories (for example, social-networking). The following are the rules/actions that can be applied in an application policy:

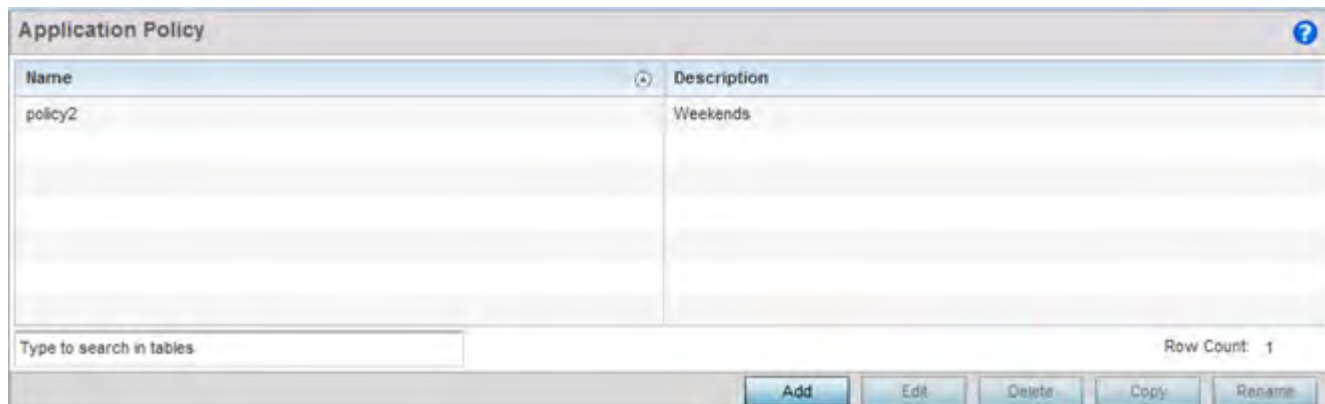
- *Allow* - Allow packets for a specific application or application category
- *Deny* - Deny packets for a a specific application or application category
- *Mark* - Mark packets with DSCP/8021p value for a specific application or application category
- *Rate-limit* - Rate limit packets from specific application types.

For each rule defined, a precedence is assigned to resolve conflicting rules for applications and categories. A *deny* rule is exclusive, as no other action can be combined with a deny. An *allow* rule is redundant with other actions, since the default action is allow. An allow rule is useful when wanting to deny packets for a category, but wanting to allow a few applications in the same category to proceed. In such a cases, add an allow rule for applications with a higher precedence then a deny rule for that category.

*Mark* actions mark packets for a recognized application and category with DSCP/8021p values used for QoS. *Rate-limits* create a rate-limiter applied to packets recognized for an application and category. Ingress and egress rates need to be specified for the rate-limiter, but both are not required. Mark and rate-limit are the only two actions that can be combined for an application and category. All other combinations are invalid.

To define an application policy configuration:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Network > Application Policy**.



**Figure 7-39** Application Policy screen

The screen lists the application policy configurations defined thus far.

- 2 Refer to the following to determine whether a new application policy requires creation, modification or deletion:-

<b>Name</b>	Lists the 32 character maximum name assigned to each listed application policy, designated upon creation.
<b>Description</b>	Displays the 80 character maximum description assigned to each listed application policy, as a means of further distinguishing policies with similar configurations.

- 3 Select **Add** to create a new application policy, **Edit** to modify the attributes of a selected policy or **Delete** to remove obsolete policies from the list of those available. Existing policies can be copied or renamed as needed.

**Application Policy Description**

Description

**Application Policy Logging**

Enable Logging

Logging Level

**Application Policy Enforcement Time**

Days	Start Time	End Time
All	9 : 48 AM	9 : 48 PM

+ Add Row

**Application Policy Rules**

Precedence	Action	Application Category	Default Application	Custom Application	Mark Type	Mark Value	Outbound Traffic
1	allow	gaming	-	-	-	Not Set	Not Set

Reset Exit

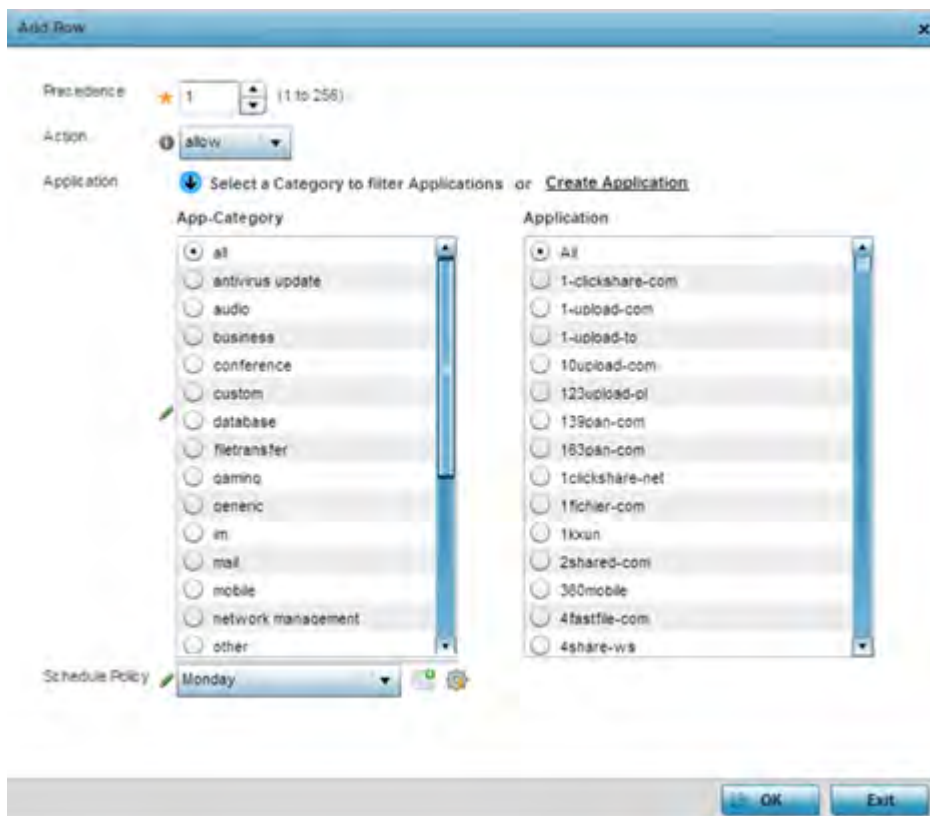
**Figure 7-40** Application Policy Add/Edit screen

- 4 If creating a new application policy, assign it a **Name** up to 32 characters.
- 5 Provide this application policy an 80 character maximum **Description** to highlight its application and category filters and differentiate it from other policies with similar configurations.
- 6 Define the following **Application Policy Logging** options to enable and filter logging for application specific packet flows:

<b>Enable Logging</b>	Enables the log functionality, where each new flow is shown with the corresponding matched application, the action taken and the policy name. When enabled, logging just shows what applications are getting recognized.
<b>Logging Level</b>	Select this option to log application events by severity. Severity levels include <i>Emergency</i> , <i>Alert</i> , <i>Critical</i> , <i>Errors</i> , <i>Warning</i> , <i>Notification</i> , <i>Information</i> and <i>Debug</i> . The default logging level is Notification.



- 7 Refer to the **Application Policy Enforcement Time** table configure time periods for policy activation for each policy.  
Select **+ Add Row** to populate the table with an enforcement time configuration to activate application policies based on the current local time. The option to configure a time activation period is applicable for a single application policy. Configure the days and time period when the application policy is enforced. If no time enforcement configuration is set, the policy is continually in effect without restriction.
- 8 Refer to the **Application Policy Rules** table assess existing policy rules, their precedence (implementation priority), their actions (allow, deny etc.), application category and schedule policy enforcement restrictions.
- 9 Select **+ Add Row** launch a screen to create a new policy rule.



**Figure 7-41** Application Policy, Add Rule screen

- 10 Assign the following attributes to the new application rule policy:

<b>Precedence</b>	Set the priority (from 1 - 256) for the application policy rule. The lower the value, the higher the priority assigned to this rule's enforcement action and the category and application assigned. A precedence also helps resolve conflicting rules for applications and categories.
<b>Action</b>	Set the action executed on the selected application category and application. The default setting is Allow.
<b>Application</b>	From the <i>App-Category</i> table, select the category for which the application rule applies. Selecting All auto-selects All within the Application table. Select All from the <i>Application</i> table to list all application category statistics, or specify a particular category name to display its statistics only.

- 11 Use the **Schedule Policy** drop-down menu to select an existing schedule policy to strategically enforce application filter policy rules for specific intervals. This provides stricter, time and schedule based, access or restriction to specific applications and their parent categories. If an existing policy does not meet requirements, either select the **Create** icon to configure a new policy or the **Edit** icon to modify an existing policy. For more information on configuring schedule policies, see [Schedule Policy on page 7-62](#).

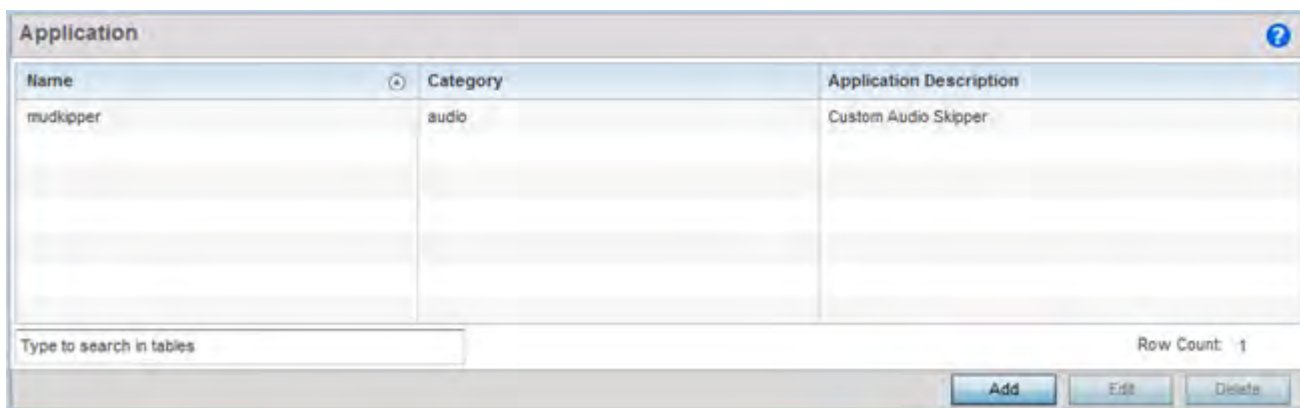
Select **OK** to save the updates to the application policy. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 7.10 Application

Use the **Application** screen to create custom application configurations.

To create a user-defined application:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Network > Application**.



**Figure 7-42** Application screen

The screen lists the application configurations defined thus far.

- 2 Refer to the following to determine whether a application requires creation, modification or deletion:

<b>Name</b>	Displays the name of each user-defined application created using this application interface.
<b>Category</b>	Lists the category to which each listed user-defined application belongs.
<b>Application Description</b>	Lists the 80 character maximum description administratively assigned to each listed user-defined application.

- 3 Select **Add** to create a new application configuration, **Edit** to modify the attributes of a selected application or **Delete** to remove obsolete applications from the list of those available.

**Figure 7-43** Application Policy Add screen

- 4 If creating a new user-defined application type, assign it a **Name** up to 32 characters. Ensure you do not create confusion by naming a user-defined application with the same name as an existing application appearing on the Application Policy screen.
- 5 Provide an 80 character maximum **Application Description** to each new user-defined application to further differentiate it from existing applications.
- 6 Refer to the **Application Definition** field to assign either a network service alias, pre-defined URL list or set of HTTPS parameters to the user-defined application.

<b>Network Service</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select an existing network service alias for the user-defined application. If there's no existing network service alias suited to this new user-defined application, select the <i>Create</i> icon to define a new alias or the <i>Edit</i> icon to modify an existing one. Provide or modify a 32 character maximum name, along with a protocol type or number and source and destination port value. Up to four service aliases can be supported.
<b>URL List</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select a pre-defined URL list to apply to the user-defined application. URL lists are utilized for whitelisting and blacklisting Web application URLs from being launched and consuming bandwidth within the WiNG managed network. If there's no URL list suited to this new user-defined application, select the <i>Create</i> icon to define a new list or the <i>Edit</i> icon to modify an existing URL list.
<b>HTTPS</b>	Select the <i>+ Add Row</i> button to populate the table with configurable rows for HTTPS parameter type, attribute type, match criteria for the HTTPS server name and 64 character maximum server name attribute used in the HTTPS server message exchange.

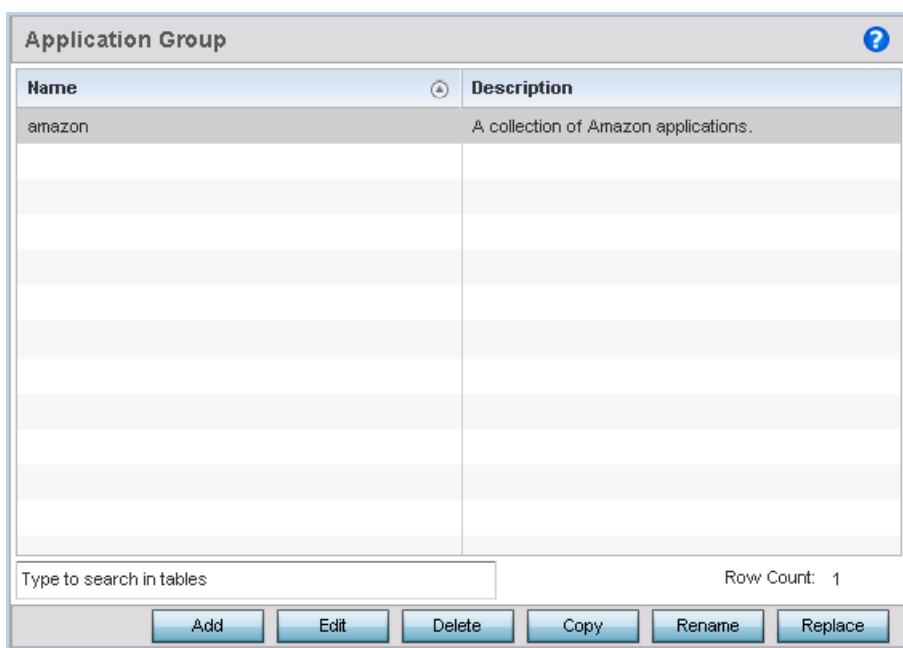
- 7 Select **OK** to save the updates to the user-defined application configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 7.11 Application Group

An application group is a heterogeneous, user-defined collection of system-provided and/or user-defined applications and application categories. It consists of multiple applications grouped together to form a collection. Use this option to review/edit existing application groups and create new application groups.

To review an application group:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Network > Application Group**.



**Figure 7-44** Application Group screen

The screen lists the existing application group configurations. You can edit and existing application group or create a new application group.

- 2 Refer to the following to determine whether an application group requires creation, modification or deletion:

<b>Name</b>	Displays the name of each user-defined application group
<b>Description</b>	Displays the description assigned to each listed user-defined application group.

- 3 Select **Add** to create a new application group configuration, **Edit** to modify the attributes of a selected application group or **Delete** to remove obsolete application groups from the list of those available.

Name amazon

Description: A collection of Amazon applications.

amaz \*Enter Application name to search

**All Applications**

- amazon-prime-video stream
- amazon-prime-video video
- amazon cloud amazon-cloud
- amazon cloud apache
- amazon cloud audio
- amazon cloud encrypted
- amazon cloud file-transfer
- amazon cloud qoogle
- amazon cloud video
- amazon cloud web
- amazon shop
- amazon shop apache
- amazon shop audio
- amazon shop encrypted
- amazon shop qoogle
- anqhami amazon-cloud
- anqrv-birds amazon-cloud

**Selected Applications**

- amazon-prime-music
- amazon-prime-video
- amazon cloud

**Figure 7-45** Application Group Add screen

- 4 If creating a new application group, assign a Name not exceeding 32 characters in length. Ensure that the name uniquely differentiates it from existing application groups.
- 5 Provide an 80 character maximum Description to further differentiate the new group from existing application groups
- 6 Refer to the All Applications field. This field lists available applications - system-provided and user-defined. The WiNG software has 299 built-in applications, in addition to the user-defined ones. To facilitate your search, enter a string value in the **\*Enter Application name to search** field. Based on the search string provided, the **All Applications** list is updated to display applications containing the specified string.
- 7 Select the applications to be included in the application group and move to the **Selected Applications** list.
- 8 Select **OK** to save the updates to the application group configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 7.12 Schedule Policy

Define schedule policies to strategically enforce application filter policy rules for specific intervals. This provides stricter, time and schedule based, access or restriction to specific applications and their parent categories.

To review existing schedule policies and assess whether new ones require creation or modification:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Network > Schedule Policy**.

Name	Description	Time Rule
Policy1	Limited Access	Weekends(06:00-17:00)

Type to search in tables Row Count: 1

**Figure 7-46** Schedule Policy screen

- 2 Select **Add** to create a new schedule policy time rule, or select an existing policy then **Edit** to modify the duration of an existing time rule. Schedule policies can be **Deleted** as they become obsolete. **Copy** or **Rename** a schedule policy as needed.

Name: Policy1

Description: Limited Access

Time Rule

Days	Start Time	End Time
weekends	06:00 am	5:00 pm
All	0 : 0 AM PM	0 : 0 AM PM

**Figure 7-47** Schedule Policy Add/Edit screen

- 3 If creating a new schedule policy time rule configuration, enter a 32 character maximum **Name** relevant to its specific permissions objective.
- 4 Provide this schedule policy an 80 character maximum **Description** to differentiate it from other policies with similar time rule configurations.
- 5 Define the following **Time Rule** settings:

<b>Days</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select a day of the week to apply this schedule policy time rule. Selecting <i>All</i> applies the schedule policy every day (no enforcement rule restrictions). Selecting <i>weekends</i> applies the policy on Saturdays and Sundays only. Selecting <i>weekdays</i> applies the policy on Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday and Friday only. Selecting individual days of the week applies the policy only on just selected day.
<b>Start Time</b>	Set the start when the schedule policy time rule applies. Use the spinner controls to select the hour and minute, in a 12h time format. Then use the radio button to choose <i>AM</i> or <i>PM</i> .
<b>End Time</b>	Set the ending time when the time rule is no longer enforced. Use the spinner controls to select the hour and minute, in a 12h time format. Then use the radio button to choose <i>AM</i> or <i>PM</i> .

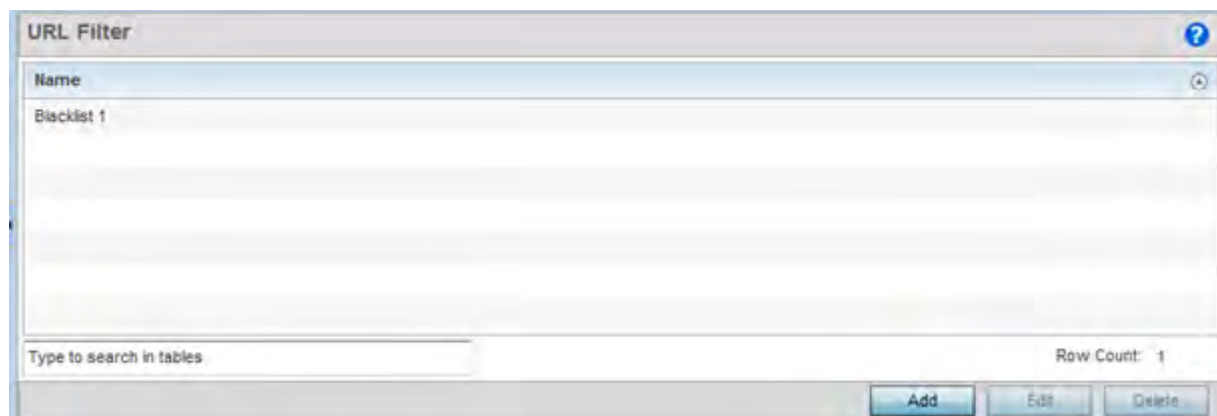
- 6 Select **OK** to save the updates to the schedule policy time rule configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 7.13 URL Filtering

A URL filter is Web content filter. A URL filter is comprised of several filter rules. To construct a filter rule, either whitelist or blacklist a filter level, category type, category or a custom category. A whitelist bans all sites except the categories and URL lists defined in the whitelist. The blacklist allows all sites except the categories and URL lists defined in the blacklist.

To review existing URL filter rules and assess whether new ones require creation or modification:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Network > URL Filter**.



**Figure 7-48** URL Filter screen

- 2 Select **Add** to create a new URL filter rule configuration, or select an exiting configuration then **Edit** to modify the attributes of an existing rule. Obsolete rules can be selected and **Deleted** as required.



Precedence	Method	Filter Type	Category	Category Type	Level	URL List	Description
2	whitelist	category	alcohol-tobacco				test rule

**Figure 7-49** URL Filter - Web Filter Rules tab

- If creating a new URL filter rule, enter a 32 character maximum **Name** relevant to its filtering objective and select **Continue**.
- Select **Add** to create a new Web filter rule configuration, or select an exiting configuration then **Edit** to modify the attributes of an existing Web filter rule.

**Figure 7-50** URL Filter - Add/Edit Web Filter Rules

- Define the following **Web Filter Rule** settings:

<b>Precedence</b>	Set a precedence (priority) from 1 - 500 for the filter rule's utilization versus other Web filter rules. 1 is the highest priority and 500 the lowest.
-------------------	---

<b>Method</b>	Select either <i>whitelist</i> or <i>Blacklist</i> to specify whether the rule is for inclusion or exclusion. A whitelist bans all sites except the categories and URL lists defined in the whitelist. The blacklist allows all sites except the categories and URL lists defined in the blacklist.
<b>Filter Type</b>	If the <i>Filter Type</i> is set to category, use the drop down menu to select from a list of predefined categories to align with the whitelist or blacklist <i>Method</i> designation and the precedence assigned.
<b>Category</b>	A category is a pre-defined URL list available in the WiNG software. If <i>category</i> is selected as the <i>Filter Type</i> , the <i>Category</i> drop-down menu becomes enabled for the selection of an existing URL type or whitelist or blacklist. Categories are based on an external database, and cannot be modified or removed. Custom categories can be created with the <i>URL List</i> and added to the database.
<b>Category Type</b>	When <i>category_type</i> is selected as the Filter Type, select an existing category type (adult-content, security-risk etc.) and either blacklist or whitelist the URLs in that category type. There are 12 category types available.
<b>Level</b>	<i>Basic, Low, Medium, medium-high</i> and <i>High</i> filter levels are available. Each level is pre-configured to use a set of category types. The user cannot change the categories in the category types used for these pre-configured filter-level settings, and add/modify/remove the category types mapped to the filter-level setting.
<b>URL List</b>	URL lists are customized categories included in the custom filter-level setting. URL lists enable an administrator to blacklist or whitelist URLs in addition to the built-in categories.
<b>Description</b>	Enter a 80 character maximum description for this Web filter rule to help differentiate it from others with similar category include or exclude rule configurations.

- 6 Select **OK** to save the changes to the Web Filter Rule. Select **Exit** to close the screen without saving the updates.
- 7 Select the **URL Error Page** tab to define the configuration and layout of a URL error page launched when a Web filter rule is invoked and an error page needs to be displayed to a user instead of they're expected Web page.

**Figure 7-51** URL Filter screen - URL Error Page

8 Set the following **URL Error Page** display properties:

<b>Name</b>	Provide a 32 character maximum name for the title of the blocking page. The name should help convey that this page is launched to prevent the client's requested page from displaying.
<b>Description</b>	Provide a 80 character maximum description of the page to help differentiate it from other pages with similar page restriction properties.
<b>Page Path</b>	Set the path to the page sent back to the client browser explaining the reason for blocking the client's requested URL. It can be generated internally at the time the page is sent, or be a URL to an <i>External</i> Web server if the administrator chooses to utilize a customized page. The default setting is <i>Internal</i> , requiring the administrator to define the page configuration within the fields in the <i>Internal Page Configuration</i> portion of the screen.
<b>External Page URL</b>	If <i>External</i> is selected as the Page Path, provide a 511 character maximum External Page URL used as the Web link designation of the externally hosted blocking page.
<b>Internal Page Title</b>	Either enter a 255 character maximum title for the URL blocking page or use the existing default text ( <i>This URL may have been filtered.</i> ).
<b>Internal Page Header</b>	Either enter a 255 character maximum header for the top of the URL blocking page or use the existing default text ( <i>The requested URL could not be retrieved.</i> ).

<b>Internal Page Content</b>	Enter a 255 character maximum set of text used as the main body (middle portion) of the blocking page. Optionally use the default message ( <i>The site you have attempted to reach may be considered inappropriate for access</i> ).
<b>Internal Page Footer</b>	Either enter a 255 character maximum footer for the bottom of the URL blocking page or use the existing default text ( <i>If you have any questions contact your IT department</i> ).
<b>Internal Page Org Name</b>	Enter a 255 character maximum organizational name responsible for the URL blocking page. The default organizational name ( <i>Your Organizational Name</i> ) is not very practical, and is just a guideline for customization.
<b>Internal Page Org Structure</b>	Enter a 255 character maximum organizational signature responsible for the URL blocking page. The default organizational signature ( <i>Your Organizational Name, All Rights Reserved</i> ) is not very practical, and is just a guideline for customization.
<b>Internal Page Logo 1</b>	Provide the location and filename of a small graphic image displayed in the blocking page.
<b>Internal Page Logo 2</b>	Provide the location and filename of a main graphic image displayed in the blocking page.

- 9 Select **OK** to save the updates to the URL filter configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 7.14 Web Filtering

A Web filter policy is means of managing the number of records and time cached URLs are retained. A policy also determines whether to filter access to a cached URL when a categorization server is unreachable or unable to classify request types.

To review existing Web filter policies and assess whether new ones require creation, modification or deletion:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Network > Web Filter**.

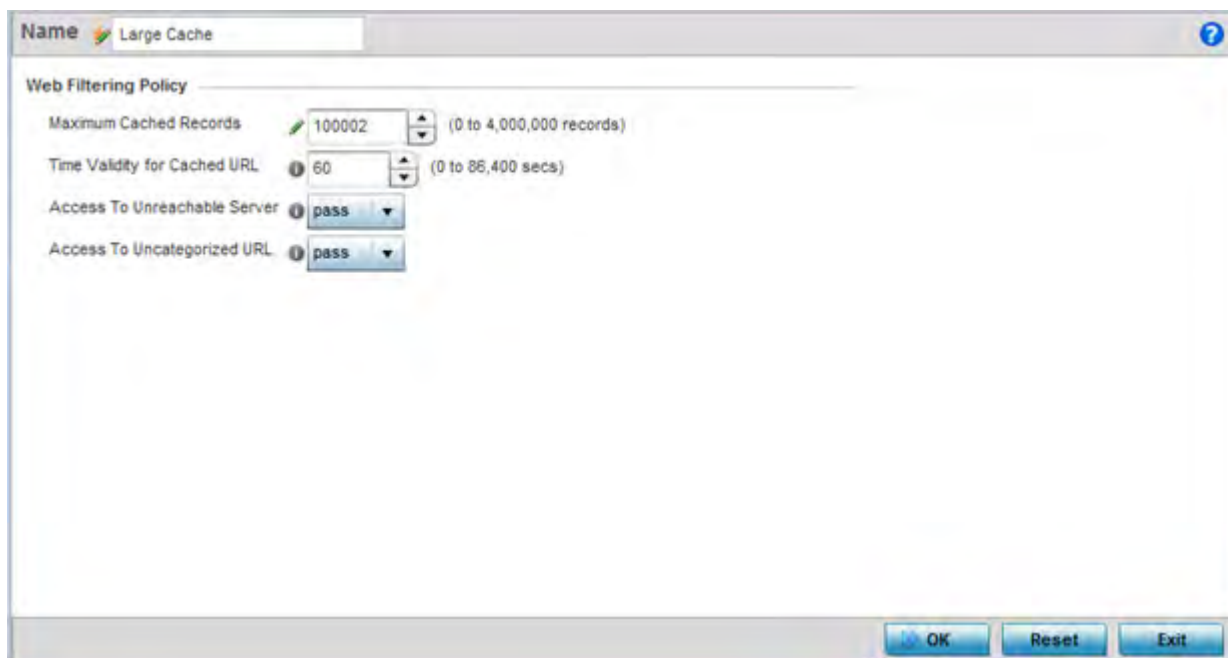
Name	Maximum Cached Records	Time Validity for Cached URL	Access To Unreachable Server	Access To Uncategorized URL
Large Cache	100,001 records	60 secs	pass	pass

Type to search in tables Row Count: 1

**Add** **Edit** **Delete**

**Figure 7-52** Web Filter Policy screen

- 2 Select **Add** to create a new Web filter policy, or select an existing policy and **Edit** to modify its attributes. Obsolete policies can be selected and **Deleted** as needed.



**Figure 7-53** Web Filter - Add/Edit

- 3 If creating a Web URL filter, enter a 32 character maximum **Name** relevant to its filtering objective and cache considerations, then select **Continue**.
- 4 Define the following **Web Filtering Policy** settings.

<b>Maximum Cached Records</b>	Set the maximum number of records (from 0 - 4,000,000) for Web content cached locally on this controller or service platform. The default setting is 100,000 records.
<b>Time Validity for Cached URL</b>	Set the maximum amount of a time, from 0 - 86,400 seconds, a URL is valid in the controller or service platform cache. Consider the bandwidth depletion if caching a large number of records over the maximum permissible time validity.
<b>Access to Unreachable Server</b>	Either <i>pass</i> or <i>block</i> (filter) access to a cached URL when the categorization server is unreachable. Access is allowed by default.
<b>Access to Uncategorized URL</b>	Either <i>pass</i> or <i>block</i> (filter) access to a cached URL when the categorization server fails to classify a request type. Access is allowed by default.

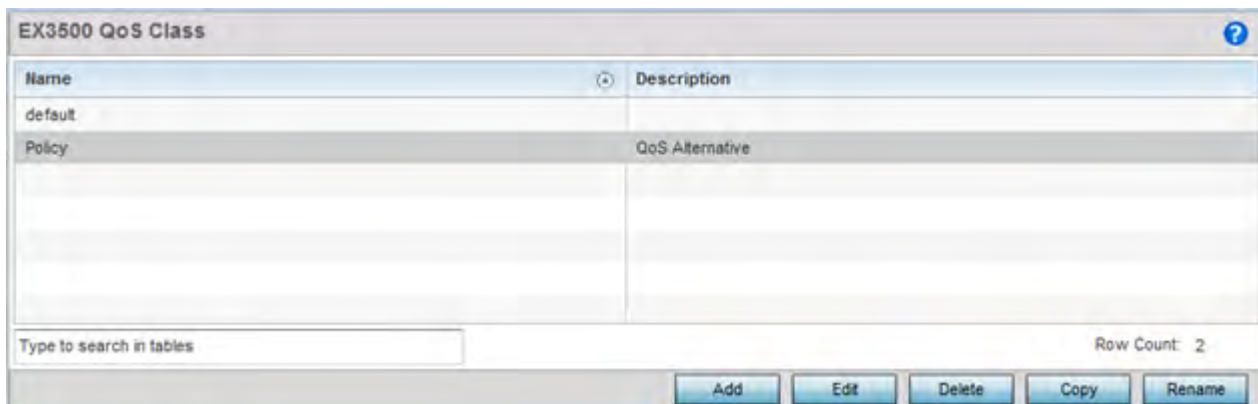
- 5 Select **OK** to save the changes to the Web filter policy. Select **Exit** to close the screen without saving the updates.

## 7.15 EX3500 QoS Class

An EX3500 switch can have its own QoS class policy applied as specific interoperability requirements dictate between an EX3500 switch and its connected devices. The QoS class configuration specifies permitted and excluded MAC and IP addresses and the precedence upon which filter rules are applied to EX3500 switch traffic.

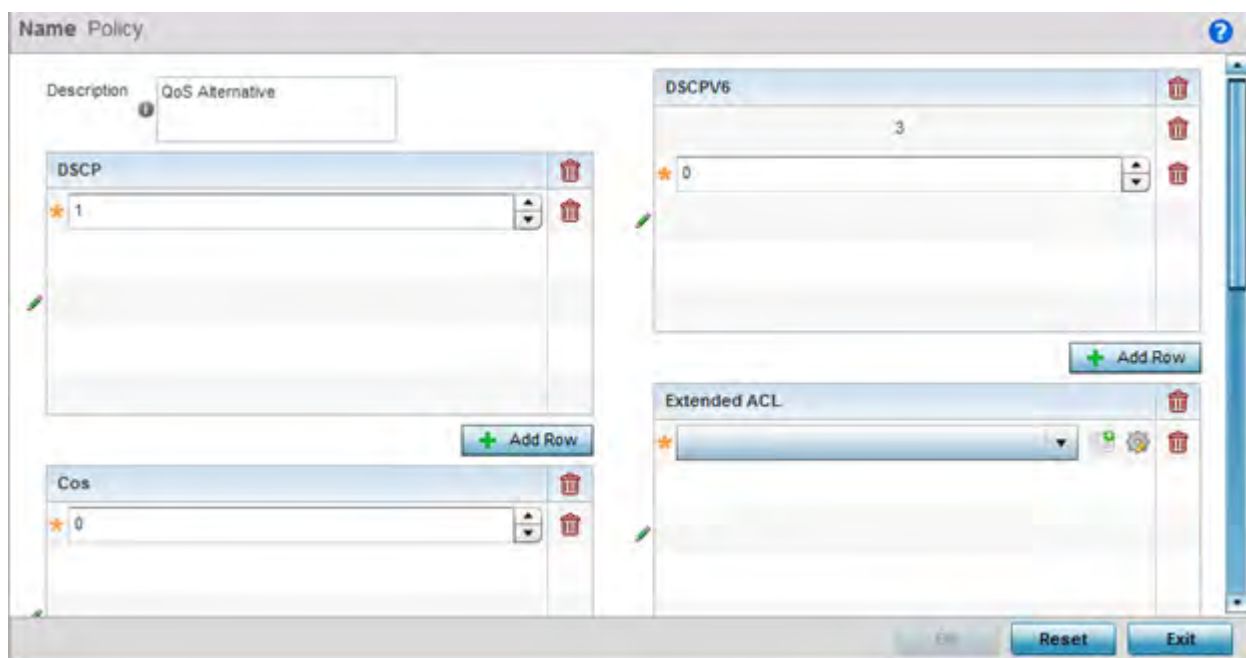
To review existing EX3500 QoS policies and assess whether new ones require creation, modification or deletion:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Network > EX3500 QoS Class**.



**Figure 7-54** EX3500 QoS Class screen

- 2 Select **Add** to create a new EX3500 QoS policy, or select an existing policy and **Edit** to modify its attributes. Obsolete policies can be selected and **Deleted** as needed. **Copy** a policy to duplicate an existing QoS policy or **Rename** them as needed.



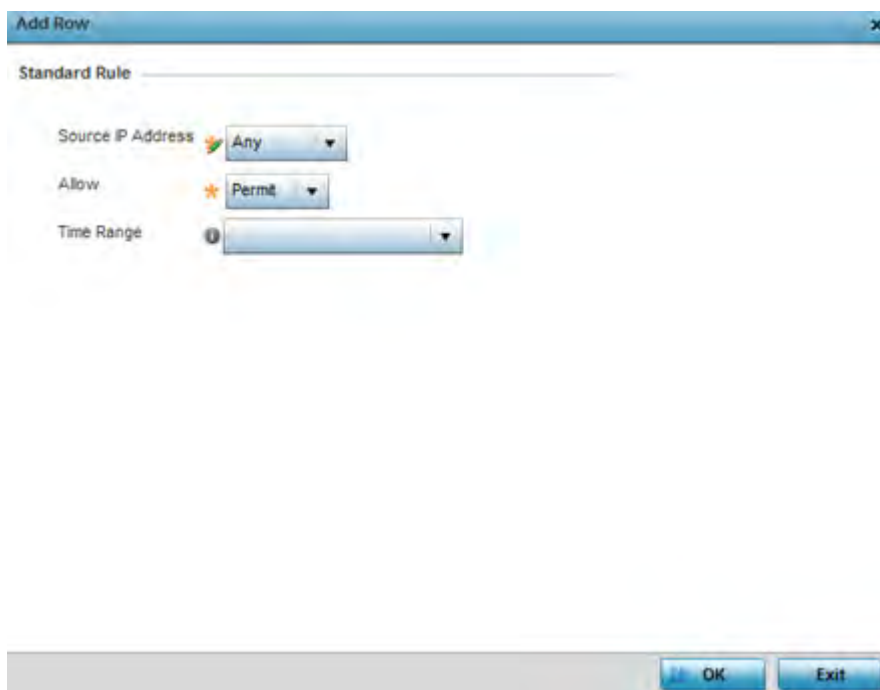
**Figure 7-55** EX3500 QoS Class screen - Add/Edit

- 3 If creating a EX3500 QoS policy, enter a 64 character maximum **Description** to help differentiate this policy's EX3500 traffic prioritization scheme.
- 4 Refer to the **DSCP** field to set the DSCP value as a 6-bit parameter in the header of every IP packet used for packet classification. The range is 0 to 63 like DSCPv6.  
The screen maps the 6-bit *Differentiated Service Code Point* (DSCP) code points to the older 3-bit IP Precedent field located in the Type of Service byte of an IP header. DSCP is a protocol for specifying and controlling network traffic by class so that certain traffic types get precedence. DSCP specifies a specific per-hop behavior that is applied to a packet. This QoS assignment can be overridden as needed, but removes the device configuration from the profile that may be shared with other similar device models.

- 5 Use the **Cos** field to Assign a 802.1p priority (0 - 7) as a 3-bit IP precedence value of the IP header used to set the user priority. The valid values for this field are 0 - *Best Effort*, 1 - *Background*, 2 - *Spare*, 3 - *Excellent Effort*, 4 - *Controlled Load*, 5 - *Video*, 6 - *Voice*, 7 - *Network Control*.
- 6 Optionally apply **MAC ACL** rules to EX3500 packet traffic. Use the drop-down menu to select an existing MAC ACL, select the **Create** icon to add a new MAC ACL rule, or select an existing MAC ACL and the **Edit** icon to modify its configuration. For information on creating MAC ACLs, refer to *Configuring MAC Firewall Rules on page 10-15*.

Administrators can filter Layer 2 EX3500 traffic on a physical Layer 2 interface using MAC addresses. A MAC firewall rule uses source and destination MAC addresses for matching operations, where the result is a typical *allow*, *deny* or *mark* designation to WLAN packet traffic.

- 7 Optionally apply IP based **Standard ACL** rules to EX3500 packet traffic. A standard ACL for an EX3500 is a policy-based ACL that either prevents or allows specific clients from using the device. Select the **Create** icon to add a new ACL rule, or select an existing ACL and the **Edit** icon to modify its configuration. If creating a new standard ACL, provide a name up to 32 characters to help differentiate this rule from others with similar configurations. Select **+ Add Row**. For more information on creating a standard ACL, see *EX3500 ACL Standard on page 10-29*.



**Figure 7-56** EX3500 QoS Class screen - Add/Edit

- 8 Set the following standard ACL attributes:

<b>Source IP Address</b>	Set whether the permit or deny rules assigned to this ACL are applied to a <i>Host</i> IP address, <i>Network</i> IP address and mask or <i>Any</i> address.
<b>Allow</b>	Set the <i>Permit</i> or <i>Deny</i> action on IP packet traffic with the EX3500 switch. The default is Permit.
<b>Time Range</b>	Defines the period when the permit or deny are applied to EX3500 IP traffic.



- 9 Refer to the **DSCPv6** field and select **+ Add Row** to specify a DSCPv6 value from 0 - 63. DSCPv6 specifies the *Differentiated Services Code Point* version 6 of a classifier assigned to an interface. Use DSCPv6 for IPv6 multicast traffic support.
- 10 Refer to the **Extended ACL** field and either select an existing extended IP ACL from the drop-down menu, add a new extended IP ACL by selecting the **Create** icon, or modify an existing one by selecting the **Edit** icon. For more information on extended IP ACLs, refer to *EX3500 ACL Extended on page 10-31*.

Name	Precedence	Source	Destination	Action	Time Range	Protocol	DSCP	IP Header
	1	Any	Any	Allow		other	Not Set	Not Set

**Figure 7-57** EX3500 QoS Class - Extended ACL

An extended ACL is comprised of *access control entries* (ACEs). Each ACE specifies a *source* and *destination* for matching and filtering traffic to the EX3500 switch.

<b>Name</b>	If creating a new extended ACL, provide a 32 character maximum name to this extended ACL to differentiate its EX3500 traffic filtering configuration.
<b>Precedence</b>	Specify or modify a precedence for this IP policy between 1-128. Rules with lower precedence are always applied to packets first. If modifying a precedence to apply a higher integer, it will move down the table to reflect its lower priority.
<b>Source</b>	Determine whether filtered packet source for this IP firewall rule do not require any classification ( <i>any</i> ), are set as a numeric IP address ( <i>host</i> ) or apply to <i>any</i> .
<b>Destination</b>	Determine whether filtered packet destinations for this IP firewall rule do not require any classification ( <i>any</i> ), are set as a numeric IP address ( <i>host</i> ) or apply to <i>any</i> .
<b>Action</b>	Every rule is made up of matching criteria rules. The action defines the packet's disposition if it matches the specified criteria. The following actions are supported:  <i>Deny</i> - Instructs the ACL to restrict a packet from proceeding to its destination when filter conditions are matched.  <i>Allow</i> - Instructs the ACL to allow a packet to proceed to its destination when filter conditions are matched.

<b>Time Range</b>	Lists time range when each listed ACL is enabled. An EX3500 <i>Time Range</i> is a set of configurations consisting of <i>periodic</i> and <i>absolute</i> time ranges. Periodic ranges can be configured to reoccur based on periodicity such as daily, weekly, weekends, weekdays and on specific week day such as Sunday. Absolute time ranges can be configured to a range of days during a particular period. Absolute time ranges do not reoccur. For more information, see <i>EX3500 Time Range on page 10-64</i> .
<b>Protocol</b>	Specify the protocol for which the alias has to be created. Use the drop down to select the protocol from <i>eigrp, gre, icmp, igmp, ip, vrrp, igp, ospf, tcp, udp</i> or <i>other</i> . Select other if the protocol is not listed. When a protocol is selected, its protocol number is automatically selected.
<b>Source Port</b>	Specify a source port for the TCP or UDP protocols. The source specifies the IP address or FQDN from which the packet is sent. The source port is not displayed by default and must be selected from the upper-right hand side of the screen.
<b>Destination Port</b>	Specify a destination port for the TCP or UDP protocols. The destination specifies the IP address or FQDN to which the packet is being sent. The destination port is not displayed by default and must be selected from the upper-right hand side of the screen.
<b>DSCP</b>	Select this option to specify a DSCP value from 0 - 63. DSCP specifies the <i>Differentiated Services Code Point</i> version 6 of a classifier assigned to an interface.
<b>IP Header</b>	Sets the IP precedence level from 0-7.

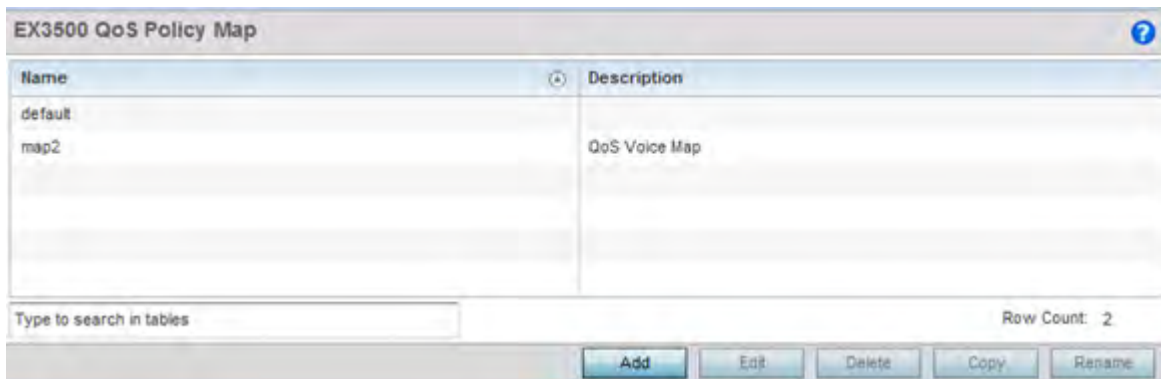
- 11 Refer to the **Precedence** field and select **+ Add Row** to assign a precedence (priority) to this EX3500 QoS policy. Rules are applied in order from 0 - 7.
- 12 Optionally refine the virtual interface (**VLAN**) to which the EX3500 QoS policy is applied by selecting a VLAN from 1 - 4094.
- 13 Select **OK** to save the changes. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 7.16 EX3500 QoS Policy Map

An EX3500 switch can have its own WiNG defined policy map that can be attached to an interface to specify a QoS service policy. Use a QoS policy map to assign priority to mission critical EX3500 switch data traffic, prevent EX3500 switch bandwidth congestion and prevent packet drops.

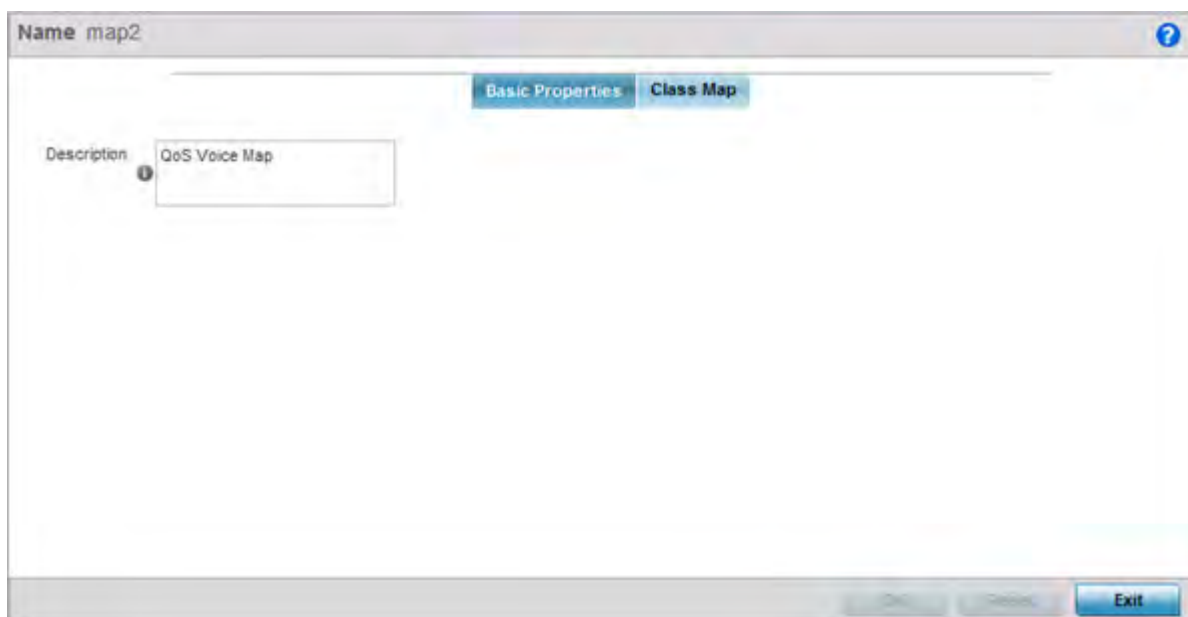
To review existing EX3500 QoS policy map configurations and assess whether new ones require creation, modification or deletion:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Network > EX3500 QoS Policy Map**.



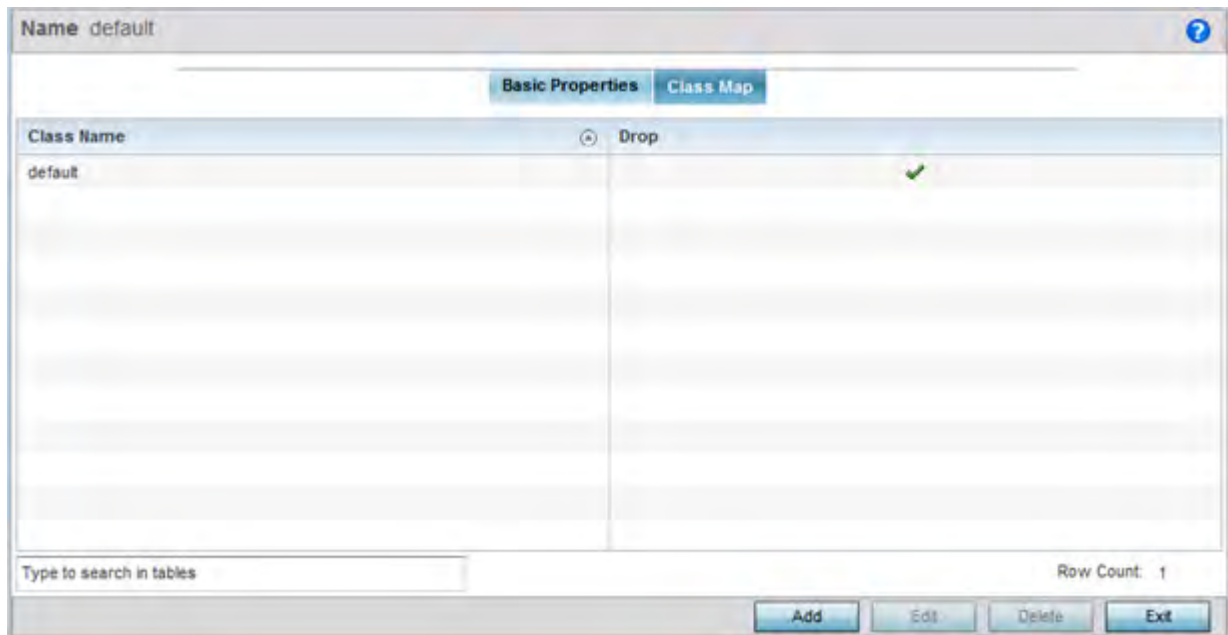
**Figure 7-58** EX3500 QoS Policy Map screen

- 2 Select **Add** to create a new EX3500 QoS policy map, or select an existing policy and **Edit** to modify its attributes. Obsolete policy maps can be selected and **Deleted** as needed. **Copy** to duplicate an existing policy map or **Rename** them as needed.



**Figure 7-59** EX3500 QoS Policy Map - Basic Properties screen

- 3 If adding a new EX3500 QoS policy map, enter a 32 character maximum **Name** to help differentiate this policy from others with similar attributes.
- 4 Enter a 64 character maximum **Description** to help differentiate this policy's EX3500 traffic prioritization scheme.
- 5 Select **OK** to save the changes. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.
- 6 Select the **Class Map** tab.  
Existing class map configurations display along with their drop designations defining whether packets will be dropped if exceeding the actions set for this class map configuration.



**Figure 7-60** EX3500 QoS Policy Map - Class Map screen

- 7 Select **Add** to create a new EX3500 QoS class map, or select an existing class name and **Edit** to modify its attributes. Obsolete class maps can be selected and **Deleted** as needed.

**Figure 7-61** EX3500 QoS Policy Map - Class Map Add/Edit screen

- 8 Set the following class map **Police** actions to apply traffic restrictions and packet drop criteria to EX3500 switch data traffic:

<b>Enable</b>	Enable this option to apply traffic type classification restrictions and packet drop criteria to EX3500 switch data traffic. This option is dialed by default.
<b>Police Traffic Type</b>	Use the drop-down menu to specify the EX3500 switch traffic type to drop when the specified violation criteria is exceeded. A policing scheme can be applied before writing packets to the TX port by dropping or changing the <i>color</i> (green, yellow or red) of the packet in a static manner, depending on both the input and output colors of the packets. Options include <i>flow</i> , <i>srtcm_color_aware</i> , <i>srtcm_color_blind</i> , <i>trtcm_color_aware</i> and <i>trtcm_color_blind</i> .
<b>Drop</b>	Select this option to drop EX3500 switch packets when the violation action criteria has been exceeded. This option is not available when <i>flow</i> is selected as Police Action Type.
<b>New IP DSCP</b>	Use the spinner control to set a DSCP value (from 0 - 63) as required by an exceeded action criteria. DSCP is the <i>Differentiated Services Code Point</i> field in an IP header for packet classification. Packets are filtered based on the traffic class defined in the IP DSCP field. This option is not available when flow is selected as the Police Action Type or when Drop is enabled.

<b>Violate-Action Drop</b>	Select this option to drop packets when the specified traffic type classification restrictions and packet drop criteria are exceeded. When enabled (default setting), the <i>Violate Action New IP DSCP</i> setting is disabled.
<b>Violate Action New IP DSCP</b>	If the <i>Violate-Action Drop</i> option is disabled, set a DSCP value (from 0 - 63) as required by an exceeded action criteria.
<b>Committed Burst Size</b>	Set a committed (maximum) burst size between 0 - 16,000,000. The smaller the burst, the less likely received EX3500 switch packets result in data traffic congestion.
<b>Committed Rate</b>	Set the <i>committed information rate</i> (CIR) from 0 - 1,000,000 for EX3500 switch data traffic. The CIR is a bandwidth (expressed in bits per second) allocated to the connection with the EX3500 switch. This form of rate limiting reduces the maximum rate sent or received, and prevents any single EX3500 switch from overwhelming the WiNG managed network.
<b>Exceeded Burst Size</b>	When <i>srtcm_color_aware</i> or <i>srtcm_color_blind</i> are selected as the Police Traffic Type, set an excess burst size (from 0 - 16,000,000 bytes). The excess burst size allows for periods of bursting traffic exceeding both the <i>committed information rate</i> (CIR) and committed burst size.
<b>Peak Burst Size</b>	When <i>trtcm_color_aware</i> or <i>trtcm_color_blind</i> are selected as the Police Traffic Type, set a Peak Burst Size (from 0 - 16,000,000 bytes). The Peak Burst Size defines the maximum number of bytes of unused peak bandwidth capacity that can be accumulated. The accumulated bandwidth allows for periods of bursting traffic exceeding the Peak Info Rate and Committed Burst Size.
<b>Peak Into Rate</b>	When <i>trtcm_color_aware</i> or <i>trtcm_color_blind</i> are selected as the Police Traffic Type, set a Peak Info Rate (from 0 - 1,000,000 kilobytes per second). The Peak Info Rate is the maximum rate for traffic arriving or departing the interface under peak conditions. Traffic exceeding the <i>committed information rate</i> (CIR) and the committed burst size is metered to the Peak Info Rate.

9 Refer to the **Set** field to define the EX3500's traffic type and set its behavior.

<b>Enable</b>	Select enable to refine the EX3500's traffic type to either PHB, COS or DSCP.
<b>Traffic Type</b>	Use the drop-down menu to specify the EX3500 switch traffic type. Options include <i>phb</i> , <i>cos</i> and <i>DSCP</i> . Once an option is selected, refine that traffic type's behavior.
<b>PHB</b>	When PHB is selected as the Traffic Type, set the per-hop behavior value (from 1 - 7) applied to matching packets. The PHB defines the policy and priority applied to a packet when traversing a hop. PHBs are created (one for each combination of the top 3 bits) as <i>bbb000</i> to match precedence behaviors and leaves other DSCP values open, where each <i>b</i> may take the value zero or 1.
<b>Cos</b>	When Cos is selected as the Traffic Type, assign a 802.1p priority (0 - 7) as a 3-bit IP precedence value of the IP header used to set the EX3500 switch user priority. The valid values for this field are 0 - <i>Best Effort</i> , 1 - <i>Background</i> , 2 - <i>Spare</i> , 3 - <i>Excellent Effort</i> , 4 - <i>Controlled Load</i> , 5 - <i>Video</i> , 6 - <i>Voice</i> , 7 - <i>Network Control</i> .

<b>DSCP</b>	When DSCP is selected as the Traffic Type, set a DSCP value (from 0 - 63). DSCP is the <i>Differentiated Services Code Point</i> field in an IP header for EX3500 switch packet classification. Packets are filtered based on the traffic class defined in the IP DSCP field.
-------------	---

10. Select **OK** to save the changes. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 7.17 Network Deployment Considerations

---

Before defining a L2TPV3 configuration, refer to the following deployment guidelines to ensure the configuration is optimally effective:

- In respect to L2TP V3, data transfers on the pseudowire can start as soon as session establishment corresponding to the pseudowire is complete.
- In respect to L2TP V3, the control connection keep-alive mechanism of L2TP V3 can serve as a monitoring mechanism for the pseudowires associated with a control connection.

# 8 Profile Configuration

Profiles enable administrators to assign a common set of configuration parameters and policies to controllers, service platforms and Access Points. Profiles can be used to assign common or *unique* network, wireless and security parameters to devices across a large, multi segment, site. The configuration parameters within a profile are based on the hardware model the profile was created to support. The controllers, service platforms and Access Points support both default and user defined profiles implementing new features or updating existing parameters. The central benefit of a profile is its ability to update devices collectively without having to modify individual device configurations.

Profiles assign configuration parameters, applicable policies and WLANs to one or more controllers, services platforms and Access Points, thus allowing smart administration across large wireless network segments. However, individual devices can still be assigned unique configuration parameters that follow the flat configuration model supported in previous software releases. As individual device updates are made, these device no longer share the profile based configuration they originally supported. Changes made to the profile are automatically inherited by all assigned devices, but not those devices who have had their configuration customized. These devices require careful administration, as they no longer can be tracked and as profile members. Their customized configurations overwrite their profile configurations until the profile can be re-applied to the device.

Each controller, service platform and Access Point is automatically assigned a default profile unless an AP auto provisioning policy is defined that specifically assigns the Access Point to a user defined profile. A default profile for each supported model is automatically added to a device's configuration file when the device is discovered. Default profiles can also be manually added prior to discovery when needed. Default profiles are ideal for single site deployments where controllers, service platforms or Access Points share a common configuration.

Device Model	Default Profile
anyap	anyap
AP6521	default-ap6521
AP6522	default-ap6522
AP6532	default-ap6532
AP6562	default-ap6562
AP7161	default-ap71xx
AP7502	default-ap7502
AP7522	default-ap7522
AP7532	default-ap7532
AP7562	default-ap7562
AP7602	default-ap7602
AP7612	default-ap7612
AP7622	default-ap7622
AP7632	default-ap7632
AP7662	default-ap7662
AP8132, AP8163	default-ap81xx
AP8232	default-ap82xx



AP8432	default-ap8432
AP8533	default-ap8533
EX3524	default-ex3524
EX3548	default-ex3548
NX5500	default-nx5500
NX7500	default-nx75xx
NX9500, NX9510	default-nx9000
RFS4000	default-rfs4000
RFS6000	default-rfs6000
T5	default-t5
VX9000	default-vx

User defined profiles are manually created for each supported controller, service platform and Access Point model. User defined profiles can be manually assigned or automatically assigned to Access Points using an AP Auto provisioning policy. AP Adoption policies provide the means to easily assign profiles to Access Points based on model, serial number, VLAN ID, DHCP option, IP address (subnet) and MAC address.

User defined profiles are recommended for larger deployments using centralized controllers and service platforms when groups of devices on different floors, buildings or sites share a common configuration.

Each default and user defined profile contains policies and configuration parameters. Changes made to these parameters are automatically inherited by the devices assigned to the profile.

Review existing profiles to determine whether a new profile requires creation, or an existing profile requires edit or deletion.

To review the existing profiles:

- 1 Select the **Configuration** tab from the Web UI.
- 2 Select **Profiles** from the Configuration tab.
- 3 Select **Manage Profiles** from the **Configuration > Profiles** menu.

Profile <span style="float: right;">?</span>							
Profile	Type	Auto-Provisioning Policy	Firewall Policy	Wireless Client Role Policy	DHCP Server Policy	Management Policy	RADIUS Server Policy
default-ap621	AP621		default			default	
default-ap622	AP622		default			default	
default-ap650	AP650		default			default	
default-ap6511	AP6511		default			default	
default-ap6521	AP6521		default			default	
default-ap6522	AP6522		default			default	
default-ap6532	AP6532		default			default	
default-ap71xx	AP71XX		default			default	
default-ap81xx	AP81XX		default			default	
default-nx45xx	NX45XX		default			default	
default-nx9000	NX9000		default			default	
default-rfs4000	RFS4000		default			default	
default-rfs6000	RFS6000		default			default	
default-rfs7000	RFS7000		default			default	
default-t5	T5		default			default	
default-vx	VX9000		default			default	
test	NX9000		default			default	
testNX4500	NX45XX		default			default	

Type to search in tables Row Count: 18

**Figure 8-1** Profile screen

4 Review the following information on existing profiles:

<b>Profile</b>	Lists the user-assigned name defined for each profile when created. Profile names cannot be edited with a profiles configuration.
----------------	---

<b>Type</b>	<p>Displays the device type (and subsequent device specific configuration) supported by each listed profile. Available device types include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• AP6521</li> <li>• AP6522</li> <li>• AP6532</li> <li>• AP6562</li> <li>• AP71xx</li> <li>• AP7502</li> <li>• AP7522</li> <li>• AP7532</li> <li>• AP7562</li> <li>• AP7602</li> <li>• AP7612</li> <li>• AP7622</li> <li>• AP7632</li> <li>• AP7662</li> <li>• AP81xx</li> <li>• AP82xx</li> <li>• AP8432</li> <li>• AP8533</li> <li>• EX3524</li> <li>• EX3548</li> <li>• RFS4000</li> <li>• RFS6000</li> <li>• NX5500</li> <li>• NX75xx</li> <li>• NX9000</li> <li>• T5</li> <li>• VX9000</li> </ul>
<b>Auto Provisioning Policy</b>	<p>Displays the auto provisioning policy applied to this profile. At adoption, an AP solicits and receives multiple adoption responses. These adoption responses contain preference and loading policy information the AP uses to select the optimum controller, service platform or peer Access Point model for adoption. By default, an auto provisioning policy generally distributes AP adoption evenly amongst available adopters. Modify existing adoption policies or create a new one as needed to meet the adoption requirements of this particular profile.</p>
<b>Firewall Policy</b>	<p>Displays an existing firewall policy, if any, assigned to each listed profile. Firewall policies can be assigned when creating or editing a profile.</p>
<b>Wireless Client Role Policy</b>	<p>Lists the name of the wireless client role policy currently applied to the listed device. The wireless client role policy contains the matching rules and IP and MAC Inbound and Outbound policies used to filter traffic to and from clients.</p>
<b>DHCP Server Policy</b>	<p>Lists the name of the DHCP Server Policy used with each listed profile. An internal DHCP server groups wireless clients based on defined user-class option values. Clients with a defined set of user class values are segregated by class. A DHCP server can associate multiple classes to each pool. Each class in a pool is assigned an exclusive range of IP addresses.</p>

<b>Management Policy</b>	Lists the name of Management policies applied to each listed profile. A management policy is a mechanism to allow/deny management access for separate interfaces and protocols ( <i>HTTP, HTTPS, Telnet, SSH or SNMP</i> ). Management access can be enabled/disabled as required for each policy.
<b>RADIUS Server Policy</b>	Displays the name of the RADIUS Server policy applied to each listed profile. A RADIUS Server policy provides customized, profile specific, management of authentication data (usernames and passwords).

- 5 Select the **Add** button to create a new profile, **Edit** to revise a selected profile configuration or **Delete** to permanently remove a selected profile. Optionally **Copy** or **Rename** profiles as needed.

The following tasks comprise required profile configuration activities:

- *General Profile Configuration*
- *Profile Cluster Configuration (Controllers and Service Platforms)*
- *Profile Adoption Configuration (APs Only)*
- *Profile Adoption Configuration (Controllers Only)*
- *Profile Radio Power (AP7161, AP81XX Only)*
- *Profile 802.1x Configuration*
- *Profile Interface Configuration*
- *Profile Network Configuration*
- *Profile Security Configuration*
- *Profile VRRP Configuration*
- *Profile Critical Resources Configuration*
- *Profile Services Configuration*
- *Profile Management Configuration*
- *Profile Mesh Point Configuration*
- *Profile Environmental Sensor Configuration (AP8132 Only)*
- *Advanced Profile Configuration*

## 8.1 General Profile Configuration

Each profile requires a provisioning policy and clock synchronization settings as part of its general configuration. Each profile can have a unique provisioning policy and system time.

Controllers, service platforms and Access Points are automatically assigned a default profile unless an AP provisioning policy has been defined that specifically assigns Access Points to a user defined profile. During the general configuration process, a provisioning policy can be assigned to a specific profile or a new provisioning policy can be created and applied to the profile. Adoption is the process an AP uses to discover potential adopters in the network, pick the most desirable one, establish an association and obtain its configuration.

*Network Time Protocol* (NTP) manages time and/or network clock synchronization within the network. NTP is a client/server implementation. Controllers, service platforms and Access Points (NTP clients) periodically synchronize their clock with a master clock (an NTP server). For example, a controller resets its clock to 07:04:59 upon reading a time of 07:04:59 from its designated NTP server.

Additionally, if the profile is supporting an Access Point, the profile's general configuration provides an option to disable the device's LEDs.

To define a profile's general configuration:

- 1 Select the **Configuration** tab from the Web UI.
- 2 Select **Profiles** from the Configuration tab.
- 3 Select **Manage Profiles** from the Configuration > Profiles menu.
- 4 Select **General**.  
A General configuration screen displays for the new or existing profile.

**Figure 8-2** General Profile - screen

- 5 If creating a new profile, provide a name (up to 32 characters) within the **Profile** parameter field.
- 6 Use the **Type** drop-down menu to specify the device model for which the profile applies.  
Profiles can only be applied to the same device type selected when the profile is initially created.
- 7 Refer to the **Location** field to define the device's deployment location area.

<b>Area</b>	Enter a 64 character maximum description for the selected device's physical deployment area. This area can be further refined by floor and floor number descriptions.
<b>Floor</b>	Enter a 32 character maximum description for the selected device's building floor placement. This area can be further refined by floor and floor number descriptions.
<b>Floor Number</b>	Use the spinner control to assign a numeric deployment floor number (from 1 - 4094) for this device. The default floor is 1.

- 8 Within the **Statistics** field, use the **NoC Update Interval** to set the statistics update interval (from 0, 5 - 3600 seconds) from the RF Domain manager to its adopting controller. The default value is 0.  
A value of 0 is allowable for an auto mode where the update interval is auto adjusted by the controller based on load information.

- 9 Select **+ Add Row** below the **Network Time Protocol (NTP)** table to define the configurations of NTP server resources to obtain system time. Up to 3 servers can be added. Set the following parameters to define the NTP configuration:

<b>Server IP</b>	Set the IP address of each server added as a potential NTP resource.
<b>Key Number</b>	Select the number of the associated authentication peer key for the NTP resource.
<b>Key</b>	Enter a 64 character maximum key used when the autokey setting is set to false (disabled). Select the Show option to expose the actual character string comprising the key.
<b>Preferred</b>	Select this option to designate this NTP resource as a preferred NTP resource. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>AutoKey</b>	Select the check box to enable an autokey configuration for the NTP resource. The default setting is disabled.
<b>Version</b>	Use the spinner control to specify the version number (from 0 - 4) used by this NTP server resource. The default setting is 0.
<b>Minimum Polling Interval</b>	Use the spinner control to set the minimum polling interval (in seconds) used to contact the NTP server resource. Once set, the NTP resource is polled no sooner than the defined interval. The default setting is 64 seconds.
<b>Maximum Polling Interval</b>	Use the spinner control to set the maximum polling interval (in seconds) used to contact the NTP server resource. Once set, the NTP resource is polled no later than the defined interval. The default setting is 1024 seconds.

- 10 Refer to the **RAID Alarm** field to either *enable* or *disable* the chassis alarm that sounds when events are detected that degrade RAID support (drive content mirroring) on a series service platform.



**NOTE:** RAID controller drive arrays are available within NX7500 and NX9000 series service platforms (NX9000, NX9500 and NX9510 models) only. However, they can be administrated on behalf of a profile by a different model service platform or controller.

RAID controller drive arrays are available within NX7530 and NX9000 series service platforms (NX9000, NX9500 and NX9510 models) only. However, they can be administrated on behalf of a profile by a different model service platform or controller.

Service platforms include a single Intel MegaRAID controller (virtual drive) with RAID-1 mirroring support enabled. The online virtual drive supports up to two physical drives that could require hot spare substitution if a drive were to fail. An administrator can manage the RAID controller event alarm and syslogs supporting the array hardware from the service platform user interface and is not required to reboot the service platform BIOS.

For information on setting the service platform drive array configuration and diagnostic behavior of its member drives, refer to [RAID Operations on page 14-19](#). To view the service platform's current RAID array status, drive utilization and consistency check information, refer to [RAID Statistics on page 15-114](#).

- 11 Select **OK** to save the changes made to the general profile configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 8.1.1 General Profile Configuration and Deployment Considerations

### ► *General Profile Configuration*

Before defining a general profile configuration, refer to the following deployment guidelines to ensure the configuration is optimally effective:

- A default profile is applied automatically, and default AP profiles are applied to discovered Access Points.
- Each user defined profile requires a unique name.
- User defined profiles can be automatically assigned to Access Points using AP adoption policies.
- Each controller, service platform and Access Point model is automatically assigned a default profile based on the hardware type selected when the profile is initially created.

## 8.2 Profile Cluster Configuration (Controllers and Service Platforms)

---

Configuration and network monitoring are two tasks a network administrator faces as a network grows in terms of the number of managed devices. Such scalability requirements lead network administrators to look for managing and monitoring each node from a single centralized management entity. A controller or service platform not only provides a centralized management solution, it provides a centralized management profile that can be shared by any single cluster member. This eliminates dedicating a management entity to manage all cluster members and eliminates a single point of failure.

A redundancy group (cluster) is a set of controller or services platforms (nodes) uniquely defined by a profile's configuration. Within the redundancy group, members discover and establish connections to other members and provide wireless network self-healing support in the event of cluster member failure.

A cluster's load balance is typically distributed evenly amongst the cluster members. Define how often this profile is load balanced for radio distribution, as radios can come and go and members can join and exit the cluster.

To define a cluster configuration for use with a profile:

- 1 Select the Configuration tab from the Web UI.
- 2 Select **Profiles** from the Configuration tab.
- 3 Select **Manage Profiles** from the Configuration > Profiles menu.
- 4 Select **Cluster**.

A screen displays where the profile's cluster and AP load balancing configuration can be set.

**Figure 8-3** Controller Profile - Cluster screen

- 5 Define the following **Cluster Settings** parameters to set this profile's cluster mode and deployment settings:

<b>Cluster Mode</b>	A member can be in either an <i>Active</i> or <i>Standby</i> mode. All active member can adopt Access Points. Standby members only adopt Access Points when an active member has failed or sees an Access Point not adopted by a controller or service platform. The default cluster mode is <i>Active</i> and enabled for use with the profile.
<b>Cluster Name</b>	Define a name for the cluster name unique to its configuration or profile support requirements. The name cannot exceed 64 characters.
<b>Master Priority</b>	Set a priority value from 1 - 255, with the higher value given higher priority. This configuration is the device's priority to become the cluster master. In a cluster environment, one device from the cluster is elected as the cluster master. The master priority setting is the device's priority to become cluster master. The active primary controller has the higher master priority. The default value is 128.



<b>Handle STP Convergence</b>	Select the check box to enable <i>Spanning Tree Protocol (STP)</i> convergence for the controller or service platform. In general, this protocol is enabled in layer 2 networks to prevent network looping. Spanning Tree is a network layer protocol that ensures a loop-free topology in a mesh network of inter-connected layer 2 controllers or service platforms. The spanning tree protocol disables redundant connections and uses the least costly path to maintain a connection between any two cluster members in the network. If enabled, the network forwards data only after STP convergence. Enabling STP convergence delays the redundancy state machine execution until the STP convergence is completed (the standard protocol value for STP convergence is 50 seconds). Delaying the state machine is important to load balance APs at startup. The default setting is disabled.
<b>Force Configured State</b>	Select the check box to enable this controller or service platform to take over for an active controller or service platform member if it were to fail. A standby node takes over APs adopted by the failed controller or service platform. If the failed controller or service platform were to come available again, the active controller or service platform starts a timer based on the Auto Revert Delay interval. At the expiration of the Auto Revert Delay, the standby node releases all adopted APs and goes back to a monitoring mode. The Auto Revert Delay timer is stopped and restarted if the active controller or service platform goes down and comes up during the Auto Revert Delay interval. The default value is disabled.
<b>Force Configured State Delay</b>	Specify a delay interval (from 3 - 1,800 minutes) a standby node waits before releasing adopted APs and goes back to a monitoring mode when a controller or service platform becomes active again after a failure. The default interval is 5 minutes.
<b>RADIUS Counter DB Sync Time</b>	Specify a sync time (from 1 - 1,440 minutes) a RADIUS counter database uses as its synchronization interval with the dedicated NTP server resource. The default interval is 5 minutes.

- 6 Within the **Cluster Member** field, select the **Cluster VLAN** checkbox to enable a spinner control to designate the VLAN where cluster members are reachable. Specify a VLAN from 1 - 4094.  
Select **+ Add Row** and specify the IP addresses of the VLAN's cluster members. Set a routing level of either 1 or 2, where 1 is local routing and 2 is inter-site routing.
- 7 Select **OK** to save the changes made to the profile's cluster configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 8.2.1 Cluster Profile Configuration and Deployment Considerations

### ► Profile Cluster Configuration (Controllers and Service Platforms)

Before defining a profile cluster configuration, refer to the following deployment guidelines to ensure the configuration is optimally effective:

- A cluster member cannot adopt more APs than its hardware capacity allows. This is important when the number of pooled AP and AAP licenses exceeds the aggregated AP and AAP capacity available after a cluster member has failed. A cluster supported profile should be designed to ensure adequate AP and AAP capacity exists to address failure scenarios involving both APs and AAPs.
- When clustering is enabled for a profile and a failure occurs, AP and AAP licenses are persistent in the cluster even during reboots or power outages. If a cluster member failure were to occur, clustering should remain enabled on all remaining cluster members or the pooled member licenses will be lost.

## 8.3 Profile Adoption Configuration (APs Only)

Adoption is the process an Access Point uses to discover available controllers, pick the most desirable controller, establish a controller association and optionally obtain an image upgrade and configuration. Adoption is configurable and supported within a device profile and applied to other Access Points supported by the profile. Individual attributes of an Access Point's auto provisioning policy can be overridden as specific parameters require modification.

At adoption, an Access Point solicits and receives multiple adoption responses from controllers and service platforms available on the network. These adoption responses contain loading policy information the Access Point uses to select the optimum controller or service platform for adoption. By default, an auto provisioning policy generally distributes AP adoption evenly amongst available controllers and service platforms. Modify existing adoption policies or create a new one as needed to meet the adoption requirements of a device and their assigned profile.

To define an Access Point's adoption configuration:

Select the **Configuration** tab from the Web UI.

- 1 Select **Profiles** from the Configuration tab.
- 2 Select **Manage Profiles** from the **Configuration > Profiles** menu.
- 3 Select **Adoption**.

**Figure 8-4** Provisioning Policy - Adoption screen

- 4 Within the **Controller Group** field, use the **Preferred Group** item to set an optimal group for the Access Point's adoption. The name of the preferred group cannot exceed 64 characters.
- 5 Select the check box to define or override a **Controller VLAN** the Access Point's associating controller or service platform is reachable on. VLANs 0 and 4,094 are reserved and cannot be used by a controller or service platform VLAN.
- 6 Set the following **Auto-Provisioning Policy** settings for Access Point adoptions:

<b>Use NOC Auto-Provisioning Policy</b>	Select this option to use the NOC controller's auto provisioning policy and not the policy maintained locally. The NOC is an elected controller or service platform capable of provisioning all of its peer controllers, service platforms and adopted devices. This setting is disabled by default. NOC controllers are NX9000, NX9500, NX9510, NX7500, and RFS6000 models.
<b>Auto-Provisioning Policy</b>	Select an auto provisioning policy from the drop-down menu. To create a new auto provisioning policy, select the <i>Create</i> icon or modify an existing one by selecting the <i>Edit</i> icon.

<b>Learn and Save Network Configuration</b>	Select this option to learn and save the configuration of any device requesting adoption. This setting is enabled by default.
---	---

- 7 Set the following **Controller Hello Interval** parameters:

<b>Hello Interval</b>	Define an interval (from 1 - 120 seconds) between hello keep alive messages exchanged with the adopting device. These messages serve as a connection validation mechanism to ensure the availability of the adopting resource.
<b>Adjacency Hold Time</b>	Set the time (from 2 - 600 seconds) after the last hello packet after which the connection between the controller and Access Point is defined as lost and their connection is re-established.

- 8 Use the spinner control to define an **Offline Duration** timeout (from 5 - 43,200 minutes) to detect whether an adopted device is offline. The default setting is 10 minutes.

- 9 Enter **Controller Hostnames** as needed to define resources for Access Point adoption.

Select **+ Add Row** as needed to populate the table with IP Addresses or Hostnames used as Access Point adoption resources into the managed network.

<b>Host</b>	Use the drop-down menu to specify whether the adoption resource is defined as a (non DNS) <i>IP Address</i> or a <i>Hostname</i> . Once defined, provide the numerical IP or Hostname. A Hostname cannot exceed 64 characters.
<b>Pool</b>	Use the spinner control to set a pool of either 1 or 2. This is the pool the target controller or service platform belongs to.
<b>Routing Level</b>	Define a routing level (either 1 or 2) for the link between adopting devices. The default setting is 1.
<b>IPSec Secure</b>	Enable this option to provide IPSec secure peer authentication on the connection (link) between the adopting devices. This option is disabled by default.
<b>IPSec GW</b>	Select the numerical IP address or administrator defined hostname of the adopting controller resource. A Hostname cannot exceed 64 characters.
<b>Force</b>	Enable this setting to create a forced link between an Access Point and adopting controller, even when not necessarily needed. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Remote VPN Client</b>	Displays whether a secure controller link has been established using a remote VPN client.

- 10 Select **OK** to save the changes to the Access Point profile adoption configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 8.4 Profile Adoption Configuration (Controllers Only)

Adoption is the process an Access Point uses to discover available controllers, pick the most desirable controller, establish a controller association and optionally obtain an image upgrade and configuration. Adoption is configurable and supported within a device profile and applied to other Access Points supported by the profile. Individual attributes of an Access Point's auto provisioning policy can be overridden as specific parameters require modification.

At adoption, an Access Point solicits and receives multiple adoption responses from controllers and service platforms available on the network. These adoption responses contain loading policy information the Access Point uses to select the optimum controller or service platform for adoption. By default, an auto provisioning policy generally distributes AP adoption evenly amongst available controllers and service platforms. Modify existing adoption policies or create a new one as needed to meet the adoption requirements of a device and their assigned profile.

To define a controller or service platform's adoption configuration:

Select the **Configuration** tab from the Web UI.

- 1 Select **Profiles** from the Configuration tab.
- 2 Select **Manage Profiles** from the **Configuration > Profiles** menu.
- 3 Select **Adoption**.

The screenshot displays the 'Provisioning Policy - Adoption' configuration screen. At the top, there are three dropdown menus: 'Use NOC Auto-Provisioning Policy' set to 'no', 'Auto-Provisioning Policy' set to 'mypolicy', and 'Learn and Save Network Configuration' checked. Below this is the 'Controller Adoption Settings' section, which includes several checkboxes: 'Allow Adoption of Devices' (checked for 'Access Points'), 'Allow Adoption of External Devices', 'Allow Monitoring of External Devices', and 'Allow Adoption of this Controller'. There is also a 'Preferred Group' text field. Below these are three numeric input fields: 'Hello Interval' (range 1 to 120), 'Adjacency Hold Time' (range 12 to 600), and 'Offline Duration' (range 5 to 43,200). At the bottom is the 'Controller Hostnames' section, which contains a table with the following columns: Host, Pool, Routing Level, IPsec Secure, IPsec GW, Force, Remote VPN Client, and a trash icon. The table is currently empty. At the bottom right of the screen are three buttons: 'OK', 'Reset', and 'Exit'.

**Figure 8-5** Provisioning Policy - Adoption screen

- 4 Within the **Controller Group** field, use the **Group** item to set provide the controller group this controller or service platform belongs to. A preferred group can also be selected for the adoption of this controller or service platform. The name of the preferred group cannot exceed 64 characters.

5 Set the following **Auto Provision Policy** parameters:

<b>Use NOC Auto-Provisioning Policy</b>	Select this option to use the NOC's auto provisioning policy instead of the policy local to the controller or service platform. The NOC is an elected controller or service platform capable of provisioning all of its peer controllers, service platforms and adopted devices. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Auto-Provisioning Policy</b>	Select an auto provisioning policy from the drop-down menu. To create a new auto provisioning policy, select the <i>Create</i> icon or modify an existing one by selecting the <i>Edit</i> icon.
<b>Learn and Save Network Configuration</b>	Select this option to enable allow the controller tor service platform to maintain a local configuration records of devices requesting adoption and provisioning. This feature is enabled by default.

6 Set the following **Controller Adoption Settings** settings:

<b>Allow Adoption of Devices</b>	Select either <i>Access Points</i> or <i>Controllers</i> (or both) to refine whether this controller or service platform can adopt just networked Access Points or peer controller devices as well.
<b>Allow Adoption of External Devices</b>	Select this option to enable this controller or service platform to adopt T5 model devices or EX3500 model switches.
<b>Allow Monitoring of External Devices</b>	Select this option to enable monitoring only of T5 model devices or EX3500 model switches by this controller or service platform. When enabled, WiNG does not configure EX3500 switches or a T5, it only monitors those devices for statistics and events.
<b>Allow Adoption of this Controller</b>	Select the option to enable this controller or service platform to be capable of adoption by other controllers or service platforms. This settings is disabled by default and must be selected to allow peer adoptions.
<b>Preferred Group</b>	If <i>Allow Adoption of this Controller</i> is selected, provide the controller group preferred as the adopting entity for this controller or service platform. If utilizing this feature, ensure the appropriate group is provided within the Controller Group field.
<b>Hello Interval</b>	Select this option to define the hello packet exchange interval (from 1 - 120 seconds) between the controller or service platform and an adoption requesting Access Point.
<b>Adjacency Hold Time</b>	Select this option to set a hold time interval (from 2 - 600 seconds) for the transmission of hello packets.
<b>Offline Duration</b>	Use the spinner control to define a timeout (from 5 - 43,200 minutes) to detect whether an adopted device is offline. The default setting is 10 minutes.

7 Enter **Controller Hostnames** as needed to define resources for Access Point adoption.



**NOTE:** This field is only available when *Allow Adoption of this Controller* is selected.

- 8 Select **+ Add Row** as needed to populate the table with IP Addresses or Hostnames used as Access Point adoption resources into the managed network. A Hostname cannot exceed 64 characters.

<b>Host</b>	Use the drop-down menu to specify whether the adoption resource is defined as a (non DNS) <i>IP Address</i> or a <i>Hostname</i> . Once defined, provide the numerical IP or Hostname. A Hostname cannot exceed 64 characters.
<b>Pool</b>	Use the spinner control to set a pool of either 1 or 2. This is the pool the target controller or service platform belongs to.
<b>Routing Level</b>	Define a routing level (either 1 or 2) for the link between adopting devices. The default setting is 1.
<b>IPSec Secure</b>	Enable this option to provide IPSec secure peer authentication on the connection (link) between the adopting devices. This option is disabled by default.
<b>IPSec GW</b>	Select the numerical IP address or administrator defined hostname of the adopting controller resource. A Hostname cannot exceed 64 characters.
<b>Force</b>	Enable this setting to create a forced link between an Access Point and adopting controller, even when not necessarily needed. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Remote VPN Client</b>	Displays whether a secure controller link has been established using a remote VPN client.

- 9 Select **OK** to save the changes to the controller or service platform profile adoption configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 8.5 Profile Radio Power (AP7161, AP81XX Only)

This option is only available for AP7161, AP8122 and AP8132 Access Points.

Use the *Power* screen to set one of two power modes (*3af* or *Auto*) for the Access Point profile. When *Automatic* is selected, the Access Point safely operates within available power. Once the power configuration is determined, the Access Point configures its operating power characteristics based on its model and power configuration.

An Access Point uses a *complex programmable logic device* (CPLD) to manage power. The CPLD determines proper supply sequencing, the maximum power available and other status information. One of the primary functions of the CPLD is to determine the maximum power budget. When an Access Point is powered on (or performing a cold reset), the CPLD determines the maximum power provided by the POE device and the budget available to the Access Point. The CPLD also determines the Access Point hardware SKU (model) and the number of radios.

If the Access Point's POE resource cannot provide sufficient power to run the Access Point (with all intended interfaces enabled), some of the following interfaces could be disabled or modified:

- The Access Point's transmit and receive algorithms could be negatively impacted
- The Access Point's transmit power could be reduced due to insufficient power
- The Access Point's WAN port configuration could be changed (either enabled or disabled)

To define an Access Point's power configuration:



- 1 Select the **Configuration** tab from the Web UI.
- 2 Select **Profiles** from the Configuration tab.
- 3 Select **Manage Profiles** from the **Configuration > Profiles** menu.
- 4 Select **Power**.

A screen displays where the Access Point profile's power mode can be defined.



**Figure 8-6** Profile - Power screen

- 5 Use the **Power Mode** drop-down menu to set the **Power Mode Configuration on this AP**.



**NOTE:** Single radio model Access Points always operate using a full power configuration. The power management configurations described in this section do not apply to single radio Access Point models.

When an Access Point is powered on for the first time, it determines the power budget available. Using the *Automatic* setting, the Access Point automatically determines the best power configuration based on the available power budget. *Automatic* is the default setting.

If 802.3af is selected, the Access Point assumes 12.95 watts are available. If the mode is changed, the Access Point requires a reset to implement the change. If 802.3at is selected, the Access Point assumes 23 - 26 watts are available.

- 6 Set the Access Point radio's **802.3af Power Mode** and the radio's **802.3at Power Mode**.
- 7 Use the drop-down menu for each power mode to define a mode of either *Range* or *Throughput*.
- 8 Select *Throughput* to transmit packets at the radio's highest defined basic rate (based on the radio's current basic rate settings). This option is optimal in environments where the transmission range is secondary to broadcast/multicast transmission performance.
- 9 Select *Range* when range is preferred over performance for broadcast/multicast (group) traffic. The data rates used for range are the lowest defined basic rates. *Throughput* is the default setting for both 802.3af and 802.3at.
- 10 Select **OK** to save the changes made to the Access Point power configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

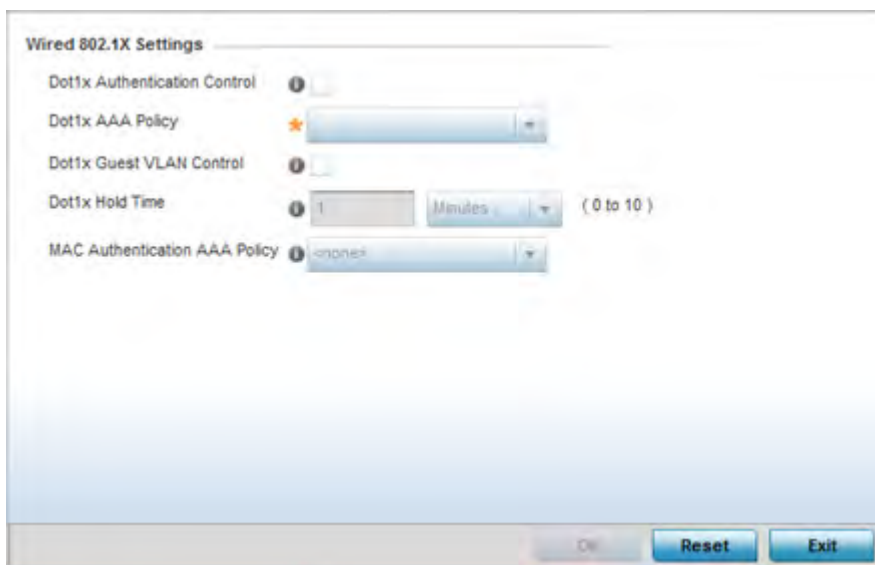


## 8.6 Profile 802.1x Configuration

802.1X provides administrators secure, identity based access control as another data protection option to utilize with a device profile.

802.1X is an IEEE standard for media-level (Layer 2) access control, offering the capability to *permit* or *deny* network connectivity based on the identity of the user or device.

- 1 Select the **Configuration** tab from the Web UI.
- 2 Select **Profiles** from the Configuration tab.
- 3 Select **Manage Profiles** from the **Configuration > Profiles** menu.
- 4 Select **Wired 802.1x**.



**Figure 8-7** Profile - Wired 802.1x screen

- 5 Set the following **Wired 802.1x Settings**:

<b>Dot1x Authentication Control</b>	Select this option to globally enable 802.1x authentication for the selected device. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Dot1x AAA Policy</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select an AAA policy to associate with the wired 802.1x traffic. If a suitable AAA policy does not exist, click the <i>Create</i> icon to create a new policy or the <i>Edit</i> icon to modify an existing policy.
<b>Dot1x Guest VLAN Control</b>	Select this option to globally enable 802.1x guest VLANs for the selected device. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Dot1x Hold Time</b>	Select this option to globally enable 802.1x hold time for the selected device. When Dot1X authentication fails 3 times continuously, this is the time period for which no RADIUS requests are sent. The default value is 1 minute.
<b>MAC Authentication AAA Policy</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select an AAA authentication policy for MAC address authentication. If a suitable MAC AAA policy does not exist, click the <i>Create</i> icon to create a new policy or the <i>Edit</i> icon to modify an existing policy.

6 Select **OK** to save the changes to the 802.1x configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 8.7 Profile Interface Configuration

A profile's interface configuration can be defined to support separate physical Ethernet configurations both unique and specific to controllers and series service platforms. Ports vary depending on platform, but controller or service platform models do have some of the same physical interfaces

A controller or service platform requires its Virtual Interface be configured for layer 3 (IP) access or layer 3 service on a VLAN. A Virtual Interface defines which IP address is associated with each VLAN ID the controller is connected to.

If the profile is configured to support an Access Point radio, an additional Radios option is available, unique to the Access Point's radio configuration.

A profile's interface configuration process consists of the following:

- *Ethernet Port Configuration*
- *Virtual Interface Configuration*
- *Port Channel Configuration*
- *VM Interface Configuration*
- *Access Point Radio Configuration*
- *WAN Backhaul Configuration*
- *PPPoE Configuration*
- *Bluetooth Configuration*

Additionally, deployment considerations and guidelines for profile interface configurations are available for review prior to defining a configuration that could significantly impact the performance of the network. For more information, see *Profile Interface Deployment Considerations*.

### 8.7.1 Ethernet Port Configuration

#### ► *Profile Interface Configuration*

The ports available on controllers vary depending RFS controller model. The following ports are available to controllers:

- RFS4000 - ge1, ge2, ge3, ge4, ge5, up1
- RFS6000 - ge1, ge2, ge3, ge4, ge5, ge6, ge7, ge8, me1, up1

GE ports on RFS4000 and RFS6000 models are RJ-45 ports supporting 10/100/1000Mbps. The GE ports on a RFS7000 can be RJ-45 or fiber ports supporting 10/100/1000Mbps.

ME ports are available on RFS6000 and RFS7000 platforms. ME ports are out-of-band management ports used to manage the controller via CLI or Web UI, even when the other ports on the controller are unreachable.

The following ports are available to NX series service platform models:

- *NX5500* - ge1-ge24
- *NX7500* - ge1-ge24, xge1-xge2
- *NX9000 series* - ge1, ge2, xge1-xge4
- *EX3524* - ge1-1-ge1-24

- *EX3548 - ge1-1-ge1-48*



**NOTE:** For a NX7500 model service platform, there are options for either a 2 port or 4 port network management card. Either card can be managed using WiNG. If the 4 port card is used, ports ge7-ge10 are available. If the 2 port card is used, ports xge1-xge2 are available.

---



---

UP ports are available on RFS4000 and RFS6000 controller. An UP port supports either RJ-45 or fiber. The UP port is the preferred means to connect to the backbone as it has a non-blocking 1gbps connection unlike the GE ports.

The following ports are available on Access Points:

- AP6521 - GE1/POE (LAN)
- AP6522 - GE1/POE (LAN)
- AP6532 - GE1/POE
- AP6562 - GE1/POE
- AP7161 - GE1/POE (LAN), GE2 (WAN)
- AP7502 - GE1 (THRU), fe1, fe2, fe3,
- AP7522 - GE1/POE (LAN)
- AP7532 - GE1/POE (LAN)
- AP7602 - GE1/POE (LAN), GE2 (WAN)
- AP7612 - GE1/POE (LAN), GE2 (WAN)
- AP7622 - GE1/POE (LAN)
- AP7632 - GE1/POE (LAN)
- AP7662 - GE1/POE (LAN), GE2 (WAN)
- AP81XX - GE1/POE (LAN), GE2 (WAN)
- AP82XX - GE1/POE (LAN), GE2 (WAN)

To define a profile's Ethernet port configuration:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Profiles > Interface**.
- 2 Expand the Interface menu to display its submenu options.
- 3 Select **Ethernet Ports**.

The Ethernet Ports screen displays configuration, runtime status and statistics regarding the physical ports on the controller or service platform.

Name	Type	Description	Admin Status	Mode	Native VLAN	Tag Native VLAN	Allowed VLANs
ge1	Ethernet		✓ Enabled	Access	1	✗	
ge2	Ethernet		✓ Enabled	Access	1	✗	
ge3	Ethernet		✓ Enabled	Access	1	✗	
ge4	Ethernet		✓ Enabled	Access	1	✗	
me1	Ethernet		✓ Enabled	Access	1	✗	

Type to search in tables Row Count: 5

Edit Exit

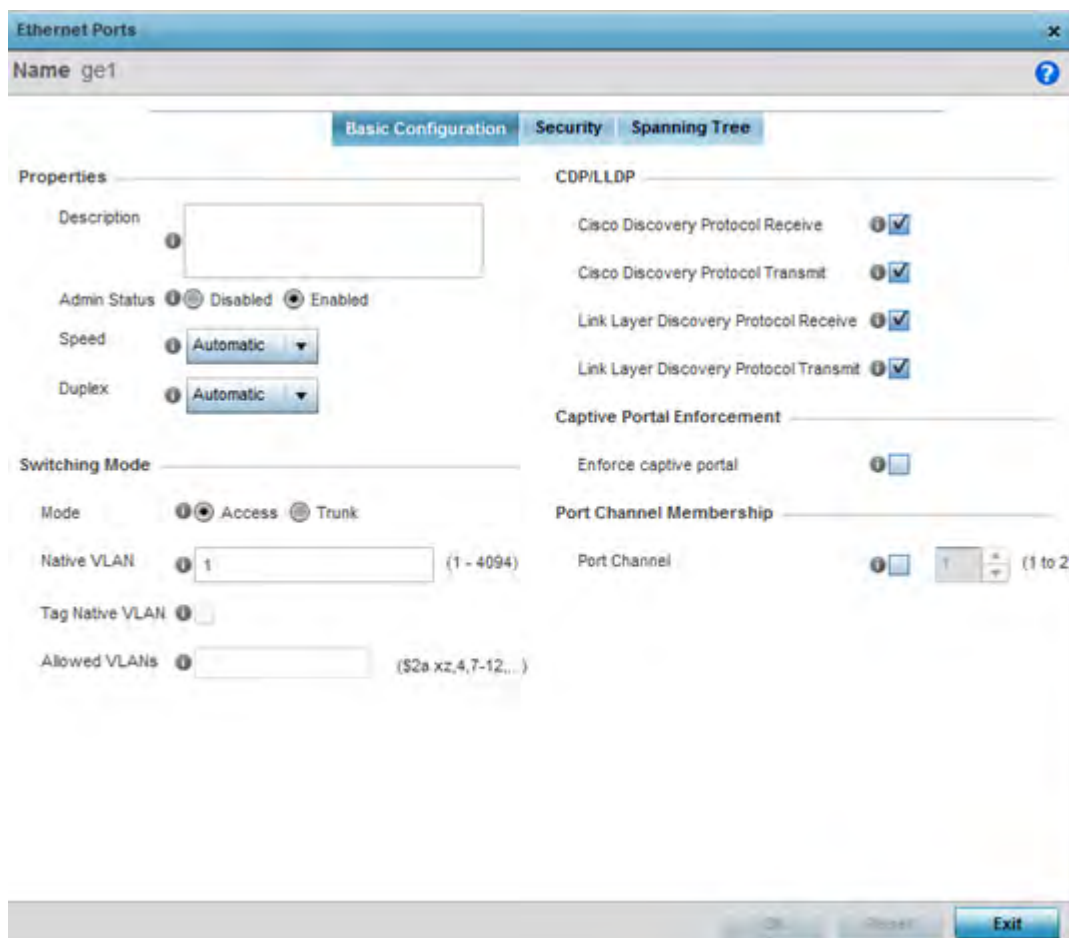
**Figure 8-8** Ethernet Ports screen

4 Refer to the following to assess port status and performance:

<b>Name</b>	<p>Displays the physical port name reporting runtime data and statistics. Supported ports vary depending on Access Point, controller or service platform model.</p> <p>RFS4000 - ge1, ge2, ge3, ge4, ge5, up1  RFS6000 - ge1, ge2, ge3, ge4, ge5, ge6, ge7, ge8, me1, up1  NX5500 - ge1-ge24  NX7500 - ge1-ge24, xge1-xge2  NX9000 series- ge1, ge2, xge1-xge4</p>
<b>Type</b>	<p>Displays the physical port type. Copper is used on RJ45 Ethernet ports and Optical materials are used on fiber optic gigabit Ethernet ports.</p>
<b>Description</b>	<p>Displays an administrator defined description for each listed controller or service platform port.</p>
<b>Admin Status</b>	<p>A green checkmark defines the port as active and currently enabled with the profile. A red "X" defines the port as currently disabled and not available for use. The interface status can be modified with the port configuration as needed.</p>
<b>Mode</b>	<p>Displays the profile's switching mode as currently either <i>Access</i> or <i>Trunk</i> (as defined within the Ethernet Port Basic Configuration screen). If <i>Access</i> is selected, the listed port accepts packets only from the native VLAN. Frames are forwarded out the port untagged with no 802.1Q header. All frames received on the port are expected as untagged and mapped to the native VLAN. If set to <i>Trunk</i>, the port allows packets from a list of VLANs added to the trunk. A port configured as <i>Trunk</i> supports multiple 802.1Q tagged VLANs and one Native VLAN which can be tagged or untagged.</p>

<b>Native VLAN</b>	Lists the numerical VLAN ID (1 - 4094) set for the native VLAN. The native VLAN allows an Ethernet device to associate untagged frames to a VLAN when no 802.1Q frame is included in the frame. Additionally, the native VLAN is the VLAN untagged traffic is directed over when using a port in trunk mode.
<b>Tag Native VLAN</b>	A green checkmark defines the native VLAN as tagged. A red "X" defines the native VLAN as untagged. When a frame is tagged, the 12 bit frame VLAN ID is added to the 802.1Q header so upstream Ethernet devices know which VLAN ID the frame belongs to. The device reads the 12 bit VLAN ID and forwards the frame to the appropriate VLAN. When a frame is received with no 802.1Q header, the upstream device classifies the frame using the default or native VLAN assigned to the Trunk port. A native VLAN allows an Ethernet device to associate untagged frames to a VLAN when no 802.1Q frame is included in the frame.
<b>Allowed VLANs</b>	Displays those VLANs allowed to send packets over the listed port. Allowed VLANs are only listed when the mode has been set to Trunk.

- To edit the configuration of an existing port, select it from amongst those displayed and select the **Edit** button. The Ethernet port **Basic Configuration** screen displays by default.



**Figure 8-9** Ethernet Ports - Basic Configuration screen

6 Set the following Ethernet port **Properties**:

<b>Description</b>	Enter a brief description for the port (64 characters maximum). The description should reflect the port's intended function to differentiate it from others with similar configurations or perhaps just the name of the physical port.
<b>Admin Status</b>	Select the <i>Enabled</i> radio button to define this port as active to the profile it supports. Select the <i>Disabled</i> radio button to disable this physical port in the profile. It can be activated at any future time when needed.
<b>Speed</b>	Select the speed at which the port can receive and transmit the data. Select either <i>10 Mbps</i> , <i>100 Mbps</i> or <i>1000 Mbps</i> . Select either of these options to establish a 10, 100 or 1000 Mbps data transfer rate for the selected half duplex or full duplex transmission over the port. These options are not available if Auto is selected. Select <i>Automatic</i> to enable the port to automatically exchange information about data transmission speed and duplex capabilities. Auto negotiation is helpful when in an environment where different devices are connected and disconnected on a regular basis. Automatic is the default setting.
<b>Duplex</b>	Select either half, full or automatic as the duplex option. Select <i>Half duplex</i> to send data over the port, then immediately receive data from the same direction in which the data was transmitted. Like a full-duplex transmission, a half-duplex transmission can carry data in both directions, just not at the same time. Select <i>Full duplex</i> to transmit data to and from the controller or service platform port at the same time. Using Full duplex, the port can send data while receiving data as well. Select <i>Automatic</i> to dynamically duplex as port performance needs dictate. Automatic is the default setting.

7 Enable or disable the following **CDP/LLDP** parameters used to configure Cisco Discovery Protocol and Link Layer Discovery Protocol for this profile's Ethernet port configuration:

<b>Cisco Discovery Protocol Receive</b>	Select this box to allow the Cisco discovery protocol to be received on this port. If enabled, the port sends out periodic interface updates to a multicast address to advertise its presence to neighbors. This option is enabled by default.
<b>Cisco Discovery Protocol Transmit</b>	Select this box to allow the Cisco discovery protocol to be transmitted on this port. If enabled, the port sends out periodic interface updates to a multicast address to advertise its presence to neighbors.
<b>Link Layer Discovery Protocol Receive</b>	Select this box to allow the Link Layer discovery protocol to be received on this port. If enabled, the port sends out periodic interface updates to a multicast address to advertise its presence to neighbors. This option is enabled by default.
<b>Link Layer Discovery Protocol Transmit</b>	Select this box to allow the Link Layer discovery protocol to be transmitted on this port. If enabled, the port sends out periodic interface updates to a multicast address to advertise its presence to neighbors.

- 8 Set the following **Power Over Ethernet (PoE)** parameters for this profile's Ethernet port configuration:

<b>Enable POE</b>	Select this option to configure the selected controller or service platform port to use Power over Ethernet. To disable PoE on a port, uncheck this option. PoE is supported on RFS4000 and RFS6000 model controllers.  When enabled, the controller or service platform supports 802.3af PoE on each of its ge ports. The PoE allows users to monitor port power consumption and configure power usage limits and priorities for each ge port.
<b>Power Limit</b>	Use the spinner control to set the total watts available for Power over Ethernet on the defined ge port. Set a value between 0 - 40 watts.
<b>Power Priority</b>	Set the power priority for the listed port to either to either <i>Low</i> , <i>Medium</i> or <i>High</i> . This is the priory assigned to this port versus the power requirements of the other ports on the controller or service platform.

- 9 Define the following **Switching Mode** parameters to apply to the Ethernet port configuration:

<b>Mode</b>	Select either the <i>Access</i> or <i>Trunk</i> radio button to set the VLAN switching mode over the port. If <i>Access</i> is selected, the port accepts packets only form the native VLANs. Frames are forwarded out the port untagged with no 802.1Q header. All frames received on the port are expected as untagged and are mapped to the native VLAN. If the mode is set to <i>Trunk</i> , the port allows packets from a list of VLANs you add to the trunk. A port configured as <i>Trunk</i> supports multiple 802.1Q tagged VLANs and one Native VLAN which can be tagged or untagged. <i>Access</i> is the default mode.
<b>Native VLAN</b>	Use the spinner control to define a numerical <i>Native VLAN ID</i> between 1 - 4094. The native VLAN allows an Ethernet device to associate untagged frames to a VLAN when no 802.1Q frame is included in the frame. Additionally, the native VLAN is the VLAN which untagged traffic will be directed over when using a port in trunk mode. The default VLAN is 1.
<b>Tag Native VLAN</b>	Select the check box to tag the native VLAN. Devices support the IEEE 802.1Q specification for tagging frames and coordinating VLANs between devices. IEEE 802.1Q adds four bytes to each frame identifying the VLAN ID for upstream devices that the frame belongs. If the upstream Ethernet device does not support IEEE 802.1Q tagging, it does not interpret the tagged frames. When VLAN tagging is required between devices, both devices must support tagging and be configured to accept tagged VLANs. When a frame is tagged, the 12 bit frame VLAN ID is added to the 802.1Q header so upstream Ethernet devices know which VLAN ID the frame belongs to. The device reads the 12 bit VLAN ID and forwards the frame to the appropriate VLAN. When a frame is received with no 802.1Q header, the upstream device classifies the frame using the default or native VLAN assigned to the Trunk port. The native VLAN allows an Ethernet device to associate untagged frames to a VLAN when no 802.1Q frame is included in the frame. This feature is disabled by default.
<b>Allowed VLANs</b>	Selecting <i>Trunk</i> as the mode enables the <i>Allowed VLANs</i> parameter. Add VLANs that exclusively send packets over the listed port.

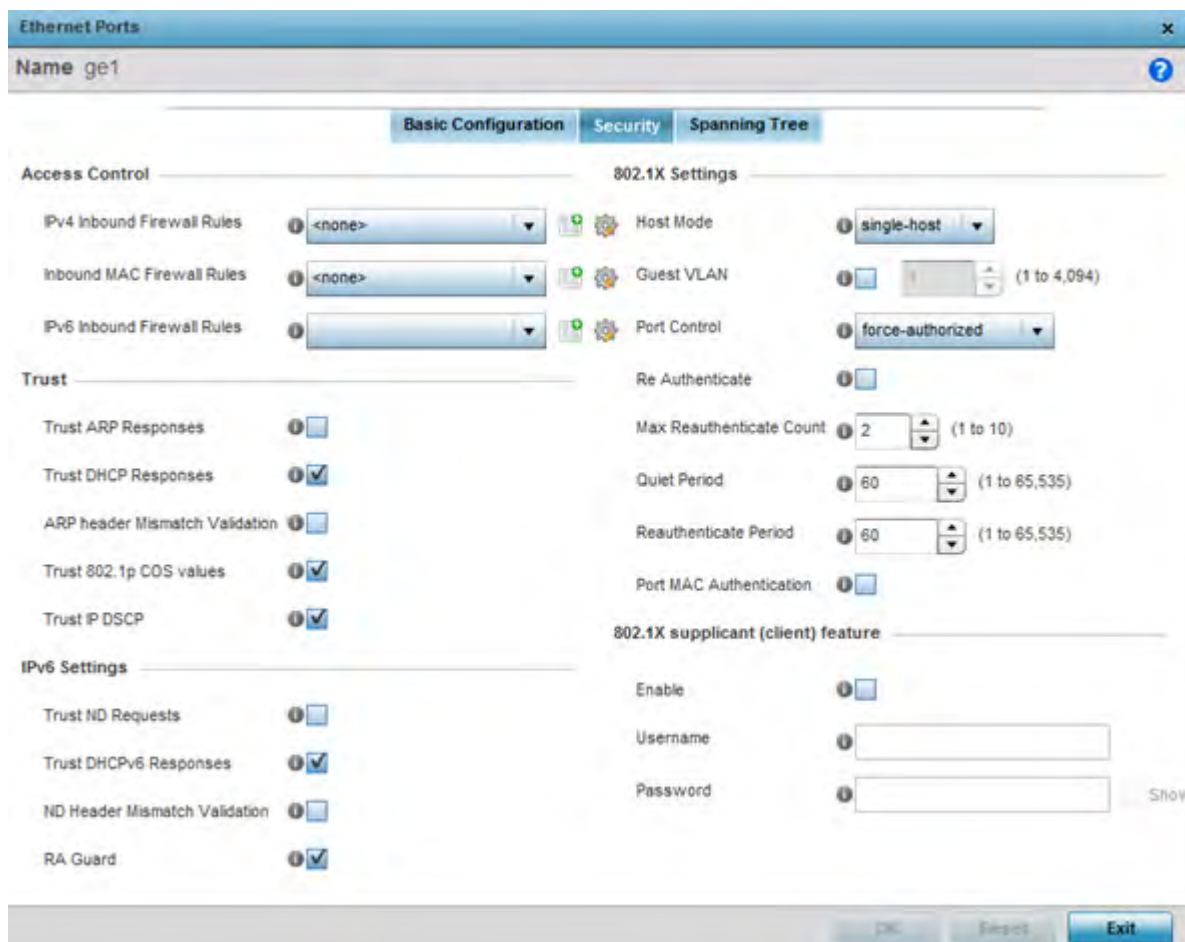
- 10 Select a **Captive Portal Enforcement** option for the selected Ethernet port interface.

Captive portal enforcement allows wired network users to pass traffic through the captive portal without being redirected to an authentication page. Authentication instead takes place when the RADIUS server is queried against the wired user's MAC address. If the MAC address is in the RADIUS server's user database, the user can



pass traffic on the captive portal. If **None** is selected, captive portal policies are not enforced on the wired interface. If **Authentication Failure** is selected, captive portal policies are enforced only when RADIUS authentication of the client's MAC address is not successful. If **Always** is selected, captive portal policies are enforced regardless of whether the client's MAC address is in the RADIUS server's user database.

- 11 Optionally select the **Port Channel** checkbox and define a setting between 1 - 3 using the spinner control. This sets the channel group for the port. The upper limit depends on the device on which this value is configured.
- 12 Select **OK** to save the changes made to the Ethernet Port Basic Configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.
- 13 Select the **Security** tab.



**Figure 8-10** Ethernet Ports - Security screen

- 14 Refer to the **Access Control** field. As part of the port's security configuration, inbound IPv4/IPv6 and MAC address firewall rules are required.  
Use the drop-down menus to select the firewall rules to apply to this profile's Ethernet port configuration. The firewall inspects IP and MAC traffic flows and detects attacks typically not visible to traditional wired firewall appliances.  
Use the **IPv4 Inbound Firewall Rules** drop down menu to select the IPv4 specific firewall rules to apply to this profile's Ethernet port configuration. IPv4 is a connectionless protocol for packet switched networking. IPv4 operates as a best effort delivery method, as it does not guarantee delivery, and does not ensure proper

sequencing or duplicate delivery (unlike (TCP). IPv4 hosts can use link local addressing to provide local connectivity.

Use the **IPv6 Inbound Firewall Rules** drop down menu to select the IPv6 specific firewall rules to apply to this profile's Ethernet port configuration. IPv6 is the latest revision of the *Internet Protocol* (IP) designed to replace IPv4. IPV6 provides enhanced identification and location information for computers on networks routing traffic across the Internet. IPv6 addresses are composed of eight groups of four hexadecimal digits separated by colons.

If a firewall rule does not exist suiting the data protection needs of the target port configuration, select the **Create** icon to define a new rule configuration or select the **Edit** icon to modify an existing configuration.

15 Refer to the **Trust** field to define the following:

<b>Trust ARP Responses</b>	Select the check box to enable ARP trust on this port. ARP packets received on this port are considered trusted and information from these packets is used to identify rogue devices within the network. The default value is disabled.
<b>Trust DHCP Responses</b>	Select the check box to enable DHCP trust on this port. If enabled, only DHCP responses are trusted and forwarded on this port, and a DHCP server can be connected only to a DHCP trusted port. The default value is enabled.
<b>ARP header Mismatch Validation</b>	Select this option to enable a mismatch check for the source MAC in both the ARP and Ethernet header. The default value is disabled.
<b>Trust 802.1p COS values</b>	Select the check box to enable 802.1p COS values on this port. The default value is enabled.
<b>Trust IP DSCP</b>	Select the check box to enable IP DSCP values on this port. The default value is enabled.



**NOTE:** Some vendor solutions with VRRP enabled send ARP packets with Ethernet SMAC as a physical MAC and inner ARP SMAC as VRRP MAC. If this configuration is enabled, a packet is allowed, despite a conflict existing.

16 Set the following **IPv6 Settings**:

<b>Trust ND Requests</b>	Select this option to enable IPv6 neighbor discovery request trust on this Ethernet port. IPv6 hosts can configure themselves automatically when connected to an IPv6 network using the neighbor discovery Protocol via ICMPv6 router discovery messages. When first connected to a network, a host sends a link-local router solicitation multicast request for its configuration parameters; routers respond to such a request with a router advertisement packet that contains Internet Layer configuration parameters. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Trust DHCPv6 Responses</b>	Select this option to enable the trust all DHCPv6 responses on this Ethernet port. DHCPv6 is a networking protocol for configuring IPv6 hosts with IP addresses, IP prefixes or other configuration attributes required on an IPv6 network. DHCPv6 relay agents receive messages from clients and forward them a DHCPv6 server. The server sends responses back to the relay agent, and the relay agent sends the responses to the client on the local link. This setting is enabled by default.

<b>ND Header Mismatch Validation</b>	Select this option to enable a mismatch check for the source MAC within the neighbor discovery header and link layer option. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>RA Guard</b>	Select this option to enable router advertisements or ICMPv6 redirects from this Ethernet port. Router advertisements are periodically sent to hosts or sent in response to neighbor solicitation requests. The advertisement includes IPv6 prefixes and other subnet and host information. This setting is disabled by default.

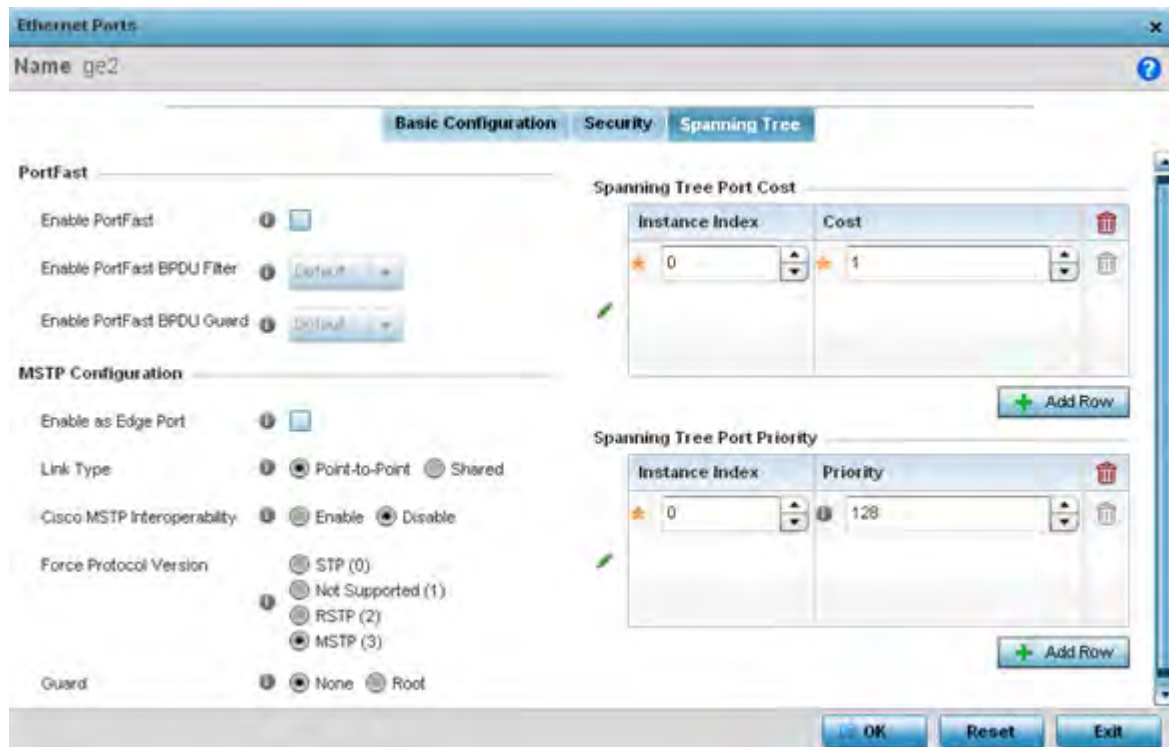
17 Set the following **802.1X Settings**:

<b>Host Mode</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the host mode configuration to apply to this port. Options include <i>single-host</i> or <i>multi-host</i> . The default setting is single-host.
<b>Guest VLAN</b>	Specify a guest VLAN for this port from 1 - 4094. This is the VLAN traffic is bridged on if this port is unauthorized and the guest VLAN is globally enabled.
<b>Port Control</b>	Use the drop-down menu to set the port control state to apply to this port. Options include <i>force-authorized</i> , <i>force-unauthorized</i> and <i>automatic</i> . The default setting is force-authorized.
<b>Re Authenticate</b>	Select this setting to force clients to reauthenticate on this port. The default setting is disabled, thus clients do not need to reauthenticate for connection over this port until this setting is enabled.
<b>Max Reauthenticate Count</b>	Set the maximum reauthentication attempts (1 - 10) before this port is moved to unauthorized. The default setting is 2.
<b>Quiet Period</b>	Set the quiet period for this port from 1 - 65,535 seconds. This is the maximum wait time 802.1x waits upon a failed authentication attempt. The default setting is 60 seconds.
<b>Reauthenticate Period</b>	Use the spinner control to set the reauthentication period for this port from 1 - 65,535 seconds. The default setting is 60 seconds.
<b>Port MAC Authentication</b>	When enabled, a port's MAC address is authenticated, as only one MAC address is supported per wired port. When successfully authenticated, packets from the source are processed. Packets from all other sources are dropped. Port MAC authentication is supported on RFS4000, RFS6000 model controllers. Port MAC authentication may be enabled on ports in conjunction with Wired 802.1x settings for a MAC Authentication AAA policy.

18 Select **Enable** within the **802.1x supplicant (client)** field to enable a *username* and *password* pair used when authenticating users on this port. This setting is disabled by default. The password cannot exceed 32 characters.

19 Select **OK** to save the changes made to the Ethernet port's security configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

20 Select the **Spanning Tree** tab.



**Figure 8-11** Ethernet Ports - Spanning Tree screen

21 Define the following **PortFast** parameters for the port's MSTP configuration:

<b>Enable PortFast</b>	Select the check box to enable fast transitions and drop-down menus for both the Enable Portfast BPDU Filter and Enable Portfast BPDU guard options for the port. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Enable PortFast BPDU Filter</b>	Select enable to invoke a BPDU filter for this portfast enabled port. Enabling the BPDU filter feature ensures this PortFast enabled port does not transmit or receive BPDUs.
<b>Enable PortFast BPDU Guard</b>	Select enable to invoke a BPDU guard for this portfast enabled port. Enabling the BPDU Guard feature means this portfast-enabled port will shutdown on receiving a BPDU. Thus, no BPDUs are processed.

22 Set the following **MSTP Configuration** parameters:

<b>Link Type</b>	Select either the <i>Point-to-Point</i> or <i>Shared</i> radio button. Selecting Point-to-Point indicates the port should be treated as connected to a point-to-point link. Selecting Shared indicates this port should be treated as having a shared connection. A port connected to a hub is on a shared link, while one the connected to a controller or service platform is a point-to-point link.
<b>Cisco MSTP Interoperability</b>	Select either the <i>Enable</i> or <i>Disable</i> radio buttons. This enables interoperability with Cisco's version of MSTP over the port, which is incompatible with standard MSTP.
<b>Force Protocol Version</b>	Sets the protocol version to either <i>STP(0)</i> , <i>Not Supported(1)</i> , <i>RSTP(2)</i> or <i>MSTP(3)</i> . MSTP is the default setting.

<b>Guard</b>	Determines whether the port enforces root bridge placement. Setting the guard to <i>Root</i> ensures the port is a designated port. Typically, each guard root port is a designated port, unless two or more ports (within the root bridge) are connected together. If the bridge receives superior (BPDUs) on a guard root-enabled port, the guard root moves the port to a root-inconsistent STP state. This state is equivalent to a listening state. No data is forwarded across the port. Thus, the guard root enforces the root bridge position.
--------------	--

23 Refer to the **Spanning Tree Port Cost** table.

Define an **Instance Index** using the spinner control, then set the **Cost**. The default path cost depends on the speed of the port. The cost helps determine the role of the port in the MSTP network. The designated cost is the cost for a packet to travel from this port to the root in the MSTP configuration. The slower the media, the higher the cost.

Speed	Default Path Cost
<=100000 bits/sec	200000000
<=1000000 bits/sec	20000000
<=10000000 bits/sec	2000000
<=100000000 bits/sec	200000
<=1000000000 bits/sec	20000
<=10000000000 bits/sec	2000
<=100000000000 bits/sec	200
<=1000000000000 bits/sec	20
>1000000000000 bits/sec	2

24 Select **+ Add Row** as needed to include additional indexes.

25 Refer to the **Spanning Tree Port Priority** table.

Define an **Instance Index** using the spinner control and then set the **Priority**. The lower the priority, a greater likelihood of the port becoming a designated port. Thus applying an higher override value impacts the port's likelihood of becoming a designated port.

Select **+ Add Row** needed to include additional indexes.

26 Select **OK** to save the changes made to the Ethernet Port's spanning tree configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 8.7.2 Virtual Interface Configuration

### ► Profile Interface Configuration

A Virtual Interface is required for layer 3 (IP) access or to provide layer 3 service on a VLAN. The Virtual Interface defines which IP address is associated with each connected VLAN ID. A Virtual Interface is created for the default VLAN (VLAN 1) to enable remote administration. A Virtual Interface is also used to map VLANs to IP address ranges. This mapping determines the destination networks for routing.

To review existing Virtual Interface configurations and either create a new Virtual Interface configuration, modify an existing configuration or delete an existing configuration:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Profiles > Interface**.
- 2 Expand the Interface menu to display its submenu options.
- 3 Select **Virtual Interfaces**.

Name	Type	Description	Admin Status	VLAN	IP Address
vlan1	VLAN		✗ Disabled	1	
vlan4	VLAN		✓ Enabled	4	
vlan5	VLAN		✓ Enabled	5	dhcp

Type to search in tables Row Count: 3

Add Edit Delete Exit

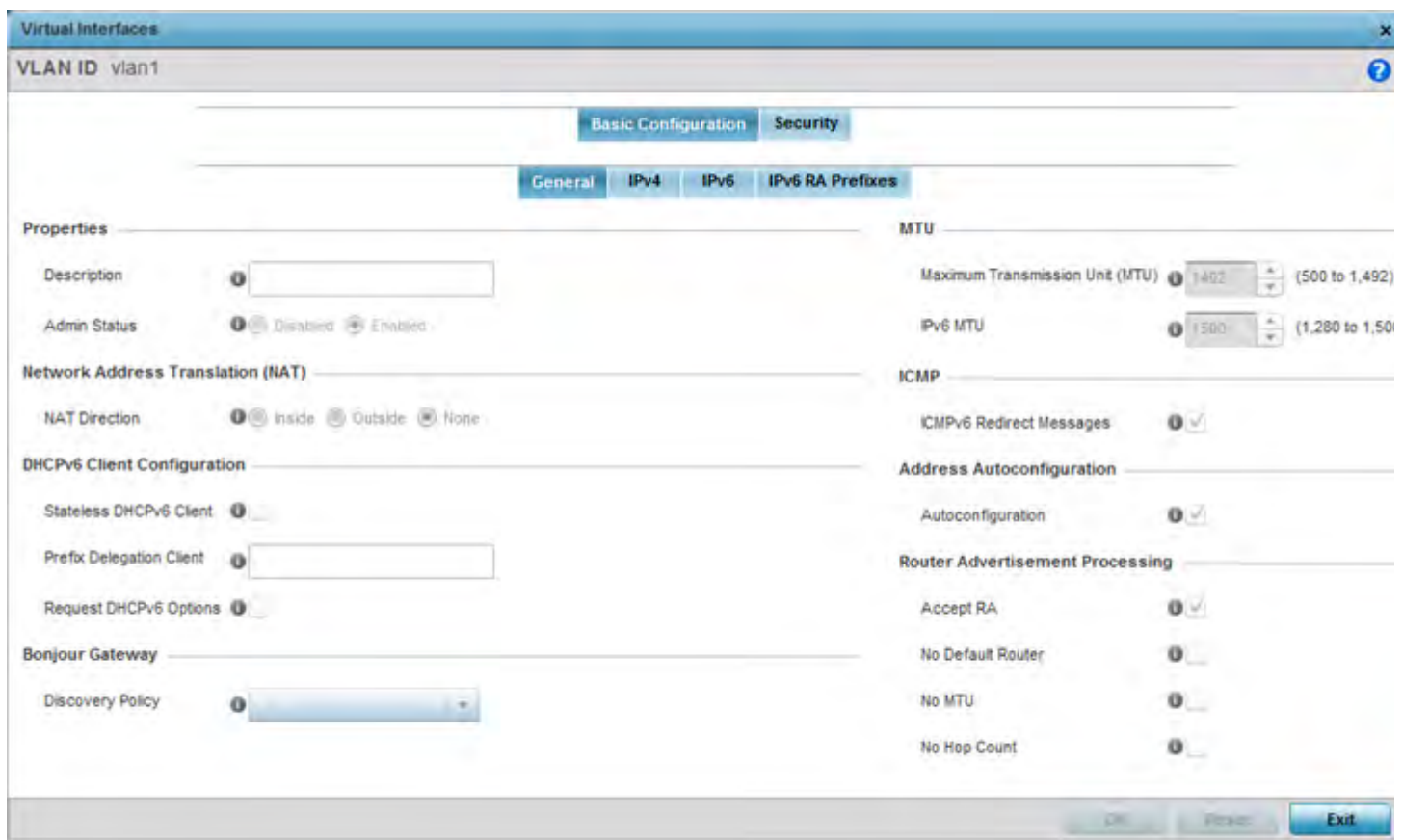
**Figure 8-12** Virtual Interfaces screen

- 4 Review the following parameters unique to each virtual interface configuration:

<b>Name</b>	Displays the name of each listed Virtual Interface assigned when it was created. The name is between 1 - 4094, and cannot be modified as part of a Virtual Interface edit.
<b>Type</b>	Displays the type of Virtual Interface for each listed interface.
<b>Description</b>	Displays the description defined for the Virtual Interface when it was either initially created or edited.
<b>Admin Status</b>	A green checkmark defines the listed Virtual Interface configuration as active and enabled with its supported profile. A red "X" defines the Virtual Interface as currently disabled. The interface status can be modified when a new Virtual Interface is created or an existing one modified.
<b>VLAN</b>	Displays the numerical VLAN ID associated with each listed interface.
<b>IP Address</b>	Defines whether DHCP was used to obtain the primary IP address used by the Virtual Interface configuration.



- 5 Select **Add** to define a new Virtual Interface configuration, **Edit** to modify the configuration of an existing Virtual Interface or **Delete** to permanently remove a selected Virtual Interface.



**Figure 8-13** Virtual Interfaces - Basic Configuration screen - General tab

The **Basic Configuration** screen's **General** tab displays by default, regardless of whether a new Virtual Interface is created or an existing one is being modified.

- 6 If creating a new Virtual Interface, use the **VLAN ID** spinner control to define a numeric ID from 1 - 4094. Select the **Continue** button to initialize the rest of the parameters on the screen.
- 7 Define the following parameters from within the **Properties** field:

<b>Description</b>	Provide or edit a description (up to 64 characters) for the Virtual Interface that helps differentiate it from others with similar configurations.
<b>Admin Status</b>	Either select either the <i>Disabled</i> or <i>Enabled</i> radio button to define this interface's current status. When set to Enabled, the Virtual Interface is operational and available. The default value is enabled.



- 8 Define the following NAT parameters from within the **Network Address Translation (NAT)** field:

<b>NAT Direction</b>	<p>Define the <i>Network Address Translation</i> (NAT) direction. Options include:</p> <p><i>Inside</i> - The inside network is transmitting data over the network its intended destination. On the way out, the source IP address is changed in the header and replaced by the (public) IP address.</p> <p><i>Outside</i> - Packets passing through the NAT on the way back to the controller or service platform managed LAN are searched against to the records kept by the NAT engine. There, the destination IP address is changed back to the specific internal private class IP address in order to reach the LAN over the network.</p> <p><i>None</i> - No NAT activity takes place. This is the default setting.</p>
----------------------	---

- 9 Set the following **DHCPv6 Client Configuration**. The *Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol* for IPv6 (DHCPv6) provides a framework for passing configuration information.

<b>Stateless DHCPv6 Client</b>	Select this option to request information from the DHCPv6 server using stateless DHCPv6. DHCPv6 is a networking protocol for configuring IPv6 hosts with IP addresses, IP prefixes or other configuration attributes required on an IPv6 network. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Prefix Delegation Client</b>	Specify a 32 character maximum request prefix for prefix delegation from a DHCPv6 server over this virtual interface. Devices use prefixes to distinguish destinations that reside on-link from those reachable using a router.
<b>Request DHCPv6 Options</b>	Select this option to request DHCPv6 options on this virtual interface. DHCPv6 options provide configuration information for a node that must be booted using the network rather than locally. This setting is disabled by default.

- 10 Set the **Bonjour Gateway** settings for the virtual interface.

Bonjour is Apple's implementation of zero-configuration networking (Zeroconf). Zeroconf is a group of technologies that include service discovery, address assignment and hostname resolution. Bonjour locates devices such as printers, other computers and services that these computers offer over a local network.

Bonjour provides a general method to discover services on a *local area network* (LAN). It allows users to set up a network without any configuration. Services such as printers, scanners and file-sharing servers can be found using Bonjour. Bonjour only works within a single broadcast domain. However, with special DNS configuration, it can be extended to find services across broadcast domains.

From the drop-down, select the Bonjour Gateway discover policy. Select the **Create** icon to define a new Bonjour Gateway policy configuration or select the **Edit** icon to modify an existing Bonjour Gateway policy configuration.

- 11 Set the following **MTU** settings for the virtual interface:

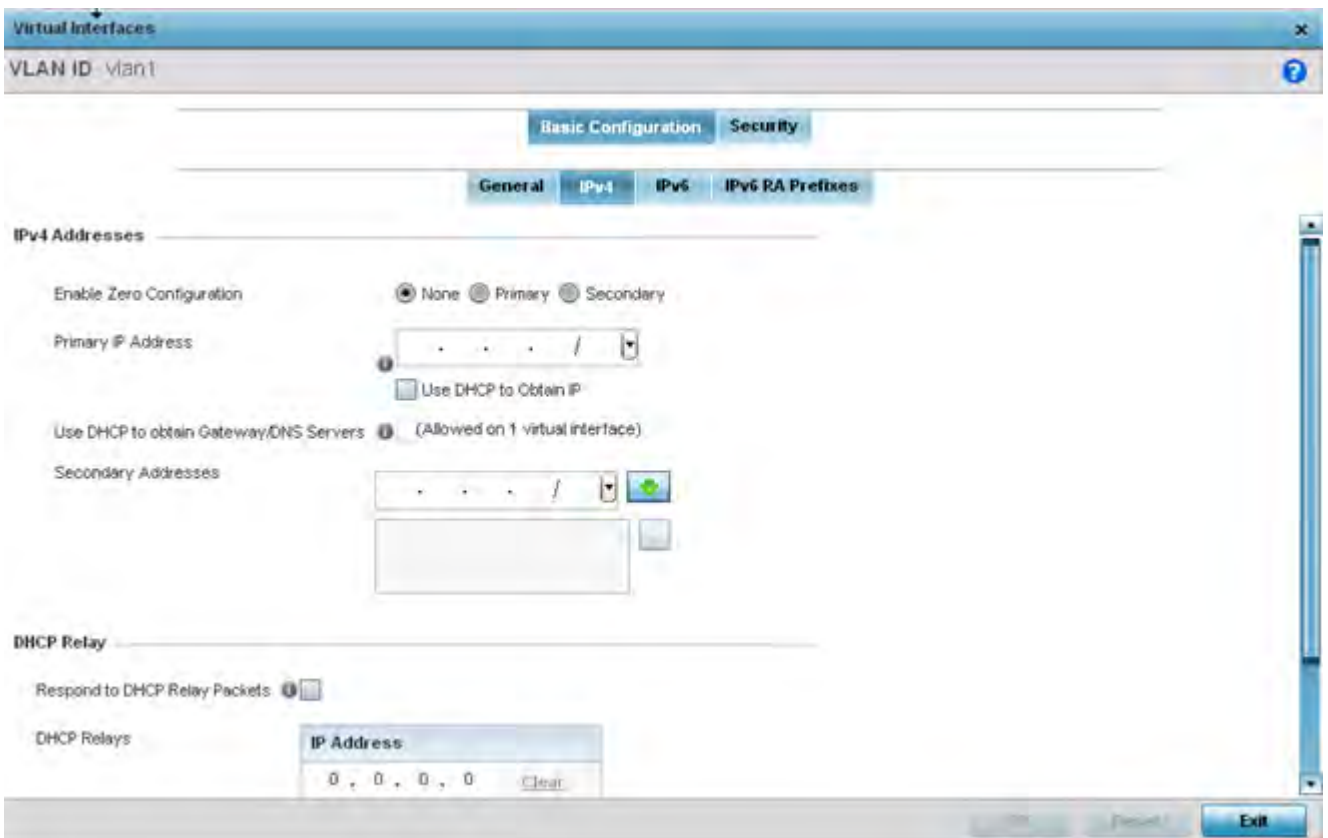
<b>Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU)</b>	Set the PPPoE client <i>maximum transmission unit</i> (MTU) from 500 - 1,492. The MTU is the largest physical packet size in bytes a network can transmit. Any messages larger than the MTU are divided into smaller packets before being sent. A PPPoE client should be able to maintain its point-to-point connection for this defined MTU size. The default MTU is 1,492.
--	--

<b>IPv6 MTU</b>	Set an IPv6 MTU for this virtual interface from 1,280 - 1,500. A larger MTU provides greater efficiency because each packet carries more user data while protocol overheads, such as headers or underlying per-packet delays, remain fixed; the resulting higher efficiency means a slight improvement in bulk protocol throughput. A larger MTU results in the processing of fewer packets for the same amount of data. The default is 1,500.
-----------------	--

- 12 Within the **ICMP** field, define whether ICMPv6 redirect messages are sent. A redirect requests data packets be sent on an alternative route. This setting is enabled by default.
- 13 Within the **Address Autoconfiguration** field, define whether to configure IPv6 addresses on this virtual interface based on the prefixes received in router advertisement messages. Router advertisements contain prefixes used for link determination, address configuration and maximum hop limits. This setting is enabled by default.
- 14 Set the following **Router Advertisement Processing** settings for the virtual interface. Router advertisements are periodically sent to hosts or sent in response to solicitation requests. The advertisement includes IPv6 prefixes and other subnet and host information.

<b>Accept RA</b>	Enable this option to allow router advertisements over this virtual interface. IPv6 hosts can configure themselves automatically when connected to an IPv6 network using the neighbor discovery protocol via ICMPv6 router discovery messages. When first connected to a network, a host sends a link-local router solicitation multicast request for its configuration parameters; routers respond to such a request with a router advertisement packet that contains Internet layer configuration parameters. This setting is enabled by default.
<b>No Default Router</b>	Select this option to consider routers unavailable on this interface for default router selection. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>No MTU</b>	Select this option to not use the existing MTU setting for router advertisements on this virtual interface. If the value is set to zero no MTU options are sent. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>No Hop Count</b>	Select this option to not use the hop count advertisement setting for router advertisements on this virtual interface. This setting is disabled by default.

- 15 Select **OK** to save the changes. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.
- 16 Select the **IPv4** tab to set IPv4 settings for this virtual interface.  
 IPv4 is a connectionless protocol operating on a best effort delivery model. IPv4 does not guarantee delivery or assures proper sequencing or avoidance of duplicate delivery (unlike TCP).



**Figure 8-14** Virtual Interfaces - Basic Configuration screen - IPv4 tab

17 Set the following network information from within the **IPv4 Addresses** field:

<b>Enable Zero Configuration</b>	Zero configuration can be a means of providing a primary or secondary IP addresses for the virtual interface. Zero configuration (or zero config) is a wireless connection utility included with Microsoft Windows XP and later as a service dynamically selecting a network to connect based on a user's preferences and various default settings. Zero config can be used instead of a wireless network utility from the manufacturer of a computer's wireless networking device. This value is set to None by default.
<b>Primary IP Address</b>	Define the IP address for the VLAN associated Virtual Interface.
<b>Use DHCP to Obtain IP</b>	Select this option to allow DHCP to provide the IP address for the Virtual Interface. Selecting this option disables the Primary IP address field.
<b>Use DHCP to obtain Gateway/DNS Servers</b>	Select this option to allow DHCP to obtain a default gateway address and DNS resource for <i>one</i> virtual interface. This setting is disabled by default and only available when the <i>Use DHCP to Obtain IP</i> option is selected.
<b>Secondary Addresses</b>	Use the <i>Secondary Addresses</i> parameter to define additional IP addresses to associate with VLAN IDs. The address provided in this field is used if the primary IP address is unreachable.

18 Refer to the **DHCP Relay** field to set the DHCP relay server configuration used with the Virtual Interface.

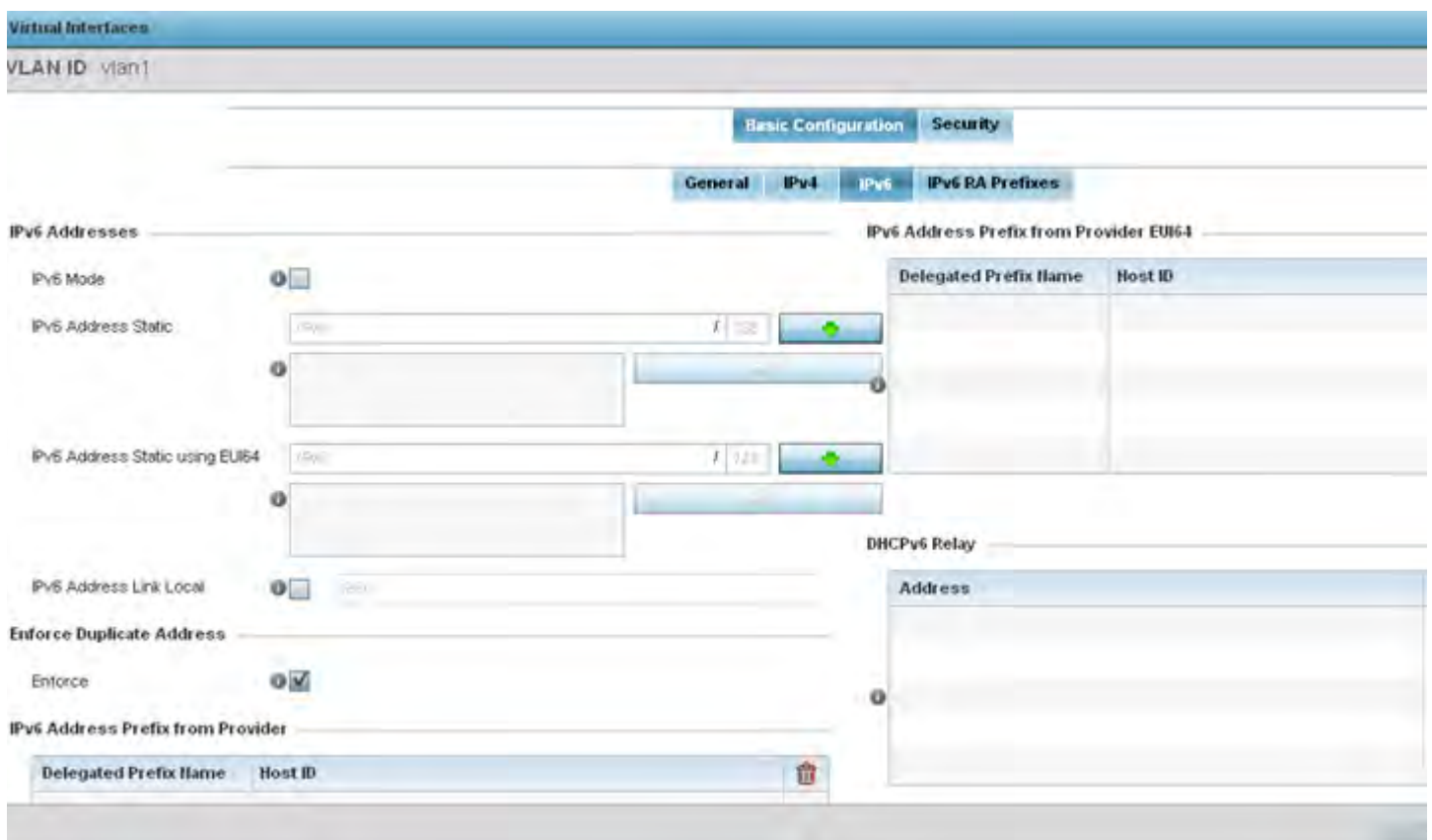
<b>Respond to DHCP Relay Packets</b>	Select this option to allow the onboard DHCP server to respond to relayed DHCP packets on this interface. This setting is disabled by default.
--------------------------------------	--

<b>DHCP Relays</b>	Provide IP addresses for DHCP server relay resources. DHCP relays exchange messages between a DHCPv6 server and client. A client and relay agent exist on the same link. When A DHCP request is received from the client, the relay agent creates a relay forward message and sends it to a specified server address. If no addresses are specified, the relay agent forwards the message to all DHCP server relay multicast addresses. The server creates a relay reply and sends it back to the relay agent. The relay agent then sends back the response to the client.
--------------------	--

19 Select **OK** to save the changes to the IPv4 configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

20 Select the **IPv6** tab to set IPv6 settings for this virtual interface.

IPv6 is the latest revision of the *Internet Protocol* (IP) designed to replace IPv4. IPv6 provides enhanced identification and location information for computers on networks routing traffic across the Internet. IPv6 addresses are composed of eight groups of four hexadecimal digits separated by colons. IPv6 hosts can configure themselves automatically when connected to an IPv6 network using the neighbor discovery protocol via ICMPv6 router discovery messages. When first connected to a network, a host sends a link-local router solicitation multicast request for its configuration parameters; routers respond to such a request with a router advertisement packet that contains Internet layer configuration parameters.



**Figure 8-15** Virtual Interfaces - Basic Configuration screen - IPv6 tab

21 Enable the **Enforce Duplicate Address** option to enforce duplicate address protection when any wired port is connected and in a forwarding state. This option is enabled by default.

22 Refer to the **IPv6 Address Prefix from Provider** table to create IPv6 format prefix shortcuts as supplied by an ISP.

Select **+ Add Row** to launch a sub screen wherein a new delegated prefix name and host ID can be defined.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Add Row" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. Below the title bar, the text "IPv6 Address Prefix from Provider" is displayed. There are two main input fields: "Delegated Prefix Name" and "Host ID". The "Delegated Prefix Name" field is a simple text input box. The "Host ID" field is more complex, featuring a text input box, a dropdown menu, and a green arrow button. At the bottom right of the dialog, there is a blue "Exit" button.

**Figure 8-16** *Virtual Interfaces - Basic Configuration screen - IPv6 tab - Add Address Prefix from Provider*

<b>Delegated Prefix Name</b>	Enter a 32 character maximum name for the IPv6 address prefix from provider.
<b>Host ID</b>	Define the subnet ID, host ID and prefix length.

Select **OK** to save the changes to the new IPv6 prefix from provider. Select **Exit** to close the screen without saving the updates.

23 Refer to the **IPv6 Address Prefix from Provider EUI64** table to set an (abbreviated) IP address prefix in EUI64 format.

Select **+ Add Row** to launch a sub screen wherein a new delegated prefix name and host ID can be defined in EUI64 format.

**Figure 8-17** Virtual Interfaces - Basic Configuration screen - IPv6 tab - Add Address Prefix from Provider EUI64

<b>Delegated Prefix Name</b>	Enter a 32 character maximum name for the IPv6 prefix from provider in EUI format. Using EUI64, a host can automatically assign itself a unique 64-bit IPv6 interface identifier without manual configuration or DHCP.
<b>Host ID</b>	Define the subnet ID and prefix length.

24 Select **OK** to save the changes to the new IPv6 prefix from provider in EUI64 format. Select **Exit** to close the screen without saving the updates.

25 Refer to the **DHCPv6 Relay** table to set the address and interface of the DHCPv6 relay.

The DHCPv6 relay enhances an extended DHCP relay agent by providing support in IPv6. DHCP relays exchange messages between a DHCPv6 server and client. A client and relay agent exist on the same link. When A DHCP request is received from the client, the relay agent creates a relay forward message and sends it to a specified server address. If no addresses are specified, the relay agent forwards the message to all DHCP server relay multicast addresses. The server creates a relay reply and sends it back to the relay agent. The relay agent then sends back the response to the client.

26 Select **+ Add Row** to launch a sub screen wherein a new DHCPv6 relay address and interface VLAN ID can be set.

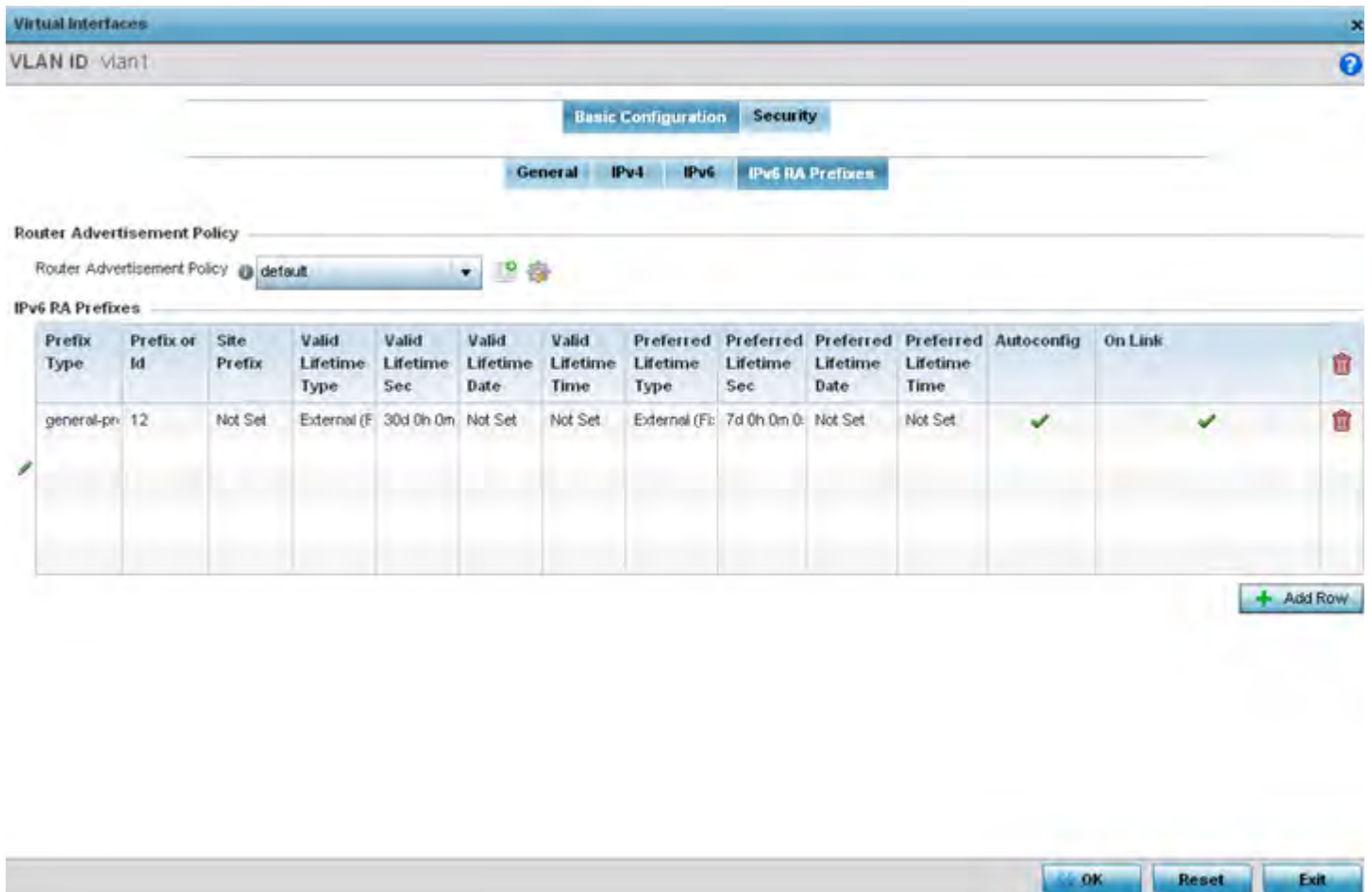
**Figure 8-18** *Virtual Interfaces - Basic Configuration screen - IPv6 tab - Add DHCPv6 Relay*

<b>Address</b>	Enter an address for the DHCPv6 relay. These DHCPv6 relay receive messages from DHCPv6 clients and forward them to DHCPv6 servers. The DHCPv6 server sends responses back to the relay, and the relay then sends these responses to the client on the local network link.
<b>Interface</b>	Select this option to enable a spinner control to define a VLAN ID from 1 - 4,094 used as the virtual interface for the DHCPv6 relay. The interface designation is only required for link local and multicast addresses. A local link address is a locally derived address designed for addressing on a single link for automatic address configuration, neighbor discovery or when no routing resources are available.

27 Select **OK** to save the changes to the DHCPv6 relay configuration. Select **Exit** to close the screen without saving the updates.

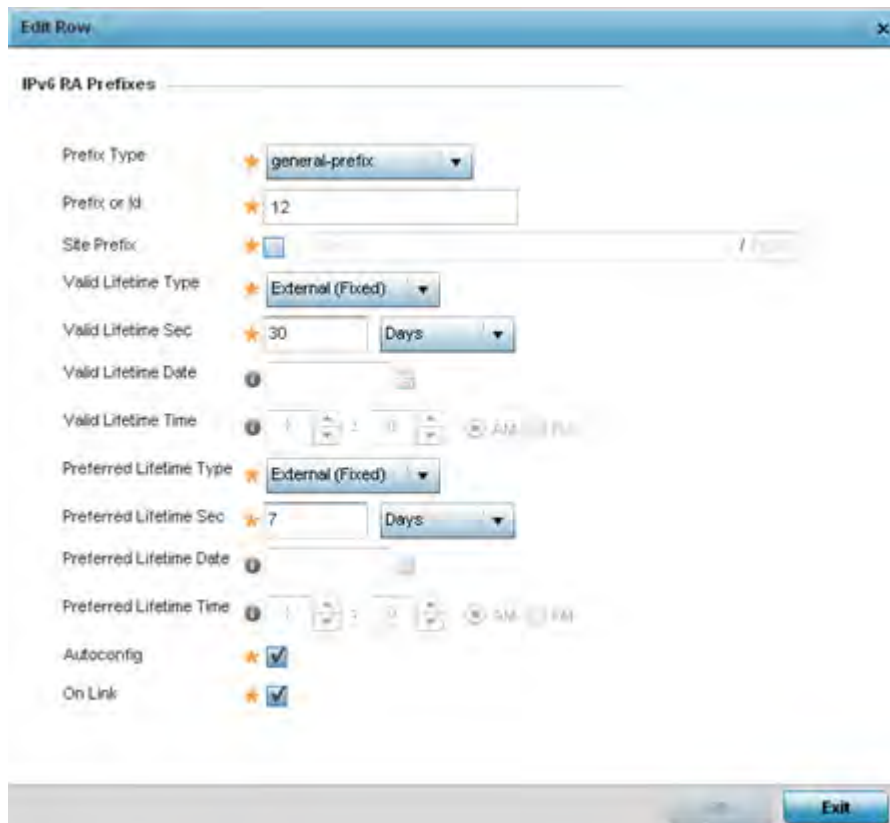
28 Select the **IPv6 RA Prefixes** tab.





**Figure 8-19** *Virtual Interfaces - Basic Configuration screen - IPv6 RA Prefixes tab*

- 29 Use the **Router Advertisement Policy** drop-down menu to select and apply a policy to the virtual interface. Router advertisements are periodically sent to hosts or sent in response to solicitation requests. The advertisement includes IPv6 prefixes and other subnet and host information.
- 30 Review the configurations of existing IPv6 advertisement policies. If needed select **+ Add Row** to define the configurations of up to 16 additional IPv6 RA prefix configurations.



**Figure 8-20** Virtual Interfaces - Basic Configuration screen - Add IPv6 RA Prefix

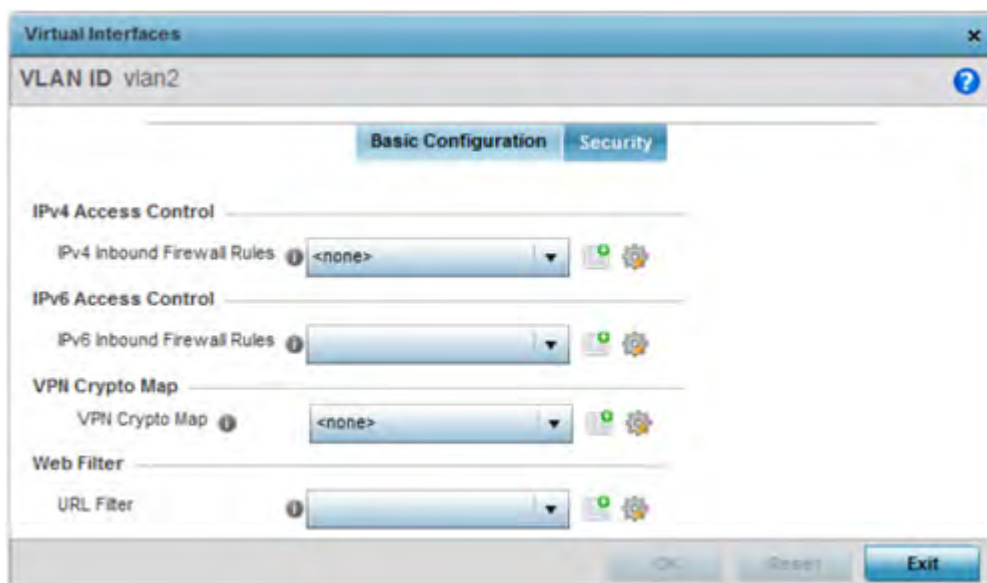
31 Set the following **IPv6 RA Prefix** settings:

<b>Prefix Type</b>	Set the prefix delegation type used with this configuration. Options include <i>general-prefix</i> (default), <i>Prefix</i> , and <i>prefix-from-provider</i> . The default setting is Prefix. A provider assigned prefix is made available from an <i>Internet Service Provider</i> (ISP) to automate the process of providing and informing the prefixes used.
<b>Prefix or ID</b>	Set the actual prefix or ID used with the IPv6 router advertisement.
<b>Site Prefix</b>	The site prefix is added into a router advertisement prefix. The site address prefix signifies the address is only on the local link.
<b>Valid Lifetime Type</b>	Set the lifetime for the prefix's validity. Options include <i>External (fixed)</i> , <i>decrementing</i> and <i>infinite</i> . If set to <i>External (fixed)</i> , just the <i>Valid Lifetime Sec</i> setting is enabled to define the exact time interval for prefix validity. If set to <i>decrementing</i> , use the lifetime date and time settings to refine the prefix expiry period. If the value is set for <i>infinite</i> , no additional date or time settings are required for the prefix and the prefix will not expire. The default setting is <i>External (fixed)</i> .
<b>Valid Lifetime Sec</b>	If the lifetime type is set to <i>External (fixed)</i> , set the <i>Seconds</i> , <i>Minutes</i> , <i>Hours</i> or <i>Days</i> value used to measurement criteria for the prefix's expiration. 30 days, 0 hours, 0 minutes and 0 seconds is the default lifetime.
<b>Valid Lifetime Date</b>	If the lifetime type is set to <i>External (fixed)</i> , set the date in MM/DD/YYYY format for the expiration of the prefix.

<b>Valid Lifetime Time</b>	If the lifetime type is set to <i>decrementing</i> , set the time for the prefix's validity.
<b>Preferred Lifetime Type</b>	Set the administrator preferred lifetime for the prefix's validity. Options include <i>External (fixed)</i> , <i>decrementing</i> and <i>infinite</i> . If set to <i>External (fixed)</i> , just the <i>Valid Lifetime Sec</i> setting is enabled to define the exact time interval for prefix validity. If set to <i>decrementing</i> , use the lifetime date and time settings to refine the prefix expiry period. If the value is set for <i>infinite</i> , no additional date or time settings are required for the prefix and the prefix will not expire. The default setting is <i>External (fixed)</i> .
<b>Preferred Lifetime Sec</b>	If the administrator preferred lifetime type is set to <i>External (fixed)</i> , set the <i>Seconds</i> , <i>Minutes</i> , <i>Hours</i> or <i>Days</i> value used to measurement criteria for the prefix's expiration. 30 days, 0 hours, 0 minutes and 0 seconds is the default lifetime.
<b>Preferred Lifetime Date</b>	If the administrator preferred lifetime type is set to <i>External (fixed)</i> , set the date in MM/DD/YYYY format for the expiration of the prefix.
<b>Preferred Lifetime Time</b>	If the preferred lifetime type is set to <i>decrementing</i> , set the time for the prefix's validity.
<b>Autoconfig</b>	Autoconfiguration includes generating a link-local address, global addresses via stateless address autoconfiguration and duplicate address detection to verify the uniqueness of the addresses on a link. This setting is enabled by default.
<b>On Link</b>	Select this option to keep the IPv6 RA prefix on the local link. The default setting is enabled.

32 Select **OK** to save the changes to the IPv6 RA prefix configuration. Select **Exit** to close the screen without saving the updates.

33 Select the **Security** tab.



**Figure 8-21** Virtual Interfaces - Security screen

34 Use the **IPv4 Inbound Firewall Rules** drop down menu to select the IPv4 specific inbound firewall rules to apply to this profile's virtual interface configuration. Select the **Create** icon to define a new IPv4 firewall rule configuration or select the **Edit** icon to modify an existing configuration.

IPv4 is a connectionless protocol for packet switched networking. IPv4 operates as a best effort delivery method, since it does not guarantee delivery, and does not ensure proper sequencing or duplicate delivery (unlike (TCP).

IPv4 and IPv6 are different enough to warrant separate protocols. IPv6 devices can alternatively use stateless address autoconfiguration. IPv4 hosts can use link local addressing to provide local connectivity.

- 35 Use the **IPv6 Inbound Firewall Rules** drop down menu to select the IPv6 specific inbound firewall rules to apply to this profile's virtual interface configuration. Select the **Create** icon to define a new IPv6 firewall rule configuration or select the **Edit** icon to modify an existing configuration.

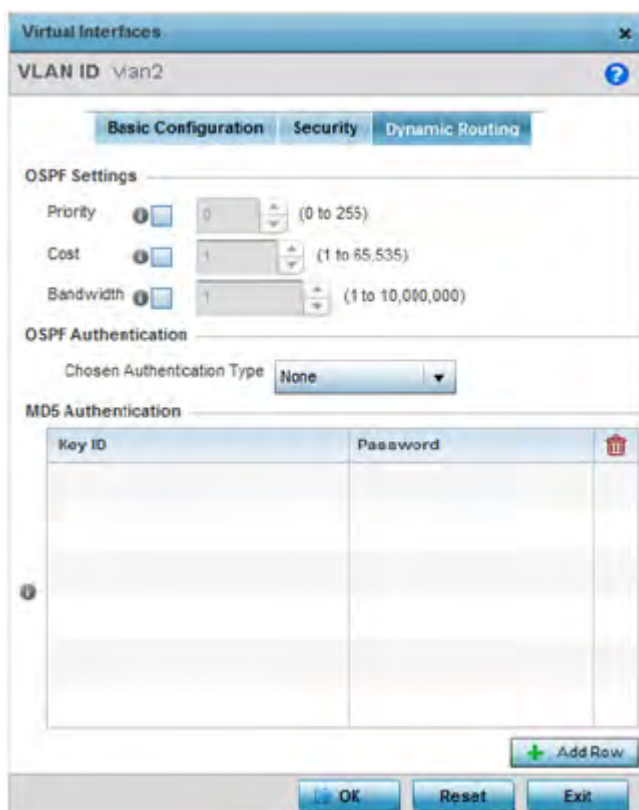
IPv6 is the latest revision of the *Internet Protocol* (IP) replacing IPv4. IPv6 provides enhanced identification and location information for systems routing traffic across the Internet. IPv6 addresses are composed of eight groups of four hexadecimal digits separated by colons.

- 36 Use the **VPN Crypto Map** drop down menu to select a crypto map to apply to this profile's virtual interface configuration. Crypto maps are sets of configuration parameters for encrypting packets passing through a VPN Tunnel. If a crypto map does not exist suiting the needs of this virtual interface, select the **Create** icon to define a new crypto map configuration or the **Edit** icon to modify an existing crypto map. For more information, see [Overriding a Profile's VPN Configuration on page 5-207](#).

- 37 Use the **Web Filter** drop-down menu to select or override the **URL Filter** configuration applied to this virtual interface.

Web filtering is used to restrict access to specific (administrator defined) resources on the Internet.

- 38 Select the **Dynamic Routing** tab (if available on your controller or service platform).



**Figure 8-22** Virtual Interfaces - Dynamic Routing screen

*Open Shortest Path First* (OSPF) is a link-state *interior gateway protocol* (IGP). OSPF routes IP packets within a single routing domain (autonomous system), like an enterprise LAN. OSPF gathers link state information from

neighbor routers and constructs a network topology. The topology determines the routing table presented to the Internet Layer which makes routing decisions based solely on the destination IP address found in IP packets.

39 Define the following **OSPF Settings**:

<b>Priority</b>	Select this option to set the OSPF priority used to select the network designated route. Use the spinner control to set the value from 0 - 255.
<b>Cost</b>	Select this option to set the cost of the OSPF interface. Use the spinner control to set the value from 1 - 65,535.
<b>Bandwidth</b>	Set the OSPF interface bandwidth (in Kbps) from 1 - 10,000,000.

40 Select the authentication type from the **Chosen Authentication Type** drop-down used to validate credentials within the OSPF dynamic route. Options include *simple-password*, *message-digest*, *null* and *None*. The default value is *None*.

41 Select **+ Add Row** at the bottom of the MD5 Authentication table to add the Key ID and Password used for an MD5 validation of authenticator credentials. Use the spinner control to set the OSPF message digest authentication key ID. The available range is from 1 - 255. The password is the OSPF key either displayed as series or asterisks or in plain text (by selecting **Show**).

42 Select **OK** to save the changes to the virtual interface security configuration. Select **Exit** to close the screen without saving the updates.

## 8.7.3 Port Channel Configuration

### ► Profile Interface Configuration

Profiles can be applied customized port channel configurations as part of their Interface configuration.

To define a port channel configuration for a profile:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Profiles > Interface**.
- 2 Expand the Interface menu to display its submenu options.
- 3 Select **Port Channels**.

Name	Type	Description	Admin Status
port-channel1	Port Channel		Enabled
port-channel2	Port Channel	lancelot	Disabled

Type to search in tables:  Row Count: 2

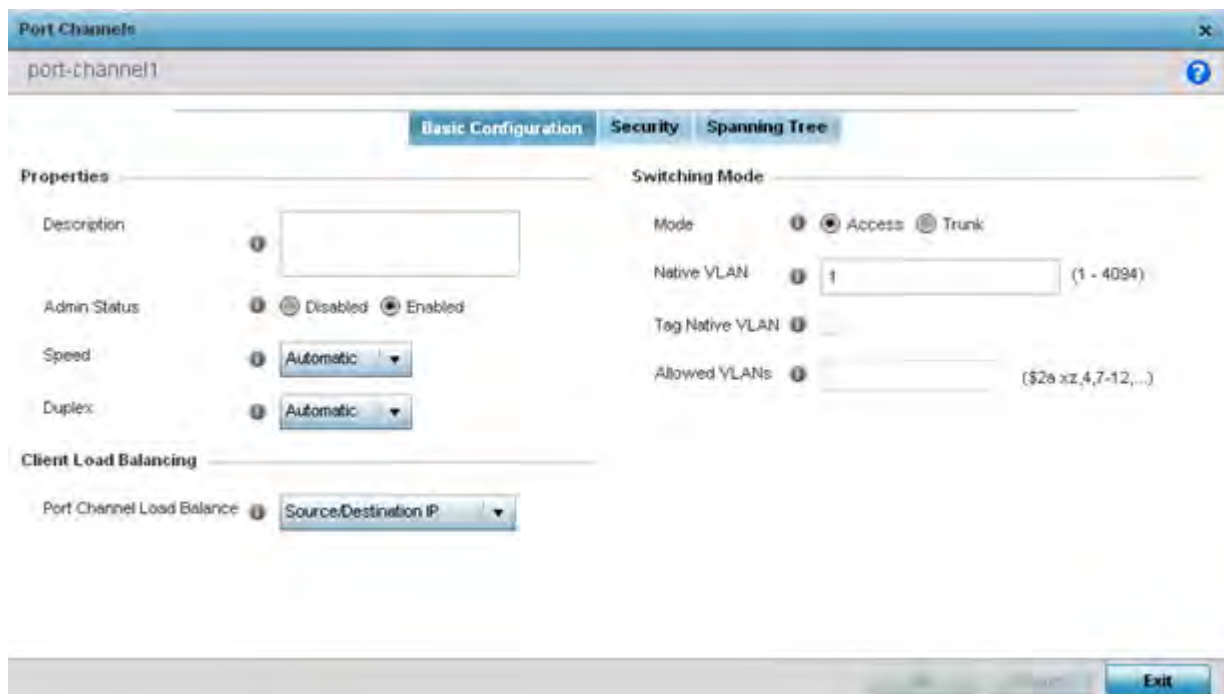
Buttons: Add, Edit, Delete, Exit

**Figure 8-23** Port Channels screen

- 4 Refer to the following to review existing port channel configurations and their current status:

<b>Name</b>	Displays the port channel's numerical identifier assigned to it when it was created. The numerical name cannot be modified as part of the edit process.
<b>Type</b>	Displays whether the type is a port channel.
<b>Description</b>	Lists a a short description (64 characters maximum) describing the port channel or differentiating it from others with similar configurations.
<b>Admin Status</b>	A green checkmark defines the listed port channel as active and currently enabled with the profile. A red "X" defines the port channel as currently disabled and not available for use. The interface status can be modified with the port channel configuration as required.

- 5 Select **Add** to add a new configuration. To edit the configuration of an existing port channel, select it from amongst those displayed and select the **Edit** button. The port channel **Basic Configuration** screen displays by default. Configurations can be optionally removed by selecting **Delete**.



**Figure 8-24** Port Channels - Basic Configuration screen

- 6 Set the following port channel **Properties**:

<b>Description</b>	Enter a brief description for the controller or service platform port channel (64 characters maximum). The description should reflect the port channel's intended function.
<b>Admin Status</b>	Select the <i>Enabled</i> radio button to define this port channel as active to the profile it supports. Select the <i>Disabled</i> radio button to disable this port channel configuration within the profile. It can be activated at any future time when needed. The default setting is enabled.
<b>Speed</b>	Select the speed at which the port channel can receive and transmit the data. Select either <i>10 Mbps</i> , <i>100 Mbps</i> , <i>1000 Mbps</i> . Select either of these options to establish a 10, 100 or 1000 Mbps data transfer rate for the selected half duplex or full duplex transmission over the port. These options are not available if <i>Automatic</i> is selected. Select <i>Automatic</i> to enable the port channel to automatically exchange information about data transmission speed and duplex capabilities. Auto negotiation is helpful when in an environment where different devices are connected and disconnected on a regular basis. Automatic is the default setting.
<b>Duplex</b>	Select either <i>Half</i> , <i>Full</i> or <i>Automatic</i> as the duplex option. Select <i>Half duplex</i> to send data over the port channel, then immediately receive data from the same direction in which the data was transmitted. Like a <i>Full duplex</i> transmission, a <i>Half duplex</i> transmission can carry data in both directions, just not at the same time. Select <i>Full duplex</i> to transmit data to and from the port channel at the same time. Using <i>Full duplex</i> , the port channel can send data while receiving data as well. Select <i>Automatic</i> to dynamically duplex as port channel performance needs dictate. Automatic is the default setting.

- 7 Use the **Port Channel Load Balance** drop-down menu to define whether port channel load balancing is conducted using a *Source/Destination IP* or a *Source/Destination MAC*. *Source/Destination IP* is the default setting.

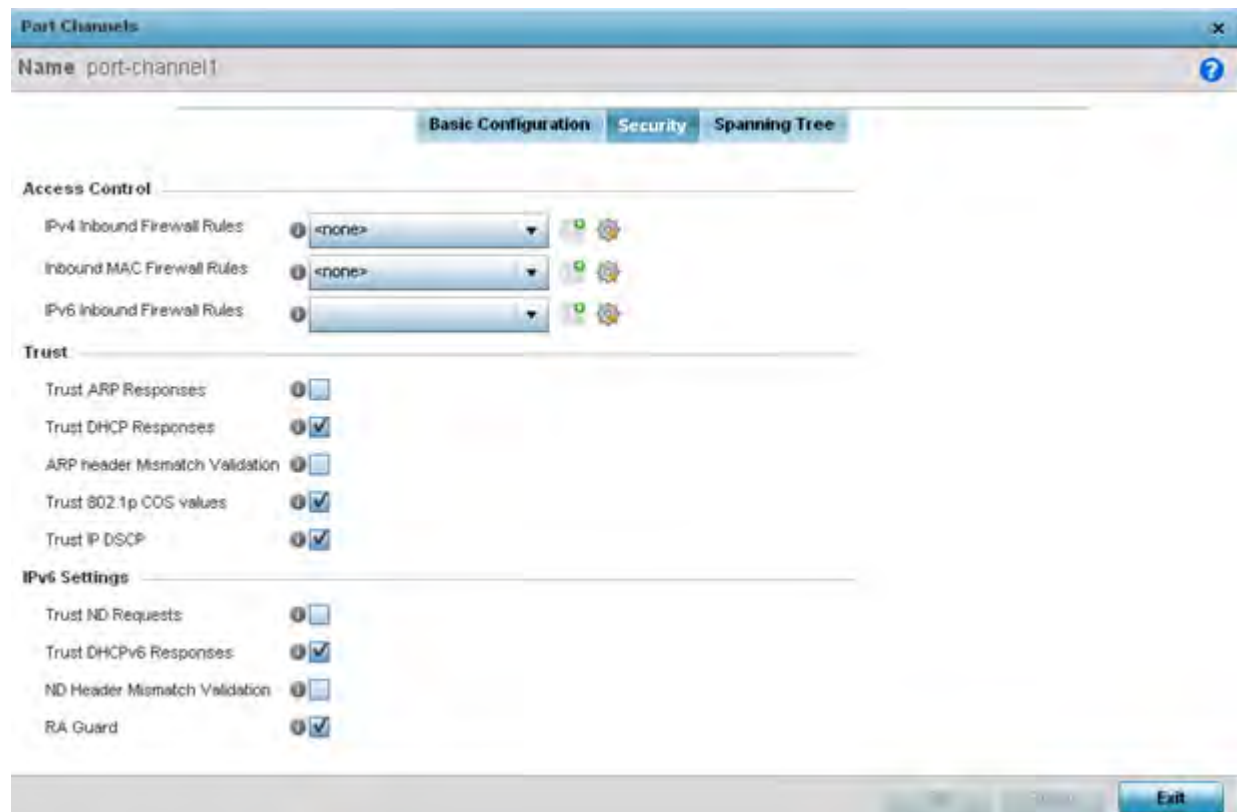


8 Define the following **Switching Mode** parameters to apply to the port channel configuration:

<b>Mode</b>	Select either the <i>Access</i> or <i>Trunk</i> radio button to set the VLAN switching mode over the port channel. If <i>Access</i> is selected, the port channel accepts packets only from the native VLANs. Frames are forwarded out the port untagged with no 802.1Q header. All frames received on the port are expected as untagged and are mapped to the native VLAN. If the mode is set to <i>Trunk</i> , the port channel allows packets from a list of VLANs you add to the trunk. A port channel configured as <i>Trunk</i> supports multiple 802.1Q tagged VLANs and one Native VLAN which can be tagged or untagged. <i>Access</i> is the default setting.
<b>Native VLAN</b>	Use the spinner control to define a numerical ID between 1 - 4094. The native VLAN allows an Ethernet device to associate untagged frames to a VLAN when no 802.1Q frame is included in the frame. Additionally, the native VLAN is the VLAN which untagged traffic will be directed over when using trunk mode. The default value is 1.
<b>Tag the Native VLAN</b>	Select the checkbox to tag the native VLAN. Devices support the IEEE 802.1Q specification for tagging frames and coordinating VLANs between devices. IEEE 802.1Q adds four bytes to each frame identifying the VLAN ID for upstream devices that the frame belongs. If the upstream Ethernet device does not support IEEE 802.1Q tagging, it does not interpret the tagged frames. When VLAN tagging is required between devices, both devices must support tagging and be configured to accept tagged VLANs. When a frame is tagged, the 12 bit frame VLAN ID is added to the 802.1Q header so upstream Ethernet devices know which VLAN ID the frame belongs to. The device reads the 12 bit VLAN ID and forwards the frame to the appropriate VLAN. When a frame is received with no 802.1Q header, the upstream device classifies the frame using the default or native VLAN assigned to the Trunk port. The native VLAN allows an Ethernet device to associate untagged frames to a VLAN when no 802.1Q frame is included in the frame. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Allowed VLANs</b>	Selecting <i>Trunk</i> as the mode enables the Allowed VLANs parameter. Add VLANs that exclusively send packets over the port channel.

9 Select **OK** to save the changes made to the port channel Basic Configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

10 Select the **Security** tab.



**Figure 8-25** Port Channels - Security screen

- 11 Refer to the **Access Control** section. As part of the port channel's security configuration, Inbound IPv4 IP, IPv6 IP and MAC address firewall rules are required.

Use the drop-down menus to select the firewall rules to apply to this profile's port configuration. The firewall inspects IP and MAC traffic flows and detects attacks typically not visible to traditional wired firewall appliances

Use the **IPv4 Inbound Firewall Rules** drop down menu to select the IPv4 specific firewall rules to apply to this profile's port channel configuration. IPv4 is a connectionless protocol for packet switched networking. IPv4 operates as a best effort delivery method, as it does not guarantee delivery, and does not ensure proper sequencing or duplicate delivery (unlike (TCP). IPv4 hosts can use link local addressing to provide local connectivity.

Use the **IPv6 Inbound Firewall Rules** drop down menu to select the IPv6 specific firewall rules to apply to this profile's port channel configuration. IPv6 is the latest revision of the *Internet Protocol* (IP) designed to replace IPv4. IPv6 provides enhanced identification and location information for computers on networks routing traffic across the Internet. IPv6 addresses are composed of eight groups of four hexadecimal digits separated by colons.

- 12 If a firewall rule does not exist suiting the data protection needs of the target port channel configuration, select the **Create** icon to define a new rule configuration or the **Edit** icon to modify an existing firewall rule configuration.

13 Refer to the **Trust** field to define the following:

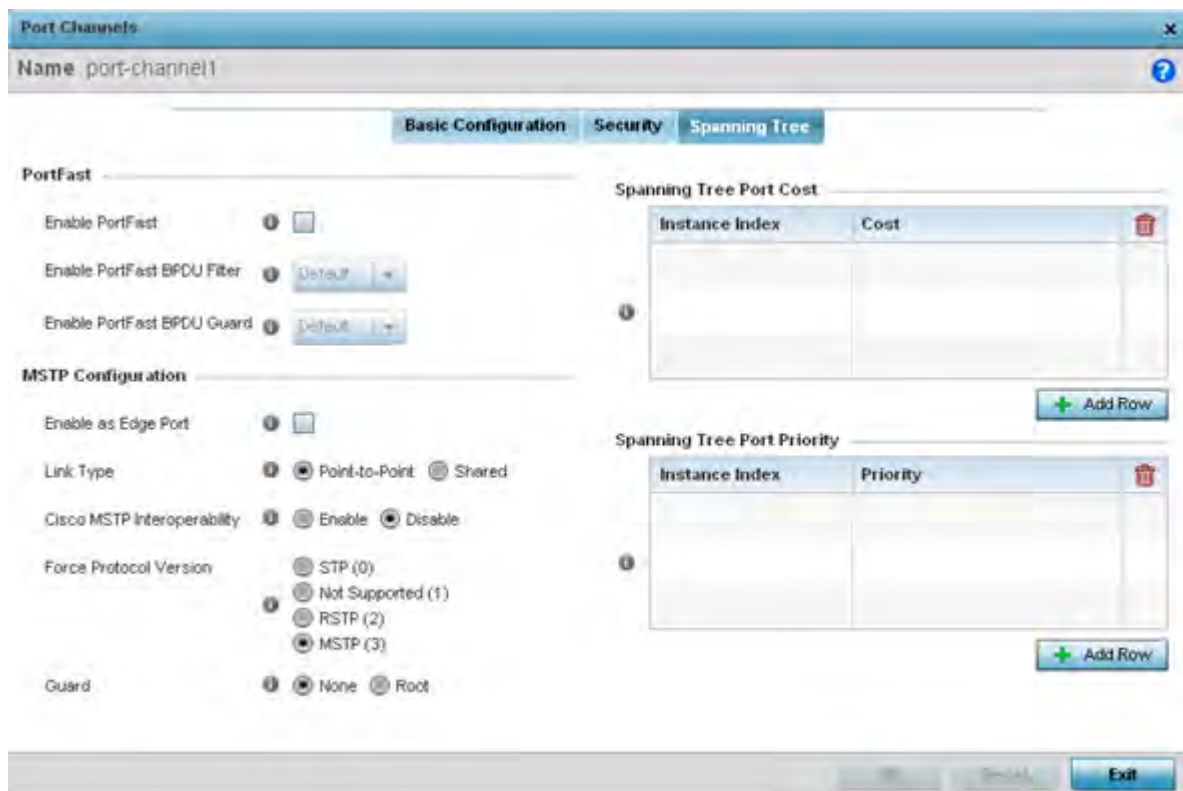
<b>Trust ARP Responses</b>	Select the check box to enable ARP trust on this port channel. ARP packets received on this port are considered trusted and information from these packets is used to identify rogue devices within the network. The default value is disabled.
<b>Trust DHCP Responses</b>	Select the check box to enable DHCP trust. If enabled, only DHCP responses are trusted and forwarded on this port channel, and a DHCP server can be connected only to a DHCP trusted port. The default value is enabled.
<b>ARP header Mismatch Validation</b>	Select the check box to enable a mismatch check for the source MAC in both the ARP and Ethernet header. The default value is enabled.
<b>Trust 802.1p COS values</b>	Select the check box to enable 802.1p COS values on this port channel. The default value is enabled.
<b>Trust IP DSCP</b>	Select the check box to enable IP DSCP values on this port channel. The default value is enabled.

14 Refer to the **IPv6 Settings** field to define the following:

<b>Trust ND Requests</b>	Select the check box to enable <i>neighbor discovery</i> (ND) request trust on this port channel (neighbor discovery requests received on this port are considered trusted). Use ND to determine the link-layer addresses for neighbors known to reside on attached links, similar to <i>Address Resolution Protocol</i> (ARP) on Ethernet in IPv4. The default value is disabled.
<b>Trust DHCPv6 Responses</b>	Select the check box to enable DHCPv6 trust. If enabled, only DHCPv6 responses are trusted and forwarded on this port channel, and a DHCPv6 server can be connected only to a trusted port. DHCPv6 relay agents receive messages from clients and forward them to a DHCPv6 server. The server sends responses back to the relay agent, and the relay agent sends the responses to the client on the local link. The default value is enabled.
<b>ND header Mismatch Validation</b>	Select the check box to enable a mismatch check for the source MAC in both the ND header and link layer option. The default value is disabled.
<b>RA Guard</b>	Select this option to allow router advertisements or IPv6 redirects from this port. Router advertisements are periodically sent to hosts or sent in response to solicitation requests. The advertisement includes IPv6 prefixes and other subnet and host information. This setting is enabled by default.

15 Select **OK** to save the changes to the security configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

16 Select the **Spanning Tree** tab.



**Figure 8-26** Port Channels - Spanning Tree screen

17 Define the following **PortFast** parameters for the port channel's MSTP configuration:

<b>Enable PortFast</b>	Select the check box to enable drop-down menus for both the port Enable Portfast BPDU Filter and Enable Portfast BPDU guard options. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Enable PortFast BPDU Filter</b>	Select <i>Enable</i> to invoke a BPDU filter for this portfast enabled port channel. Enabling the BPDU filter feature ensures this port channel does not transmit or receive any BPDUs. The default setting is None.
<b>Enable PortFast BPDU Guard</b>	Select <i>Enable</i> to invoke a BPDU guard for this portfast enabled port channel. Enabling the BPDU Guard feature means this port will shutdown on receiving a BPDU. Thus, no BPDUs are processed. The default setting is None.

18 Set the following **MSTP Configuration** parameters for the port channel:

<b>Link Type</b>	Select either the <i>Point-to-Point</i> or <i>Shared</i> radio button. Selecting Point-to-Point indicates the port should be treated as connected to a point-to-point link. Selecting Shared indicates this port should be treated as having a shared connection. A port connected to a hub is on a shared link, while the one connected to a controller or service platform is a point-to-point link. Point-to-Point is the default setting.
<b>Cisco MSTP Interoperability</b>	Select either the <i>Enable</i> or <i>Disable</i> radio buttons. This enables interoperability with Cisco's version of MSTP, which is incompatible with standard MSTP. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Force Protocol Version</b>	Sets the protocol version to either <i>STP(0)</i> , <i>Not Supported(1)</i> , <i>RSTP(2)</i> or <i>MSTP(3)</i> . MSTP is the default setting.

<b>Guard</b>	Determines whether the port channel enforces root bridge placement. Setting the guard to <i>Root</i> ensures the port is a designated port. Typically, each guard root port is a designated port, unless two or more ports (within the root bridge) are connected together. If the bridge receives superior (BPDUs) on a guard root-enabled port, the guard root moves the port to a root-inconsistent STP state. This state is equivalent to a listening state. No data is forwarded across the port. Thus, the guard root enforces the root bridge position.
--------------	--

19 Refer to the **Spanning Tree Port Cost** table.

Define an **Instance Index** using the spinner control and then set the cost. The default path cost depends on the user defined port speed. The cost helps determine the role of the port channel in the MSTP network. The designated cost is the cost for a packet to travel from this port to the root in the MSTP configuration. The slower the media, the higher the cost.

Speed	Default Path Cost
<=100000 bits/sec	200000000
<=1000000 bits/sec	20000000
<=10000000 bits/sec	2000000
<=100000000 bits/sec	200000
<=1000000000 bits/sec	20000
<=10000000000 bits/sec	2000
<=100000000000 bits/sec	200
<=1000000000000 bits/sec	20
>1000000000000 bits/sec	2

20 Select **+ Add Row** as needed to include additional indexes.

21 Refer to the **Spanning Tree Port Priority** table.

Define an **Instance Index** using the spinner control and then set the **Priority**. The lower the priority, a greater likelihood of the port becoming a designated port.

22 Select **+ Add Row** needed to include additional indexes.

23 Select **OK** to save the changes made to the Ethernet Port Spanning Tree configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 8.7.4 VM Interface Configuration

### ► Profile Interface Configuration

WiNG provides a dataplane bridge for external network connectivity for *Virtual Machines* (VMs). VM Interfaces define which IP address is associated with each VLAN ID the service platform is connected to and enables remote service platform administration. Each custom VM can have up to a maximum of two VM interfaces. Each VM interface can be mapped to one of sixteen VMIF ports on the dataplane bridge. This mapping determines the destination for service platform routing.

By default, VM interfaces are internally connected to the dataplane bridge via VMIF1. VMIF1 is an untagged port providing access to VLAN 1 to support the capability to connect the VM interfaces to any of the VMIF ports. This provides the flexibility to move a VM interface onto different VLANs as well as configure specific firewall and QOS rules.

To define a VM interface profile configuration:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Profiles > Interface**.
- 2 Expand the Interface menu to display its submenu options.
- 3 Select **VM**.

Name	Type	Description	Admin Status	Mode	Native VLAN	Tag Native VLAN	Allowed VLANs
vmit1	VM Interface		✓ Enabled	Access	1	✗	
vmit2	VM Interface		✓ Enabled	Access	1	✗	
vmit3	VM Interface		✓ Enabled	Access	1	✗	
vmit4	VM Interface		✓ Enabled	Access	1	✗	
vmit5	VM Interface		✓ Enabled	Access	1	✗	
vmit6	VM Interface		✓ Enabled	Access	1	✗	
vmit7	VM Interface		✓ Enabled	Access	1	✗	
vmit8	VM Interface		✓ Enabled	Access	1	✗	

Type to search in tables:  Row Count: 8

Buttons: Edit, Exit

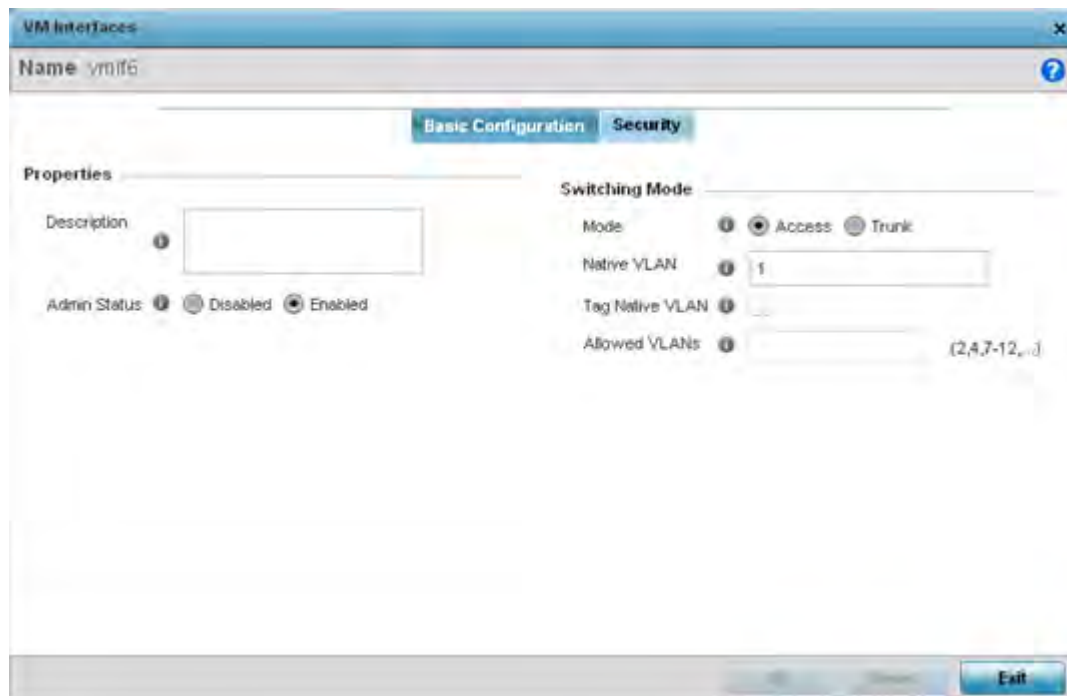
**Figure 8-27** Profile - VM Interfaces screen

- 4 Refer to the following to review VM interface configurations and status:

<b>Name</b>	Displays the VM interface numerical identifier assigned when it was created. The numerical name cannot be modified as part of the edit process.
<b>Type</b>	Displays whether the type is VM interface.
<b>Description</b>	Lists a short description (64 characters maximum) describing the VM interface or differentiating it from others with similar configurations.
<b>Admin Status</b>	A green check mark defines the listed VM interface as active and currently enabled with the profile. A red "X" defines the VM interface as currently disabled and not available for use. The interface status can be modified with the VM interface Basic Configuration screen as required.
<b>Mode</b>	Displays the layer 3 mode of the VM interface as either <i>Access</i> or <i>Trunk</i> (as defined within the VM Interfaces Basic Configuration screen). If Access is selected, the listed VM interface accepts packets only from the native VLAN. Frames are forwarded untagged with no 802.1Q header. All frames received on the port are expected as untagged and mapped to the native VLAN. If set to Trunk, the port allows packets from a list of VLANs added to the trunk. A VM interface configured as Trunk supports multiple 802.1Q tagged VLANs and one Native VLAN which can be tagged or untagged.

<b>Native VLAN</b>	Lists the numerical VLAN ID (1 - 4094) set for the native VLAN. The native VLAN allows a VM interface to associate untagged frames to a VLAN when no 802.1Q frame is included in the frame. Additionally, the native VLAN is the VLAN untagged traffic is directed over when using a VM interface in trunk mode.
<b>Tag Native VLAN</b>	A green check mark defines the native VLAN as tagged. A red "X" defines the native VLAN as untagged. When a frame is tagged, the 12 bit frame VLAN ID is added to the 802.1Q header so upstream VM interface ports know which VLAN ID the frame belongs to. The device reads the 12 bit VLAN ID and forwards the frame to the appropriate VLAN. When a frame is received with no 802.1Q header, the upstream VM interface classifies the frame using the default or native VLAN assigned to the Trunk port. A native VLAN allows a VM interface to associate untagged frames to a VLAN when no 802.1Q frame is included in the frame.
<b>Allowed VLANs</b>	Displays those VLANs allowed to send packets over the listed VM interface. Allowed VLANs are only listed when the mode has been set to Trunk.

- 5 To edit the configuration of an existing VM interface, select it from amongst those displayed and select the **Edit** button. The VM Interfaces **Basic Configuration** screen displays by default.



**Figure 8-28** Profile - VM Interfaces Basic Configuration screen

- 6 Set the following VM interface **Properties**:

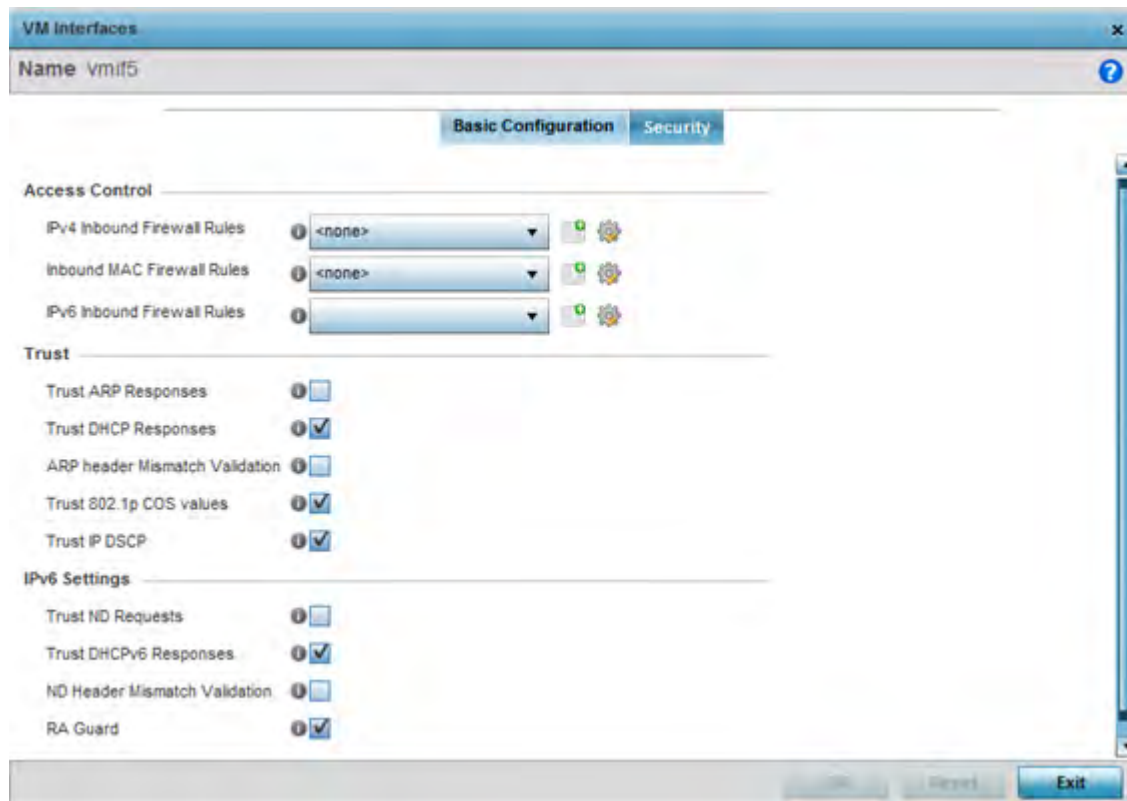
<b>Description</b>	Enter a brief description for the controller or service platform VM interface (64 characters maximum).
<b>Admin Status</b>	Select the <i>Enabled</i> radio button to define this VM interface as active to the profile it supports. Select the <i>Disabled</i> radio button to disable this VM interface configuration in the profile. It can be activated at any future time when needed.



- 7 Set the following **Switching Mode** parameters to apply to the VM Interface configuration:

<b>Mode</b>	Select either the <i>Access</i> or <i>Trunk</i> radio button to set the VLAN switching mode over the VM interface. If <i>Access</i> is selected, the VM interface accepts packets only from the native VLAN. Frames are forwarded untagged with no 802.1Q header. All frames received on the VMIF port are expected as untagged and are mapped to the native VLAN. If the mode is set to <i>Trunk</i> , the VM interface allows packets from a list of VLANs you add to the trunk. A VM interface configured as <i>Trunk</i> supports multiple 802.1Q tagged VLANs and one Native VLAN which can be tagged or untagged. <i>Access</i> is the default setting.
<b>Native VLAN</b>	Use the spinner control to define a numerical <i>Native VLAN ID</i> from 1 - 4094. The native VLAN allows an Ethernet device to associate untagged frames to a VLAN when no 802.1Q frame is included in the frame. Additionally, the native VLAN is the VLAN untagged traffic will be directed over when using trunk mode. The default value is 1.
<b>Tag the Native VLAN</b>	Select this option to tag the native VLAN. Service platforms support the IEEE 802.1Q specification for tagging frames and coordinating VLANs between devices. IEEE 802.1Q adds four bytes to each frame identifying the VLAN ID for upstream VMIF that the frame belongs. If the upstream VMIF does not support IEEE 802.1Q tagging, it does not interpret the tagged frames. When VLAN tagging is required between VM interface ports, both VM interfaces must support tagging and be configured to accept tagged VLANs. When a frame is tagged, a 12 bit frame VLAN ID is added to the 802.1Q header, so upstream VM interfaces know which VLAN ID the frame belongs to. The 12 bit VLAN ID is read and the frame is forwarded to the appropriate VLAN. When a frame is received with no 802.1Q header, the upstream VMIF classifies the frame using the default or native VLAN assigned to the Trunk port. The native VLAN allows a VM interface to associate untagged frames to a VLAN when no 802.1Q frame is included in the frame. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Allowed VLANs</b>	Selecting <i>Trunk</i> as the mode enables the <i>Allowed VLANs</i> parameter. Add VLANs that exclusively send packets over the VM interface. The available range is from 1 - 4094. The maximum number of entries is 256.

- 8 Select **OK** to save the changes to the VM interface basic configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.
- 9 Select the **Security** tab.



**Figure 8-29** Profile - VM Interfaces Security screen

- 10 Refer to the **Access Control** field. As part of the VM interface's security configuration, IPv4 and IPv6 Inbound and MAC Inbound address firewall rules are required.

Use the drop-down menus to select the firewall rules to apply to this profile's VM interface configuration. The firewall inspects IP and MAC traffic flows and detects attacks typically not visible to traditional wired firewall appliances.

Use the **IPv4 Inbound Firewall Rules** drop down menu to select the IPv4 specific firewall rules to apply to this profile's VM interface configuration. IPv4 is a connectionless protocol for packet switched networking. IPv4 operates as a best effort delivery method, as it does not guarantee delivery, and does not ensure proper sequencing or duplicate delivery (unlike (TCP)). IPv4 hosts can use link local addressing to provide local connectivity.

Use the **IPv6 Inbound Firewall Rules** drop down menu to select the IPv6 specific firewall rules to apply to this profile's VM interface configuration. IPv6 is the latest revision of the *Internet Protocol* (IP) designed to replace IPv4. IPv6 provides enhanced identification and location information for computers on networks routing traffic across the Internet. IPv6 addresses are composed of eight groups of four hexadecimal digits separated by colons.

If a firewall rule does not exist suiting the data protection needs of the target VM interface configuration, select the **Create** icon to define a new rule configuration, or the **Edit** icon to modify an existing firewall rule configuration.

- 11 Refer to the **Trust** field to set the following:

<b>Trust ARP Responses</b>	Select this option to enable ARP trust on this VM interface. ARP packets received on this port are considered trusted, and information from these packets is used to identify rogue devices. The default value is disabled.
----------------------------	---

<b>Trust DHCP Responses</b>	Select this option to enable DHCP trust on this VM interface. If enabled, only DHCP responses are trusted and forwarded on this VM interface, and a DHCP server can be connected only to a DHCP trusted port. The default value is enabled.
<b>ARP header Mismatch Validation</b>	Select this option to enable a source MAC mismatch check in both the ARP and Ethernet header. The default value is enabled.
<b>Trust 802.1p COS values</b>	Select this option to enable 802.1p COS values on this VM interface. The default value is enabled.
<b>Trust IP DSCP</b>	Select this option to enable IP DSCP values on this VM interface. The default value is enabled.

12 Set the following **IPv6 Settings** required for unique IPv6 support:

<b>Trust ND Requests</b>	Select this option to enable the trust of neighbor discovery requests required on an IPv6 network on this VM interface. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Trust DHCPv6 Responses</b>	Select this option to enable the trust all DHCPv6 responses on this VM interface. DHCPv6 is a networking protocol for configuring IPv6 hosts with IP addresses, IP prefixes or other configuration attributes required on an IPv6 network. DHCPv6 relay agents receive messages from clients and forward them to a DHCPv6 server. The server sends responses back to the relay agent, and the relay agent sends the responses to the client on the local link. This setting is enabled by default.
<b>ND Header Mismatch Validation</b>	Select this option to enable a mismatch check for the source MAC within the ND header and link layer option. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>RA Guard</b>	Select this option to enable router advertisements or ICMPv6 redirects from this VM interface. Router advertisements are periodically sent to hosts or sent in response to neighbor solicitation requests. The advertisement includes IPv6 prefixes and other subnet and host information. This setting is disabled by default.

Select **OK** to save the changes to the security configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 8.7.5 Access Point Radio Configuration

### ► Profile Interface Configuration

Access Points can have their radio configurations modified once their radios have successfully associated to an adopting peerAccess Point, wireless controller or a service platform. Take care not to modify an Access Point's configuration using its resident Web UI, CLI or SNMP interfaces when managed by a profile, or risk the Access Point having a configuration independent from the profile until the profile can be uploaded to the Access Point again.

To define a Access Point radio configuration from the Access Point's associated controller or service platform:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Profiles > Interface**.
- 2 Expand the Interface menu to display its submenu options.
- 3 Select **Radios**.

Name	Type	Description	Admin Status	RF Mode	Channel	Transmit Power
radio1	Radio	radio1	Enabled	2.4 GHz WLAN	smart	smart
radio2	Radio	radio2	Enabled	5 GHz WLAN	smart	smart
radio3	Radio	radio3	Enabled	Sensor	smart	smart

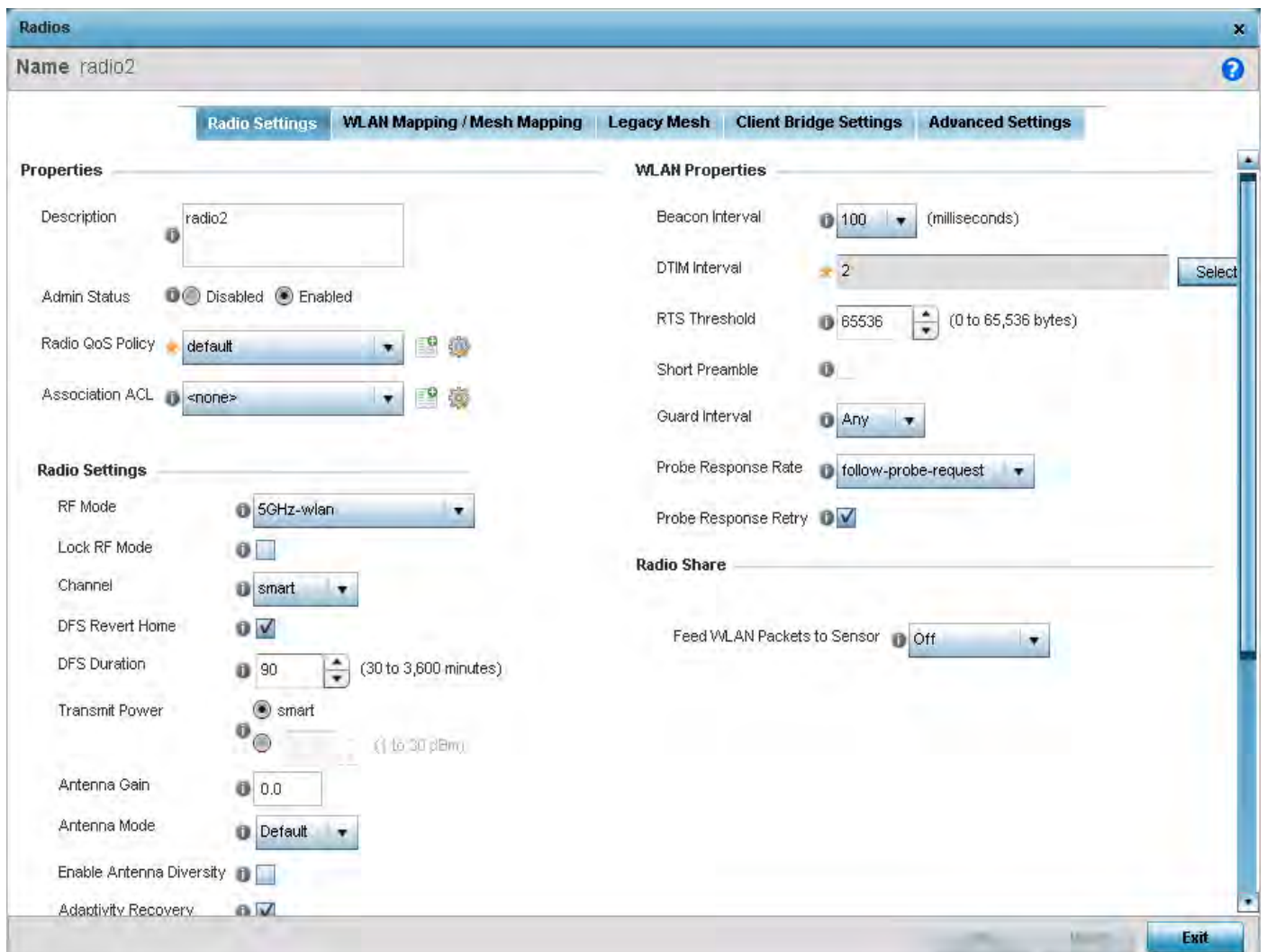
Type to search in tables Row Count: 3

**Figure 8-30** Access Point - Radios screen

- 4 Review the following to determine whether a radio configuration requires modification to better support the managed network:

<b>Name</b>	Displays whether the reporting radio is the Access Point's radio1, radio2 or radio3.
<b>Type</b>	Displays the type of radio housed by each listed Access Point.
<b>Description</b>	Displays a brief description of the radio provided by the administrator when the radio's configuration was added or modified.
<b>Admin Status</b>	A green checkmark defines the listed radio as active and enabled with its supported profile. A red "X" defines the radio as currently disabled.
<b>RF Mode</b>	Displays whether each listed radio is operating in the 802.11a/n or 802.11b/g/n radio band. If the radio is a dedicated sensor, it will be listed as a sensor to define the radio as not providing typical WLAN support. If the radio is a client-bridge, it provides a typical bridging function and does not provide WLAN support. The radio band is set from within the Radio Settings tab.
<b>Channel</b>	Lists the channel setting for the radio. Smart is the default setting. If set to smart, the Access Point scans non-overlapping channels listening for beacons from other Access Points. After the channels are scanned, it selects the channel with the fewest Access Points. In the case of multiple Access Points on the same channel, it selects the channel with the lowest average power level.
<b>Transmit Power</b>	Lists the transmit power for each radio displayed as a value in milliwatts. If <i>smart</i> is displayed, the radio has been set to make compensations for failed or poorly performing neighbor radios.

- 5 If required, select a radio configuration and select the **Edit** button to modify its configuration.



**Figure 8-31** Access Point Radio - Radio Settings tab

The **Radio Settings** tab displays by default.

- 6 Define the following radio configuration parameters from within the **Properties** field:

<b>Description</b>	Provide or edit a description (1 - 64 characters in length) for the radio that helps differentiate it from others with similar configurations.
<b>Admin Status</b>	Select the <i>Enabled</i> radio button to define this radio as active to the profile it supports. Select the <i>Disabled</i> radio button to disable this radio configuration within the profile. It can be activated at any future time when needed. The default setting is enabled.
<b>Radio QoS Policy</b>	Use the drop-down menu to specify an existing QoS policy to apply to the Access Point radio in respect to its intended radio traffic. If there's no existing suiting the radio's intended operation, select the <i>Create</i> icon to define a new QoS policy that can be applied to this profile.

<b>Association ACL</b>	Use the drop-down menu to specify an existing Association ACL policy to apply to the Access Point radio. An Association ACL is a policy-based ACL that either prevents or allows wireless clients from connecting to an Access Point radio. An ACL is a sequential collection of permit and deny conditions that apply to packets. When a packet is received on an interface, its compared against applied ACLs to verify the packet has the required permissions to be forwarded. If a packet does not meet any of the criteria specified in the ACL, the packet is dropped. Select the <i>Create</i> icon to define a new Association ACL that can be applied to this profile.
------------------------	--

7 Set the following profile **Radio Settings** for the selected Access Point radio:

<b>RF Mode</b>	Set the mode to either <i>2.4 GHz WLAN</i> or <i>5 GHz WLAN</i> depending on the radio's intended client support requirement. Set the mode to <i>Sensor</i> if using the radio for rogue device detection. To a radio as a detector, disable Sensor support on the other radio. Set the mode to <i>scan-ahead</i> to use the secondary radio to scan for an active channel for backhaul transmission in the event of a radio trigger on the principal radio. The Access Point should then switch radios allowing transmission to continue. This is required in environments where handoff is required and DFS triggers are common.
<b>Lock RF Mode</b>	Select the check box to lock Smart RF for this radio. The default setting is disabled.
<b>Channel</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the channel of operation for the radio. Only a trained installation professional should define the radio channel. Select <i>Smart</i> for the radio to scan non-overlapping channels listening for beacons from other Access Points. After channels are scanned, the radio selects the channel with the fewest Access Points. In the case of multiple Access Points on the same channel, it selects the channel with the lowest average power level. The default value is Smart. Channels with a "w" appended to them are unique to the 40 MHz band. Channels with a "ww" appended to them are 802.11ac specific, only appear when using an AP8232, and are unique to the 80 MHz band.
<b>DFS Revert Home</b>	Select this option to revert to the home channel after a DFS evacuation period.
<b>DFS Duration</b>	Set the DFS holdtime from 30 to 3,600 minutes. The default is 90 minutes.
<b>Transmit Power</b>	Set the transmit power of the selected Access Point radio. If using a dual or three radio model Access Point, each radio should be configured with a unique transmit power in respect to its intended client support function. A setting of 0 defines the radio as using Smart RF to determine its output power. 20 dBm is the default value. Selecting <i>smart</i> deactivates the spinner control and automatically reflects a "0" in the spinner control's grayed out box.



<b>Antenna Gain</b>	Set the antenna between 0.00 - 15.00 dBm. The Access Point's <i>Power Management Antenna Configuration File</i> (PMACF) automatically configures the Access Point's radio transmit power based on the antenna type, its antenna gain (provided here) and the deployed country's regulatory domain restrictions. Once provided, the Access Point calculates the power range. Antenna gain relates the intensity of an antenna in a given direction to the intensity that would be produced ideally by an antenna that radiates equally in all directions (isotropically), and has no losses. Although the gain of an antenna is directly related to its directivity, its gain is a measure that takes into account the efficiency of the antenna as well as its directional capabilities. Only a professional installer should set the antenna gain. The default value is 0.00.
<b>Antenna Mode</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the number of transmit and receive antennas on the Access Point. 1x1 is used for transmissions over just the single "A" antenna, 1x3 is used for transmissions over the "A" antenna and all three antennas for receiving. 2x2 is used for transmissions and receipts over two antennas for dual antenna models. The default setting is dynamic based on the Access Point model deployed and its transmit power settings.
<b>Enable Antenna Diversity</b>	Select this box to enable antenna diversity on supported antennas. Antenna diversity uses two or more antennas to increase signal quality and strength. This option is disabled by default.
<b>Adaptivity Recovery</b>	Select this option to switch channels when an Access Point's radio is in adaptivity mode. In adaptivity mode, an Access Point monitors interference on its set channel and stops functioning when the radio's defined interference tolerance level is exceeded. When the defined adaptivity timeout is exceeded, the radio resumes functionality on a different channel. This option is enabled by default.
<b>Adaptivity Timeout</b>	Set the adaptivity timeout from 30 to 3,600 minutes. The default setting is 90 minutes.
<b>Wireless Client Power</b>	Select this option to specify the transmit power on supported wireless clients. If this is enabled set a client power level between 0 to 20 dBm. This option is disabled by default.
<b>Dynamic Chain Selection</b>	Select this option for the radio to dynamically change the number of transmit chains. This option is enabled by default.
<b>Data Rates</b>	Once the radio band is provided, the Data Rates drop-down menu populates with rate options depending on the 2.4 or 5 GHz band selected. If the radio band is set to Sensor or Detector, the Data Rates drop-down menu is not enabled, as the rates are fixed and not user configurable. If 2.4 GHz is selected as the radio band, select separate 802.11b, 802.11g and 802.11n rates and define how they are used in combination. If 5 GHz is selected as the radio band, select separate 802.11a and 802.11n rates then define how they are used together. When using 802.11n (in either the 2.4 or 5 GHz band), Set a MCS (modulation and coding scheme) in respect to the radio's channel width and guard interval. A MCS defines (based on RF channel conditions) an optimal combination of 8 data rates, bonded channels, multiple spatial streams, different guard intervals and modulation types. Clients can associate as long as they support basic MCS (as well as non-11n basic rates).



<b>Radio Placement</b>	Use the drop-down menu to specify whether the radio is located <i>Indoors</i> or <i>Outdoors</i> . The placement should depend on the country of operation and its regulatory domain requirements for radio emissions. The default setting is <i>Indoors</i> .
<b>Max Clients</b>	Use the spinner control to set a maximum permissible number of clients to connect with this radio. The available range is between 0 - 256 clients. The default value is 256.
<b>Rate Selection Method</b>	Specify a radio selection method for the radio. The selection methods are: <i>Standard</i> - standard monotonic radio selection method will be used. <i>Opportunistic</i> - sets <i>opportunistic radio link adaptation</i> (ORLA) as the radio selection method. This mode uses opportunistic data rate selection to provide the best throughput. The ORLA rate selection mode is supported only on the AP7161 and AP8163 model Access Points.

8 Set the following profile **WLAN Properties** for the selected Access Point radio.

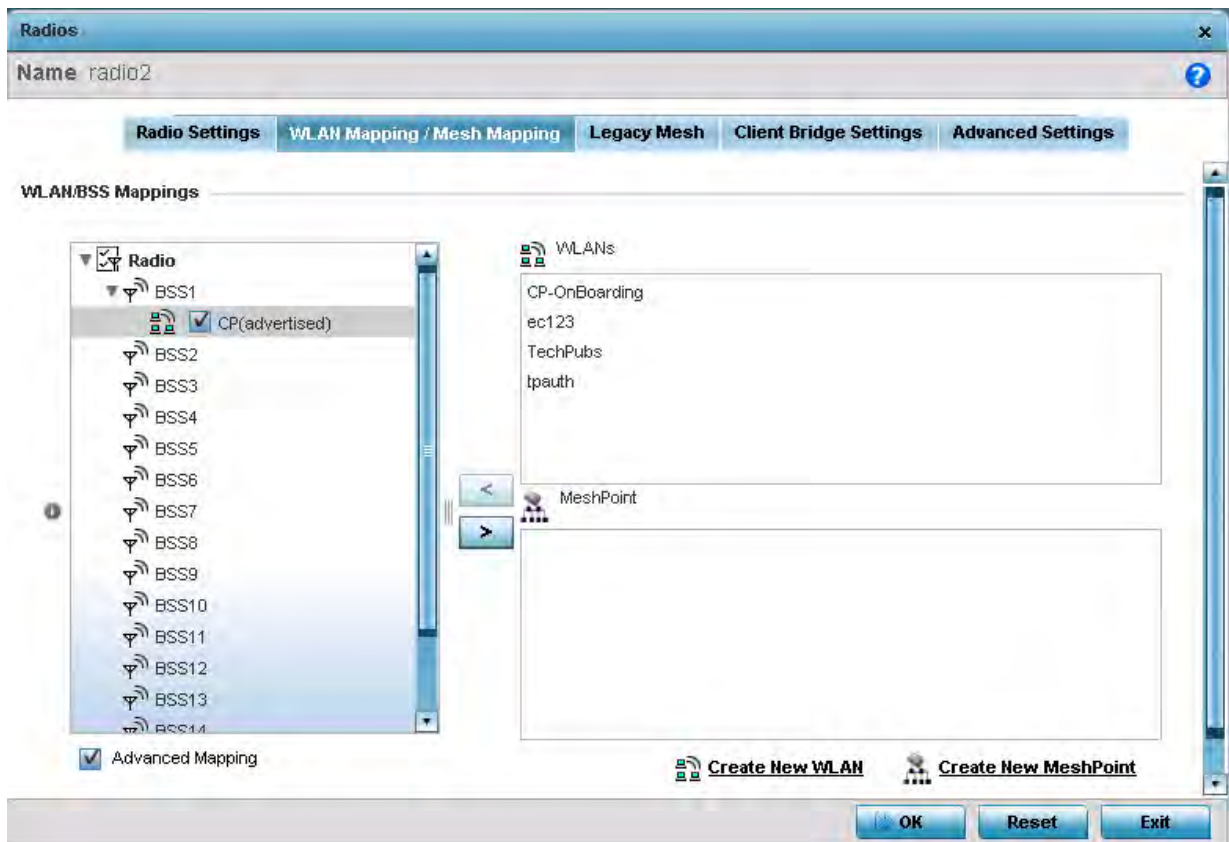
<b>Beacon Interval</b>	Set the interval between radio beacons in milliseconds (either 50, 100 or 200). A beacon is a packet broadcast by adopted radios to keep the network synchronized. The beacon includes the WLAN service area, radio address, broadcast destination addresses, time stamp and indicators about traffic and delivery such as a DTIM. Increase the DTIM/beacon settings (lengthening the time) to let nodes sleep longer and preserve battery life. Decrease these settings (shortening the time) to support streaming-multicast audio and video applications that are jitter-sensitive. The default value is 100 milliseconds.
<b>DTIM Interval BSSID</b>	Set a DTIM Interval to specify a period for <i>Delivery Traffic Indication Messages</i> (DTIM). A DTIM is periodically included in a beacon frame transmitted from adopted radios. The DTIM period determines how often the beacon contains a DTIM, for example, 1 DTIM for every 10 beacons. The DTIM indicates broadcast and multicast frames (buffered at the Access Point) are soon to arrive. These are simple data frames that require no acknowledgement, so nodes sometimes miss them. Increase the DTIM/beacon settings (lengthening the time) to let nodes sleep longer and preserve their battery life. Decrease these settings (shortening the time) to support streaming multicast audio and video applications that are jitter-sensitive.

<b>RTS Threshold</b>	<p>Specify a <i>Request To Send</i> (RTS) threshold (between 1 - 65,536 bytes) for use by the WLAN's adopted Access Point radios. RTS is a transmitting station's signal that requests a <i>Clear To Send</i> (CTS) response from a receiving client. This RTS/CTS procedure clears the air where clients are contending for transmission time. Benefits include fewer data collisions and better communication with nodes that are hard to find (or hidden) because of other active nodes in the transmission path.</p> <p>Control RTS/CTS by setting an RTS threshold. This setting initiates an RTS/CTS exchange for data frames larger than the threshold, and sends (without RTS/CTS) any data frames smaller than the threshold.</p> <p>Consider the trade-offs when setting an appropriate RTS threshold for the WLAN's Access Point radios. A lower RTS threshold causes more frequent RTS/CTS exchanges. This consumes more bandwidth because of additional latency (RTS/CTS exchanges) before transmissions can commence. A disadvantage is the reduction in data-frame throughput. An advantage is quicker system recovery from electromagnetic interference and data collisions. Environments with more wireless traffic and contention for transmission make the best use of a lower RTS threshold.</p> <p>A higher RTS threshold minimizes RTS/CTS exchanges, consuming less bandwidth for data transmissions. A disadvantage is less help to nodes that encounter interference and collisions. An advantage is faster data-frame throughput. Environments with less wireless traffic and contention for transmission make the best use of a higher RTS threshold.</p>
<b>Short Preamble</b>	<p>If using an 802.11bg radio, select this checkbox for the radio to transmit using a short preamble. Short preambles improve throughput. However, some devices (SpectraLink/Polycomm phones) require long preambles. The default value is disabled.</p>
<b>Guard Interval</b>	<p>Use the drop-down menu to specify a <i>Long</i> or <i>Any</i> guard interval. The guard interval is the space between the packets being transmitted. The guard interval is there to eliminate <i>inter-symbol interference</i> (ISI). ISI occurs when echoes or reflections from one transmission interfere with another. Adding time between transmissions allows echo's and reflections to settle before the next packet is transmitted. A shorter guard interval results in a shorter times which reduces overhead and increases data rates by up to 10%.The default value is Long.</p>
<b>Probe Response Rate</b>	<p>Use the drop-down menu to specify the data transmission rate used for the transmission of probe responses. Options include, <i>highest-basic</i>, <i>lowest-basic</i> and <i>follow-probe-request</i> (default setting).</p>
<b>Probe Response Retry</b>	<p>Select the check box to retry probe responses if they are not acknowledged by the target wireless client. The default value is enabled.</p>

- 9 Select a mode from the **Feed WLAN Packets to Sensor** menu (within the **Radio Share** field) to enable this feature.

Select either *Inline* or *Promiscuous* mode to allow the packets the radio is switching to also be used by the WIPS analysis module. This feature can be enabled in two modes: an inline mode where the wips sensor receives the packets from the radios with radio operating in normal mode. A promiscuous mode where the radio is configured to a mode where it receives all packets on the channel whether the destination address is the radio or not, and the wips module can analyze them.

- 10 Select the **WLAN Mapping/Mesh Mapping** tab.



**Figure 8-32** Access Point Radio - WLAN Mapping/Mesh Mapping screen

- 11 Refer to the **WLAN/BSS Mappings** field to set WLAN BSSID assignments for an existing Access Point deployment.

Administrators can assign each WLAN its own BSSID. If using a single-radio Access Point, there are 8 BSSIDs available. If using a dual-radio Access Point there are 8 BSSIDs for the 802.11b/g/n radio and 8 BSSIDs for the 802.11a/n radio.

- 12 Select **Advanced Mapping** to enable WLAN mapping to a specific BSS ID.
- 13 Select **OK** to save the changes to the WLAN Mapping. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.
- 14 Select the **Legacy Mesh** tab.

**Figure 8-33** Profile - Access Point Legacy Mesh tab

15 Refer to the **Settings** field to define mesh settings for the Access Point radio.

<b>Mesh</b>	Use the drop-down menu to set the mesh mode for this radio. Available options are <i>Disabled</i> , <i>Portal</i> or <i>Client</i> . Setting the mesh mode to <i>Disabled</i> deactivates all mesh activity on this radio. Setting the mesh mode to <i>Portal</i> turns the radio into a mesh portal. This will start the radio beaconing immediately and accept connections from other mesh nodes. Setting the mesh mode to <i>client</i> enables the radio to operate as a mesh client and scan and connect to mesh portals or nodes connected to portals.
<b>Mesh Links</b>	Specify the number of mesh links allowed by the radio. The radio can have between 1-6 mesh links when the radio is configured as a <i>Portal</i> or <i>Client</i> .
<b>Mesh PSK</b>	Provide the encryption key in either ASCII or Hex format. Administrators must ensure this key is configured on the Access Point when staged for mesh, added to the mesh client and to the portal Access Point's configuration on the controller or service platform. Select <i>Show</i> to expose the characters used in the PSK.



**NOTE:** Only single hop mesh links are supported at this time.



**NOTE:** The mesh encryption key is configurable from the *Command Line Interface* (CLI) using the command **mesh psk**. Administrators must ensure that this key is configured on the AP when it is being staged for mesh, and also added to the mesh client as well as to the portal APs configuration on the controller or service platform.

---

---

- 16 Refer to the **Preferred Peer Device** table to add mesh peers. For each peer added, enter its MAC Address and a Priority between 1 and 6. The lower the priority number the higher priority it'll be given when connecting to mesh infrastructure.
- 17 Select the **+ Add Row** button to add preferred peer devices for the radio to connect to in mesh mode.
- 18 Select the **Client Bridge Settings** tab to configure the selected radio as a client-bridge. Note, before configuring the client-bridge parameters, set the radio's rf-mode to *bridge*.

An Access Point's radio can be configured to form a bridge between its wireless/wired clients and an infrastructure WLAN. The bridge radio authenticates and associates with the infrastructure WLAN Access Point. After successful association, the Access Point switches frames between its bridge radio and wired/wireless client(s) connected either to its GE port(s) or to the other radio, thereby providing the clients access to the infrastructure WLAN resources. This feature is supported only on the AP6522, AP6562, AP7522, AP7532, AP7562, AP7602, and AP7622 model Access Points.

The screenshot shows the 'Client Bridge Settings' tab for a radio profile named 'radio2'. The 'General' section contains the following settings: SSID (empty), VLAN (1), Max Clients (64), Connect through Bridges (checked), Channel Dw ell Time (150), Authentication (None), and Encryption (None). The 'EAP Parameters' section includes: Type (PEAP-MS-CHAPv2), Username (empty), Password (empty), Pre-shared Key (\_wing\_default\_), and Handshake Basic Rate (highest). The 'Channel Lists' section shows Band A with channels 1 and 36 selected.

**Figure 8-34** Profile - Access Point Client Bridge Settings tab

19 Refer to the **General** field and define the following configurations:

<b>SSID</b>	Set the infrastructure WLAN's SSID the client-bridge Access Point associates with.
<b>VLAN</b>	Set the VLAN to which the bridged clients' sessions are mapped after successful association with the infrastructure WLAN. Once mapped, the client bridge communicates with permitted hosts over the infrastructure WLAN. Specify the VLAN from 1 to 4095.
<b>Max Clients</b>	Set the maximum number of bridge MAC addresses form 1 to 64. This is the maximum number of client-bridge Access Points that can associate with an infrastructure WLAN. The default value is 64.
<b>Connect through Bridges</b>	Set the maximum number of client-bridge Access Points that can associate with the infrastructure WLAN. Specify a value from 1 to 14. The default value is 14.

<b>Channel Dwell Time</b>	Set the channel-dwell time from 50 to 2000 milliseconds. This is the time the client-bridge radio dwells on each channel (configured in the list of channels) when scanning for an infrastructure WLAN. The default is 150 milliseconds.
<b>Authentication</b>	Set the mode of authentication with the infrastructure WLAN. The authentication mode specified here should be the same as that configured on the infrastructure WLAN. The options are <i>None</i> and <i>EAP</i> . If selecting EAP, specify the EAP authentication parameters. The default setting is None.  For information on WLAN authentication, see <i>Configuring WLAN Security</i> .
<b>Encryption</b>	Set the packet encryption mode. The encryption mode specified here should be the same as that configured on the infrastructure WLAN. The options are <i>None</i> , <i>CCMP</i> and <i>TKIP</i> . The default setting is None.  For information on WLAN encryption, see <i>Configuring WLAN Security</i> .

20 Refer to the **EAP Parameters** field and define the following EAP authentication parameters:

<b>Type</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the EAP authentication method used by the supplicant. The options are TLS and PEAP-MS-CHAPv2. The default EAP type is PEAP-MS-CHAPv2.
<b>Username</b>	Set the 32 character maximum user name for an EAP authentication credential exchange.
<b>Password</b>	Set the 32 character maximum password for the EAP user name specified above.
<b>Pre-shared Key</b>	Set the <i>pre-shared key</i> (PSK) used with EAP. Note, the authenticating algorithm and PSK configured should be same as that on the infrastructure WLAN.
<b>Handshake Basic Rate</b>	Set the basic rate of exchange of handshake packets between the client-bridge and infrastructure WLAN Access Points. The options are highest and normal. The default value is highest.

21 Refer to the **Channel Lists** field and define the list of channels the client-bridge radio scans when scanning for an infrastructure WLAN.

<b>Band A</b>	Define a list of channels for scanning across all the channels in the 5.0 GHz radio band.
<b>Band BG</b>	Define a list of channels for scanning across all the channels in the 2.4 GHz radio band.

22 Refer to the **Keepalive Parameters** field and define the following configurations:

<b>Keepalive Type</b>	Set the keepalive frame type exchanged between the client-bridge and infrastructure Access Points. This is the type of packets exchanged between the client-bridge and infrastructure Access Points, at specified intervals, to keep the client-bridge link up and active. The options are <i>null-data</i> and <i>WNMP</i> packets. The default value is null-data.
<b>Keepalive Interval</b>	Set the keepalive interval from 0 to 86,400 seconds. This is the interval between two successive keepalive frames exchanged between the client-bridge and infrastructure Access Points. The default value is 300 seconds.



<b>Inactivity Timeout</b>	Set the inactivity timeout for each bridge MAC address from 0 to 8,64,000 seconds. This is the time for which the client-bridge Access Point waits before deleting a wired/wireless client's MAC address from which a frame has not been received for more than the time specified here. For example, if the inactivity time is set at 120 seconds, and if no frames are received from a client (MAC address) for 120 seconds, it is deleted. The default value is 600 seconds.
---------------------------	---

23 Refer to the **Radio Link Behaviour** field and define the following configurations:

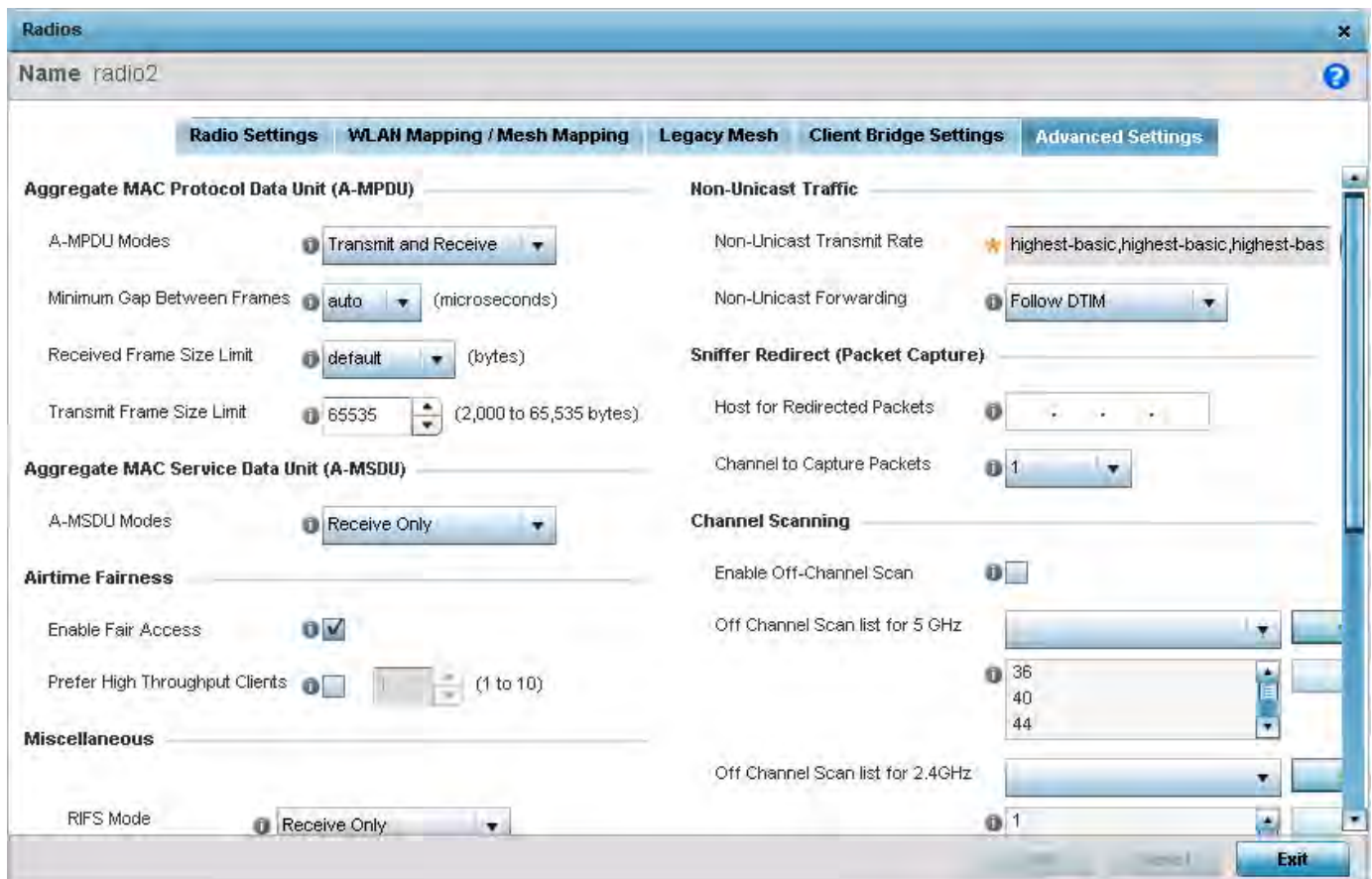
<b>Shutdown Other Radio when Link Goes Down</b>	Select this option to enable shutting down of the <i>non-client bridge</i> radio (this is the radio to which wireless-clients associate) when the link between the <i>client-bridge</i> and <i>infrastructure</i> Access Points is lost. When enabled, wireless clients associated with the non-client bridge radio are pushed to search for and associate with other Access Points having backhaul connectivity. This option is disabled by default.  If enabling this option, specify the time for which the non-client bridge radio is shut down. Use the spinner to specify a time from 1 - 1,800 seconds.
<b>Refresh VLAN Interface when Link Comes Up</b>	Select this option to enable the SVI to refresh on re-establishing client bridge link to the infrastructure Access Point. If using a DHCP assigned IP address, it also causes a DHCP renew. This option is enabled by default.

24 Refer to the **Roam Criteria** field and define the following configuration: Select **OK** to save or override the

<b>Seconds for Missed Beacons</b>	Set the interval from 0 - 60 seconds. This is the time for which the client-bridge Access Point waits, after missing a beacon from the associated infrastructure WLAN Access Point, before roaming to another infrastructure Access Point. For example, if the missed-beacon time is set to 30 seconds, and if more than 30 seconds have passed since the last beacon was received from the associated infrastructure Access Point, the client-bridge Access Point resumes scanning for another infrastructure Access Point. The default value is 20 seconds.
<b>Minimum Signal Strength</b>	Set the minimum signal-strength threshold for signals received from the infrastructure Access Point. Specify a value from -128 to -40 dBm. If the RSSI value of signals received from the infrastructure Access Point falls below the value specified here, the client-bridge Access Point resumes scanning for another infrastructure Access Point. The default is -75 dBm.

25 Select **OK** to save or override the changes to the Client Bridge Settings screen. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

26 Select the **Advanced Settings** tab.



**Figure 8-35** Access Point Radio - Advanced Settings screen

27 Refer to the **Aggregate MAC Protocol Data Unit (A-MPDU)** field to define how MAC service frames are aggregated by the Access Point radio.

<b>A-MPDU Modes</b>	Use the drop-down menu to define the A-MPDU mode supported. Options include <i>Transmit Only</i> , <i>Receive Only</i> , <i>Transmit and Receive</i> and <i>None</i> . The default value is <i>Transmit and Receive</i> . Using the default value, long frames can be both sent and received (up to 64 KB). When enabled, define either a transmit or receive limit (or both).
<b>Minimum Gap Between Frames</b>	Use the drop-down menu to define the minimum gap between A-MPDU frames (in microseconds). A setting of <i>auto</i> defines the gap as system defined. The default value is 4 microseconds.
<b>Received Frame Size Limit</b>	If a support mode is enabled allowing A-MPDU frames, define an advertised maximum limit for received A-MPDU aggregated frames. Options include <i>8191</i> , <i>16383</i> , <i>32767</i> or <i>65535</i> bytes. The default value is 65535 bytes.
<b>Transmit Frame Size Limit</b>	Use the spinner control to set limit on transmitted A-MPDU aggregated frames. The available range is between 2,000 - 65,535 bytes). The default value is 65535 bytes.

28 Use the **A-MSDU Modes** drop-down menu in the **Aggregate MAC Service Data Unit (A-MSDU)** section to set the supported A-MSDU mode.

Available modes include *Receive Only* and *Transmit and Receive*. *Transmit and Receive* is the default value. Using *Transmit and Receive*, frames up to 4 KB can be sent and received. The buffer limit is not configurable.

29 Use the **Airtime Fairness** fields to optionally prioritize wireless access to devices.

Select **Prefer High Throughput Clients** to prioritize clients with higher throughput (802.11n clients) over clients with slower throughput (802.11 a/b/g) clients. Use the spinner control to set a weight for the higher throughput clients.

<b>Enable Fair Access</b>	Select <i>Enable Fair Access</i> to enable this feature and provide equal access client access to radio resources.
<b>Prefer High Throughput Clients</b>	Select <i>Prefer High Throughput Clients</i> to prioritize clients with higher throughput (802.11n clients) over clients with slower throughput (802.11 a/b/g) clients. Use the spinner control to set a weight for the higher throughput clients.

30 Set or override the following **Miscellaneous** advanced radio settings:

<b>RIFS Mode</b>	Define a RIFS mode to determine whether interframe spacing is applied to Access Point transmissions or received packets, both, or neither. The default mode is <i>Transmit and Receive</i> . Interframe spacing is an interval between two consecutive Ethernet frames to enable a brief recovery between packets and allow target devices to prepare for the reception of the next packet. Consider setting this value to <i>None</i> for high priority traffic to reduce packet delay.
<b>STBC Mode</b>	Select a <i>space-time block coding</i> (STBC) option to transmit multiple data stream copies across Access Point antennas to improve signal reliability. An Access Point's transmitted signal traverses a problematic environment, with scattering, reflection and refraction all prevalent. The signal can be further corrupted by noise at the receiver. Consequently, some of the received data copies are less corrupt and better than others. This redundancy means there's a greater chance of using one, or more, of the received copies to successfully decode the signal. STBC effectively combines all the signal copies to extract as much information from each as possible.
<b>Transmit Beamforming</b>	Enable beamforming to steer signals to peers in a specific direction to enhance signal strength and improve throughput amongst meshed devices (not clients). Each Access Point radio support up to 16 beamforming capable mesh peers. When enabled, a <i>beamformer</i> steers its wireless signals to its peers. A <i>beamformee</i> device assists the beamformer with channel estimation by providing a <i>feedback</i> matrix. The feedback matrix is a set of values sent by the beamformee to assist the beamformer in computing a <i>steering</i> matrix. A steering matrix is an additional set of values used to steer wireless signals at the beamformer so constructive signals arrive at the beamformee for better SNR and throughput. Any beamforming capable mesh peer connecting to a radio whose capacity is exhausted cannot enable beamforming itself. Transmit beamforming is available on AP81XX (AP8122, AP8132 and AP8163) model Access Points only, and is disabled by default.

31 Set the following **Aeroscout Properties**:

<b>Forwarding Host</b>	Specify the Aeroscout engine's IP address. When specified, the AP forwards Aeroscout beacons directly to the Aeroscout locationing engine without proxying through the controller or RF Domain manager.  <b>Note:</b> Aeroscout beacon forwarding is supported on the AP6532, AP7502, AP7522, AP7532, AP7562, AP8432, AP8533 model Access Points.
------------------------	---

<b>Forwarding Port</b>	Use the spinner control to set the port on which the Aeroscout engine is reachable.
<b>MAC to be forwarded</b>	Specify the MAC address to be forwarded.

32 Set the following **Ekahau Properties**:

<b>Forwarding Host</b>	Specify the Ekahau engine IP address. Using Ekahau small, battery powered Wi-Fi tags are attached to tracked assets or carried by people. Ekahau processes locations, rules, messages and environmental data and turns the information into locationing maps, alerts and reports.
<b>Forwarding Port</b>	Use the spinner control to set the Ekahau TZSP port used for processing information from locationing tags.
<b>MAC to be forwarded</b>	Specify the MAC address to be forwarded.

33 Set the following **Non-Unicast Traffic** values for the profile's supported Access Point radio and its connected wireless clients:

<b>Broadcast/Multicast Transmit Rate</b>	Use the drop-down menu to define the data rate broadcast and multicast frames are transmitted. Seven different rates are available, if the not using the same rate for each BSSID, each with a separate menu.
<b>Broadcast/Multicast Forwarding</b>	Define whether client broadcast and multicast packets should always follow DTIM, or only follow DTIM when using Power Save Aware mode. The default setting is Follow DTIM.

34 Refer to the **Sniffer Redirect (Packet Capture)** field to define the radio's captured packet configuration.

<b>Host for Redirected Packets</b>	If packets are re-directed from a connected Access Point radio, define an IP address for a resource (additional host system) used to capture the re-directed packets. This address is the numerical (non DNS) address of the host used to capture the re-directed packets.
<b>Channel to Capture Packets</b>	Use the drop-down menu to specify the channel used to capture re-directed packets. The default value is channel 1.

35 Refer to the **Channel Scanning** field to define the radio's captured packet configuration.

<b>Enable Off-Channel Scan</b>	Enable this option to scan across all channels using this radio. Channel scans use Access Point resources and can be time consuming, so only enable when your sure the radio can afford the bandwidth be directed towards to the channel scan and does not negatively impact client support.
<b>Off Channel Scan list for 5GHz</b>	Define a list of channels for off channel scans using the 5GHz Access Point radio. Restricting off channel scans to specific channels frees bandwidth otherwise utilized for scanning across all the channels in the 5GHz radio band.
<b>Off Channel Scan list for 2.4GHz</b>	Define a list of channels for off channel scans using the 2.4GHz Access Point radio. Restricting off channel scans to specific channels frees bandwidth otherwise utilized for scanning across all the channels in the 2.4GHz radio band.
<b>Max Multicast</b>	Set the maximum number (from 0 - 100) of multicast/broadcast messages used to perform off channel scanning. The default setting is 4.
<b>Scan Interval</b>	Set the interval (from 2 - 100 dtims) off channel scans occur. The default setting is 20dtims.

<b>Sniffer Redirect</b>	Specify the IP address of the host to which captured off channel scan packets are redirected.
-------------------------	---

36 If deploying an AP7161 or AP7181 model Access Point, the following **AP7161** settings are available:

<b>Enable Antenna Downtilt</b>	Enable this settings to allow the Access Point to physically transmit in a downward orientation (ADEPT mode).
<b>Extended Range</b>	Set an extended range (from 1 - 25 kilometers) to allow AP7161 and AP7181 model Access Points to transmit and receive with their clients at greater distances without being timed out.

37 Select **OK** to save the changes to the Advanced Settings screen. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 8.7.6 WAN Backhaul Configuration

### ► Profile Interface Configuration

A *Wireless Wide Area Network* (WWAN) card is a specialized network interface card that allows a network device to connect, transmit and receive data over a Cellular Wide Area Network. The AP7161, RFS4000 and RFS6000 all have a PCI Express card slot that supports 3G WWAN cards. The WWAN card uses *point-to-point protocol* (PPP) to connect to the *Internet Service Provider* (ISP) and gain access to the Internet. PPP is the protocol used for establishing internet links over dial-up modems, DSL connections, and many other types of point-to-point communications. PPP packages your system's TCP/IP packets and forwards them to the serial device where they can be put on the network. PPP is a full-duplex protocol used on various physical media, including twisted pair or fiber optic lines or satellite transmission. It uses a variation of *High Speed Data Link Control* (HDLC) for packet encapsulation.

To define a WAN Backhaul configuration:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Profiles > Interface**.
- 2 Expand the Interface menu to display its submenu options.
- 3 Select **WAN Backhaul**.

**Figure 8-36** Profile -WAN Backhaul screen

- 4 Refer to the **WAN (3G) Backhaul** configuration to specify WAN card settings:

<b>WAN Interface Name</b>	Displays the WAN Interface name for the WAN 3G Backhaul card.
<b>Enable WAN (3G)</b>	Select this option to enable 3G WAN card support on the device. A supported 3G card must be connected to the device for this feature to work.

- 5 Set the following authentication parameters from within the **Basic Settings** field:

<b>Username</b>	Provide a 32 character maximum username for authentication support by the cellular data carrier.
<b>Password</b>	Provide a password for authentication support by the cellular data carrier.
<b>Authentication Type</b>	Use the drop-down menu to specify authentication type used by your cellular data provider. Supported authentication types are <i>None</i> , <i>PAP</i> , <i>CHAP</i> , <i>MSCHAP</i> , and <i>MSCHAP-v2</i> .



- 6 Define the following NAT parameters from within the **Network Address Translation (NAT)** field:

<b>NAT Direction</b>	<p>Define the <i>Network Address Translation</i> (NAT) direction. Options include:</p> <p><i>Inside</i> - The inside network is transmitting data over the network its intended destination. On the way out, the source IP address is changed in the header and replaced by the (public) IP address.</p> <p><i>Outside</i> - Packets passing through the NAT on the way back to the controller or service platform managed LAN are searched against to the records kept by the NAT engine. There, the destination IP address is changed back to the specific internal private class IP address in order to reach the LAN over the network.</p> <p><i>None</i> - No NAT activity takes place. This is the default setting.</p>
----------------------	---

- 7 Define the following security parameters from within the **Security Settings** field:

<b>IPv4 Inbound Firewall Rules</b>	<p>Use the drop-down menu to select an inbound IPv4 ACL to associate with traffic on the WAN backhaul. This setting pertains to IPv4 inbound traffic only and not IPv6. IPv4 operates as a best effort delivery method, as it does not guarantee delivery, and does not ensure proper sequencing or duplicate delivery (unlike (TCP). IPv4 hosts can use link local addressing to provide local connectivity. If an appropriate IP ACL does not exist, select the <i>Add</i> button to create a new one.</p>
<b>VPN Crypto Map</b>	<p>If necessary, specify a crypto map for the wireless WAN. A crypto map can be up to 256 characters long. If a suitable crypto map is not available, click the <i>Create</i> button to configure a new one.</p>

- 8 Define the following route parameters from within the **Default Route Priority** field:

<b>WWAN Default Route Priority</b>	<p>Use the spinner control to define a priority from 1 - 8,000 for the default route learned by the wireless WAN. The default value is 3000.</p>
------------------------------------	--

- 9 Select **OK** to save the changes to the screen. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 8.7.7 PPPoE Configuration

### ► Profile Interface Configuration

*PPP over Ethernet* (PPPoE) is a data-link protocol for dialup connections. PPPoE allows an Access Point to use a broadband modem (DSL, cable modem, etc.) for access to high-speed data and broadband networks. Most DSL providers are currently supporting (or deploying) the PPPoE protocol. PPPoE uses standard encryption, authentication, and compression methods as specified by the PPPoE protocol. PPPoE enables a point-to-point connection to an ISP over existing Ethernet interface.

To provide a point-to-point connection, each PPPoE session determines the Ethernet address of a remote PPPoE client, and establishes a session. PPPoE uses both a discover and session phase to identify a client and establish a point-to-point connection. By using such a connection, a Wireless WAN failover is available to maintain seamless network access if the Wired WAN were to fail.



**NOTE:** Devices with PPPoE enabled continue to support VPN, NAT, PBR and 3G failover over the PPPoE interface. Multiple PPPoE sessions are supported using a single user account user account if RADIUS is configured to allow simultaneous access.



When PPPoE client operation is enabled, it discovers an available server and establishes a PPPoE link for traffic flow. When a wired WAN connection failure is detected, traffic flows through the WWAN interface in fail-over mode (if the WWAN network is configured and available). When the PPPoE link becomes accessible again, traffic is redirected back through the Access Point's wired WAN link.

When the Access Point initiates a PPPoE session, it first performs a discovery to identify the Ethernet MAC address of the PPPoE client and establish a PPPoE session ID. In discovery, the PPPoE client discovers a server to host the PPPoE connection.

To create a PPPoE point-to-point configuration

- 1 Select **Configuration > Profiles > Interface**.
- 2 Expand the Interface menu to display its submenu options.
- 3 Select **PPPoE**.

**Figure 8-37** Profile -PPPoE screen

- 4 Use the **Basic Settings** field to enable PPPoE and define a PPPoE client

<b>Admin Status</b>	Select <i>Enable</i> to support a high speed client mode point-to-point connection using the PPPoE protocol. The default setting is disabled.
<b>Service</b>	Enter the 128 character maximum PPPoE client service name provided by the service provider.

<b>DSL Modem Network (VLAN)</b>	Use the spinner control to set the PPPoE VLAN (client local network) connected to the DSL modem. This is the local network connected to DSL modem. The available range is 1 - 4,094. The default VLAN is VLAN1.
<b>Client IP Address</b>	Provide the numerical (non hostname) IP address of the PPPoE client.

- 5 Define the following **Authentication** parameters for PPPoE client interoperation:

<b>Username</b>	Provide the 64 character maximum username used for authentication support by the PPPoE client.
<b>Password</b>	Provide the 64 character maximum password used for authentication by the PPPoE client.
<b>Authentication Type</b>	Use the drop-down menu to specify authentication type used by the PPPoE client, and whose credentials must be shared by its peer Access Point. Supported authentication options include <i>None</i> , <i>PAP</i> , <i>CHAP</i> , <i>MSCHAP</i> , and <i>MSCHAP-v2</i> .

- 6 Define the following **Connection** settings for the PPPoE point-to-point connection with the PPPoE client:

<b>Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU)</b>	Set the PPPoE client <i>maximum transmission unit</i> (MTU) from 500 - 1,492. The MTU is the largest physical packet size in bytes a network can transmit. Any messages larger than the MTU are divided into smaller packets before being sent. A PPPoE client should be able to maintain its point-to-point connection for this defined MTU size. The default MTU is 1,492.
<b>Client Idle Timeout</b>	Set a timeout in either <i>Seconds</i> (1 - 65,535), <i>Minutes</i> (1 - 1,092) or <i>Hours</i> (1 - 18). The Access Point uses the defined timeout so it does not sit idle waiting for input from the PPPoE client and server that may never come. The default setting is 10 minutes.
<b>Keep Alive</b>	Select this option to ensure the point-to-point connection to the PPPoE client is continuously maintained and not timed out. This setting is disabled by default.

- 7 Set the **Network Address Translation (NAT)** direction for the PPPoE configuration.

*Network Address Translation* (NAT) converts an IP address in one network to a different IP address or set of IP addresses in another network. The Access Point maps its local (Inside) network addresses to WAN (Outside) IP addresses, and translates the WAN IP addresses on incoming packets to local IP addresses. NAT is useful because it allows the authentication of incoming and outgoing requests, and minimizes the number of WAN IP addresses needed when a range of local IP addresses is mapped to each WAN IP address. The default setting is None (neither inside or outside).

- 8 Define the following **Security Settings** for the PPPoE configuration:

<b>IPv4 Inbound Firewall Rules</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select a firewall (set of IP access connection rules) to apply to the PPPoE client connection. If a firewall rule does not exist suiting the data protection needs of the PPPoE client connection, select the <i>Create</i> icon to define a new rule configuration or the <i>Edit</i> icon to modify an existing rule. For more information, see <i>Setting an IPv4 or IPv6 Firewall Policy on page 10-21</i> .
<b>VPN Crypto Map</b>	Use the drop-down menu to apply an existing crypt map configuration to this PPPoE interface. Crypto Maps are sets of configuration parameters for encrypting packets that pass through the VPN Tunnel.

- 9 Use the spinner control to set the **Default Route Priority** for the default route learnt using PPPoE. Select from 1 - 8,000. The default setting is 2,000.

- 10 Select **OK** to save the changes to the PPPoE screen. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration. Saved configurations are persistent across reloads.

## 8.7.8 Bluetooth Configuration

### ► Profile Interface Configuration

AP-8432 and AP-8533 model Access Points utilize a built in Bluetooth chip for specific Bluetooth functional behaviors in a WiNG managed network. AP-8432 and AP-8533 models support both Bluetooth *classic* and Bluetooth *low energy* technology. These platforms can use their Bluetooth classic enabled radio to sense other Bluetooth enabled devices and report device data (MAC address, RSSI and device calls) to an ADSP server for intrusion detection. If the device presence varies in an unexpected manner, ADSP can raise an alarm.



**NOTE:** AP-8132 model Access Points support an external USB Bluetooth radio providing ADSP Bluetooth classic sensing functionality only, not the Bluetooth low energy beaconing functionality available for AP-8432 and AP-8533 model Access Points described in this section.

AP-8432 and AP-8533 model Access Points support Bluetooth beaconing to emit either iBeacon or Eddystone-URL beacons. The Access Point's Bluetooth radio sends non-connectable, undirected *low-energy* (LE) advertisement packets on a periodic basis. These advertisement packets are short, and sent on Bluetooth advertising channels that conform to already-established iBeacon and Eddystone-URL standards. Portions of the advertising packet are still customizable however.

To define a profile's Bluetooth radio interface configuration:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Profiles > Interface**.
- 2 Expand the Interface menu to display its submenu options.
- 3 Select **Bluetooth**.

**Figure 8-38** Profile Overrides - Bluetooth screen

- 4 Set the following **Bluetooth Radio Configuration**:

<b>Admin Status</b>	Enable or Disable Bluetooth support capabilities for AP-8432 or AP-8533 model Access Point Bluetooth radio transmissions. The default value is disabled.
<b>Description</b>	Define a 64 character maximum description for the Access Point's Bluetooth radio to differentiate this radio interface from other Bluetooth supported radio's that may be members of the same RF Domain.

- 5 Set the following **Basic Settings**:

<b>Bluetooth Radio Functional Mode</b>	Set the Access Point's Bluetooth radio functional mode to either <i>bt-sensor</i> or <i>le-beacon</i> . Use <i>bt-sensor</i> mode for ADSP Bluetooth classic sensing. Use <i>le-beacon</i> mode to have the Access Point transmit both <i>ibeacon</i> and <i>Eddystone-URL</i> low energy beacons. <i>le-beacon</i> is the default setting.
<b>Beacon Transmission Period</b>	Set the Bluetooth radio's beacon transmission period from 100 - 10,000 milliseconds. The default setting is 1,000 milliseconds.

<b>Beacon Transmission Pattern</b>	When the Bluetooth radio's mode is set to le-beacon, use the enabled drop-down menu to set the beacon's emitted transmission pattern to either <i>eddystone_url1</i> , <i>eddystone_url2</i> or <i>ibeacon</i> . An eddystone-URL frame broadcasts a URL using a compressed encoding scheme to better fit within a limited advertisement packet. Once decoded, the URL can be used by a client for Internet access. iBeacon was created by Apple for use in iOS devices (beginning with iOS version 7.0). There are three data fields Apple has made available to iOS applications, a <i>UUID</i> for device identification, a <i>Major</i> value for device class and a <i>Minor</i> value for more refined information like product category.
------------------------------------	---

- 6 Define the following **Eddystone Settings** if the Beacon Transmission Pattern has been set to either *eddystone\_url1* or *eddystone\_url2*:

<b>Eddystone Beacon Calibration Signal Strength</b>	Set the eddystone beacon measured calibration signal strength, from -127 to 127 dBm, at 0 meters. Mobile devices can approximate their distance to beacons based on received signal strength. However, distance readings can fluctuate since they depend on several external factors. The closer you are to a beacon, the more accurate the reported distance. This setting is the projected calibration signal strength at 0 meters. The default setting is -19 dBm.
<b>URL-1 to Transmit Eddystone-URL</b>	Enter a 64 character maximum eddystone-URL1. The URL must be 18 characters or less once auto-encoding is applied. The encoding process is for getting the URL to fit within the beacon's payload.
<b>URL-2 to Transmit Eddystone-URL</b>	Enter a 64 character maximum eddystone-URL2. The URL must be 18 characters or less once auto-encoding is applied. The encoding process is for getting the URL to fit within the beacon's payload.

- 7 Define the following **iBeacon Settings** if the Beacon Transmission Pattern has been set to iBeacon:

<b>iBeacon Calibration Signal Strength</b>	Set the iBeacon measured calibration signal strength, from -127 to 127 dBm, at 1 meter. Mobile devices can approximate their distance to beacons based on received signal strength. However, distance readings can fluctuate since they depend on several external factors. The closer you are to a beacon, the more accurate the reported distance. This setting is the projected calibration signal strength at 1 meter. The default setting is -60 dBm.
<b>iBeacon Major Number</b>	Set the iBeacon Major value from 0 - 65,535. Major values identify and distinguish groups. For example, each beacon on a specific floor in a building could be assigned a unique major value. The default is 1,111.
<b>iBeacon Minor Number</b>	Set the iBeacon Minor value from 0 - 65,535. Minor values identify and distinguish individual beacons. Minor values help identify individual beacons within a group of beacons assigned a major value. The default setting is 2,222.
<b>iBeacon UUID</b>	Define a 32 hex character maximum UUID. The <i>Universally Unique Identifier</i> (UUID) classification contains 32 hexadecimal digits. The UUID distinguishes iBeacons in the network from all other beacons in networks outside of your direct administration.

- 8 Select **OK** to save the changes to the Bluetooth configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration. Saved configurations are persistent across reloads.

## 8.7.9 Profile Interface Deployment Considerations

### ▶ *Profile Interface Configuration*

Before defining a profile's interface configuration (supporting Ethernet port, Virtual Interface, port channel and Access Point radio configurations) refer to the following deployment guidelines to ensure these configuration are optimally effective:

- Power over Ethernet is supported on RFS4000 and RFS6000 model controllers. When enabled, the controller supports 802.3af PoE on each of its ge ports.
- When changing from a default DHCP address to a fixed IP address, set a static route first. This is critical when the controller or service platform is being accessed from a subnet not directly connected to the controller or service platform and the default route was set from DHCP.
- Take care not to modify an Access Point's configuration using its resident Web UI, CLI or SNMP interfaces when managed by a profile, or risk the Access Point having a configuration independent from the profile until the profile can be uploaded to the Access Point once again.

## 8.8 Profile Network Configuration

Setting a profile's network configuration is a large task comprised of numerous administration activities.

A profile's network configuration process consists of the following:

- *Setting a Profile's DNS Configuration*
- *Setting a Profile's ARP Configuration*
- *Setting a Profile's L2TPV3 Configuration*
- *Setting a Profile's GRE Configuration*
- *Setting a Profile's IGMP Snooping Configuration*
- *Setting a Profile's MLD Snooping Configuration*
- *Setting a Profile's Quality of Service (QoS) Configuration*
- *Setting a Profile's Spanning Tree Configuration*
- *Setting a Profile's Routing Configuration*
- *Setting a Profile's Dynamic Routing (OSPF) Configuration*
- *Setting a Profile's Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) Configuration*
- *Setting a Profile's Forwarding Database Configuration*
- *Setting a Profile's Bridge VLAN Configuration*
- *Setting a Profile's Cisco Discovery Protocol Configuration*
- *Setting a Profile's Link Layer Discovery Protocol Configuration*
- *Setting a Profile's Miscellaneous Network Configuration*
- *Setting a Profile's Alias Configuration*
- *Setting a Profile's IPv6 Neighbor Configuration*

Before beginning any of the profile network configuration activities described in the sections above, review the configuration and deployment considerations available in *Profile Network Configuration and Deployment Considerations*.

## 8.8.1 Setting a Profile's DNS Configuration

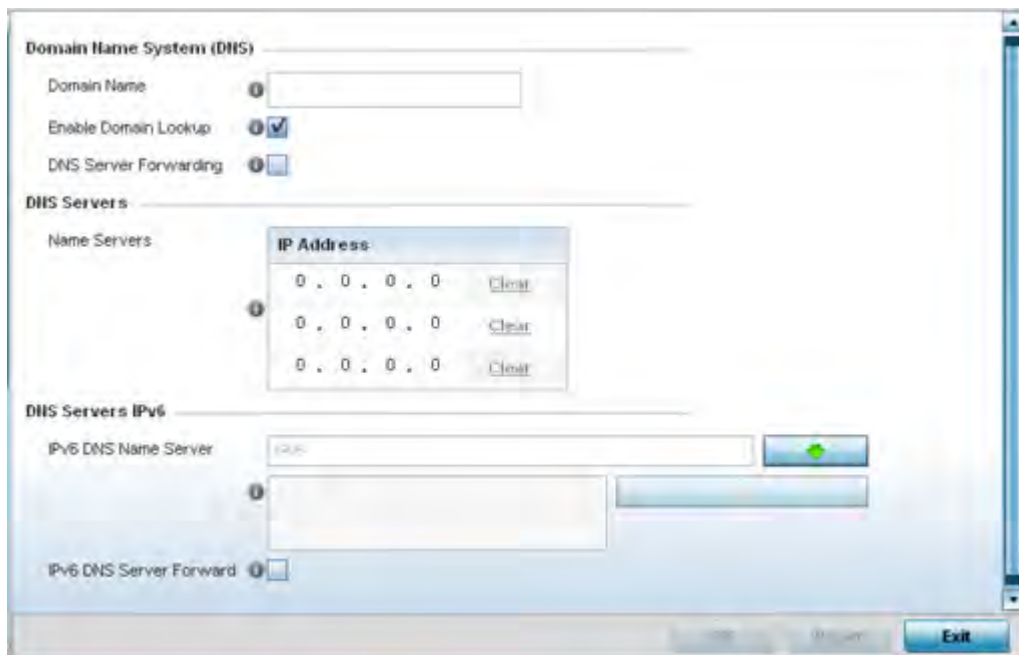
### ► Profile Network Configuration

**Domain Naming System (DNS)** DNS is a hierarchical naming system for resources connected to the Internet or a private network. Primarily, DNS resources translate domain names into IP addresses. If one DNS server doesn't know how to translate a particular domain name, it asks another one until the correct IP address is returned. DNS enables access to resources using human friendly notations. DNS converts human friendly domain names into notations used by different networking equipment for locating resources.

As a resource is accessed (using human-friendly hostnames), it's possible to access the resource even if the underlying machine friendly notation name changes. Without DNS, in the simplest terms, you would need to remember a series of numbers (123.123.123.123) instead of an easy to remember domain name (for example, *www.domainname.com*).

To define the DNS configuration:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Profiles > Network**.
- 2 Expand the Network menu to display its submenu options.
- 3 Select **DNS**.



**Figure 8-39** DNS screen

- 4 Set the following **Domain Name System (DNS)** configuration data:

<b>Domain Name</b>	Provide the default domain name used to resolve DNS names. The name cannot exceed 64 characters.
<b>Enable Domain Lookup</b>	Select the check box to enable DNS. When enabled, human friendly domain names are converted into numerical IP destination addresses. The radio button is selected by default.
<b>DNS Server Forwarding</b>	Select this option to enable the forwarding DNS queries to external DNS servers if a DNS query cannot be processed by local DNS resources. This feature is disabled by default.



5 Set the following **DNS Server** configuration data:

<b>Name Servers</b>	Provide a list of up to three DNS servers to forward DNS queries if local DNS resources are unavailable. The DNS name servers are used to resolve IP addresses. Use the <i>Clear</i> link (next to each DNS server) to clear the DNS name server's IP address from the list.
---------------------	--

6 Set the following **DNS Servers IPv6** configuration data when using IPv6:

<b>IPv6 DNS Name Server</b>	Provide the default domain name used to resolve IPv6 DNS names. When an IPv6 host is configured with the address of a DNS server, the host sends DNS name queries to the server for resolution. A maximum of three entries are permitted.
<b>IPv6 DNS Server Forward</b>	Select the check box to enable IPv6 DNS domain names to be converted into numerical IP destination addresses. The setting is disabled by default.

Select **OK** to save the changes made to the DNS configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 8.8.2 Setting a Profile's ARP Configuration

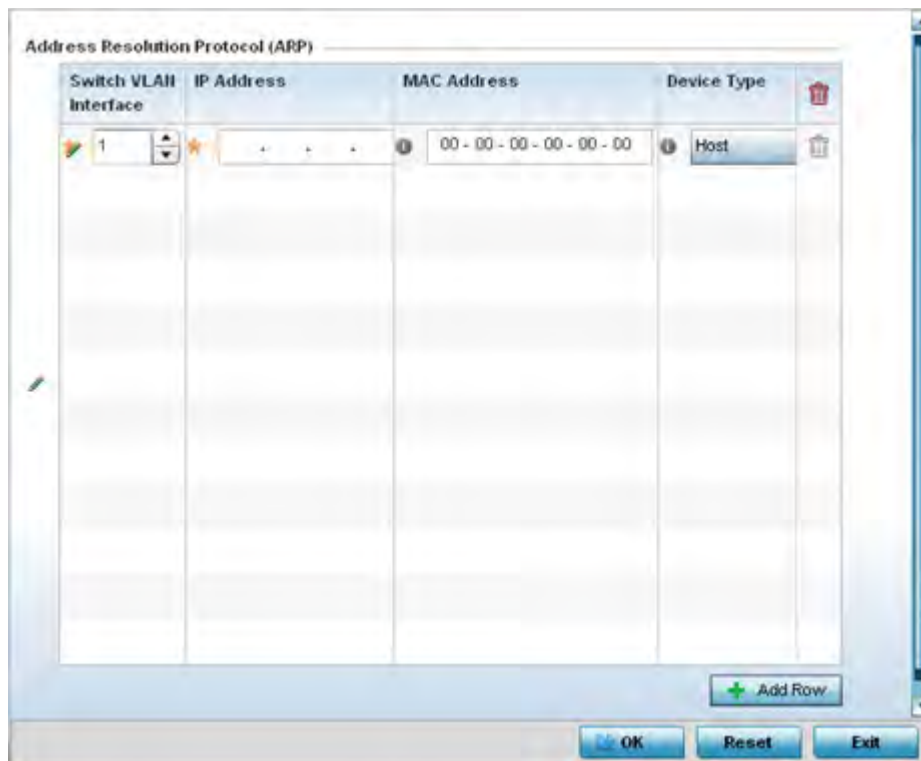
### ► Profile Network Configuration

*Address Resolution Protocol* (ARP) is a protocol for mapping an IP address to a hardware MAC address recognized on the network. ARP provides protocol rules for making this correlation and providing address conversion in both directions.

When an incoming packet destined for a host arrives, ARP is used to find a physical host or MAC address that matches the IP address. ARP looks in its ARP cache and, if it finds the address, provides it so the packet can be converted to the right packet length and format and sent to its destination. If no entry is found for the IP address, ARP broadcasts a request packet in a special format on the LAN to see if a device knows it has that IP address associated with it. A device that recognizes the IP address as its own returns a reply indicating it. ARP updates the ARP cache for future reference and then sends the packet to the MAC address that replied.

To define an ARP supported configuration:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Profiles > Network**.
- 2 Expand the Network menu to display its submenu options.
- 3 Select **ARP**.
- 4 Select **+ Add Row** from the lower right-hand side of the screen to populate the ARP table with rows used to define ARP network address information.



**Figure 8-40** ARP screen

- 5 Set the following parameters to define the ARP configuration:

<b>Switch VLAN Interface</b>	Use the spinner control to select a VLAN interface for an address requiring resolution.
<b>IP Address</b>	Define the IP address used to fetch a MAC Address.
<b>MAC Address</b>	Set the target MAC address subject to resolution. This is the MAC used for mapping an IP address to a MAC address recognized on the network.
<b>Device Type</b>	Specify the device type the ARP entry supports. Host is the default setting.

- 6 To add additional ARP configurations, select **+ Add Row** button and enter the configuration information.
- 7 Select the **OK** button located at the bottom right of the screen to save the changes to the ARP configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

### 8.8.3 Setting a Profile's L2TPV3 Configuration

#### ► Profile Network Configuration

L2TP V3 is an IETF standard used for transporting different types of layer 2 frames in an IP network (and Access Point profile). L2TP V3 defines control and encapsulation protocols for tunneling layer 2 frames between two IP nodes.

Use L2TP V3 to create tunnels for transporting layer 2 frames. L2TP V3 enables wireless devices to create tunnels for transporting Ethernet frames to and from bridge VLANs and physical ports. L2TP V3 tunnels can be defined between other vendor devices supporting the L2TP V3 protocol.

Multiple pseudowires can be created within an L2TP V3 tunnel. Access Points support an Ethernet VLAN pseudowire type exclusively.

---

---



**NOTE:** A pseudowire is an emulation of a layer 2 point-to-point connection over a *packet-switching network* (PSN). A pseudowire was developed out of the necessity to encapsulate and tunnel layer 2 protocols across a layer 3 network.

---

---

Ethernet VLAN pseudowires transport Ethernet frames to and from a specified VLAN. One or more L2TP V3 tunnels can be defined between tunnel end points. Each tunnel can have one or more L2TP V3 sessions. Each tunnel session corresponds to one pseudowire. An L2TP V3 control connection (a L2TP V3 tunnel) needs to be established between the tunneling entities before creating a session.

For optimal pseudowire operation, both the L2TP V3 session originator and responder need to know the pseudowire type and identifier. These two parameters are communicated during L2TP V3 session establishment. An L2TP V3 session created within an L2TP V3 connection also specifies multiplexing parameters for identifying a pseudowire type and ID.

The working status of a pseudowire is reflected by the state of the L2TP V3 session. If a L2TP V3 session is down, the pseudowire associated with it must be shut down. The L2TP V3 control connection keep-alive mechanism can serve as a monitoring mechanism for the pseudowires associated with a control connection.

---

---



**NOTE:** If connecting an Ethernet port to another Ethernet port, the pseudowire type must be *Ethernet port*, if connecting an Ethernet VLAN to another Ethernet VLAN, the pseudowire type must be *Ethernet VLAN*.

---

---

To define an L2TPV3 configuration for an Access Point profile:

- 1 Select **Configuration** > **Profiles** > **Network**.
- 2 Expand the Network menu to display its submenu options.
- 3 Expand the **Network** menu and select **L2TPv3**.

The **General** tab displays by default with additional **L2RPv3 Tunnel** and **Manual Session** tabs available.

The screenshot shows the 'General' tab of the 'Network - L2TPv3' configuration screen. It is divided into two sections: 'General Settings' and 'Logging Settings'.  
**General Settings:**  
 - Hostname: A text input field.  
 - Router ID: A numeric input field with a dropdown menu set to 'IP Address'.  
 - UDP Listen Port: A numeric input field with a dropdown menu set to '1701' and a range '(1,024 to 65,535)'.  
 - Tunnel Bridging: A checkbox.  
**Logging Settings:**  
 - Enable Logging: A checkbox.  
 - IP Address: A star icon, a text input field, and a dropdown menu set to 'Any'.  
 - Hostname: A star icon, a text input field, and a dropdown menu set to 'Any'.  
 - Router ID: A star icon, a text input field, a dropdown menu set to 'Integer', and a dropdown menu set to 'Any'.  
 At the bottom right, there are buttons for 'OK', 'Reset', and 'Exit'.

**Figure 8-41** Network - L2TPv3 screen, General tab

- 4 Set the following **General Settings** for a L2TPv3 profile configuration:

<b>Hostname</b>	Define a 64 character maximum host name to specify the name of the host that's sent tunnel messages. Tunnel establishment involves exchanging 3 message types ( <i>SCCRQ</i> , <i>SCCRP</i> and <i>SCCN</i> ) with the peer. Tunnel IDs and capabilities are exchanged during the tunnel establishment with the host.
<b>Router ID</b>	Set either the numeric IP address or the integer used as an identifier for tunnel AVP messages. AVP messages assist in the identification of a tunnelled peer.
<b>UDP Listen Port</b>	Select this option to set the port used for listening to incoming traffic. Select a port from 1,024 - 65,535.
<b>Tunnel Bridging</b>	Select this option to enable bridge packets between two tunnel end points. This setting is disabled by default.

- 5 Set the following **Logging Settings** for a L2TPv3 profile configuration:

<b>Enable Logging</b>	Select the is option to enable the logging of Ethernet frame events to and from bridge VLANs and physical ports on a defined IP address, host or router ID. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>IP Address</b>	Optionally use a peer tunnel ID address to capture and log L2TPv3 events. Use <i>Any</i> to log any IP address.
<b>Hostname</b>	If not using an IP address for event logging, optionally use a peer tunnel hostname to capture and log L2TPv3 events. Use <i>Any</i> to log all hostnames. A Hostname cannot exceed 64 characters.
<b>Router ID</b>	If not using an IP address or a hostname for event logging, use a router ID to capture and log L2TPv3 events. Use <i>Any</i> to log all routers.

6 Select the **L2TPv3 Tunnel** tab.

Name	Local IP Address	MTU	Use Tunnel Policy	Local Hostname	Local Router ID	Establishment Criteria	Critical Resource	Peer IP Address	Hostname
tunnelt	Not Set	1,460	default		Not Set	Always		Not Set	Not Set

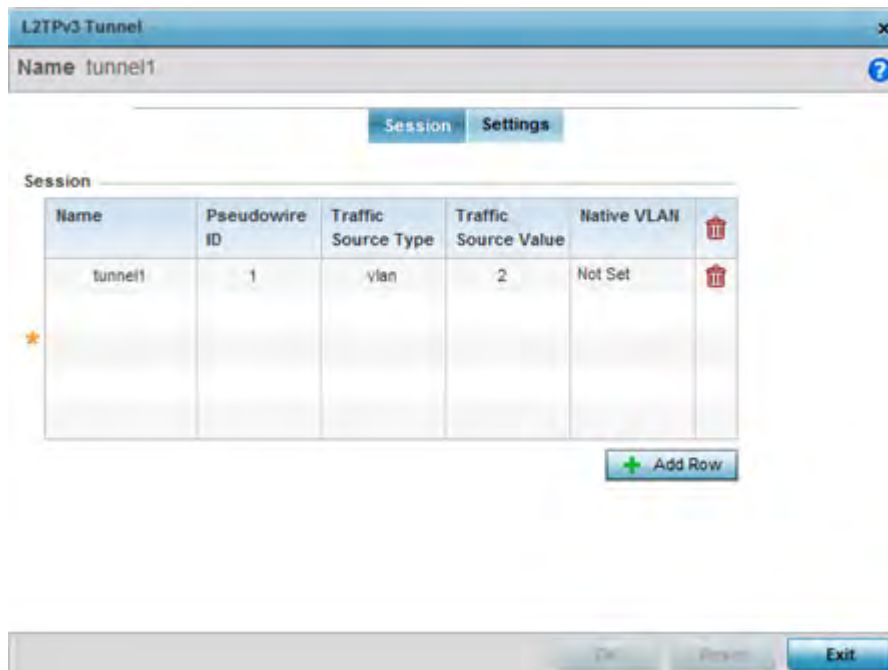
**Figure 8-42** Network - L2TPv3 screen, T2TP tunnel tab

7 Review the following L2TPv3 tunnel configuration data:

<b>Name</b>	Displays the name of each listed L2TPv3 tunnel assigned upon creation.
<b>Local IP Address</b>	Lists the IP address assigned as the local tunnel end point address, not the interface IP address. This IP is used as the tunnel source IP address. If this parameter is not specified, the source IP address is chosen automatically based on the tunnel peer IP address.
<b>MTU</b>	Displays the <i>maximum transmission unit</i> (MTU) size for each listed tunnel. The MTU is the size (in bytes) of the largest protocol data unit that the layer can pass between tunnel peers.
<b>Use Tunnel Policy</b>	Lists the L2TPv3 tunnel policy assigned to each listed tunnel.
<b>Local Hostname</b>	Lists the tunnel specific hostname used by each listed tunnel. This is the host name advertised in tunnel establishment messages.
<b>Local Router ID</b>	Specifies the router ID sent in the tunnel establishment messages.
<b>Establishment Criteria</b>	Specifies the criteria required for a tunnel between two peers.
<b>Critical Resource</b>	Specifies the critical resource that should exist for a tunnel between two peers. Critical resources are device IP addresses or interface destinations interpreted as critical to the health of the network. Critical resources allow for the continuous monitoring of these defined addresses. A critical resource, if not available, can result in the network suffering performance degradation. A critical resource can be a gateway, AAA server, WAN interface or any hardware or service on which the stability of the network depends. Critical resources are pinged regularly. If there's a connectivity issue, an event is generated stating a critical resource is unavailable.

<b>Peer IP Address</b>	Specifies the IP address of the tunnel peer device.
<b>Host Name</b>	Specifies the host name of the tunnel device.

- 8 Either select **Add** to create a new L2TPv3 tunnel configuration, **Edit** to modify an existing tunnel configuration or **Delete** to remove a tunnel from those available to this profile.
- 9 If creating a new tunnel configuration, assign it a 31 character maximum **Name**. Select **OK** to create a L2TPv3 tunnel.



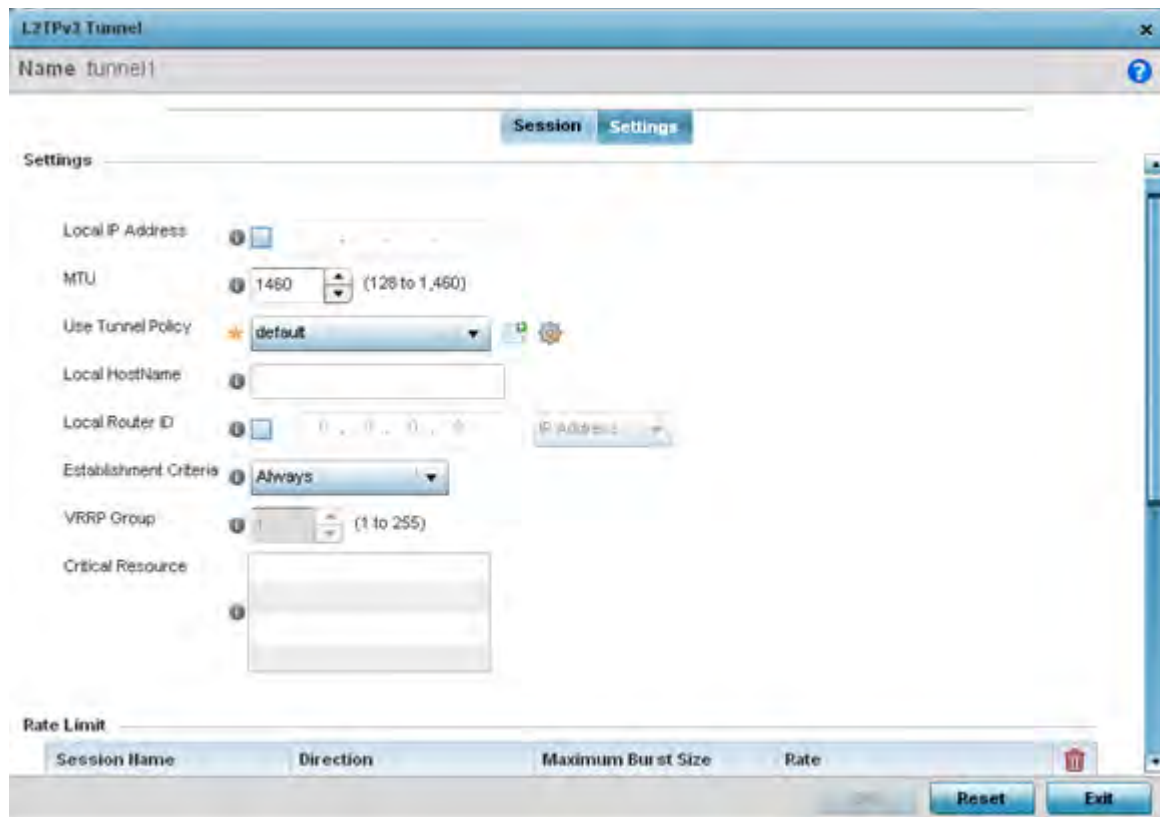
**Figure 8-43** Network - L2TPv3 screen, L2TPv3 Tunnel Session Information

Refer to the **Session** table to review the configurations of the peers available for tunnel connection. Select **+ Add Row** to populate the table with configurable session parameters for this tunnel configuration.

- 10 Define the following **Session** values required for the L2TPv3 tunnel configuration:

<b>Name</b>	Enter a 31 character maximum session name. There is no idle timeout for a tunnel. A tunnel is not usable without a session and a subsequent session name. The tunnel is closed when the last session tunnel session is closed.
<b>Pseudowire ID</b>	Define a pseudowire ID for this session. A pseudowire is an emulation of a layer 2 point-to-point connection over a <i>packet-switching network</i> (PSN). A pseudowire was developed out of the necessity to encapsulate and tunnel layer 2 protocols across a layer 3 network.
<b>Traffic Source Type</b>	Lists the type of traffic tunneled in this session (VLAN etc.).
<b>Traffic Source Value</b>	Define a VLAN range to include in the tunnel session. Available VLAN ranges are from 1 - 4,094.
<b>Native</b>	Select this option to provide a VLAN ID that will not be tagged in tunnel establishment and packet transfer.

- 11 Select **Settings**.



**Figure 8-44** Network - L2TPv3 screen - Add L2TPv3 Tunnel Settings

12 Define the following **Settings** required for the L2TPv3 tunnel configuration:

<b>Local IP Address</b>	Enter the IP address assigned as the local tunnel end point address, not the interface IP address. This IP is used as the tunnel source IP address. If this parameter is not specified, the source IP address is chosen automatically based on the tunnel peer IP address. This parameter is applicable when establishing the tunnel and responding to incoming tunnel create requests.
<b>MTU</b>	Set the <i>maximum transmission unit</i> (MTU). The MTU is the size (in bytes) of the largest protocol data unit the layer can pass between tunnel peers. Define a MTU from 128 - 1,460 bytes. The default setting is 1,460. A larger MTU means processing fewer packets for the same amount of data.
<b>Use Tunnel Policy</b>	Select the L2TPv3 tunnel policy. The policy consists of user defined values for protocol specific parameters which can be used with different tunnels. If none is available, a new policy can be created or an existing one can be modified.
<b>Local Hostname</b>	Provide the tunnel specific hostname used by this tunnel. This is the host name advertised in tunnel establishment messages. A Hostname cannot exceed 64 characters.
<b>Local Router ID</b>	Specify the router ID sent in tunnel establishment messages with a target peer device.



<b>Establishment Criteria</b>	Specify the establishment criteria for creating a tunnel. The tunnel is only created if this device is one of the following: vrrp-master cluster-master rf-domain-manager  The tunnel is always created if <i>Always</i> is selected. This indicates the device need not be any one of the above three (3) to establish a tunnel.
<b>VRRP Group</b>	Set the VRRP group ID. VRRP groups is only enabled when the Establishment Criteria is set to vrrp-master.
<b>Critical Resource</b>	The <i>Critical Resources</i> table lists important resources defined for this system. The tunnel is created and maintained only if these critical resources are available. The tunnel is removed if any one of the defined resources goes down or is unreachable.

- 13 Select **+ Add Row** and define the following **Rate Limit** settings for the L2TPv3 tunnel configuration. Rate limiting limits the maximum rate sent to or received from L2TPv3 tunnel members.

<b>Session Name</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the tunnel session that will have the direction, burst size and traffic rate settings applied.
<b>Direction</b>	Select the direction for L2TPv3 tunnel traffic rate limiting. <i>Egress</i> traffic is outbound L2TPv3 tunnel data coming to the controller, service platform or Access Point. <i>Ingress</i> traffic is inbound L2TPv3 tunnel data coming to the controller, service platform or Access Point.
<b>Maximum Burst Size</b>	Set the maximum burst size for egress or ingress traffic rate limiting (depending on which direction is selected) on a L2TPv3 tunnel. Set a maximum burst size between 2 - 1024 kbytes. The smaller the burst, the less likely the upstream packet transmission will result in congestion for L2TPv3 tunnel traffic. The default setting is 320 bytes.
<b>Rate</b>	Set the data rate (from 50 - 1,000,000 kbps) for egress or ingress traffic rate limiting (depending on which direction is selected) for an L2TPv3 tunnel. The default setting is 5000 kbps.
<b>Background</b>	Set the <i>Random Early Detection</i> threshold in percentage (%) of the <i>Maximum Burst Size</i> value for low priority traffic. The default value is 50%.
<b>Best-Effort</b>	Set the <i>Random Early Detection</i> threshold in percentage (%) of the <i>Maximum Burst Size</i> value for normal priority traffic. The default value is 50%.
<b>Video</b>	Set the <i>Random Early Detection</i> threshold in percentage (%) of the <i>Maximum Burst Size</i> value for video traffic. The default value is 25%.
<b>Voice</b>	Set the <i>Random Early Detection</i> threshold in percentage (%) of the <i>Maximum Burst Size</i> value for voice traffic. The default value is 0%.

Refer to the **Peer** table to review the configurations of the peers available for tunnel connection.

- 14 Select **+ Add Row** to populate the table with a maximum of two peer configurations.

The screenshot shows a configuration window titled "Add Row" with the following fields and controls:

- Peer ID:** A spinner control set to 1, with a range of (1 to 2).
- Peer IP Address:** A text input field.
- Hostname:** A text input field.
- Router ID:** A text input field with a dropdown menu set to "Integer Range".
- Encapsulation:** A dropdown menu set to "IP".
- UDP Port:** A spinner control set to 1111, with a range of (1,024 to 65,535).
- IPsec Secure:** A checkbox.
- IPsec Gateway:** A text input field.

At the bottom of the dialog are "OK" and "Exit" buttons.

**Figure 8-45** Network - L2TPv3 screen, Add L2TPv3 Peer Configuration

15 Define the following **Peer** settings:

<b>Peer ID</b>	Define the primary peer ID used to set the <i>primary</i> and <i>secondary</i> peer for tunnel failover. If the peer is not specified, tunnel establishment does not occur. However, if a peer tries to establish a tunnel with this Access Point, it creates the tunnel if the hostname and/or Router ID matches.
<b>Peer IP Address</b>	Select this option to enter the numeric IP address used as the tunnel destination peer address for tunnel establishment.
<b>Hostname</b>	Assign the peer a hostname used as matching criteria in the tunnel establishment process. A Hostname cannot exceed 64 characters.
<b>Router ID</b>	Specify the router ID sent in tunnel establishment messages with this specific peer.
<b>Encapsulation</b>	Select either <i>IP</i> or <i>UDP</i> as the peer encapsulation protocol. The default setting is IP. UDP uses a simple transmission model without implicit handshakes.
<b>UDP Port</b>	If UDP encapsulation is selected, use the spinner control to define the UDP encapsulation port.
<b>IPsec Secure</b>	Enable this option to enable security on the connection between the Access Point and the Virtual Controller resource.
<b>IPsec Gateway</b>	Specify the IP Address of the IPsec's secure gateway resource used to protect tunnel traffic.

16 From back at the **Settings** tab, set the following **Fast Failover** parameters.

<b>Enable</b>	When enabled, the device starts sending tunnel requests on both peers, and in turn, establishes the tunnel on both peers. If disabled, tunnel establishment only occurs on one peer, with failover and other functionality the same as legacy behavior. If fast failover is enabled after establishing a single tunnel the establishment is restarted with two peers. One tunnels defined as active and the other standby. Both tunnels perform connection health checkups with individual hello intervals. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Enable Aggressive Mode</b>	When enabled, tunnel initiation hello requests are set to zero. For failure detections, hello attempts are not retried, regardless of defined retry attempts. This setting is disabled by default.

17 Select **OK** to save the changes. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

18 Select the **Manual Session** tab.

After a successful tunnel connection and establishment, individual sessions can be created. Each session is a single data stream. After successful session establishment, data corresponding to that session (pseudowire) can be transferred. If a session is down, the pseudowire associated with it is shut down as well.

IP Address	Local Session ID	MTU	Name	Remote Session ID
Not Set		1,460	session1	

Type to search in tables Row Count: 1

Add Edit Delete Exit

**Figure 8-46** Network - L2TPv3 screen, Manual Session tab

19 Refer to the following manual session configurations to determine whether one should be created or modified:

<b>IP Address</b>	Lists the IP address assigned as the local tunnel end point address, not the interface IP address. This IP is used as the tunnel source IP address. If this parameter is not specified, the source IP address is chosen automatically based on the tunnel peer IP address. This parameter is applicable when establishing the session and responding to incoming requests.
<b>Local Session ID</b>	Displays the numeric identifier assigned to each listed tunnel session. This is the pseudowire ID for the session. This pseudowire ID is sent in a session establishment message to the L2TP peer.
<b>MTU</b>	Displays each sessions's <i>maximum transmission unit</i> (MTU). The MTU is the size (in bytes) of the largest protocol data unit the layer can pass between tunnel peers in this session. A larger MTU means processing fewer packets for the same amount of data.
<b>Name</b>	Lists the name assigned to each listed manual session.
<b>Remote Session ID</b>	Lists the remote session ID passed in the establishment of the tunnel session.

20 Select **Add** to create a new manual session, **Edit** to modify an existing session configuration or **Delete** to remove a selected manual session.

**Figure 8-47** Network - L2TPv3 screen, Add Manual Session Configuration

21 Set the following **Manual Session** parameters:

<b>Name</b>	Define a 31 character maximum name for this tunnel session. The session is created after a successful tunnel connection and establishment. Each session name represents a single data stream.
<b>IP Address</b>	Specify the IP address used as the tunnel source IP address. If not specified, the tunnel source IP address is selected automatically based on the tunnel peer IP address. This address is applicable only for initiating the tunnel. When responding to incoming tunnel create requests, it would use the IP address received in the tunnel creation request.
<b>IP</b>	Set the IP address of an L2TP tunnel peer. This is the peer allowed to establish the tunnel.
<b>Local Session ID</b>	Set the numeric identifier for the tunnel session. This is the pseudowire ID for the session. This pseudowire ID is sent in session establishment message to the L2TP peer.
<b>MTU</b>	Define the session <i>maximum transmission unit</i> (MTU) as the size (in bytes) of the largest protocol data unit the layer can pass between tunnel peers in this session. A larger MTU means processing fewer packets for the same amount of data.
<b>Remote Session ID</b>	Use the spinner control to set the remote session ID passed in the establishment of the tunnel session. Assign an ID in the range of 1 - 4,294,967,295.
<b>Encapsulation</b>	Select either <i>IP</i> or <i>UDP</i> as the peer encapsulation protocol. The default setting is IP. UDP uses a simple transmission model without implicit handshakes.
<b>UDP Port</b>	If UDP encapsulation is selected, use the spinner control to define the UDP encapsulation port. This is the port where the L2TP service is running.
<b>Source Type</b>	Select a VLAN as the virtual interface source type.
<b>Source Value</b>	Define the <i>Source Value</i> range (1 - 4,094) to include in the tunnel. Tunnel session data includes VLAN tagged frames.
<b>Native VLAN</b>	Select this option to define the native VLAN that will not be tagged.

22 Select the **+ Add Row** button to set the following:

<b>Cookie Size</b>	Set the size of the cookie field within each L2TP data packet. Options include 0, 4 and 8. The default setting is 0.
<b>Value 1</b>	Set the cookie value first word.
<b>Value 2</b>	Set the cookie value second word.
<b>End Point</b>	Define whether the tunnel end point is <i>local</i> or <i>remote</i> .

23 Select **OK** to save the changes to the configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 8.8.4 Setting a Profile's GRE Configuration

### ► Profile Network Configuration

*Generic routing encapsulation* (GRE) tunneling can be configured to bridge Ethernet packets between WLANs and a remote WLAN gateway over a GRE tunnel. The tunneling of 802.3 packets using GRE is an alternative to MiNT or L2TPv3. Related features like ACLs for extended VLANs are still available using layer 2 tunneling over GRE.

Using GRE, Access Points map one or more VLANs to a tunnel. The remote endpoint is a user-configured WLAN gateway IP address, with an optional secondary IP address should connectivity to the primary GRE peer be lost. VLAN traffic is expected in both directions in the GRE tunnel. A WLAN mapped to these VLANs can be either open or secure. Secure WLANs require authentication to a remote RADIUS server available within your deployment using standard RADIUS protocols. Access Points can reach both the GRE peer as well as the RADIUS.

Previous releases supported only IPv4 tunnel end points, now support for both IPv4 or IPv6 tunnel endpoints is available. However, a tunnel needs to contain either IPv4 or IPv6 formatted device addresses and cannot be mixed. With the new IPv6 tunnel implementation, all outbound packets are encapsulated with the GRE header, then the IPv6 header. The header source IP address is the local address of the IPv6 address of tunnel interface, and the destination address peer address of the tunnel. All inbound packets are de-capsulated by removing the IPv6 and GRE header before sending it over to the IP stack.

To define a GRE configuration:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Profiles > Network**.
- 2 Expand the Network menu to display its submenu options.
- 3 Select **GRE**.  
The screen displays existing GRE configurations.
- 4 Select the **Add** button to create a new GRE tunnel configuration or select an existing tunnel and select **Edit** to modify its current configuration. To remove an existing GRE tunnel, select it from amongst those displayed and select the **Delete** button.

**Figure 8-48** Profile - Network GRE screen

- 5 If creating a new GRE configuration, assign it a name to distinguish its configuration.
- 6 Define the following settings for the GRE configuration:

<b>DSCP Options</b>	Use the spinner control to set the tunnel DSCP / 802.1q priority value from encapsulated packets to the outer packet IPv4 header.
<b>Tunneled VLANs</b>	Define the VLAN connected clients use to route GRE tunneled traffic within their respective VLANs.
<b>Native VLAN</b>	Set a numerical VLAN ID (1 - 4095) for the native VLAN. The native VLAN allows an Ethernet device to associate untagged frames to a VLAN when no 802.1Q frame is included in the frame. Additionally, the native VLAN is the VLAN untagged traffic is directed over when using a port in trunk mode.
<b>Tag Native VLAN</b>	Select this option to tag the native VLAN. The IEEE 802.1Q specification is supported for tagging frames and coordinating VLANs between devices. IEEE 802.1Q adds four bytes to each frame identifying the VLAN ID for upstream devices that the frame belongs. If the upstream Ethernet device does not support IEEE 802.1Q tagging, it does not interpret the tagged frames. When VLAN tagging is required between devices, both devices must support tagging and be configured to accept tagged VLANs. When a frame is tagged, the 12 bit frame VLAN ID is added to the 802.1Q header so upstream Ethernet devices know which VLAN ID the frame belongs to. The device reads the 12 bit VLAN ID and forwards the frame to the appropriate VLAN. When a frame is received with no 802.1Q header, the upstream device classifies the frame using the default or native VLAN assigned to the Trunk port. The native VLAN allows an Ethernet device to associate untagged frames to a VLAN when no 802.1Q frame is included in the frame. This feature is disabled by default.
<b>MTU</b>	Set an IPv4 tunnel's <i>maximum transmission unit</i> (MTU) from 128 - 1,476. The MTU is the largest physical packet size (in bytes) transmittable within the tunnel. Any messages larger than the MTU are divided into smaller packets before being sent. A larger MTU provides greater efficiency because each packet carries more user data while protocol overheads, such as headers or underlying per-packet delays, remain fixed; the resulting higher efficiency means a slight improvement in bulk protocol throughput. A larger MTU results in the processing of fewer packets for the same amount of data. For IPv4, the overhead is 24 bytes (20 bytes IPv4 header + 4 bytes GRE Header), thus the default setting for an IPv4 MTU is 1,476.
<b>MTU6</b>	Set an IPv6 tunnel's MTU from 128 - 1,456. The MTU is the largest physical packet size (in bytes) transmit able within the tunnel. Any messages larger than the MTU are divided into smaller packets before being sent. A larger MTU provides greater efficiency because each packet carries more user data while protocol overheads, such as headers or underlying per-packet delays, remain fixed; the resulting higher efficiency means a slight improvement in bulk protocol throughput. A larger MTU results in the processing of fewer packets for the same amount of data. For IPv6, the overhead is 44 bytes (40 bytes IPv6 header + 4 bytes GRE header), thus the default setting for an IPv6 MTU is 1,456.

- 7 The **Peer** table lists the credentials of the GRE tunnel end points. Add new table rows as needed to add additional GRE tunnel peers.



Select **+ Add Row** to populate the table with a maximum of two peer configurations.

8 Define the following **Peer** parameters:

<b>Peer Index</b>	Assign a numeric index to each peer to help differentiate tunnel end points.
<b>Peer IP Address</b>	Define the IP address of the added GRE peer to serve as a network address identifier. Designate whether the IP is formatted as an IPv4 or IPv6 address. <i>IPv4</i> is a connectionless protocol for packet switched networking. IPv4 operates as a best effort delivery method, as it does not guarantee delivery, and does not ensure proper sequencing or duplicate delivery (unlike TCP). IPv4 hosts can use link local addressing to provide local connectivity. <i>IPv6</i> is the latest revision of the Internet Protocol (IP) designed to replace IPv4. IPv6 provides enhanced identification and location information for computers on networks routing traffic across the Internet. IPv6 addresses are composed of eight groups of four hexadecimal digits separated by colons.

9 Set the following **Establishment Criteria** for the GRE tunnel configuration:

<b>Criteria</b>	Specify the establishment criteria for creating a GRE tunnel. In a multi-controller within a RF domain, it's always the master node with which the tunnel is established. The tunnel is only created if the tunnel device is designated one of the following:  vrrp-master cluster-master rf-domain-manager  The tunnel is automatically created if <i>Always</i> (default setting) is selected. This indicates the device need not be any one of the above three (3) to establish a tunnel.
<b>VRRP Group</b>	Set the VRRP group ID only enabled when the <i>Establishment Criteria</i> is set to <i>vrrp-master</i> . A <i>virtual router redundancy group</i> (VRRP) enables the creation of a group of routers as a default gateway for redundancy. Clients can point to the IP address of the VRRP virtual router as their default gateway and utilize a different group member if a master becomes unavailable.

10 Define the following **Failover** parameters to apply to the GRE tunnel configuration:

<b>Enable Failover</b>	Select this option to periodically ping the primary gateway to assess its availability for failover support.
<b>Ping Interval</b>	Set the duration between two successive pings to the gateway. Define this value in seconds from 0 - 86,400.
<b>Number of Retries</b>	Set the number of retry ping opportunities before the session is terminated.

11 Select the **OK** button located to save the changes. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 8.8.5 Setting a Profile's IGMP Snooping Configuration

### ► Profile Network Configuration

The *Internet Group Management Protocol* (IGMP) is used for managing IP multicast group members. The controller or service platform listens to IGMP network traffic and forwards the IGMP multicast packets to radios on which the

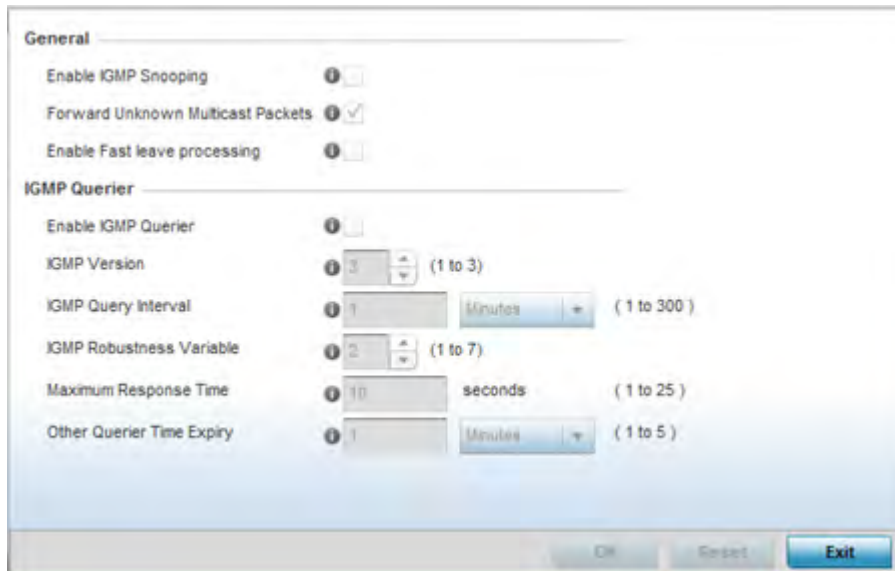
interested hosts are connected. On the wired side of the network, the controller or service platform floods all the wired interfaces. This feature reduces unnecessary flooding of multicast traffic in the network.

To define a Profile's IGMP settings:

1 Select **Configuration > Profiles > Network**.

Expand the Network menu to display its submenu options.

Select **IGMP Snooping**.



**Figure 8-49** Profile - Network IGMP Snooping screen

2 Define or override the following **General** IGMP parameters configuration:

<b>Enable IGMP Snooping</b>	Select this option to enable IGMP snooping. If disabled, snooping on a per VLAN basis is also disabled. This feature is enabled by default. If disabled, the settings under the bridge configuration are overridden. For example, if IGMP snooping is disabled, but the bridge VLAN is enabled, the effective setting is disabled.
<b>Forward Unknown Multicast Packets</b>	Select this option to enable the forwarding of multicast packets from unregistered multicast groups. If disabled, the unknown multicast forward feature is also disabled for individual VLANs. This setting is enabled by default.
<b>Enable Fast leave processing</b>	Select this option to remove a Layer 2 LAN interface from the IGMP snooping forwarding table entry without initially sending IGMP group-specific queries to the interface. When receiving a group-specific IGMPv2 leave message, IGMP snooping removes the interface from the Layer 2 forwarding table entry for that multicast group, unless a multicast router was learned on the port. Fast-leave processing enhances bandwidth management for each host on the network.

- 3 Set or override the following **IGMP Querier** parameters for the profile's bridge VLAN configuration:

<b>Enable IGMP Querier</b>	Select this option to enable IGMP querier. IGMP snoop querier is used to keep host memberships alive. It's primarily used in a network where there's a multicast streaming server and hosts subscribed to the server and no IGMP querier present. An IGMP querier sends out periodic IGMP query packets. Interested hosts reply with an IGMP report packet. IGMP snooping is only conducted on wireless radios. IGMP multicast packets are flooded on wired ports. IGMP multicast packet are not flooded on the wired port. IGMP membership is also learnt on it and only if present, then it is forwarded on that port.
<b>IGMP Version</b>	Use the spinner control to set the IGMP version compatibility to either version 1, 2 or 3. IGMPv1 is defined by RFC 1112, IGMPv2 is defined by RFC 2236 and IGMPv3 defined by RFC 4604 which defines both IGMPv3 and MLDv2. IGMPv2 improves over IGMPv1 by adding the ability for a host to signal desire to leave a multicast group. IGMPv3 improves over IGMPv2 by adding the ability to listen to multicast traffic originating from a set of source IP addresses exclusively. The default setting is 3.
<b>IGMP Query Interval</b>	Set the interval IGMP queries are made. Options include <i>Seconds</i> (1 - 18,000), <i>Minutes</i> (1 - 300) and <i>Hours</i> (1 - 5). The default setting is one minute.
<b>IGMP Robustness Variable</b>	IGMP utilizes a robustness value used by the sender of a query. The robustness variable enables refinements to account for expected packet loss on a subnet. Increasing the robust count allows for more packet loss, but increases the leave latency of the subnetwork unless the value is zero. The default variable is 2.
<b>Maximum Response Time</b>	Specify the maximum interval (from 1 - 25 seconds) before sending a responding report. When no reports are received from a radio, radio information is removed from the snooping table. The controller or service platform only forwards multicast packets to radios present in the snooping table. For IGMP reports from wired ports, the controller or service platform forwards these reports to the multicast router ports. The default setting is 10 seconds.
<b>Other Querier Timer Expiry</b>	Specify an interval in either <i>Seconds</i> (60 - 300) or <i>Minutes</i> (1 - 5) used as a timeout interval for other querier resources. The default setting is 1 minute.

- 4 Select the **OK** button located to save the changes. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 8.8.6 Setting a Profile's MLD Snooping Configuration

### ► Profile Network Configuration

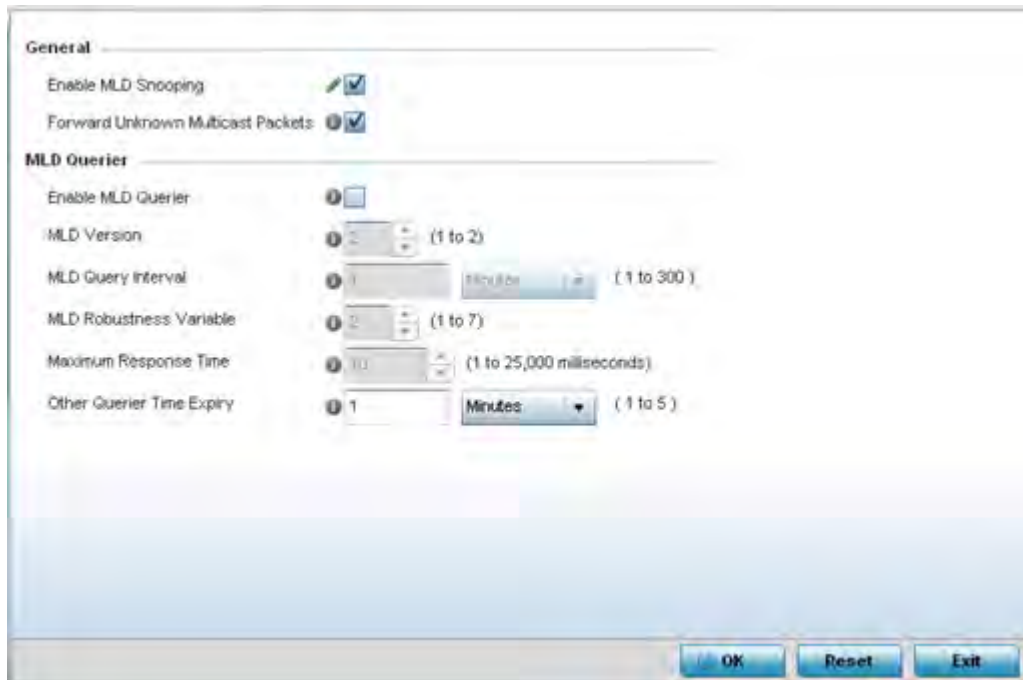
*Multicast Listener Discovery* (MLD) snooping enables a controller, service platform or Access Point to examine MLD packets and make forwarding decisions based on content. MLD is used by IPv6 devices to discover devices wanting to receive multicast packets destined for specific multicast addresses. MLD uses multicast listener queries and multicast listener reports to identify which multicast addresses have listeners and join multicast groups.

MLD snooping caps the flooding of IPv6 multicast traffic on controller, service platform or Access Point VLANs. When enabled, MLD messages are examined between hosts and multicast routers and to discern which hosts are

receiving multicast group traffic. The controller, service platform or Access Point then forwards multicast traffic only to those interfaces connected to interested receivers instead of flooding traffic to all interfaces.

To set an IPv6 MLD snooping configuration for the profile:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Profiles > Network**.
- 2 Expand the Network menu to display its submenu options.
- 3 Select **MLD Snooping**.



**Figure 8-50** Profile - Network MLD Snooping screen

- 4 Define the following **General MLD** snooping settings:

<b>Enable MLD Snooping</b>	Enable MLD snooping to examine MLD packets and provide content forwarding for this profile. Packets delivered to group members are identified by a single multicast group address. Multicast packets are delivered to a group using best-effort reliability, just like IPv6 unicast. MLD snooping is disabled by default.
<b>Forward Unknown Multicast Packets</b>	Use this option to either enable or disable IPv6 unknown multicast forwarding. This setting is enabled by default.

- 5 Define the following **MLD Querier** settings for the MLD snooping configuration:

<b>Enable MLD Querier</b>	Select the option to enable MLD querier on the controller, service platform or Access Point. When enabled, the device sends query messages to discover which network devices are members of a given multicast group. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>MLD Version</b>	Define whether MLD version 1 or 2 is utilized as the MLD querier. MLD version 1 is based on IGMP version 2 for IPv4. MLD version 2 is based on IGMP version 3 for IPv4 and is fully backward compatible. IPv6 multicast uses MLD version 2. The default MLD version is 2.

<b>MLD Query Interval</b>	Set the interval in which query messages are sent to discover device multicast group memberships. Set an interval in either <i>Seconds</i> (1 - 18,000), <i>Minutes</i> (1 - 300) or <i>Hours</i> (1 - 5). The default interval is 1 minute.
<b>MLD Robustness Variable</b>	Set a MLD IGMP robustness value (1 - 7) used by the sender of a query. The MLD robustness variable enables refinements to account for expected packet loss on a subnet. Increasing the robust count allows for more packet loss, but increases the leave latency of the subnetwork unless the value is zero. The default variable is 2.
<b>Maximum Response Time</b>	Specify the maximum response time (from 1 - 25,000 milliseconds) before sending a responding report. Queriers use MLD reports to join and leave multicast groups and receive group traffic. The default setting is 10 milliseconds.
<b>Other Querier time Expiry</b>	Specify an interval in either <i>Seconds</i> (60 - 300) or <i>Minutes</i> (1 - 5) used as a timeout interval for other querier resources. The default setting is 1 minute.

6 Select the **OK** button located to save the changes. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

### 8.8.7 Setting a Profile's Quality of Service (QoS) Configuration

#### ► Profile Network Configuration

QoS values are required to provide priority to some packets over others. For example, voice packets get higher priority than data packets to provide a better quality of service for high priority voice traffic.

The profile QoS screen maps the 6-bit *Differentiated Service Code Point* (DSCP) code points to the older 3-bit IP Precedent field located in the Type of Service byte of an IP header. DSCP is a protocol for specifying and controlling network traffic by class so certain traffic types get precedence. DSCP specifies a specific per-hop behavior applied to a packet.

To define an QoS configuration for DSCP and IPv6 traffic class mappings:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Profiles > Network**.
- 2 Expand the Network menu to display its submenu options.
- 3 Select **Quality of Service**.

The **Traffic Shaping** screen displays with the **Basic Configuration** tab displayed by default.

The screenshot shows the 'Basic Configuration' tab for Traffic Shaping. At the top, there are tabs for 'Traffic Shaping' and 'Priority Mapping', and sub-tabs for 'Basic Configuration' and 'Advanced Configuration'. An 'Enable' checkbox is checked. Under 'Bandwidth Configuration', 'Total Bandwidth' is set to 10 Mbps. The 'Rate Configuration' table is empty. The 'App-Category to Class Mapping' table is also empty. The 'IP ACL to Class Mapping' table is empty. At the bottom, there are 'OK', 'Reset', and 'Exit' buttons.

**Figure 8-51** Profile Overrides - Network QoS Traffic Shaping Basic Configuration screen

Apply traffic shaping to specific applications to apply application categories. When application and ACL rules are conflicting, applications have priority, followed by application categories, then ACLs.

- 4 Select **Enable** to provide traffic shaping using the defined bandwidth, rate and class mappings.
- 5 Set the **Total Bandwidth** configurable for the traffic shaper. Set the value from either 1 - 1,000 Mbps, or from 250 - 1,000,000 Kbps.

Select **+ Add Row** within the **Rate Configuration** table to set the **Class Index** (1 - 4) and **Rate** (in either Kbps, Mbps or percentage) for the traffic shaper class. Use the rate configuration to control the maximum traffic rate sent or received on the device. Consider this form of rate limiting on interfaces at the edge of a network to limit traffic into or out of the network. Traffic within the set limit is sent and traffic exceeding the set limit is dropped or sent with a different priority.

Refer to the **IP ACL Class Mapping** table and select **+ Add Row** to apply an IPv4 formatted ACL to the shaper class mapping. Select **+ Add Row** to add mappings. For more information on creating IP based firewall rules, refer to [Configuring IP Firewall Rules on page 10-20](#) and [Setting an IPv4 or IPv6 Firewall Policy on page 10-21](#).

Refer to the **IPv6 ACL Class Mapping** table and select **+ Add Row** to apply an IPv6 formatted ACL to the shaper class mapping. Select **+ Add Row** to add mappings. For more information on creating IP based firewall rules, refer to [Configuring IP Firewall Rules on page 10-20](#) and [Setting an IPv4 or IPv6 Firewall Policy on page 10-21](#).

Refer to the **App-Category to Class Mapping** table and select **+ Add Row** to apply an application category to shaper class mapping. Select **+ Add Row** to add mappings by selecting the application category and its traffic shaper class. For more information on creating an application category, refer to [Application on page 7-58](#).

Refer to the **Application to Class Mapping** table and select **+ Add Row** to apply an application to shaper class mapping. Select **+ Add Row** to add mappings by selecting the application and its traffic shaper class. For more information on creating an application, refer to [Application on page 7-58](#).



- 6 Select the **OK** button located to save the changes to the traffic shaping basic configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.
- 7 Select the **Advanced Configuration** tab.

The screenshot shows the 'Advanced Configuration' tab for traffic shaping. It includes the following sections:

- Activation Criteria:** A dropdown menu set to 'Always' and a VRRP Group field set to '1' (range 1 to 255).
- Buffers Configuration:** A table with 4 rows and 4 columns: Class Index, Max Buffers, RED Level, and RED Percent. Each row contains the same values: 1, 35, 35, 30, 25, 2, 27, 27, 27, 23, 25, 2, 75, 75, 75, 75, 100.
- Latency Configuration:** An empty table with 3 columns: Class Index, Max Latency, and Unit.
- Que Priority Mapping:** A table with 8 rows and 2 columns: DOT1-Priority and TX-Shaper Que Priority. The values are: (0, 2), (1, 0), (2, 1), (3, 3), (4, 4), (5, 5), (6, 6), (7, 7).

**Figure 8-52** Profile Overrides - Network QoS Traffic Shaping Advanced Configuration screen

- 8 Set the following **Activation Criteria** for traffic shaper activation:

<b>Activation Criteria</b>	Use the drop-down menu to determine when the traffic shaper is invoked. Options include <i>vrpp-master</i> , <i>cluster-master</i> , <i>rf-domain-manager</i> and <i>Always</i> . A <i>VRRP master</i> responds to ARP requests, forwards packets with a destination link MAC layer address equal to the virtual router MAC layer address, rejects packets addressed to the IP associated with the virtual router and accepts packets addressed to the IP associated with the virtual router. The solitary <i>cluster master</i> is the cluster member elected, using a priority assignment scheme, to provide management configuration and Smart RF data to other cluster members. Cluster requests go through the elected master before dissemination to other cluster members. The <i>RF Domain manager</i> is the elected member capable of storing and provisioning configuration and firmware images for other members of the RF Domain.
<b>VRRP Group</b>	Set the VRRP group ID from 1 - 255. VRRP groups is only enabled when the Establishment Criteria is set to <i>vrpp-master</i> .

- 9 Select **+ Add Row** within the **Buffers Configuration** table to set the following:

<b>Class Index</b>	Set a class index from 1 - 4.
--------------------	-------------------------------



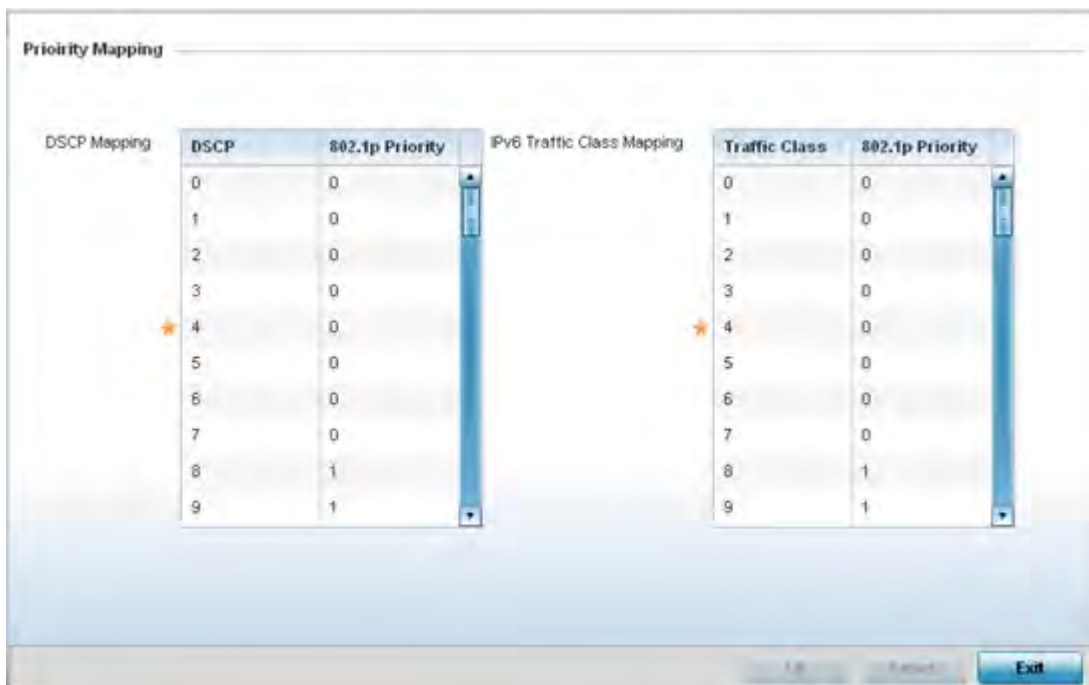
<b>Max Buffers</b>	Set the <i>Max Buffers</i> to specify the queue length limit after which the queue starts to drop packets. Set the maximum queue lengths for packets. The upper length is 400 for Access Points
<b>RED Level</b>	Set the packet queue length for RED. The upper limit is 400 for Access Points. The rate limiter uses the <i>random early detection</i> (RED) algorithm for rate limiting traffic. RED is a queueing technique for congestion avoidance. RED monitors the average queue size and drops or marks packets. If the buffer is near empty, all incoming packets are accepted. When the queue grows, the probability for dropping an incoming packet also grows. When the buffer is full, the probability has reached 1 and all incoming packets are dropped.
<b>RED Percent</b>	Set a percentage (1 - 100) for RED rate limiting at a percentage of maximum buffers.

Select **+ Add Row** within the **Latency Configuration** table to set the **Class Index** (1 - 4), **Max Latency** and latency measurement **Unit**. Max latency specifies the time limit after which packets start dropping (maximum packet delay in the queue). The maximum number of entries is 8. Select whether *msec* (default) or *usec* is unit for latency measurement.

When a new packet arrives it knows how much time to wait in the queue. If a packet takes longer than the latency value it's dropped. By default latency is not set, so packets remain in queue for long time.

Refer to the **Queue Priority Mapping** table to set the traffic shaper queue priority and specify a particular queue inside a class. There are 8 queues (0 - 7), and traffic is queued in each based on incoming packets mark 802.1p markings.

- 10 Select the **OK** button located to save the changes to the traffic shaping advanced configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.
- 11 Select the **Priority Mapping** tab.



**Figure 8-53** Profile - Network QoS screen

12 Set the following **DSCP Mapping** for untagged frames:

<b>DSCP</b>	Lists the DSCP value as a 6-bit parameter in the header of every IP packet used for packet classification.
<b>802.1p Priority</b>	Assign a 802.1p priority as a 3-bit IP precedence value in the Type of Service field of the IP header used to set the priority. The valid values for this field are 0-7. Up to 64 entries are permitted. The priority values are: 0 - <i>Best Effort</i> 1 - <i>Background</i> 2 - <i>Spare</i> 3 - <i>Excellent Effort</i> 4 - <i>Controlled Load</i> 5 - <i>Video</i> 6 - <i>Voice</i> 7 - <i>Network Control</i>

13 Use the spinner controls within the **802.1p Priority** field for each **DSCP** row to change the priority value.

14 Set a **IPv6 Traffic Class Mapping** to map IPv6 traffic classes to 802.1p priority mappings for untagged frames.

<b>Traffic Class</b>	Devices that originate a packet must identify different classes or priorities for IPv6 packets. Devices use the traffic class field in the IPv6 header to set this priority.
<b>802.1p Priority</b>	Assign a 802.1p priority as a 3-bit IP precedence value in the Type of Service field of the IP header used to set the priority. The valid values for this field are 0-7. Up to 64 entries are permitted. The priority values are: 0 - <i>Best Effort</i> 1 - <i>Background</i> 2 - <i>Spare</i> 3 - <i>Excellent Effort</i> 4 - <i>Controlled Load</i> 5 - <i>Video</i> 6 - <i>Voice</i> 7 - <i>Network Control</i>

15 Use the spinner controls within the **802.1p Priority** field for each **Traffic Class** row to change the priority value.

16 Select the **OK** button located to save the changes. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

### 8.8.8 Setting a Profile's Spanning Tree Configuration

#### ► *Profile Network Configuration*

The *Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol* (MSTP) provides an extension to STP to optimize the usefulness of VLANs. MSTP allows for a separate spanning tree for each VLAN group, and blocks all but one of the possible alternate paths within each spanning tree topology.

If there's just one VLAN in the Access Point managed network, a single spanning tree works fine. However, if the network contains more than one VLAN, the network topology defined by single STP would work, but it's possible to make better use of the alternate paths available by using an alternate spanning tree for different VLANs or groups of VLANs.

A MSTP supported deployment uses multiple MST regions with *multiple MST instances* (MSTI). Multiple regions and other STP bridges are interconnected using one single *common spanning tree* (CST).

MSTP includes all of its spanning tree information in a single *Bridge Protocol Data Unit* (BPDU) format. BPDUs are used to exchange information bridge IDs and root path costs. Not only does this reduce the number of BPDUs required to communicate spanning tree information for each VLAN, but it also ensures backward compatibility with RSTP. MSTP encodes additional region information after the standard RSTP BPDU as well as a number of MSTI messages. Each MSTI messages conveys spanning tree information for each instance. Each instance can be assigned a number of configured VLANs. The frames assigned to these VLANs operate in this spanning tree instance whenever they are inside the MST region. To avoid conveying their entire VLAN to spanning tree mapping in each BPDU, the Access Point encodes an MD5 digest of their VLAN to an instance table in the MSTP BPDU. This digest is used by other MSTP supported devices to determine if the neighboring device is in the same MST region as itself. MD5 is a message digest algorithm using a cryptographic hash producing a 128-bit (16-byte) hash value, usually expressed in text as a 32 digit hexadecimal number. MD5 has been utilized in a wide variety of cryptographic applications, and is also commonly used to verify data integrity.

To define a spanning tree configuration:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Profiles > Network**.
- 2 Expand the Network menu to display its submenu options.
- 3 Select **Spanning Tree**.

**Figure 8-54** Profile - Network Spanning Tree screen

- 4 Set the following **MSTP Configuration** parameters

<b>MSTP Enable</b>	Select this option to enable MSTP for this profile. MSTP is disabled by default, so if requiring different (groups) of VLANs with the profile supported network segment.
<b>Max Hop Count</b>	Define the maximum number of hops the BPDU will consider valid in the spanning tree topology. The available range is from 7 -127. The default setting is 20.
<b>MST Config Name</b>	Define a 64 character maximum name for the MST region as an identifier.
<b>MST Revision Level</b>	Set a numeric revision value ID for MST configuration information. Set a value from 0 - 255. The default setting is 0.
<b>Cisco MSTP Interoperability</b>	Select either the <i>Enable</i> or <i>Disable</i> radio buttons to enable/disable interoperability with Cisco's version of MSTP, which is incompatible with standard MSTP. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Hello Time</b>	Set a BPDU hello interval from 1 - 10 seconds. BPDUs are exchanged regularly (every 2 seconds by default) and enable supported devices to keep track of network changes and star/stop port forwarding as required.

<b>Forward Delay</b>	Set the forward delay time from 4 - 30 seconds. When a device is first attached to a port, it does not immediately start to forward data. It first processes BPDUs and determines the network topology. When a host is attached the port always goes into the forwarding state, after a delay of while it goes through the listening and learning states. The time spent in the listening and learning states is defined by the forward delay (15 seconds by default).
<b>Maximum Age</b>	Use the spinner control to set the maximum time (in seconds) to listen for the root bridge. The root bridge is the spanning tree bridge with the smallest (lowest) bridge ID. Each bridge has a unique ID and a configurable priority number, the bridge ID contains both. The available range is from 6 - 40. The default setting is 20.

- 5 Set the following **PortFast** parameters for the profile configuration:

<b>PortFast BPDU Filter</b>	Select <i>Enable</i> to invoke a BPDU filter for this portfast enabled port. Enabling the BPDU filter feature ensures this port channel does not transmit or receive any BPDUs. BPDUs are exchanged regularly and enable the Access Point to keep track of network changes and to start and stop port forwarding as required. The default setting is disabled.
<b>PortFast BPDU Guard</b>	Select <i>Enable</i> to invoke a BPDU guard for the portfast enabled port. Enabling the BPDU Guard feature means this port shuts down on receiving a BPDU. Thus, no BPDUs are processed. BPDUs are exchanged regularly and enable the Access Point to track network changes and start and stop port forwarding as required. The default is disabled.

- 6 Set the following **Error Disable** parameters for the profile configuration:

<b>Enable Recovery</b>	Select this option to enable a error disable timeout resulting from a BPDU guard. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Recovery Interval</b>	Define the recovery interval used to enable disabled ports. The available range is from 10 - 1,000,000 seconds with a default setting of 300.

- 7 Use the **Spanning Tree Instance** table to add indexes to the spanning tree topology. Add up to 16 indexes and use the Priority setting to define the bridge priority used to determine the root bridge. The lower the setting defined, the greater the likelihood of becoming the root bridge in the spanning tree topology.
- 8 Use the **Spanning Tree Instance VLANs** table to add VLAN instance indexes (by numeric ID) and VLANs to the spanning tree topology.
- 9 Select the **OK** button located to save the changes. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration

## 8.8.9 Setting a Profile's Routing Configuration

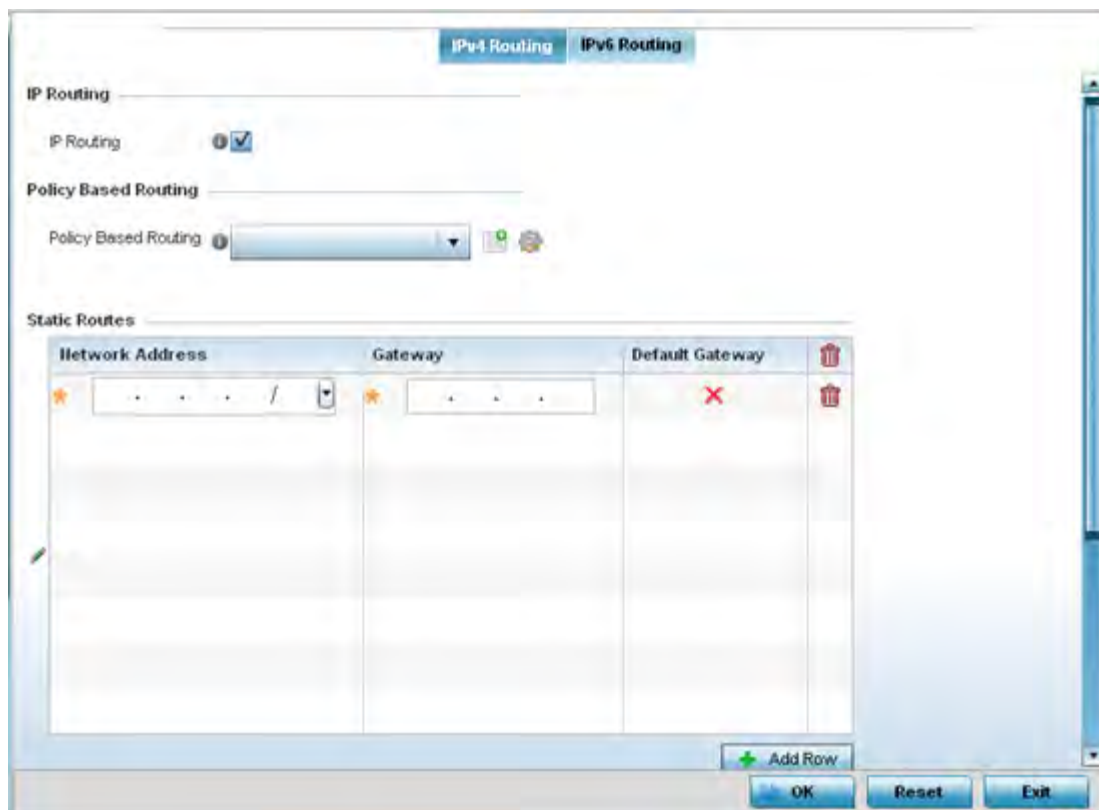
### ► Profile Network Configuration

Routing is the process of selecting IP paths to strategically route network traffic. Set Destination IP and Gateway addresses enabling the assignment of static IP addresses for requesting clients without creating numerous host pools with manual bindings. This eliminates the need for a long configuration file, and reduces the resource space required to maintain address pools.

Both IPv4 and IPv6 routes are separately configurable using their appropriate tabs. For IPv6 networks, routing is the part of IPv6 that provides forwarding between hosts located on separate segments within a larger IPv6 network where IPv6 routers provide packet forwarding for other IPv6 hosts.

To create a profile's static routes:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Profiles > Network**.
- 2 Expand the Network menu to display its submenu options.
- 3 Select **Routing**. The **IPv4 Routing** tab displays by default.



**Figure 8-55** Static Routes screen, IPv4 Routing tab

- 4 Select **IP Routing** to enable static routes using IP addresses. This sets *Destination IP* and *Gateway* addresses enabling the assignment of static IP addresses for requesting clients. This option is enabled by default.

Use the drop-down menu to select a Policy Based Routing policy. If a suitable policy is unavailable, select the **Create** icon or modify an existing policy-based routing policy by selecting the **Edit** icon.

*Policy-based routing* (PBR) is a means of expressing and forwarding (routing) data packets based on policies defined by administrators. PBR provides a flexible mechanism for routing packets through routers, complementing existing routing protocols. PBR is applied to incoming packets. Packets received on an interface with PBR enabled are considered are passed through enhanced packet filters (route maps). Based on the route maps, packets are forwarded/routed to their next hop.

- 5 Refer to the **Static Routes** table to set Destination IP and Gateway addresses enabling the assignment of static IP addresses to requesting clients (without creating numerous host pools with manual bindings).
  - Add IP addresses and network masks in the **Network Address** column.

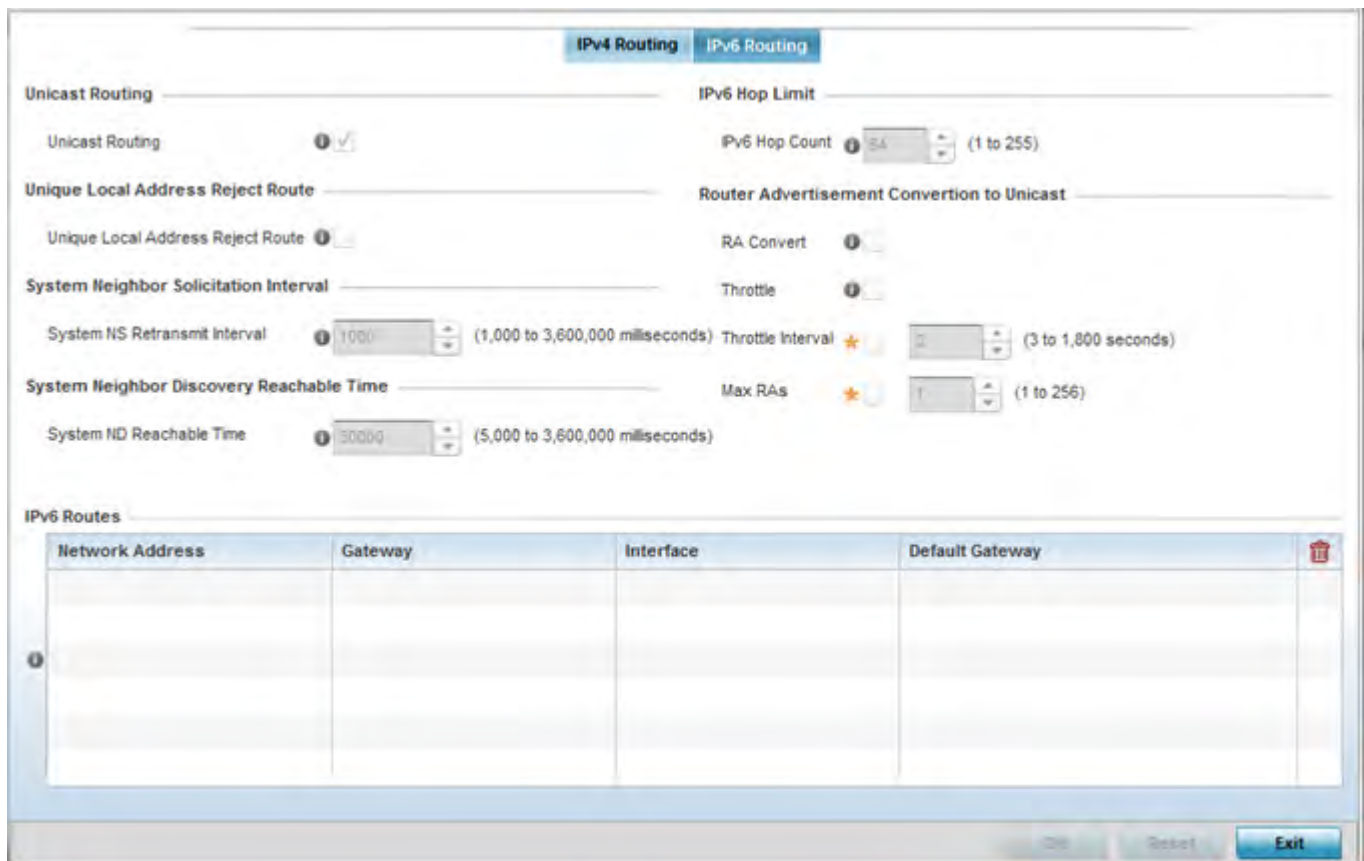
- Provide the **Gateway** address used to route traffic.
- Provide an IP address for the **Default Gateway** used to route traffic.

Note, when routing packets, the system, by default, obtains IP addresses of the Default Gateway and Name Servers from the DHCP server policy. But, if manually configuring the Default Gateway for static routing, also configure the Name Server's IP address in the device/profile config contexts. For more information on using the GUI to configure Name Servers, see *Setting a Profile's DNS Configuration*. If using the CLI, in the device/profile config context, execute the following command: `ip > name-server > <NAME-SERVER-IP-ADDRESS>`.

6 Refer to the **Default Route Priority** field to set the following:

<b>Static Default Route Priority</b>	Use the spinner control to set the priority value (1 - 8,000) for the default static route. This is the weight assigned to this route versus others that have been defined. The default setting is 100.
<b>DHCP Client Default Route Priority</b>	Use the spinner control to set the priority value (1 - 8,000) for the default route learnt from the DHCP client. The default setting is 1000.
<b>Enable Routing Failure</b>	When selected, all default gateways are monitored for activity. The system will failover to a live gateway if the current gateway becomes unusable. This feature is enabled by default.

- 7 Select the **OK** button located at the bottom right of the screen to save the changes to the IPv4 routing configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.
- 8 Select the **IPv6 Routing** tab. IPv6 networks are connected by IPv6 routers. IPv6 routers pass IPv6 packets from one network segment to another.



**Figure 8-56** Static Routes screen, IPv6 Routing tab



- 9 Select **Unicast Routing** to enable IPv6 unicast routing for this profile. Keeping unicast enabled allows the profile's neighbor advertisements and solicitations in unicast (as well as multicast) to provide better neighbor discovery. This setting is enabled by default.
- 10 Select **Unique Local Address Reject Route** to reject *Unique Local Address* (ULA). ULA is an IPv6 address block (fc00::/7) that is an approximate IPv6 counterpart to IPv4 private addresses. When selected, a reject entry is added to the IPv6 routing table to reject packets with Unique Local Address.
- 11 Set a **System Neighbor Solicitation Retransmit Interval** (from 1,000 to 3,600,000 milliseconds) as the interval between *neighbor solicitation* (NS) messages. NS messages are sent by a node to determine the link layer address of a neighbor, or verify a neighbor is still reachable via a cached link-layer address. The default is 1,000 milliseconds.
- 12 Set a **System Neighbor Discovery Reachable Time** (from 5,000 to 3,600,000 milliseconds) as the time a neighbor is assumed to be reachable after receiving a receiving a *neighbor discovery* (ND) confirmation for their reachability. The default is 30,000 milliseconds.
- 13 Set an **IPv6 Hop Count** (from 1 - 255) as the maximum number of hops considered valid when sending IP packets. The default setting is 64.
- 14 Set the **Router Advertisement Conversion to Unicast** settings:

<b>RA Convert</b>	Select this option to convert multicast <i>router advertisements</i> (RA) to unicast router advertisements at the dot11 layer. Unicast addresses identify a single network interface, whereas a multicast address is used by multiple hosts. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Throttle</b>	Select this option to throttle RAs before converting to unicast. Once enabled, set the throttle interval and maximum number of RAs. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Throttle Interval (milliseconds)</b>	Enable this setting to define the throttle interval (3 - 1,800 seconds). The default setting is 3 seconds.
<b>Max RAs</b>	Enable this setting to define the maximum number of router advertisements per router (1 - 256) during the throttle interval. The default setting is 1.

- 15 Select **+ Add Row** as needed within the **IPv6 Routes** table to add an additional 256 IPv6 route resources.



**Figure 8-57** Static Routes screen, Add IPv6 Route

<b>Network Address</b>	Set the IPv6 network address. Other than the length and slightly different look versus an IPv4 address, the IPv6 address concept is same as IPv4.
<b>Gateway</b>	Set the IPv6 route gateway. A network gateway in IPv6 is the same as in IPv4. A gateway address designates how traffic is routed out of the current subnet.
<b>Interface</b>	If using a link local address, set the VLAN (1 - 4,094) used a virtual routing interface for the local address.

- 16 Select the **OK** button located at the bottom right of the screen to save the changes to the IPv6 routing configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 8.8.10 Setting a Profile's Dynamic Routing (OSPF) Configuration

### ► Profile Network Configuration

*Open Shortest Path First* (OSPF) is a link-state *interior gateway protocol* (IGP). OSPF routes IP packets within a single routing domain (autonomous system), like an enterprise LAN. OSPF gathers link state information from neighbor routers and constructs a network topology. The topology determines the routing table presented to the Internet Layer which makes routing decisions based solely on the destination IP address found in IP packets.

OSPF detects changes in the topology, like a link failure, and plots a new loop-free routing structure. It computes the shortest path for each route using a shortest path first algorithm. Link state data is maintained on each router and is periodically updated on all OSPF member routers.

OSPF uses a route table managed by the link *cost* (external metrics) defined for each routing interface. The cost could be the distance of a router (round-trip time), link throughput or link availability. Setting a cost value provides a dynamic way to load balancing traffic between routes of equal cost.

An OSPF network can be subdivided into routing areas to simplify administration and optimize traffic utilization. Areas are logical groupings of hosts and networks, including routers having interfaces connected to an included network. Each area maintains a separate link state database whose information may be summarized towards the rest of the network by the connecting router. Areas are identified by 32-bit IDs, expressed either in decimal, or octet-based dot-decimal notation. Areas can be defined as:

*stub area* - A stub area is an area which does not receive route advertisements external to the autonomous system (AS) and routing from within the area is based entirely on a default route.

*totally-stub* - A totally stubby area does not allow summary routes and external routes. A default route is the only way to route traffic outside of the area. When there's only one route out of the area, fewer routing decisions are needed, lowering system resource utilization.

*non-stub* - A non-stub area imports autonomous system external routes and sends them to other areas. However, it still cannot receive external routes from other areas.

*nssa* - NSSA is an extension of a stub that allows the injection of limited external routes into a stub area. If selecting NSSA, no external routes, except a default route, enter the area.

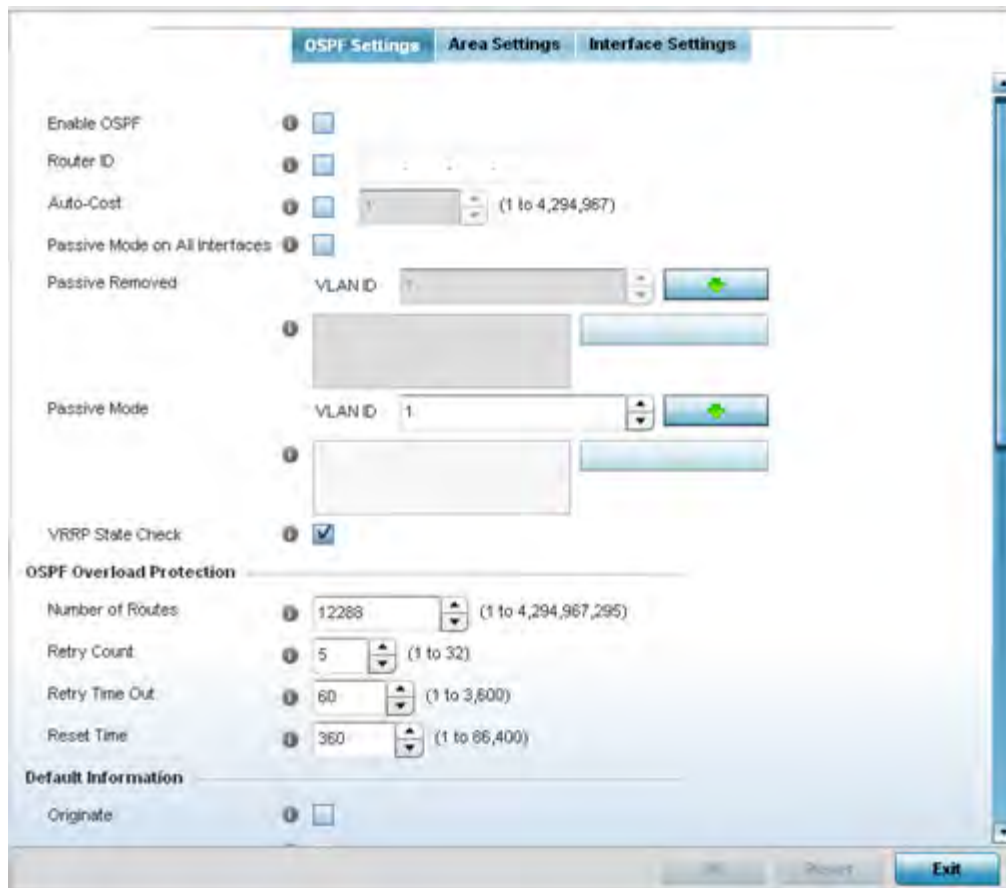
*totally nssa* - Totally nssa is an NSSA using 3 and 4 summary routes are not flooded into this type of area. It is also possible to declare an area both totally stubby and not-so-stubby, which means that the area will receive only the default route from area 0.0.0.0, but can also contain an autonomous system boundary router (ASBR) that accepts external routing information and injects it into the local area, and from the local area into area 0.0.0.0.

A router running OSPF sends hello packets to discover neighbors and elect a designated router. The hello packet includes link state information and list of neighbors. OSPF is savvy with layer 2 topologies. If on a *point-to-point* link, OSPF knows it is sufficient, and the link stays *up*. If on a *broadcast* link, the router waits for election before determining if the link is functional.

To define a dynamic routing configuration:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Profiles > Network**.
- 2 Expand the Network menu to display its submenu options.
- 3 Expand the **Network** menu and select **OSPF**.

The **OSPF Settings** tab displays by default, with additional **Area Settings** and **Interface Settings** tabs available.



**Figure 8-58** OSPF Settings screen

4 Enable/disable OSPF and provide the following dynamic routing settings:

<b>Enable OSPF</b>	Select this option to enable OSPF for this Access Point. OSPF is disabled by default.
<b>Router ID</b>	Select this option to define a router ID (numeric IP address) for this Access Point. This ID must be established in every OSPF instance. If not explicitly configured, the highest logical IP address is duplicated as the router identifier. However, since the router identifier is not an IP address, it does not have to be a part of any routable subnet in the network.
<b>Auto-Cost</b>	Select this option to specify the reference bandwidth (in Mbps) used to calculate the OSPF interface cost if OSPF is either STUB or NSSA. The default setting is 1.
<b>Passive Mode on All Interfaces</b>	When selected, all layer 3 interfaces are set as an OSPF passive interface. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Passive Removed</b>	If <i>enabling</i> Passive Mode on All Interfaces, use the spinner control to select VLANs (by numeric ID) as OSPF <i>non</i> passive interfaces. Multiple VLANs can be added to the list.
<b>Passive Mode</b>	If <i>disabling</i> Passive Mode on All Interfaces, use the spinner control to select VLANs (by numeric ID) as OSPF passive interfaces. Multiple VLANs can be added to the list.

<b>VRRP State Check</b>	Select this option to use OSPF only if the VRRP interface is not in a backup state. The <i>Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol</i> (VRRP) provides automatic assignments of available Internet Protocol (IP) routers to participating hosts. This increases the availability and reliability of routing paths via automatic default gateway selections on an IP subnetwork. This setting is enabled by default.
-------------------------	--

- 5 Set the following **OSPF Overload Protection** settings:

<b>Number of Routes</b>	Use the spinner control to set the maximum number of OSPN routes permitted. The available range is from 1 - 4,294,967,295.
<b>Retry Count</b>	Set the maximum number of retries (OSPF resets) permitted before the OSPF process is shut down. The available range is from 1 - 32. The default setting is 5.
<b>Retry Time Out</b>	Set the duration (in seconds) the OSPF process remains off before initiating its next retry. The available range is from 1 - 3,600 seconds. The default is 60 seconds.
<b>Reset Time</b>	Set the reset time (in seconds) that, when exceeded, changes the retry count is zero. The available range is from 1 - 86,400. The default is 360 seconds.

- 6 Set the following **Default Information**:

<b>Originate</b>	Select this option to make the default route a distributed route. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Always</b>	Enabling this setting continuously maintains a default route, even when no routes appear in the routing table. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Metric Type</b>	Select this option to define the exterior metric type (1 or 2) used with the default route.
<b>Route Metric</b>	Select this option to define route metric used with the default route. OSPF uses path cost as its routing metric. It's defined by the speed (bandwidth) of the interface supporting a given route.

- 7 Refer to the **Route Redistribution** table to set the types of routes that can be used by OSPF. Select the **+ Add Row** button to populate the table. Set the **Route Type** used to define the redistributed route. Options include *connected*, *kernal* and *static*.  
Select the **Metric Type** option to define the exterior metric type (1 or 2) used with the route redistribution. Select the **Metric** option to define route metric used with the redistributed route.
- 8 Use the **OSPF Network** table to define networks (IP addresses) to connect using dynamic routes. Select the **+ Add Row** button to populate the table. Add the IP address and mask of the **Network(s)** participating in OSPF. Additionally, define the OSPF area (IP address) to which the network belongs.
- 9 Set an **OSPF Default Route Priority** (1 - 8,000) as the priority of the default route learnt from OSPF. The default value is 7000.
- 10 Select the **Area Settings** tab.  
An OSPF *Area* contains a set of routers exchanging *Link State Advertisements* (LSAs) with others in the same area. Areas limit LSAs and encourage aggregate routes.

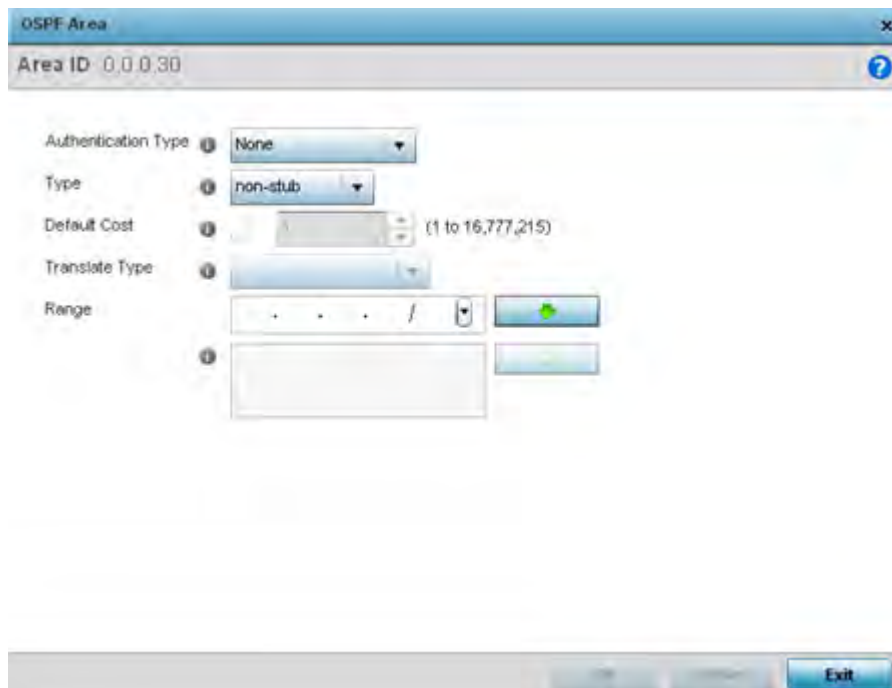
Area ID	Authentication Type	Type
0.0.0.0	message-digest	totally-stub
0.0.0.30	None	non-stub

**Figure 8-59** OSPF Area Settings screen

- 11 Review existing **Area Setting** configurations:

<b>Area ID</b>	Displays either the <i>IP address</i> or <i>integer</i> representing the OSPF area.
<b>Authentication Type</b>	Lists the authentication schemes used to validate the credentials of dynamic route connections.
<b>Type</b>	Lists the OSPF area type in each listed configuration.

- 12 Select **Add** to create a new OSPF configuration, **Edit** to modify an existing configuration or **Delete** to remove a configuration.



**Figure 8-60** OSPF Area Configuration screen

13 Set the **OSPF Area** configuration.

<b>Area ID</b>	Use the drop down menu and specify either an <i>IP address</i> or <i>Integer</i> for the OSPF area.
<b>Authentication Type</b>	Select either <i>None</i> , <i>simple-password</i> or <i>message-digest</i> as the credential validation scheme used with the OSPF dynamic route. The default setting is <i>None</i> .
<b>Type</b>	Set the OSPF area type as either <i>stub</i> , <i>totally-stub</i> , <i>nssa</i> , <i>totally-nssa</i> or <i>non-stub</i> .
<b>Default Cost</b>	Select this option to set the default summary cost advertised if creating a stub. Set a value from 1 - 16, 777,215.
<b>Translate Type</b>	Define how messages are translated. Options include <i>translate-candidate</i> , <i>translate always</i> and <i>translate-never</i> . The default setting is <i>translate-candidate</i> .
<b>Range</b>	Specify a range of addresses for routes matching the address/mask for OSPF summarization.

14 Select the **OK** button to save the changes to the area configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

15 Select the **Interface Settings** tab.



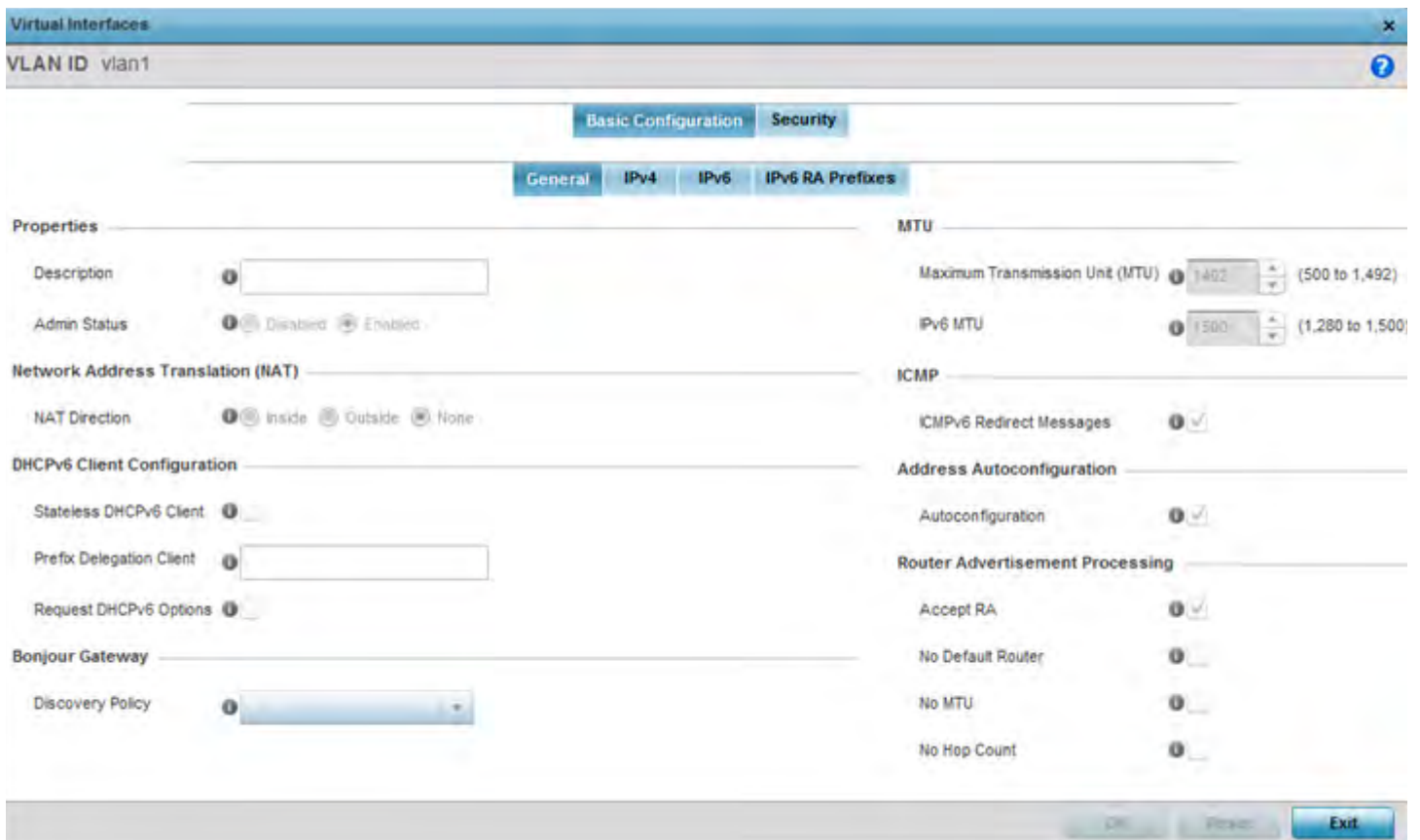
Name	Type	Description	Admin Status	VLAN	IP Address
vlan3	VLAN	lanelot	X Disabled	3	dhcp

**Figure 8-61** OSPF Interface Settings screen

16 Review existing **Interface Settings** using the following:

<b>Name</b>	Displays the name defined for the interface configuration.
<b>Type</b>	Displays the type of interface.
<b>Description</b>	Lists each interface's 32 character maximum description.
<b>Admin Status</b>	Displays whether administrative privileges have been <i>enabled</i> (with a green checkmark) or <i>disabled</i> (defined by a red X) for the OSPF route's virtual interface connection.
<b>VLAN</b>	Lists the VLAN IDs set for each listed OSPF route virtual interface.
<b>IP Address</b>	Displays the IP addresses defined as virtual interfaces for dynamic OSPF routes. Zero config and DHCP can be used to generate route addresses, or a primary and secondary address can be manually provided.

17 Select the **Add** button to define a new set of virtual interface basic settings, or **Edit** to update the settings of an existing virtual interface configuration.



**Figure 8-62** *Virtual Interfaces - Basic Configuration screen - General tab*

The **Basic Configuration** screen's **General** tab displays by default, regardless of whether a new Virtual Interface is created or an existing one is being modified for the OSPF configuration.

- 18 If creating a new Virtual Interface, use the **VLAN ID** spinner control to define a numeric ID from 1 - 4094. Select the **Continue** button to initialize the rest of the parameters on the screen.
- 19 Define the following parameters from within the **Properties** field:

<b>Description</b>	Provide or edit a description (up to 64 characters) for the Virtual Interface that helps differentiate it from others with similar configurations.
<b>Admin Status</b>	Either select either the <i>Disabled</i> or <i>Enabled</i> radio button to define this interface's current status. When set to Enabled, the Virtual Interface is operational and available. The default value is enabled

20 Define the following NAT parameters from within the **Network Address Translation (NAT)** field:

<b>NAT Direction</b>	<p>Define the <i>Network Address Translation</i> (NAT) direction. Options include:</p> <p><i>Inside</i> - The inside network is transmitting data over the network its intended destination. On the way out, the source IP address is changed in the header and replaced by the (public) IP address.</p> <p><i>Outside</i> - Packets passing through the NAT on the way back to the controller or service platform managed LAN are searched against to the records kept by the NAT engine. There, the destination IP address is changed back to the specific internal private class IP address in order to reach the LAN over the network.</p> <p><i>None</i> - No NAT activity takes place. This is the default setting.</p>
----------------------	---

21 Set the following **DHCPv6 Client Configuration**. The *Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol* for IPv6 (DHCPv6) provides a framework for passing configuration information.

<b>Stateless DHCPv6 Client</b>	Select this option to request information from the DHCPv6 server using stateless DHCPv6. DHCPv6 is a networking protocol for configuring IPv6 hosts with IP addresses, IP prefixes or other configuration attributes required on an IPv6 network. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Prefix Delegation Client</b>	Specify a 32 character maximum request prefix for prefix delegation from a DHCPv6 server over this virtual interface.
<b>Request DHCPv6 Options</b>	Select this option to request DHCPv6 options on this virtual interface. DHCPv6 options provide configuration information for a node that must be booted using the network rather than from locally. This setting is disabled by default.

22 Set the following **Bonjour Gateway** settings. Bonjour is Apple's implementation of zero-configuration networking (Zeroconf). Zeroconf is a group of technologies that include service discovery, address assignment and hostname resolution. Bonjour locates devices such as printers, other computers and services that these computers offer over a local network.

Bonjour provides a general method to discover services on a local area network (LAN). It allows users to set up a network without any configuration. Services such as printers, scanners and file-sharing servers can be found using Bonjour. Bonjour only works within a single broadcast domain. However, with special DNS configuration, it can be extended to find services across broadcast domains.

From the drop-down, select the Bonjour Gateway **Discovery Policy**. Select the **Create** icon to define a new Bonjour Gateway policy configuration or select the **Edit** icon to modify an existing Bonjour Gateway policy configuration.

23 Set the following **MTU** settings for the virtual interface:

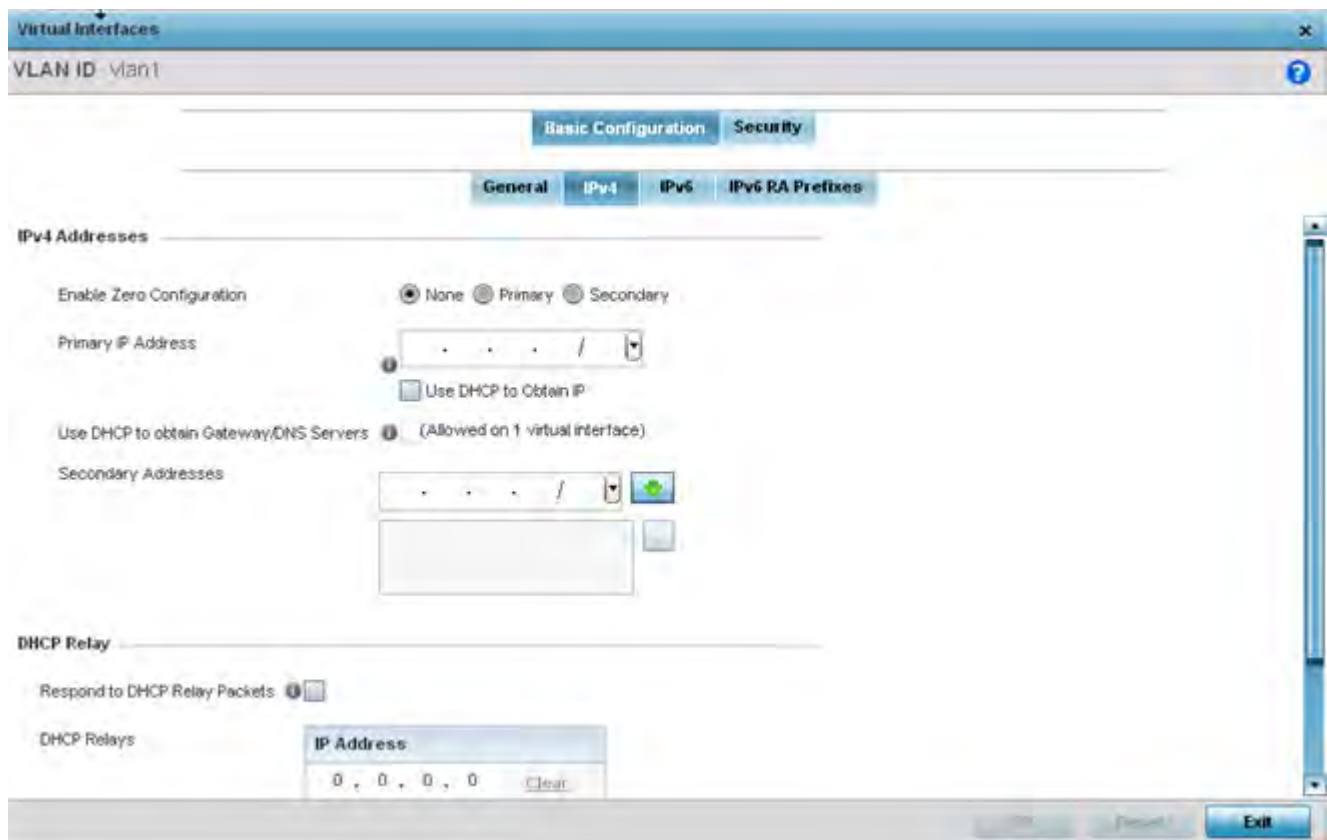
<b>Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU)</b>	Set the PPPoE client <i>maximum transmission unit</i> (MTU) from 500 - 1,492. The MTU is the largest physical packet size in bytes a network can transmit. Any messages larger than the MTU are divided into smaller packets before being sent. A PPPoE client should be able to maintain its point-to-point connection for this defined MTU size. The default MTU is 1,492.
--	--

<b>IPv6 MTU</b>	Set an IPv6 MTU for this virtual interface from 1,280 - 1,500. A larger MTU provides greater efficiency because each packet carries more user data while protocol overheads, such as headers or underlying per-packet delays, remain fixed; the resulting higher efficiency means a slight improvement in bulk protocol throughput. A larger MTU results in the processing of fewer packets for the same amount of data. The default is 1,500.
-----------------	--

- 24 Within the **ICMP** field, define whether ICMPv6 redirect messages are sent. Redirect requests data packets be sent on an alternative route. This setting is enabled by default.
- 25 Within the **Address Autoconfiguration** field, define whether to configure IPv6 addresses on this virtual interface based on the prefixes received in router advertisement messages. This setting is enabled by default.
- 26 Set the following **Router Advertisement Processing** settings for the virtual interface. Router advertisements are periodically sent to hosts or sends in response to solicitation requests. The advertisement includes IPv6 prefixes and other subnet and host information.

<b>Accept RA</b>	Enable this option to allow router advertisements over this virtual interface. IPv6 hosts can configure themselves automatically when connected to an IPv6 network using the neighbor discovery protocol via ICMPv6 router discovery messages. When first connected to a network, a host sends a link-local router solicitation multicast request for its configuration parameters; routers respond to such a request with a router advertisement packet that contains Internet Layer configuration parameters. This setting is enabled by default.
<b>No Default Router</b>	Select this option to not consider routers present on this interface for default router selection. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>No MTU</b>	Select this option to not use the set MTU value for router advertisements on this virtual interface. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>No Hop Count</b>	Select this option to not use the hop count advertisement setting for router advertisements on this virtual interface. This setting is disabled by default.

- 27 Select **OK** to save the changes. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.
- 28 Select the **IPv4** tab to set IPv4 settings for this virtual interface.  
IPv4 is a connectionless protocol It operates on a best effort delivery model that does not guarantee delivery or assures proper sequencing or avoidance of duplicate delivery (unlike TCP).



**Figure 8-63** *Virtual Interfaces - Basic Configuration screen - IPv4 tab*

29 Set the following network information from within the **IPv4 Addresses** field:

<b>Enable Zero Configuration</b>	Zero Configuration can be a means of providing a primary or secondary IP addresses for the virtual interface. Zero configuration (or zero config) is a wireless connection utility included with Microsoft Windows XP and later as a service dynamically selecting a network to connect based on a user's preferences and various default settings. Zero config can be used instead of a wireless network utility from the manufacturer of a computer's wireless networking device. This value is set to None by default.
<b>Primary IP Address</b>	Define the IP address for the VLAN associated Virtual Interface.
<b>Use DHCP to Obtain IP</b>	Select this option to allow DHCP to provide the IP address for the Virtual Interface. Selecting this option disables the Primary IP address field.
<b>Use DHCP to obtain Gateway/DNS Servers</b>	Select this option to allow DHCP to obtain a default gateway address, and DNS resource for <i>one</i> virtual interface. This setting is disabled by default and only available when the Use DHCP to Obtain IP option is selected.
<b>Secondary Addresses</b>	Use the Secondary Addresses parameter to define additional IP addresses to associate with VLAN IDs. The address provided in this field is used if the primary IP address is unreachable.

30 Refer to the **DHCP Relay** field to set the DHCP relay server configuration used with the Virtual Interface.

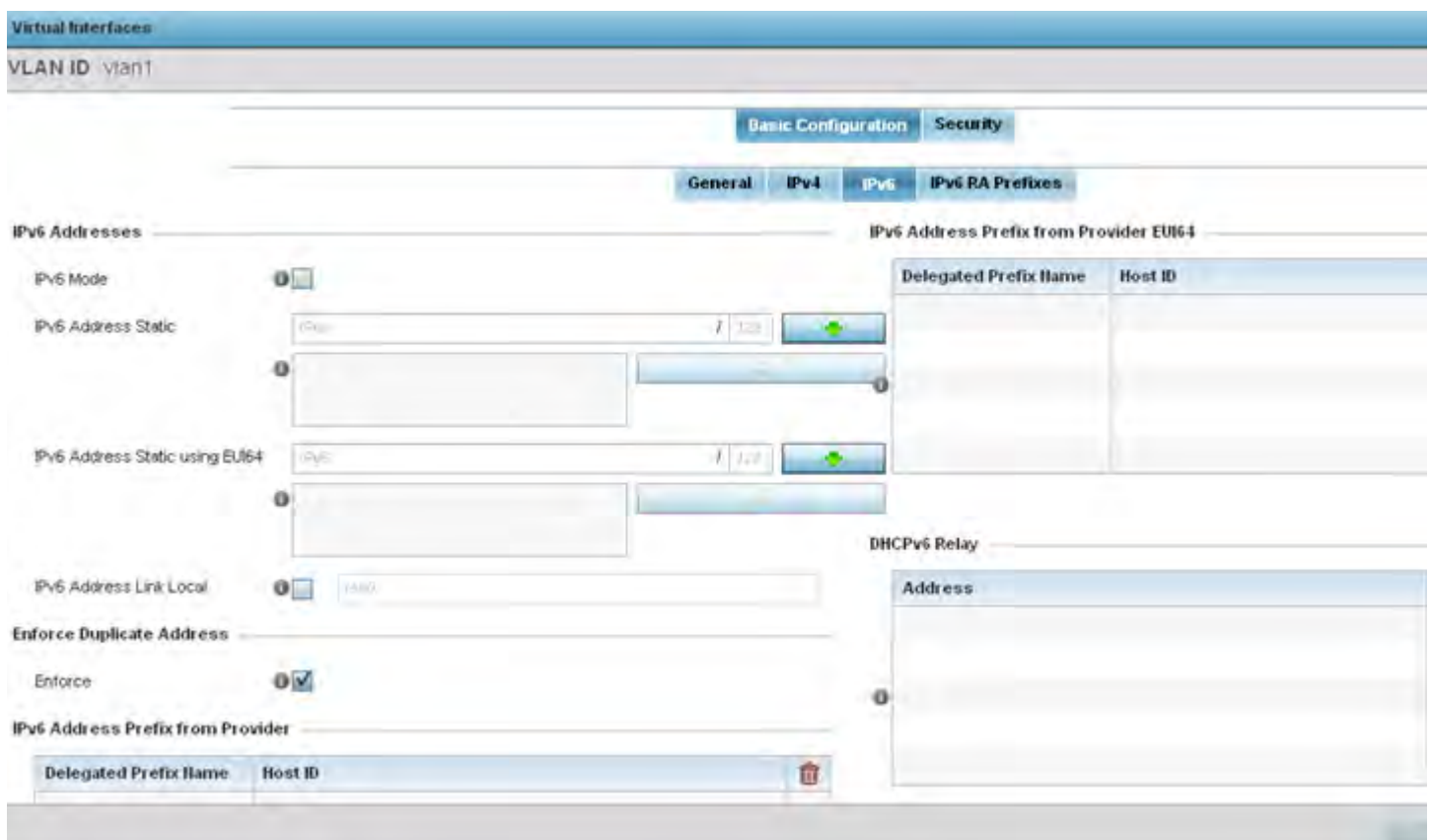
<b>Respond to DHCP Relay Packets</b>	Select the <i>Respond to DHCP Relay Packets</i> option to allow the onboard DHCP server to respond to relayed DHCP packets on this interface. This setting is disabled by default.
--------------------------------------	--

<b>DHCP Relays</b>	Provide IP addresses for DHCP server relay resources. DHCP relays exchange messages between a DHCPv6 server and client. A client and relay agent exist on the same link. When A DHCP request is received from the client, the relay agent creates a relay forward message and sends it to a specified server address. If no addresses are specified, the relay agent forwards the message to all DHCP server relay multicast addresses. The server creates a relay reply and sends it back to the relay agent. The relay agent then sends back the response to the client.
--------------------	--

31 Select **OK** to save the changes to the IPv4 configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

32 Select the **IPv6** tab to set IPv6 settings for this virtual interface.

IPv6 is the latest revision of the *Internet Protocol* (IP) designed to replace IPv4. IPv6 provides enhanced identification and location information for computers on networks routing traffic across the Internet. IPv6 addresses are composed of eight groups of four hexadecimal digits separated by colons. IPv6 hosts can configure themselves automatically when connected to an IPv6 network using the neighbor discovery protocol via ICMPv6 router discovery messages. When first connected to a network, a host sends a link-local router solicitation multicast request for its configuration parameters; routers respond to such a request with a router advertisement packet that contains Internet Layer configuration parameters.



**Figure 8-64** Virtual Interfaces - Basic Configuration screen - IPv6 tab

33 Refer to the **IPv6 Addresses** field to define how IP6 addresses are created and utilized.

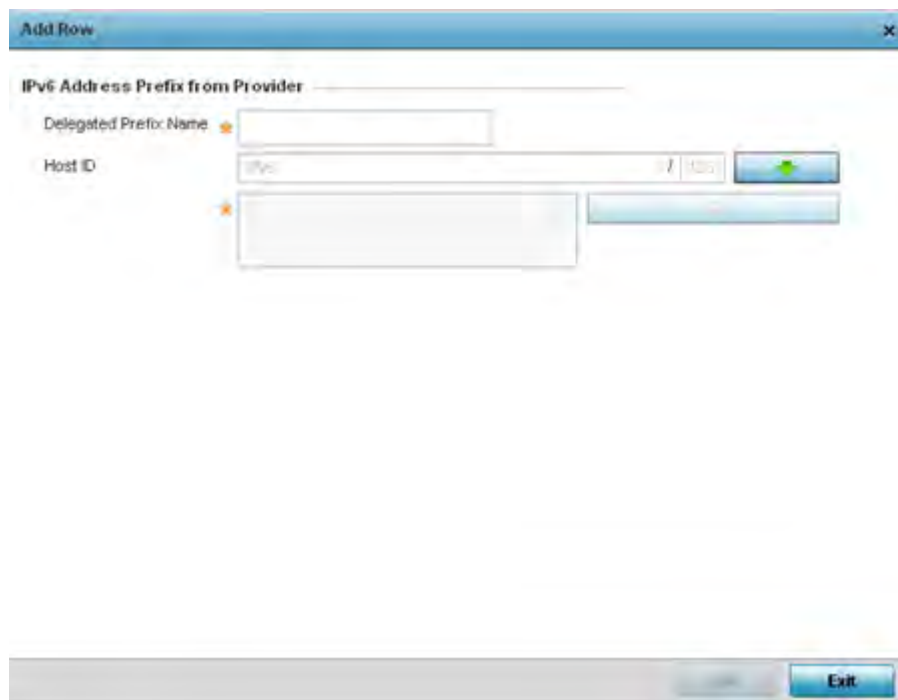
<b>IPv6 Mode</b>	Select this option to enable IPv6 support on this virtual interface.
------------------	--

<b>IPv6 Address Static</b>	Define up to 15 global IPv6 IP addresses that can be created statically. IPv6 addresses are represented as eight groups of four hexadecimal digits separated by colons.
<b>IPv6 Address Static using EUI64</b>	Optionally set up to 15 global IPv6 IP addresses (in the EUI-64 format) that can be created statically. The IPv6 EUI-64 format address is obtained through a 48-bit MAC address. The MAC is initially separated into two 24-bits, with one being an OUI ( <i>Organizationally Unique Identifier</i> ) and the other being client specific. A 16-bit 0xFFFE is then inserted between the two 24-bits for the 64-bit EUI address. IEEE has chosen FFFE as a reserved value which can only appear in EUI-64 generated from the an EUI-48 MAC address.
<b>IPv6 Address Link Local</b>	Provide the IPv6 local link address. IPv6 requires a link local address assigned to every interface the IPv6 protocol is enabled, even when one or more routable addresses are assigned.

34 Enable the **Enforce Duplicate Address** option to enforce duplicate address protection when any wired port is connected and in a forwarding state. This option is enabled by default

35 Refer to the **IPv6 Address Prefix from Provider** table use prefix abbreviations as shortcuts of the entire character set comprising an IPv6 formatted IP address.

Select **+ Add Row** to launch a sub screen wherein a new delegated prefix name and host ID can be defined.



**Figure 8-65** Virtual Interfaces - Basic Configuration screen - IPv6 tab - Add Address Prefix from Provider

<b>Delegated Prefix Name</b>	Enter a 32 character maximum name for the IPv6 address prefix from provider.
<b>Host ID</b>	Define the subnet ID, host ID and prefix length.

36 Select **OK** to save the changes to the new IPv6 prefix from provider. Select **Exit** to close the screen without saving the updates.

37 Refer to the **IPv6 Address Prefix from Provider EUI64** table to review ISP provided address prefix abbreviations.



- 38 Select **+ Add Row** to launch a sub screen wherein a new delegated prefix name and host ID can be defined in EUI64 format.

**Figure 8-66** *Virtual Interfaces - Basic Configuration screen - IPv6 tab - Add Address Prefix from Provider EUI64*

<b>Delegated Prefix Name</b>	Enter a 32 character maximum name for the IPv6 prefix from provider in EUI format.
<b>Host ID</b>	Define the subnet ID and prefix length.

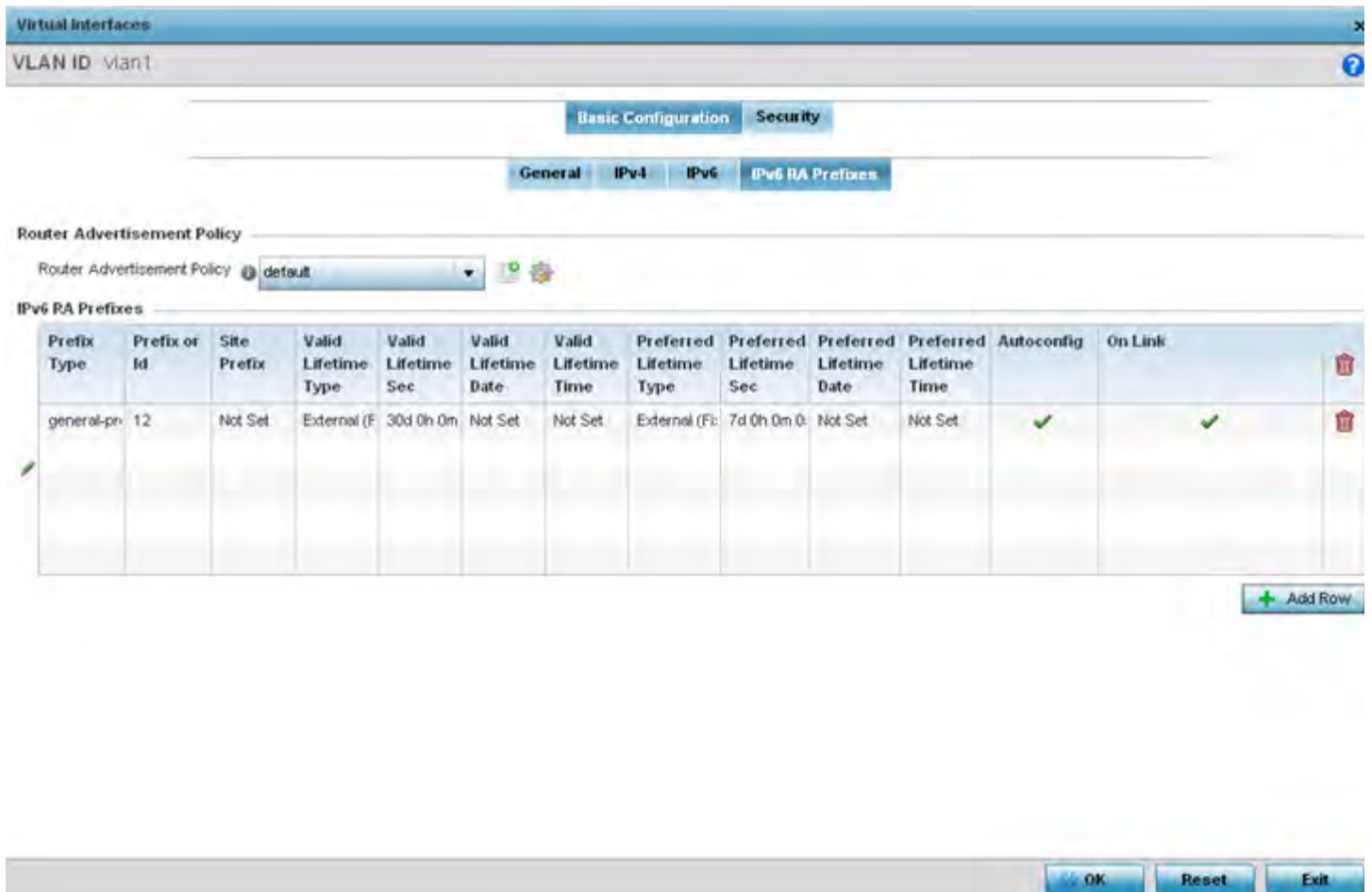
- 39 Select **OK** to save the changes to the new IPv6 prefix from provider in EUI64 format. Select **Exit** to close the screen without saving the updates.
- 40 Refer to the **DHCPv6 Relay** table to set the address and interface of the DHCPv6 relay. The DHCPv6 relay enhances an extended DHCP relay agent by providing support in IPv6. DHCP relays exchange messages between a DHCPv6 server and client. A client and relay agent exist on the same link. When A DHCP request is received from the client, the relay agent creates a relay forward message and sends it to a specified server address. If no addresses are specified, the relay agent forwards the message to all DHCP server relay multicast addresses. The server creates a relay reply and sends it back to the relay agent. The relay agent then sends back the response to the client.
- 41 Select **+ Add Row** to launch a sub screen wherein a new DHCPv6 relay address and interface VLAN ID can be set.

**Figure 8-67** *Virtual Interfaces - Basic Configuration screen - IPv6 tab - Add DHCPv6 Relay*

<b>Address</b>	Enter an address for the DHCPv6 relay. These DHCPv6 relay receive messages from DHCPv6 clients and forward them to DHCPv6 servers. The DHCPv6 server sends responses back to the relay, and the relay then sends these responses to the client on the local network link.
<b>Interface</b>	Select this option to enable a spinner control to define a VLAN ID from 1 - 4,094 used as the virtual interface for the DHCPv6 relay. The interface designation is only required for link local and multicast addresses. A local link address is a locally derived address designed for addressing on a single link for automatic address configuration, neighbor discovery or when no routing resources are available.

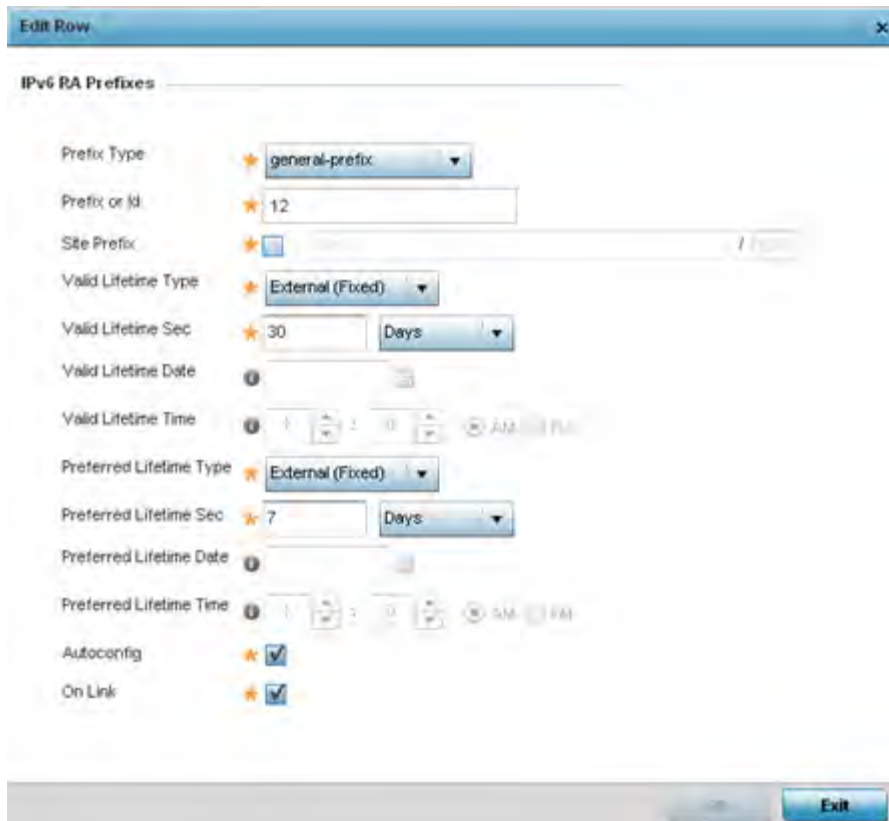
42 Select **OK** to save the changes to the DHCPv6 relay configuration. Select **Exit** to close the screen without saving the updates.

43 Select the **IPv6 RA Prefixes** tab.



**Figure 8-68** Virtual Interfaces - Basic Configuration screen - IPv6 RA Prefixes tab

- 44 Use the **Router Advertisement Policy** drop-down menu to select and apply a policy to the virtual interface. Router advertisements are periodically sent to hosts or sent in response to solicitation requests. The advertisement includes IPv6 prefixes and other subnet and host information. Review the configurations of existing IPv6 advertisement policies. If needed select **+ Add Row** to define the configuration of an additional IPv6 RA prefix.



**Figure 8-69** Virtual Interfaces - Basic Configuration screen - Add IPv6 RA Prefix

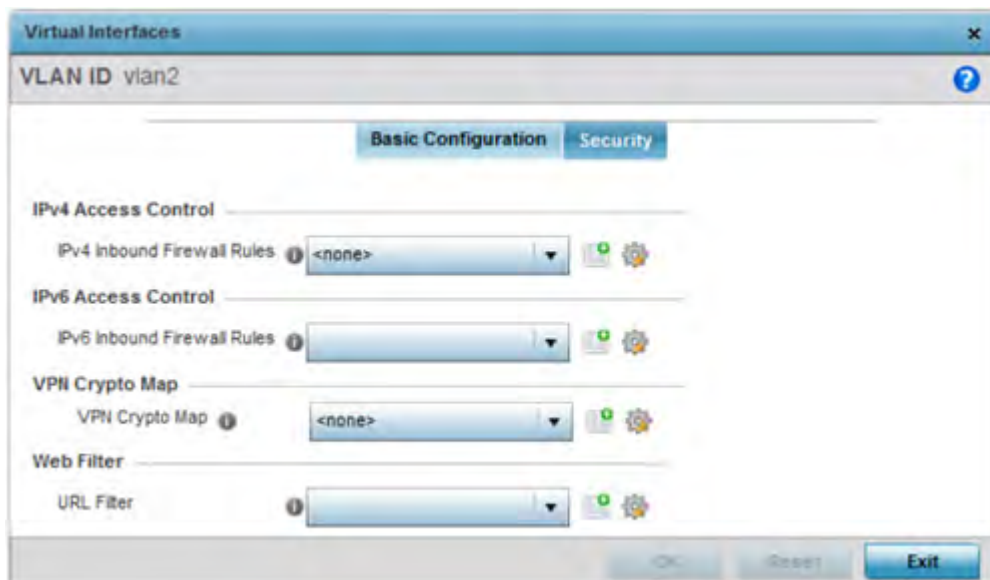
45 Set the following **IPv6 RA Prefix** settings:

<b>Prefix Type</b>	Set the prefix delegation type used with this configuration. Options include, <i>Prefix</i> , and <i>prefix-from-provider</i> . The default setting is <i>Prefix</i> . A provider assigned prefix is made available from an <i>Internet Service Provider</i> (ISP) to automate the process of providing and informing the prefixes used.
<b>Prefix or ID</b>	Set the actual prefix or ID used with the IPv6 router advertisement.
<b>Site Prefix</b>	The site prefix is added into a router advertisement prefix. The site address prefix signifies the address is only on the local link.
<b>Valid Lifetime Type</b>	Set the lifetime for the prefix's validity. Options include <i>External (fixed)</i> , <i>decrementing</i> and <i>infinite</i> . If set to <i>External (fixed)</i> , just the <i>Valid Lifetime Sec</i> setting is enabled to define the exact time interval for prefix validity. If set to <i>decrementing</i> , use the lifetime date and time settings to refine the prefix expiry period. If the value is set for <i>infinite</i> , no additional date or time settings are required for the prefix and the prefix will not expire. The default setting is <i>External (fixed)</i> .
<b>Valid Lifetime Sec</b>	If the lifetime type is set to <i>External (fixed)</i> , set the <i>Seconds</i> , <i>Minutes</i> , <i>Hours</i> or <i>Days</i> value used to measurement criteria for the prefix's expiration. 30 days, 0 hours, 0 minutes and 0 seconds is the default lifetime.
<b>Valid Lifetime Date</b>	If the lifetime type is set to <i>External (fixed)</i> , set the date in MM/DD/YYYY format for the expiration of the prefix.

<b>Valid Lifetime Time</b>	If the lifetime type is set to <i>decrementing</i> , set the time for the prefix's validity.
<b>Preferred Lifetime Type</b>	Set the administrator preferred lifetime for the prefix's validity. Options include <i>External (fixed)</i> , <i>decrementing</i> and <i>infinite</i> . If set to <i>External (fixed)</i> , just the <i>Valid Lifetime Sec</i> setting is enabled to define the exact time interval for prefix validity. If set to <i>decrementing</i> , use the lifetime date and time settings to refine the prefix expiry period. If the value is set for <i>infinite</i> , no additional date or time settings are required for the prefix and the prefix will not expire. The default setting is <i>External (fixed)</i> .
<b>Preferred Lifetime Sec</b>	If the administrator preferred lifetime type is set to <i>External (fixed)</i> , set the <i>Seconds</i> , <i>Minutes</i> , <i>Hours</i> or <i>Days</i> value used to measurement criteria for the prefix's expiration. 30 days, 0 hours, 0 minutes and 0 seconds is the default lifetime.
<b>Preferred Lifetime Date</b>	If the administrator preferred lifetime type is set to <i>External (fixed)</i> , set the date in MM/DD/YYYY format for the expiration of the prefix.
<b>Preferred Lifetime Time</b>	If the preferred lifetime type is set to <i>decrementing</i> , set the time for the prefix's validity.
<b>Autoconfig</b>	Autoconfiguration includes generating a link-local address, global addresses via stateless address autoconfiguration and duplicate address detection to verify the uniqueness of the addresses on a link. This setting is enabled by default.
<b>On Link</b>	Select this option to keep the IPv6 RA prefix on the local link. The default setting is enabled.

46 Select **OK** to save the changes to the IPv6 RA prefix configuration. Select **Exit** to close the screen without saving the updates.

47 Select the **Security** tab.



**Figure 8-70** Virtual Interfaces - Security screen

48 Use the **IPv4 Inbound Firewall Rules** drop down menu to select the IPv4 specific inbound firewall rules to apply to this profile's virtual interface configuration. Select the **Create** icon to define a new IPv4 firewall rule configuration or select the **Edit** icon to modify an existing configuration.

IPv4 is a connectionless protocol for packet switched networking. IPv4 operates as a best effort delivery method, since it does not guarantee delivery, and does not ensure proper sequencing or duplicate delivery (unlike (TCP).

IPv4 and IPv6 are different enough to warrant separate protocols. IPv6 devices can alternatively use stateless address autoconfiguration. IPv4 hosts can use link local addressing to provide local connectivity.

- 49 Use the **IPv6 Inbound Firewall Rules** drop down menu to select the IPv6 specific inbound firewall rules to apply to this profile's virtual interface configuration. Select the **Create** icon to define a new IPv6 firewall rule configuration or select the **Edit** icon to modify an existing configuration.

IPv6 is the latest revision of the *Internet Protocol* (IP) replacing IPv4. IPv6 provides enhanced identification and location information for systems routing traffic across the Internet. IPv6 addresses are composed of eight groups of four hexadecimal digits separated by colons.

- 50 Use the **VPN Crypto Map** drop down menu to select a crypto map to apply to this profile's virtual interface configuration. Crypto maps are sets of configuration parameters for encrypting packets passing through a VPN Tunnel. If a crypto map does not exist suiting the needs of this virtual interface, select the **Create** icon to define a new crypto map configuration or the **Edit** icon to modify an existing crypto map. For more information, see [Overriding a Profile's VPN Configuration on page 5-207](#).

- 51 Select **OK** to save the changes to the OSPF configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

- 52 Select the **Dynamic Routing** tab (if available in your profile).

**Figure 8-71** OSPF Virtual Interface - Dynamic Routing screen

- 53 Define or override the following parameters from within the **OSPF Settings** field:

<b>Priority</b>	Select this option to set the OSPF priority used to select the network designated route. Use the spinner control to set the value from 0 - 255.
-----------------	---

<b>Cost</b>	Select this option to set the cost of the OSPF interface. Use the spinner control to set the value from 1 - 65,535.
<b>Bandwidth</b>	Set the OSPF interface bandwidth (in Kbps) from 1 - 10,000,000.

54 Select the authentication type from the **Chosen Authentication Type** drop-down used to validate credentials within the OSPF dynamic route. Options include *simple-password*, *message-digest*, *null* and *None*. The default value is *None*.

55 Select **+ Add Row** at the bottom of the **MD5 Authentication** table to add the Key ID and Password used for an MD5 validation of authenticator credentials. Use the spinner control to set the OSPF message digest authentication key ID. The available range is from 1 - 255. The password is the OSPF key either displayed as series or asterisks or in plain text (by selecting **Show**).

MD5 is a message digest algorithm using a cryptographic hash producing a 128-bit (16-byte) hash value, usually expressed in text as a 32 digit hexadecimal number. MD5 has been utilized in a wide variety of cryptographic applications, and is also commonly used to verify data integrity.

56 Select **OK** to save the changes to the configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 8.8.11 Setting a Profile's Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) Configuration

### ► Profile Network Configuration

*Border Gateway Protocol* (BGP) is an inter-ISP routing protocol which establishes routing between ISPs. ISPs use BGP to exchange routing and reachability information between *Autonomous Systems* (AS) on the Internet. BGP makes routing decisions based on paths, network policies and/or rules configured by network administrators. The primary role of a BGP system is to exchange network reachability information with other BGP peers. This information includes information on AS that the reachability information traverses. This information is sufficient to create a graph of AS connectivity from which routing decisions can be created and rules enforced.

An *Autonomous System* (AS) is a set of routers under the same administration that use *Interior Gateway Protocol* (IGP) and common metrics to define how to route packets within the AS. AS uses inter-AS routing to route packets to other ASs. For an external AS, an AS appears to have a single coherent interior routing plan and presents a consistent picture of the destinations reachable through it.

Routing information exchanged through BGP supports only destination based forwarding (it assumes a router forwards packets based on the destination address carried in the IP header of the packet).

BGP uses TCP as its transport protocol. This eliminates the need to implement explicit update fragmentation, retransmission, acknowledgement, and sequencing. BGP listens on TCP port 179. The error notification mechanism used in BGP assumes that TCP supports a *graceful* close (all outstanding data is delivered before the connection is closed).

To define a profile's BGP configuration:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Profiles > Network**.
- 2 Expand the Network menu to display its submenu options.
- 3 Select **BGP**.



**NOTE:** BGP is only supported on RFS4000, RFS6000 and NX9500 model controllers and service platforms.



The **General** tab displays by default.

**Figure 8-72** Border Gateway Protocol - General tab

- 4 Review the following BGP general configuration parameters to determine whether an update is warranted.

<b>ASN</b>	Define the <i>Autonomous System Number</i> (ASN). ASN is a set of routers under the same administration that use <i>Interior Gateway Protocol</i> (IGP) and common metrics to define how to route packets. Select a value from 1 - 4,294,967,295.
<b>Enable</b>	Enable to start BGP on this controller or service platform. BGP is only supported on RFS4000, RFS6000 and NX9500 model controllers and service platforms. The default is disabled.
<b>Always Compare MED</b>	<i>Multi-exit Discriminator</i> (MED) is a value used by BGP peers to select the best route among multiple routes. When enabled, the MED value encoded in the route is always compared when selecting the best route to the host network. A route with a lower MED value is always selected over a route with a higher MED value. BGP does not discriminate between iBGP and eBGP when using MED for route selection. This option is mutually exclusive to the <i>Deterministic MED</i> option.
<b>Default IPv4 Unicast</b>	Select this option to enable IPv4 unicast traffic for neighbors. This option is disabled by default.

<b>Default Local Preference</b>	Select this option to enable a local preference for the neighbor. When enabled, set the local preference value (1 - 4,294,967,295).
<b>IP Default Gateway Priority</b>	Set the default priority value for the IP Default Gateway. Set a value from 1 - 8000. The default is 7500.
<b>Deterministic MED</b>	<i>Multi-exit Discriminator</i> (MED) is used by BGP peers to select the best route among multiple routes. When enabled, MED route values (from the same AS) are compared to select the best route. This best route is then compared with other routes in the BGP route table to select the best overall route. This option is mutually exclusive to the <i>Always Compare MED</i> option.
<b>Enforce First AS</b>	Select this option to deny any updates received from an external neighbor that does not have the neighbor's configured AS at the beginning of the received AS path parameter. This enhances security by not allowing traffic from an unauthorized AS. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Fast External Failover</b>	Select this option to immediately reset the BGP session on the interface once the BGP connection goes down. Normally, when a BGP connection goes down, the device waits for the expiry of the duration specified in <i>Holdtime</i> parameter before bringing down the interface. This setting is enabled by default.
<b>Log Neighbor Changes</b>	Select this option to enable logging of changes in routes to neighbor BGP peers. This enables the logging of only the changes in neighbor routes. All other events must be explicitly turned on using debug commands. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Network Import Check</b>	Select this option to enable a network import check to ensure consistency in advertisements. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Router ID</b>	Select this option to manually configure the router ID for this BGP supported controller or service platform. The router ID identifies the device uniquely. When no router ID is specified, the IP address of the interface is considered the router ID. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Scan Time</b>	Select this option to set the scanning interval for updating BGP routes. This interval is the period between two consecutive scans the BGP device checks for the validity of routes in its routing table. To disable this setting, set the value to Zero (0). The default setting is 60 seconds.

- 5 Optionally select the **Missing AS Worst** option to treat any path that does not contain a MED value as the least preferable route. This setting is disabled by default.
- 6 Set the following **Bestpath** parameters:

<b>AS-Path Ignore</b>	Select this option to prevent an AS path from being considered as a criteria for selecting a preferred route. The route selection algorithm uses the AS path as one of the criteria when selecting the best route. When this option is enabled, the AS path is ignored.
<b>Compare Router ID</b>	Select this option to use the router ID as a selection criteria when determining a preferred route. The route selection algorithm uses various criteria when selecting the best route. When this option is enabled, the router ID is used to select the best path between two identical BGP routes. The route with the lower route ID is selected over a route with a higher route id.

- 7 Set or override the following **Distance for Route Types**. The distance parameter is a rating of route trustworthiness. The greater the distance, the lower the trust rating. The distance can be set for each type of route indicating its trust rating:

<b>External Routes</b>	External routes are those routes learned from a neighbor of this BGP device. Set a value from 1 - 255.
<b>Internal Routes</b>	Internal routes are those routes learned from another router within the same AS. Set a value from 1 - 255.
<b>Local Routes</b>	Local routes are those routes being redistributed from other processes within this BGP router. Set a value from 1 - 255.

- 8 Set or override the following **Route Limit** parameters:

<b>Number of Routes</b>	Configures the number of routes that can be stored on this BGP router. Set this value based on the available memory on this BGP router. Configure a value from 1 - 4,294,967,295. The default value is 9,216 routes.
<b>Reset Time</b>	Configures the reset time. This is the time limit after which the <i>Retry Count</i> value is set to Zero (0). Set a value from 1- 86,400 seconds.
<b>Retry Count</b>	Configures the number of time the BGP process is reset before it is shut down. Once shut down, the BGP process has to be started manually. The BGP process is reset if it is flooded with route entries that exceed its number of routes. Set a value from 1 - 32.
<b>Retry Timeout</b>	Configures the time duration in seconds the BGP process is shutdown temporarily before a reset of the process is attempted. Set a value from 1 - 3,600 seconds.

- 9 Set the following **Timers**:

<b>Keepalive</b>	Set the duration, in seconds, for the keep alive timer used to maintain connections between BGP neighbors. Set a value from 1 - 65,535 seconds.
<b>Holdtime</b>	Set the time duration, in seconds, for the hold (delay) of packet transmissions.

- 10 Set the following **Aggregate Address** fields:

Aggregate addresses are used to minimize the size of the routing tables. Aggregation combines the attributes of several different routes and advertises a single route. This creates an aggregation entry in the BGP routing table if more specific BGP routes are available in the specified address range.

<b>IP Prefix</b>	Enter an IP address and mask used as the aggregate address.
<b>Summary Only</b>	Select this option to advertise the IP Prefix route to the BGP neighbor while suppressing the detailed and more specific routes.
<b>As Set</b>	Generates AS set path information. Select to enable. When selected, it creates an aggregate entry advertising the path for this route, consisting of all elements contained in all the paths being summarized. Use this parameter to reduce the size of path information by listing the AS number only once, even if it was included in the multiple paths that were aggregated.

- 11 Set the following **Distance for IP Source Prefix** fields:

<b>IP Source Prefix</b>	Enter an IP address and mask used as the prefix source address.
-------------------------	---

<b>Admin Distance</b>	Use the spinner control to set the BGP route's admin distance from 1 - 255.
<b>IP Access List</b>	Provide the IP address used to define the prefix list rule.

12 Configure the following **Network** values:

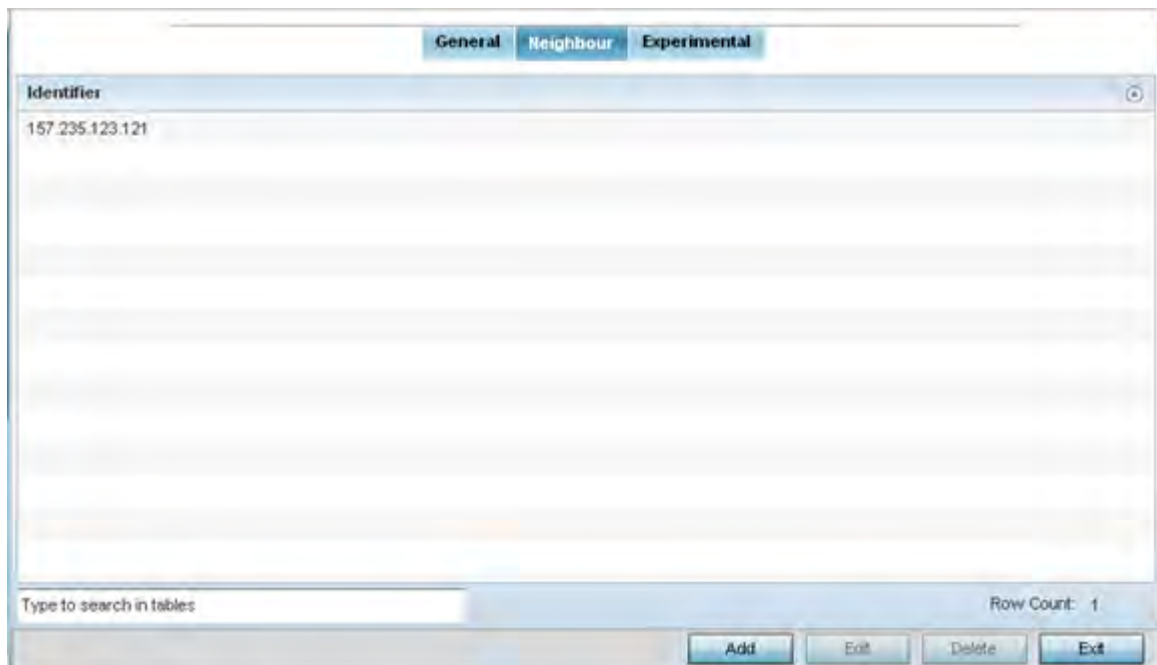
<b>Network</b>	Configure an IP address to broadcast to neighboring BGP peers. This network can be a single IP address or a range of IP addresses in <i>A.B.C.D/M</i> format.
<b>Pathlimit</b>	Configure the maximum path limit for this AS. Set a value from 1 - 255 AS hops.
<b>Backdoor</b>	Select this option to indicate to border devices this network is reachable using a backdoor route. A backdoor network is treated the same as a local network, except it is not advertised. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Route Map</b>	Select an existing route map as a method of controlling and modifying routing information. The control of route information occurs using route redistribution keys.

13 Configure the following **Route Redistribute** values:

<b>Route Type</b>	Use the drop-down menu to define the route type as either <i>connected</i> , <i>kernal</i> , <i>ospf</i> or <i>static</i> .
<b>Metric</b>	Select this option to set a numeric route metric used for route matching and permit designations.
<b>Route Map</b>	Select an existing route map as a method of controlling and modifying routing information. The control of route information occurs using route redistribution keys.

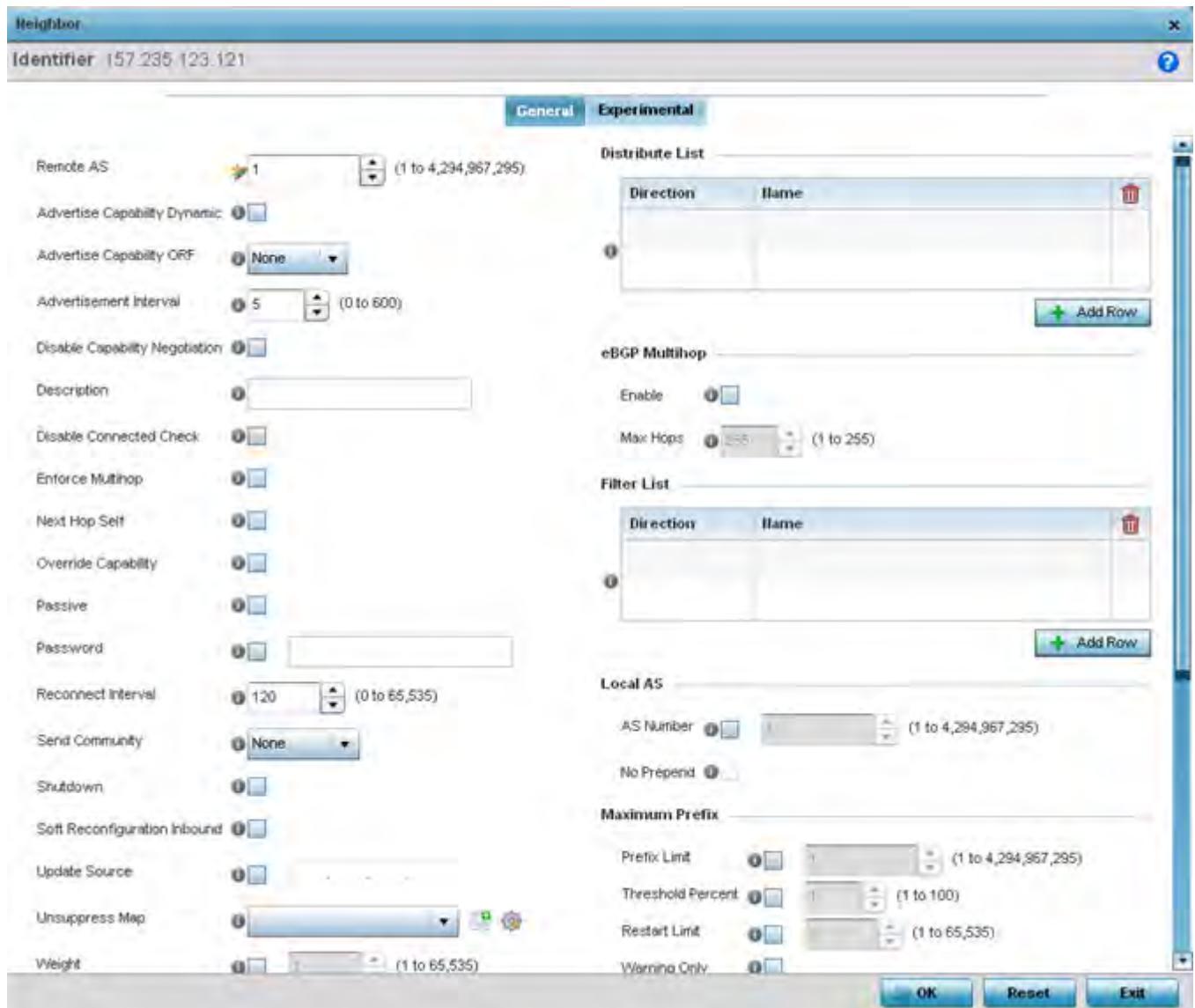
14 Select **OK** to save the changes and overrides. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

15 Select the **Neighbor** tab.



**Figure 8-73** *Border Gateway Protocol - Neighbor tab*

The **Neighbor** tab displays a list of configured BGP neighbor devices identified by their IP address. Select **Add** to add a new BGP neighbor configuration or select an existing **Identifier** and select **Edit** to modify it. The following screen displays with the **General** tab displayed by default.



**Figure 8-74** Border Gateway Protocol - Neighbor tab - General screen

The **General** tab displays the different configuration parameters for the neighbor BGP device.

16 Configure the following common parameters:

<p><b>Remote AS</b></p>	<p>Define the <i>Autonomous System Number (ASN)</i> for the neighbor BGP device. ASN is a set of routers under the same administration that use <i>Interior Gateway Protocol (IGP)</i> and common metrics to define how to route packets within the AS. Set a value from 1 - 4,294,967,295.</p>
<p><b>Advertise Capability Dynamic</b></p>	<p>Select this option to show a neighbor device’s capability to advertise or withdraw and address capability to other peers in a non-disruptive manner. This setting is disabled by default.</p>

<b>Advertise Capability ORF</b>	Select this option to enable <i>Outbound Router Filtering</i> (ORF) and advertise this capability to peer devices. ORFs send and receive capabilities to lessen the number of updates exchanged between BGP peers. By filtering updates, ORF minimizes update generation and exchange overhead.  The local BGP device advertises ORF in the <i>send</i> mode. The peer BGP device receives the ORF capability in <i>receive</i> mode. The two devices exchange updates to maintain the ORF for each router. Only a peer group or an individual BGP router can be configured to be in <i>receive</i> or <i>send</i> mode. A member of a peer group cannot be configured.
<b>Advertisement Interval</b>	Use the <i>Advertisement Interval</i> to set the minimum interval between sending BGP router updates. Sending too many router updates creates flapping of routes leading to possible disruptions. Set a minimum interval so that the BGP routing updates are sent after the set interval in seconds. The default is 5 seconds.
<b>Disable Capability Negotiation</b>	Select to disable capability negotiation with BGP neighbors. This is to allow compatibility with older BGP versions that have no capability parameters used in the <i>open</i> messages between peers. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Description</b>	Provide a 80 character maximum description for this BGP neighbor device.
<b>Disable Connected Check</b>	If utilizing loopback interfaces to connect single-hop BGP peers, enable the neighbor disable connected check before establishing a the BGP peering session. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Enforce Multihop</b>	A <i>multihop</i> route is a route to external peers on indirectly connected networks. Select to enforce neighbors to perform multi-hop check. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Next Hop Self</b>	Select to enable <i>Next Hop Self</i> . Use this to configure this device as the next hop for a BGP speaking neighbor or peer group. This allows the BGP device to change the next hop information that is sent to iBGP peers. The next hop address is set to the IP address of the interface used to communicate with the eBGP neighbor. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Override Capability</b>	Select this to enable the ability to override capability negotiation result. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Passive</b>	Select this option to set this BGP neighbor as passive. When a neighbor is set as passive, the local device should not attempt to open a connection to this device. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Password</b>	Select this option to set a password for this BGP neighbor. Use the text-box to enter the password to use for this neighbor.
<b>Reconnect Interval</b>	Set a reconnection interval for peer BGP devices from 0 - 65,535 seconds. The default setting is 120 seconds.
<b>Send Community</b>	Select this option to ensure the community attribute is sent to the BGP neighbor. The community attribute groups destinations in a certain community and applies routing decisions based on the community. On receiving community attribute, the BGP router announces it to the neighbor.
<b>Shutdown</b>	Select this option to administratively shutdown this BGP neighbor. This setting is disabled by default.



<b>Soft Reconfiguration Inbound</b>	Select this option to store updates for inbound soft reconfiguration. Soft-reconfiguration can be used in lieu of BGP route refresh capability. Selecting this option enables local storage of all received routes and their attributes. This requires additional memory on the BGP device.  When a soft reset (inbound) is performed on the neighbor device, the locally stored routes are reprocessed according to the inbound policy. The BGP neighbor connection is not affected.
<b>Update Source</b>	Select this option to allow internal BGP sessions to use any operational interface for TCP connections. Use <i>Update Source</i> in conjunction with any specified interface on the router. The loopback interface is the interface that is most commonly used with this command. The use of loopback interface eliminates a dependency and BGP does not have to rely on the availability of a particular interface for making TCP connections. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Unsuppress Map</b>	Enable <i>Unsuppress Map</i> to selectively advertise more precise routing information to this neighbor. Use this in conjunction with the <i>Route Aggregate</i> command.  The Route Aggregate command creates a route map with a IP/mask address that consolidates the subnets under it. This enables a reduction in number of route maps on the BGP device to one entry that encompasses all the different subnets. Use Unsuppress Map to selectively allow/deny a subnet or a set of subnets.  Use the <i>Create</i> icon to create a new route map. Use the <i>Edit</i> icon to edit an existing route map list after selecting it.
<b>Weight</b>	Select to set the weight of all routes learned from this BGP neighbor. Weight is used to decide the preferred route when the same route is learned from multiple neighbors. The highest weight is always chosen.

- 17 Configure or set the following **Default Originate** parameters. Default originate is used by the local BGP router to send the default route 0.0.0.0 to its neighbor for use as a default route.

<b>Enable</b>	Select to enable <i>Default Originate</i> on this BGP neighbor. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Route Map</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select a route map to use as the <i>Default Originate</i> route.

- 18 Configure or set the following **Route Map** parameters by selecting **Add Row**. This configures how route maps are applied for this BGP neighbor.

<b>Direction</b>	Use the drop-down menu to configure the direction on which the selected route map is applied. Select one from <i>in</i> , <i>out</i> , <i>export</i> or <i>import</i> .
<b>Route Map</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the route map to use with this BGP neighbor. Use the <i>Create</i> icon to create a new route map. Use the <i>Edit</i> icon to edit an existing route map after selecting it.

- 19 Configure or set the following **Distribute List** parameters by selecting **Add Row**. Up to 2 distribute list entries can be created.

<b>Direction</b>	Use the drop-down menu to configure the direction on which the selected IP access list is applied. Select either <i>in</i> or <i>out</i> .
------------------	--

<b>Name</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the route map to use with this BGP neighbor. Use the <i>Create</i> icon to create a new IP Access list. Use the <i>Edit</i> icon to edit an existing IP Access list after selecting it.
-------------	--

20 Configure or set the following **eBGP Multihop** parameters. This configures the maximum number of hops that can be between eBGP neighbors not directly connected to each other.

<b>Enable</b>	Select to enable <i>eBGP Multihop</i> on this BGP neighbor.
<b>Max Hops</b>	Set the maximum number of hops between eBGP neighbors not connected directly. Select a value from 1 - 255.

21 Configure or set the following **Filter List** parameters by selecting **Add Row**. Up to 2 filter list entries can be created.

<b>Direction</b>	Use the drop-down menu to configure the direction on which the selected AS Path list is applied. Select either <i>in</i> or <i>out</i> .
<b>Name</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the AS Path list to use with this BGP neighbor. Use the <i>Create</i> icon to create a new AS Path list. Use the <i>Edit</i> icon to edit an existing AS Path list after selecting it.

22 Configure or set the following **Local AS** parameters.



**CAUTION:** This is an experimental feature and its actual operation may be unpredictable.

<b>AS Number</b>	Specify the local <i>Autonomous System (AS)</i> number. Select from 1 - 4,294,967,295.
<b>No Prepend</b>	Select to enable. When enabled, the local AS number is not prepended to route updates from eBGP peers.

23 Configure or set the following **Maximum Prefix** value. This configures the maximum number of prefix that can be received from a BGP neighbor.

<b>Prefix Limit</b>	Sets the maximum number of prefix that can be received from a BGP neighbor. Select from 1 - 4,294,967,295. Once this threshold is reached, the BGP peer connection is reset.
<b>Threshold Percent</b>	Sets the threshold limit for generating a log message. When this percent of the <i>Prefix Limit</i> is reached, a log entry is generated. For example if the <i>Prefix Limit</i> is set to 100 and <i>Threshold Percent</i> is set to 65, then after receiving 65 prefixes, a log entry is created.
<b>Restart Limit</b>	Sets the number of times a reset BGP peer connection is restarted. Select a value from 1 - 65535
<b>Warning Only</b>	Select to enable. When the number of prefixes specified in <i>Prefix Limit</i> field is exceeded, the connection is reset. However, when this option is enabled, the connection is not reset and an event is generated instead. This setting is disabled by default.

24 Configure or set the following **Prefix List** parameters. Up to 2 prefix list entries can be created.

<b>Direction</b>	Use the drop-down menu to configure the direction on which the selected IP prefix list is applied. Select either <i>in</i> or <i>out</i> .
------------------	--

<b>Name</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the IP prefix list to use with this BGP neighbor. Use the <i>Create</i> icon to create a new IP prefix list or select the <i>Edit</i> icon to edit an existing IP prefix list after selecting it.
-------------	--

25 Set the following **Timers** for this BGP neighbor:

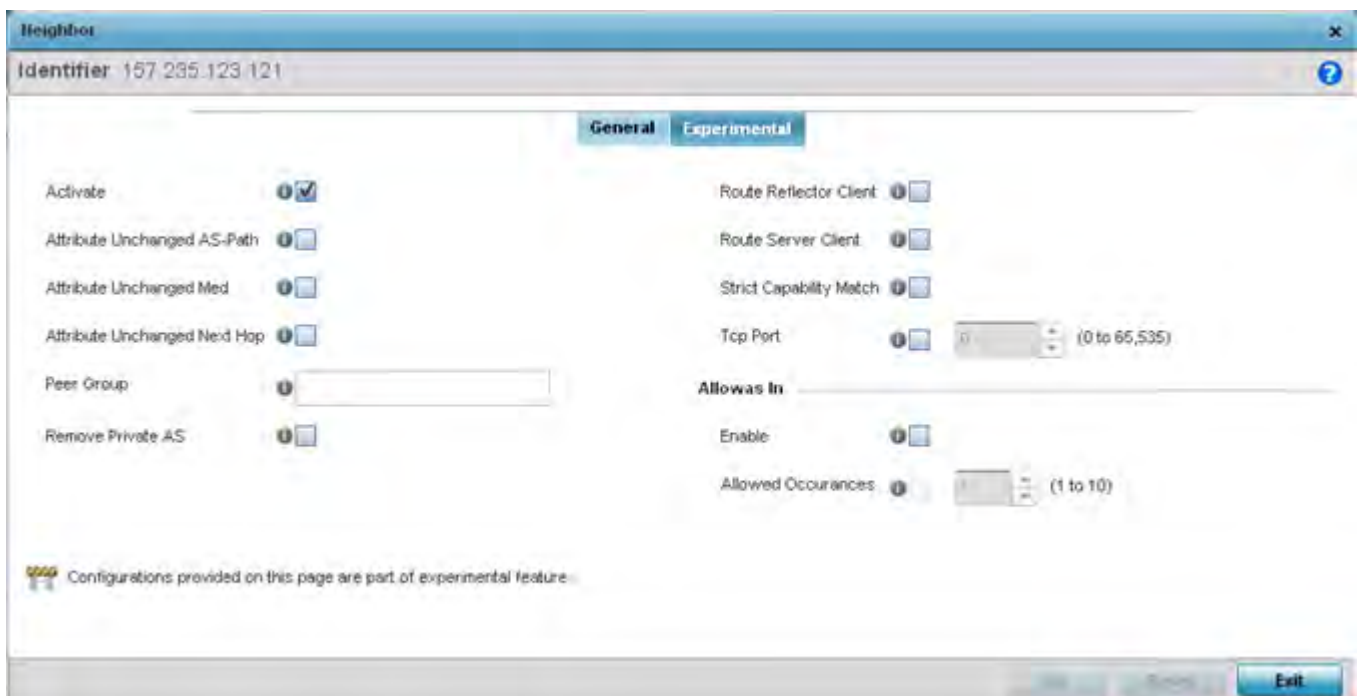
<b>Keepalive</b>	Set the time duration in seconds for keepalive. The keep alive timer is used to maintain connections between BGP neighbors. Set a value from 1 - 65,535 seconds.
<b>Holdtime</b>	Set the time duration in seconds for hold time.

26 Select **OK** to save the changes. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

27 Select the **Experimental** tab.



**CAUTION:** This is an experimental feature and its actual operation may be unpredictable.



**Figure 8-75** Border Gateway Protocol - Neighbor tab - Experimental tab

28 Set the following **Experimental** BGP parameters:

<b>Activate</b>	Enable an address family for this neighbor. This setting is enabled by default.
<b>Attribute Unchanged AS-Path</b>	Select to enable propagating AS path BGP attribute unchanged to this neighbor BGP device. This setting is enabled by default.
<b>Attribute Unchanged Med</b>	Select to enable propagating MED BGP attribute unchanged to this neighbor BGP device. This setting is enabled by default.

<b>Attribute Unchanged Next Hop</b>	Select to enable propagating the next hop BGP attribute value unchanged to this neighbor BGP device. This setting is enabled by default.
<b>Peer Group</b>	Set the peer group for this BGP neighbor device. Peer groups are a set of BGP neighbors with the same update policies. This facilitates the updates of various policies, such as, distribute lists and filter lists.  The peer group can be configured as a single entity. Any changes made to the peer group is propagated to all members.
<b>Remove Private AS</b>	Select this option to remove the private <i>Autonomous System (AS)</i> number from outbound updates. Private AS numbers are not advertised to the Internet. This option is used with external BGP (eBGP) peers only. The router removes the AS numbers only if the update includes private AS numbers.  If the update includes both private and public AS numbers, the system treats it as an error.
<b>Route Reflector Client</b>	Select this option to enable this BGP neighbor as a route reflector client for the local router. Route reflectors control large numbers of iBGP peering. Using route reflection, the number of iBGP peers is reduced. This option configures the local BGP device as a route reflector and the neighbor as its route reflector client. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Route Server Client</b>	Select this option to enable this neighbor BGP device to act as a route server client. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Strict Capability Match</b>	Select this option to enable a strict capability match before allowing a neighbor BGP peer to open a connection. When capabilities do not match, the BGP connection is closed. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>TCP Port</b>	Select to enable configuration of non-standard BGP port for this BGP neighbor. By default the BGP port number is 179. To configure a non standard port for this BGP neighbor, use the control to set the port number. Select a value from 1 - 65535.

29 Configure or set the following **Allows In** parameters. This configures the *Provider Edge (PE)* routers to allow the re-advertisement of all prefixes containing duplicate *Autonomous System Numbers (ASN)*. This creates a pair of *VPN Routing/Forwarding (VRF)* instances on each PE router to receive and re-advertise prefixes. The PE router receives prefixes with ASNs from all PE routers and advertises to its neighbor PE routers on one VRF. The other VRF receives prefixes with ASNs from the *Customer Edge (CE)* routers and re-advertises them to all PE routers in the configuration.

<b>Enable</b>	Select this option to enable re-advertisement of all prefixes containing duplicate ASNs.
<b>Allowed Occurrences</b>	Set the maximum number of times an ASN is advertised. Select a value in the range 1 - 10.

30 Select **OK** to save the changes. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration. Select **Exit** to close this window and go back to the main screen.

31 Select the **Experimental** tab from the BGP main screen.



**CAUTION:** This is an experimental feature and its actual operation may be unpredictable.

**Figure 8-76** Border Gateway Protocol - Experimental tab

32 Set the following **Experimental** BGP features:

<b>Confederation Identifier</b>	Enable and set a <i>confederation identifier</i> to allow an AS to be divided into several ASs. This confederation is visible to external routers as a single AS. Select a value from 1 - 4,294,967,295.
<b>Client to Client Reflection</b>	Select to enable client-to-client route reflection. Route reflectors are used when all iBGP speakers are not fully meshed. If the clients are fully meshed, the route-reflectors are not required. The default is enabled.
<b>Cluster ID</b>	Select to enable and set a Cluster ID if the BGP cluster has more than one route-reflectors. A cluster generally consists of a single route-reflector and its clients. The cluster is usually identified by the router ID of this single route-reflector. Sometimes, to increase the redundancy, a cluster might have more than one route-reflectors configured. In this case, all route-reflectors in the cluster are identified by the Cluster ID. Select a value from 1 - 4,294,967,295.
<b>Confederation Peers</b>	Use this spinner to select the confederation members. Once selected, select the <i>Down Arrow</i> button next to this control to add the AS as a confederation member. Multiple AS configurations can be added to the list of confederation members. To remove an AS as a confederation member, select the AS from the list and select the <i>Up Arrow</i> button next to the list.

33 Configure or set the following **Bestpath** parameter:

<b>AS-Path Confed</b>	Select this option to allow the comparison of the confederation AS path length when selecting the best route. This indicates the AS confederation path length must be used, if available, in the BGP path when deciding the best path.
-----------------------	--

34 Configure or set the following **Bestpath MED** parameter:

<b>Confed</b>	Select to enable. Use this option to allow comparing MED when selecting the best route when learned from confederation peers. This indicates that MED must be used, when available, in the BGP best path when deciding the best path between routes from different confederation peers.
---------------	---

35 Configure or set the following **Dampening** parameters. Dampening minimizes the instability caused by route flapping. A penalty is added for every flap in the flapping route. As soon as the total penalty reaches the *Route Suppress Limit* value, the advertisement of this route is suppressed. This penalty is delayed when the time specified in *Half Lifetime* occurs. Once the penalty becomes lower than the value specified in *Start Route Reuse*, the advertisement of the route is un-suppressed.

<b>Enable</b>	Select to enable dampening on advertised routes. When this option is selected, other configuration fields in this Dampening field are enabled. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Half Lifetime</b>	Select to enable and configure the half lifetime value. A penalty is imposed on a route that flaps. This is the time for the penalty to decrease to half its current value. Set a value from 1 - 45 in minutes. The default is 1 second.
<b>Start Route Reuse</b>	Select to enable and configure the route reuse value. When the penalty for a suppressed route decays below the value specified in <i>Start Route Reuse</i> field, the route is un-suppressed. Set a value from 1 - 20000.
<b>Start Route Suppress</b>	Select to enable and configure the route suppress value. When a route flaps, a penalty is added to the route. When the penalty reaches or exceeds the value specified in <i>Route Suppress Limit</i> , the route is suppressed. Set a value from 1 - 20000.
<b>Route Suppress Limit</b>	Select to enable and configure the maximum duration in minutes a suppressed route is suppressed. This is the maximum duration for which a route remains suppressed before it is reused. Set a value from 1 - 255 minutes.

36 Configure or set the **Graceful Restart** parameters. This provides a graceful restart mechanism for a BGP session reset in which the BGP daemon is not restarted, so that any changes in network configuration that caused the BGP reset does not affect packet forwarding.

<b>Enable</b>	Select to enable a graceful restart on this BGP router. This section is disabled by default.
<b>Stalepath Time</b>	Configure the maximum time to retain stale paths from restarting neighbor. This is the time the paths from a restarting neighbor is preserved. All stale paths, unless reinstated by the neighbor after re-establishment, are deleted at the expiry of this timer value. Set a value from 1 - 3600 seconds.

37 Select **OK** to save the changes. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration. Select **Exit** to close this window and go back to the main screen.

## 8.8.12 Setting a Profile's Forwarding Database Configuration

### ► Profile Network Configuration

A *Forwarding Database* is used by a bridge to forward or filter packets. The bridge reads the packet's destination MAC address and decides to either forward the packet or drop (filter) it. If it is determined the destination MAC is

on a different network segment, it forwards the packet to the segment. If the destination MAC is on the same network segment, the packet is dropped (filtered). As nodes transmit packets through the bridge, the bridge updates its forwarding database with known MAC addresses and their locations on the network. This information is then used to filter or forward the packet.

To define a forwarding database configuration:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Profiles > Network**.
- 2 Expand the Network menu to display its submenu options.
- 3 Select **Forwarding Database**.

The screenshot displays the 'Forwarding Database' configuration interface. At the top, under 'Aging Time', there are two input fields: 'Bridge Aging Time' set to 300 (with a range of 0,10-1000000 seconds) and 'L3e Lite Entry Aging Time' set to 301 (with a range of 10 to 1,000,000 seconds). Below this is the 'Static Forwarding Table', which is a table with three columns: 'MAC Address', 'VLAN Id', and 'Interface Name'. The first row contains the MAC address '00-00-00-00-00-00', VLAN ID '1', and an empty interface name field. There are icons for adding, deleting, and editing rows. At the bottom right of the table area is a '+ Add Row' button. At the very bottom of the screen are 'OK', 'Reset', and 'Exit' buttons.

**Figure 8-77** Forwarding Database screen

- 4 Define a **Bridge Aging Time** between 0, 10-1,000,000 seconds.  
The aging time defines the length of time an entry remains in the a bridge's forwarding table before being deleted due to inactivity. If an entry replenishments a destination generating continuous traffic, this timeout value will never be invoked. However, if the destination becomes idle, the timeout value represents the length of time that must be exceeded before an entry is deleted from the forwarding table. The default setting is 300 seconds.
- 5 Define a **L3e Lite Entry Aging Time** between 10-1,000,000 seconds.  
The default setting is 300 seconds.
- 6 Use the **+ Add Row** button to create a new row within the MAC address table.
- 7 Set a destination MAC Address address. The bridge reads the packet's destination MAC address and decides to forward the packet or drop (filter) it. If it's determined the destination MAC is on a different network, it forwards the packet to the segment. If the destination MAC is on the same network segment, the packet is dropped (filtered)



- 8 Define the target **VLAN ID** if the destination MAC is on a different network segment.
- 9 Provide an **Interface Name** used as the target destination interface for the target MAC address.
- 10 Select **OK** to save the changes. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

### 8.8.13 Setting a Profile's Bridge VLAN Configuration

#### ► Profile Network Configuration

A *Virtual LAN* (VLAN) is separately administrated virtual network within the same physical managed network. VLANs are broadcast domains defined to allow control of broadcast, multicast, unicast, and unknown unicast within a Layer 2 device.

Administrators often need to route traffic to interoperate between different VLANs. Bridging VLANs are only for non-routable traffic, like tagged VLAN frames destined to some other device which will untag it. When a data frame is received on a port, the VLAN bridge determines the associated VLAN based on the port of reception. Using forwarding database information, the Bridge VLAN forwards the data frame on the appropriate port(s). VLAN's are useful to set separate networks to isolate some computers from others, without actually having to have separate cabling and Ethernet switches. Controllers and service platforms can do this on their own, without the need to know what VLAN it's on (this is called port-based VLAN, since it's assigned by port). Another common use is to put specialized devices like VoIP Phones on a separate network for easier configuration, administration, security or service quality.

To define a bridge VLAN configuration:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Profiles > Network**.
- 2 Expand the Network menu to display its submenu options.
- 3 Select **Bridge VLAN**.

VLAN	Description	Edge VLAN Mode	Trust ARP Responses	Trust DHCP Responses	IPv6 Firewall	DHCPv6 Trust	RA Guard
1		✓	✗	✓	✓	✓	✓
2		✓	✗	✓	✗	✓	✗

Type to search in tables Row Count: 2

**Figure 8-78** Profile - Network Bridge VLAN screen

- 4 Review the following VLAN configuration parameters to determine whether an update is warranted:

<b>VLAN</b>	Lists the numerical identifier defined for the Bridge VLAN when initially created. The available range is from 1 - 4095. This value cannot be modified during the edit process.
<b>Description</b>	Lists a description of the VLAN assigned when it was created or modified. The description should be unique to the VLAN's specific configuration and help differentiate it from other VLANs with similar configurations.
<b>Edge VLAN Mode</b>	Defines whether the VLAN is currently in edge VLAN mode. A green checkmark defines the VLAN as extended. An edge VLAN is the VLAN where hosts are connected. For example, if VLAN 10 is denied with wireless clients, and VLAN 20 is where the default gateway resides, VLAN 10 should be marked as an edge VLAN and VLAN 20 shouldn't. When defining a VLAN as an edge VLAN, the firewall enforces additional checks on hosts in that VLAN. For example, a host cannot move from an edge VLAN to another VLAN and still keep firewall flows active.
<b>Trust ARP Responses</b>	When ARP trust is enabled, a green checkmark displays. When disabled, a red "X" displays. Trusted ARP packets are used to update the IP-MAC Table to prevent IP spoof and arp-cache poisoning attacks.
<b>Trust DHCP Responses</b>	When DHCP trust is enabled, a green checkmark displays. When disabled, a red "X" displays. When enabled, DHCP packets from a DHCP server are considered trusted and permissible. DHCP packets are used to update the DHCP Snoop Table to prevent IP spoof attacks.
<b>IPv6 Firewall</b>	Lists whether an IPv6 firewall is enabled on this bridge VLAN. A green checkmark defines this setting as enabled. A red X defines this setting as disabled. IPV6 provides enhanced identification and location information for computers on networks routing traffic across the Internet. These hosts require firewall packet protection unique to IPv6 traffic, as IPv6 addresses are composed of eight groups of four hexadecimal digits separated by colons. IPv6 hosts can configure themselves automatically when connected to an IPv6 network using the <i>neighbor discovery</i> (ND) protocol via ICMPv6 router discovery messages. When first connected to a network, a host sends a link-local router solicitation multicast request for its configuration parameters; routers respond to such a request with a router advertisement packet that contains Internet Layer configuration parameters.
<b>DHCPv6 Trust</b>	Lists whether DHCPv6 responses are trusted on this bridge VLAN. A green checkmark defines this setting as enabled. A red X defines this setting as disabled. If enabled, only DHCPv6 responses are trusted and forwarded over the bridge VLAN.
<b>RA Guard</b>	Lists whether <i>router advertisements</i> (RA) are allowed on this bridge VLAN. A green checkmark defines this setting as enabled. A red X defines this setting as disabled. RAs are periodically sent to hosts or sent in response to solicitation requests. The advertisement includes IPv6 prefixes (address abbreviations) and other subnet and host information.

- 5 Select **Add** to define a new bridge VLAN configuration, **Edit** to modify an existing bridge VLAN configuration or **Delete** to remove a VLAN configuration.



**Figure 8-79** Bridge VLAN - General tab

The **General** tab displays by default.

- 6 If adding a new Bridge VLAN configuration, use the spinner control to define a **VLAN** ID between 1 - 4094. This value must be defined and saved before the General tab can become enabled and the remainder of the settings defined. VLAN IDs 0 and 4095 are reserved and unavailable.
- 7 Set the following **General** bridge VLAN parameters:

<b>Description</b>	If creating a new Bridge VLAN, provide a description (up to 64 characters) unique to the VLAN's specific configuration to help differentiate it from other VLANs with similar configurations.
<b>Per VLAN Firewall</b>	Enable this setting to provide firewall allow and deny conditions over the bridge VLAN. This setting is enabled by default.

- 8 Set or override the following **URL Filter** parameters. Web filters are used to control the access to resources on the Internet

<b>URL Filter</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select a URL filter to use with this Bridge VLAN.
-------------------	---

- 9 Set or override the following **Application Policy** parameters. Use the drop-down to select the appropriate Application Policy to use with this Bridge VLAN configuration.

10 Set the following **Extended VLAN Tunnel** parameters:

<b>Bridging Mode</b>	Specify one of the following bridging modes for the VLAN. <i>Automatic</i> - Select automatic to let the controller or service platform determine the best bridging mode for the VLAN. <i>Local</i> - Select Local to use local bridging mode for bridging traffic on the VLAN. <i>Tunnel</i> - Select Tunnel to use a shared tunnel for bridging traffic on the VLAN. <i>Isolated-Tunnel</i> - Uses a dedicated tunnel for bridging traffic on the VLAN.
<b>IP Outbound Tunnel ACL</b>	Select an IP Outbound Tunnel ACL for outbound traffic from the drop-down menu. If an appropriate outbound IP ACL is not available, select the <i>Create</i> button to make a new one.
<b>IPv6 Outbound Tunnel ACL</b>	Select an IPv6 Outbound Tunnel ACL for outbound traffic from the drop-down menu. If an appropriate outbound IP ACL is not available, select the <i>Create</i> button to make a new one.
<b>MAC Outbound Tunnel ACL</b>	Select a MAC Outbound Tunnel ACL for outbound traffic from the drop-down menu. If an appropriate outbound MAC ACL is not available click the <i>Create</i> button to make a new one.
<b>Tunnel Over Level 2</b>	Select this option to allow VLAN traffic to be tunneled over level 2 links. This setting is disabled by default.



**NOTE:** Local and Automatic bridging modes do not work with ACLs. ACLs can only be used with tunnel or isolated-tunnel modes.

11 Select the **Level 2 Tunnel Broadcast Optimization** checkbox to enable broadcast optimization on this bridge VLAN. L2 Tunnel Broadcast Optimization prevents flooding of ARP packets over the virtual interface. Based on the learned information, ARP packets are filtered at the wireless controller level. This option is enabled by default.

If enabling L2 tunnel broadcast optimization, set the **Level 2 Forward Additional Packet Types** as *None* or *WNMP* to specify if additional packet types are forwarded or not across the L2 tunnel. By default, L2 tunnel broadcast optimization disables *Wireless Network Management Protocol* (WNMP) packet forwarding also across the L2 tunnel. Use this option to enable the forwarding of only WNMP packets. The default value is *None*.

12 Select **+ Add Row** to set the following **Tunnel Rate Limit** parameters:

<b>Mint Link Level</b>	Select the MINT link level from the drop-down menu.
<b>Rate</b>	Define a transmit rate limit between 50 - 1,000,000 kbps. This limit constitutes a threshold for the maximum the number of packets transmitted or received over the bridge VLAN. Traffic that exceeds the defined rate is dropped and a log message is generated. The default setting is 5,000 kbps.
<b>Max Burst Size</b>	Set a maximum burst size between 0 - 1024 kbytes. The smaller the burst, the less likely the receive packet transmission will result in congestion. The default burst size is 320 kbytes.

<b>Background</b>	Set the random early detection threshold in % for low priority background traffic. Set a value from 1 - 100%. The default is 50%.
<b>Best-Effort</b>	Set the random early detection threshold in % for low priority best-effort traffic. Set a value from 1 - 100%. The default is 50%.
<b>Video</b>	Set the random early detection threshold in % for high priority video traffic. Set a value from 1 - 100%. The default is 25%.
<b>Voice</b>	Set the random early detection threshold in % for high priority voice traffic. Set a value from 1 - 100%. The default is 25%.

13 Set the following **Layer 2 Firewall** parameters:

<b>Trust ARP Response</b>	Select this option to use trusted ARP packets to update the DHCP Snoop Table to prevent IP spoof and arp-cache poisoning attacks. This feature is disabled by default.
<b>Trust DHCP Responses</b>	Select this option to use DHCP packets from a DHCP server as trusted and permissible within the managed network. DHCP packets are used to update the DHCP Snoop Table to prevent IP spoof attacks. This feature is disabled by default.
<b>Enable Edge VLAN Mode</b>	Select this option to enable edge VLAN mode. When selected, the edge controller or service platform's IP address in the VLAN is not used, and is now designated to isolate devices and prevent connectivity. This feature is enabled by default.

14 Set the following **IPv6 Settings**:

<b>IPv6 Firewall</b>	Select this option to enable an IPv6 firewall on this bridge VLAN. This setting is enabled by default.
<b>DHCPv6 Trust</b>	Select this option to enable the trust all DHCPv6 responses on this bridge VLAN. DHCPv6 is a networking protocol for configuring IPv6 hosts with IP addresses, IP prefixes or other configuration attributes required on an IPv6 network. This setting is enabled by default.
<b>RA Guard</b>	Select this option to enable router advertisements or ICMPv6 redirects on this bridge VLAN. This setting is enabled by default.

15 Refer to the **Captive Portal** field to select an existing captive portal configuration to apply access restrictions to the bridge VLAN configuration.

A captive portal is an access policy for providing temporary and restrictive access using a standard Web browser. Captive portals provides authenticated access by capturing and re-directing a wireless user's Web browser session to a captive portal login page where the user must enter valid credentials to access to the network. Once logged into the captive portal, additional *Terms and Agreement*, *Welcome*, *Fail* and *No Service* pages provide the administrator with a number of options on captive portal screen flow and user appearance. If an existing captive portal does not suite the bridge VLAN configuration, either select the **Edit** icon to modify an existing configuration or select the **Create** icon to define a new configuration that can be applied to the bridge VLAN. For information on configuring a captive portal policy, see [Configuring Captive Portal Policies on page 11-1](#).

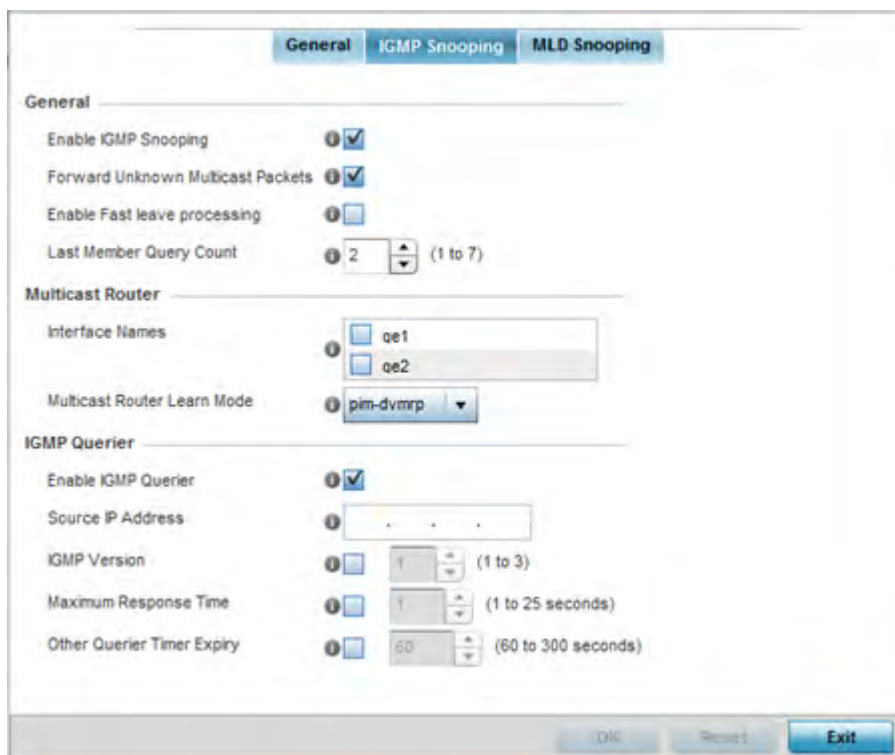
16 Refer to the **Captive Portal Snoop Subnet** field to configure the IPv4 clients to be excluded when snooping an IPv4 subnet for static wired captive portal clients. In the **Subnet** field, provide the subnet to snoop on. In the **Exclude IP** provide one (1) IP address in the subnet that can be excluded from snooping.

17 Refer to the **Captive Portal Snoop IPv6 Subnet** field to configure the IPv6 clients to be excluded when snooping an IPv6 subnet for static wired captive portal clients. Multiple rows can be added to this field.

<b>Subnet</b>	Use this field to provide an IPv6 subnet to snoop on.
<b>Exclude IP</b>	Use this field to provide the IPv6 address in the subnet that can be excluded from snooping.

18 Select the **OK** button to save the changes to the General tab. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

19 Select the **IGMP Snooping** tab to define the VLAN's IGMP configuration.



**Figure 8-80** Bridge VLAN - IGMP Snooping Tab

20 Define the following **General** IGMP parameters for the bridge VLAN configuration:

The *Internet Group Management Protocol* (IGMP) is a protocol used for managing members of IP multicast groups. Controller and service platforms listen to IGMP network traffic and forward IGMP multicast packets to radios on which the interested hosts are connected. On the wired side of the network, the wired interfaces are flooded. This feature reduces the unnecessary flooding of multicast traffic in the network.

<b>Enable IGMP Snooping</b>	Select the check box to enable IGMP snooping. If disabled, snooping on a per VLAN basis is also disabled. This feature is enabled by default. If disabled, the settings under bridge configuration are overridden. For example, if IGMP snooping is disabled, but the bridge VLAN is enabled, the effective setting is disabled.
<b>Forward Unknown Unicast Packets</b>	Select the check box to enable to forward unicast packets from unregistered multicast groups. If disabled (the default setting), the unknown unicast forward feature is also disabled for individual VLANs.



<b>Enable Fast leave processing</b>	Select this option to remove a Layer 2 LAN interface from the IGMP snooping forwarding table entry without initially sending IGMP group-specific queries to the interface. When receiving a group specific IGMPv2 leave message, IGMP snooping removes the interface from the Layer 2 forwarding table entry for that multicast group, unless a multicast router was learned on the port. Fast-leave processing enhances bandwidth management for all hosts on the network. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Last Member Query Count</b>	Specify the number (1 - 7) of group specific queries sent before removing an IGMP snooping entry. The default settings is 2.

21 Define the following **Multicast Router** settings:

<b>Interface Names</b>	Select the ge1 or radio interfaces used to IGMP snooping over a multicast router.
<b>Multicast Router Learn Mode</b>	Set the pim-dvmrp or static multicast routing learn mode.

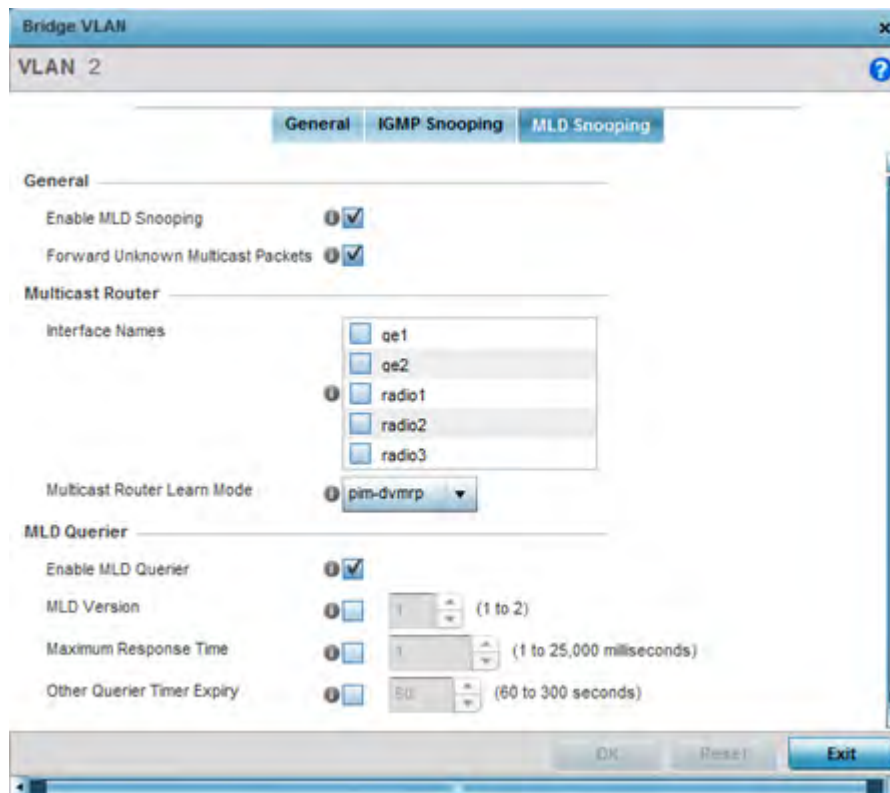
22 Set the following **IGMP Querier** parameters for the profile's bridge VLAN configuration:

<b>Enable IGMP Querier</b>	IGMP snoop querier is used to keep host memberships alive. It's primarily used in a network where there's a multicast streaming server, hosts subscribed to the server and no IGMP querier present. An IGMP querier sends out periodic IGMP query packets. Interested hosts reply with an IGMP report packet. IGMP snooping is only conducted on wireless radios. IGMP multicast packets are flooded on wired ports. IGMP multicast packet are not flooded on the wired port. IGMP membership is also learnt on it and only if present, then it is forwarded on that port.
<b>Source IP Address</b>	Define an IP address applied as the source address in the IGMP query packet. This address is used as the default VLAN querier IP address.
<b>IGMP Version</b>	Use the spinner control to set the IGMP version compatibility to either version 1, 2 or 3. The default setting is 3.
<b>Maximum Response Time</b>	Specify the maximum time (from 1 - 25 seconds) before sending a responding report. When no reports are received from a radio, radio information is removed from the snooping table. For IGMP reports from wired ports, reports are only forwarded to the multicast router ports. The default setting is 10 seconds.
<b>Other Querier Timer Expiry</b>	Specify an interval in either <i>Seconds</i> (60 - 300) or <i>Minutes</i> (1 - 5) used as a timeout interval for other querier resources. The default setting is 1 minute.

23 Select the **OK** button located at the bottom right of the screen to save the changes to the IGMP Snooping tab.  
Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

24 Select the **MLD Snooping** tab.





**Figure 8-81** Bridge VLAN - MLD Snooping Tab

Define the following **General** MLD snooping parameters for the bridge VLAN configuration

*Multicast Listener Discovery* (MLD) snooping enables a controller, service platform or Access Point to examine MLD packets and make forwarding decisions based on content. MLD is used by IPv6 devices to discover devices wanting to receive multicast packets destined for specific multicast addresses. MLD uses multicast listener queries and multicast listener reports to identify which multicast addresses have listeners and join multicast groups.

MLD snooping caps the flooding of IPv6 multicast traffic on controller, service platform or Access Point VLANs. When enabled, MLD messages are examined between hosts and multicast routers and to discern which hosts are receiving multicast group traffic. The controller, service platform or Access Point then forwards multicast traffic only to those interfaces connected to interested receivers instead of flooding traffic to all interfaces.

<b>Enable MLD Snooping</b>	Enable MLD snooping to examine MLD packets and support content forwarding on this bridge VLAN. Packets delivered are identified by a single multicast group address. Multicast packets are delivered using best-effort reliability, just like IPv6 unicast. MLD snooping is enabled by default.
<b>Forward Unknown Unicast Packets</b>	Use this option to either <i>enable</i> or <i>disable</i> IPv6 unknown unicast forwarding. Unicast addresses identify a single network interface, whereas a multicast address is used by multiple hosts. This setting is enabled by default.

25 Define the following **Multicast Router** settings:

<b>Interface Names</b>	Select the physical ge port or radio interfaces used for MLD snooping.
------------------------	--

<b>Multicast Router Learn Mode</b>	Set the <i>pim-dvmrp</i> or <i>static</i> multicast routing learn mode. DVMRP builds a parent-child database using a constrained multicast model to build a forwarding tree rooted at the source of the multicast packets. Multicast packets are initially flooded down this source tree. If redundant paths are on the source tree, packets are not forwarded along those paths.
------------------------------------	---

26 Set the following **MLD Querier** parameters for the profile's bridge VLAN configuration:

<b>Enable MLD Querier</b>	Select the option to enable MLD querier on the controller, service platform or Access Point. When enabled, the device sends query messages to discover which network devices are members of a given multicast group. This setting is enabled by default.
<b>MLD Version</b>	Define whether MLD version 1 or 2 is utilized with the MLD querier. MLD version 1 is based on IGMP version 2 for IPv4. MLD version 2 is based on IGMP version 3 for IPv4 and is fully backward compatible. IPv6 multicast uses MLD version 2. The default MLD version is 2.
<b>Maximum Response Time</b>	Specify the maximum response time (from 1 - 25,000 milliseconds) before sending a responding report. Queriers use MLD reports to join and leave multicast groups and receive group traffic. The default setting is 1 milliseconds.
<b>Other Querier Timer Expiry</b>	Specify an interval in either <i>Seconds</i> (60 - 300) or <i>Minutes</i> (1 - 5) used as a timeout interval for other querier resources. The default setting is 60 seconds.

27 Select the **OK** button located at the bottom right of the screen to save the changes. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

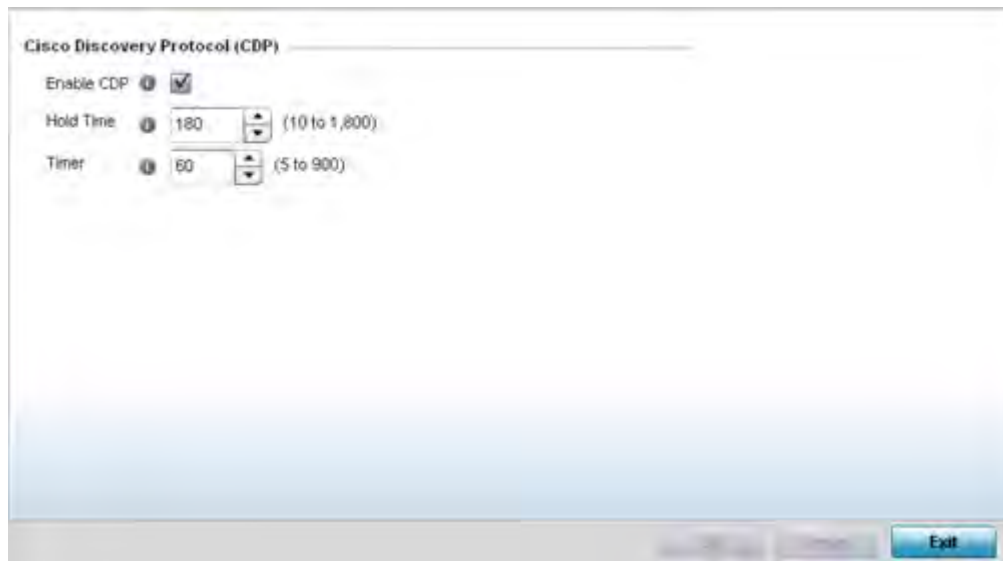
## 8.8.14 Setting a Profile's Cisco Discovery Protocol Configuration

### ► Profile Network Configuration

The *Cisco Discovery Protocol* (CDP) is a proprietary data link layer network protocol implemented in Cisco networking equipment and used to share information about network devices.

To set a profile's CDP configuration:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Profiles > Network**.
- 2 Expand the Network menu to display its submenu options.
- 3 Select **Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP)**.



**Figure 8-82** Profile - Network Cisco Discovery Protocol screen

- 4 Check the **Enable CDP** box to enable the Cisco Discovery Protocol on the device.
- 5 Refer to the **Hold Time** field and use the spinner control to define a hold time between 10 - 1800 seconds for transmitted CDP Packets. The default value is 180 seconds.
- 6 Refer to the **Timer** field and use the spinner control to define a interval between 5 - 900 seconds to transmit CDP Packets. The default value is 60 seconds.
- 7 Select the **OK** button to save the changes. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

### 8.8.15 Setting a Profile's Link Layer Discovery Protocol Configuration

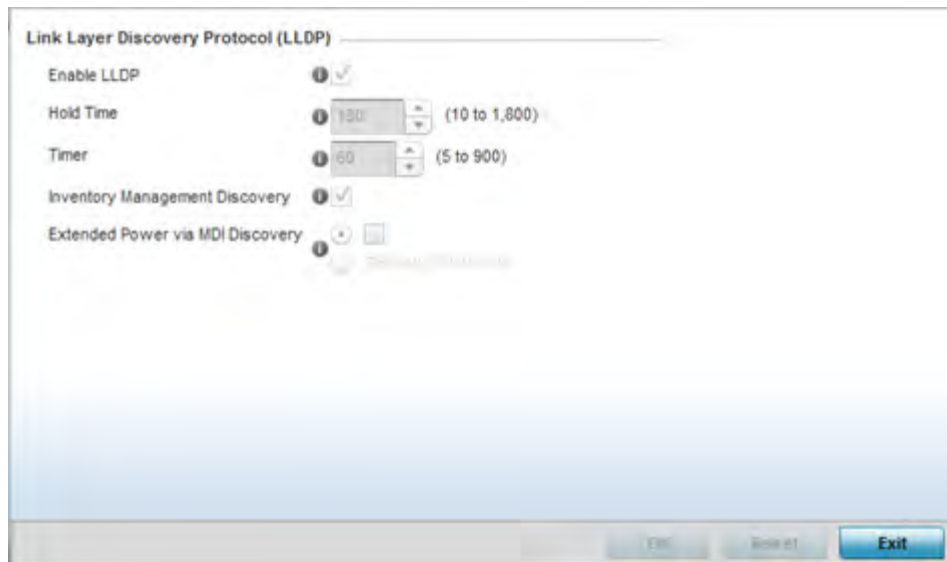
#### ► Profile Network Configuration

The *Link Layer Discovery Protocol* (LLDP) or IEEE 802.1AB is a vendor-neutral Data Link Layer protocol used by network devices for advertising of (announcing) identity, capabilities and interconnections on a IEEE 802 LAN network. The protocol is formally referred to by the IEEE as Station and Media Access Control Connectivity Discovery. Both LLDP snooping and ability to generate and transmit LLDP packets is provided.

Information obtained via CDP and LLDP snooping is available in the UI. Information obtained using LLDP is provided by an Access Point during the adoption process, so the layer 2 device detected by the Access Point can be used as a criteria in the provisioning policy.

To set a profile's LLDP configuration:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Profiles > Network**.
- 2 Expand the Network menu to display its submenu options.
- 3 Select **Link Layer Discovery Protocol**.



**Figure 8-83** Profile - Network Link Layer Discovery Protocol screen

- 4 Check the **Enable LLDP** box to enable Link Layer Discovery Protocol on the device.
- 5 Refer to the **Hold Time** field and use the spinner control to define a hold time from 10 - 1800 seconds for transmitted LLDP packets. The default value is 180 seconds.
- 6 Refer to the **Timer** field and use the spinner control to define the interval between 5 - 900 seconds to transmit LLDP packets. The default value is 60 seconds.
- 7 Enable **Inventory Management Discovery** to track and identify inventory attributes including manufacturer, model or software version.
- 8 Extended Power via MDI Discovery provides detailed power information through end points and other connected devices. Select the **Extended Power via MDI Discovery** box to enable this feature. or select the **Default for Type** option to use a WiNG internal default value.
- 9 Select the **OK** button to save the changes. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

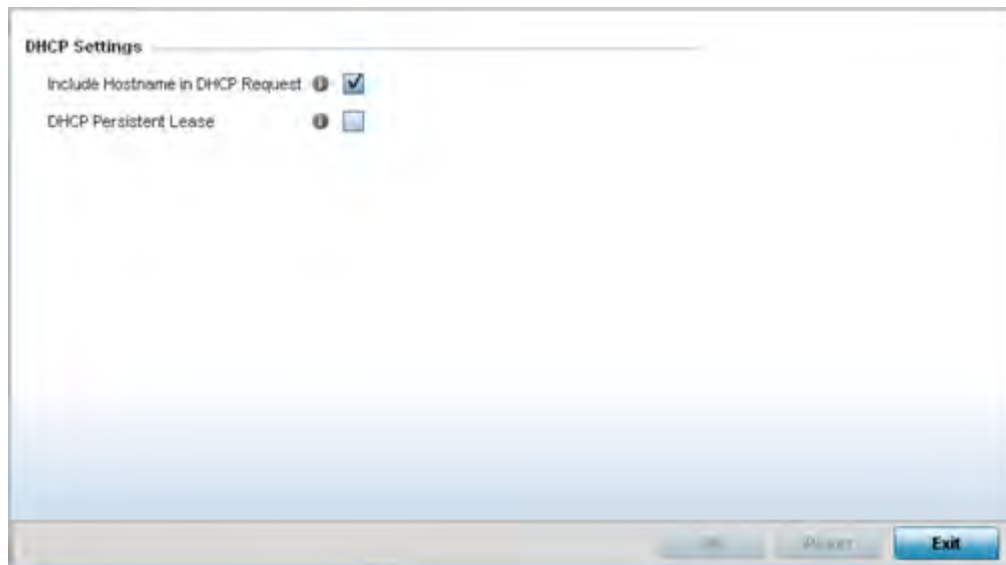
## 8.8.16 Setting a Profile's Miscellaneous Network Configuration

### ► Profile Network Configuration

A profile can be configured to include a hostname in a DHCP lease for a requesting device and its profile. This helps an administrator track the leased DHCP IP address by hostname for the supported device profile. When numerous DHCP leases are assigned, an administrator can better track the leases when hostnames are used instead of devices.

To include a hostnames in DHCP request:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Profiles > Network**.
- 2 Expand the Network menu to display its submenu options.
- 3 Select **Miscellaneous**.



**Figure 8-84** Profile Miscellaneous screen

- 4 Refer to the DHCP Settings section to configure miscellaneous DHCP Settings.

<b>Include Hostname in DHCP Request</b>	Select <i>Include Hostname in DHCP Request</i> to include a hostname in a DHCP lease for a requesting device. This feature is disabled by default.
<b>DHCP Persistent Lease</b>	Enables a persistent DHCP lease for a requesting device. A persistent DHCP lease assigns the same IP Address and other network information to the device each time it renews its DHCP lease.

- 5 Select the **OK** button located at the bottom right of the screen to save the changes. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 8.8.17 Setting a Profile's Alias Configuration

### ► Profile Network Configuration

With large deployments, the configuration of remote sites utilizes a set of shared attributes, of which a small set of attributes are unique for each location. For such deployments, maintaining separate configuration (WLANs, profiles, policies and ACLs) for each remote site is complex. Migrating any global change to a particular configuration item to all the remote sites is a complex and time consuming operation.

- Also, this practice does not scale gracefully for quick growing deployments.
- An alias enables an administrator to define a configuration item, such as a hostname, as an alias once and use the defined alias across different configuration items such as multiple ACLs.
- Once a configuration item, such as an ACL, is utilized across remote locations, the Alias used in the configuration item (ACL) is modified to meet local deployment requirement. Any other ACL or other configuration items using the modified alias also get modified, simplifying maintenance at the remote deployment.
- Aliases have scope depending on where the Alias is defined. Aliases are defined with the following scopes:
- *Global aliases* are defined from the **Configuration > Network > Alias** screen. Global aliases are available for use globally across all devices, profiles and RF Domains in the system.
- *Profiles aliases* are defined from the **Configuration > Devices > System Profile > Network > Alias** screen. Profile aliases are available for use to a specific group of wireless controllers or Access Points. Alias values defined in a profile override the alias values defined within global aliases.

- *RF Domain aliases* are defined from the **Configuration > Devices > RF Domain > Alias** screen. RF Domain aliases are available for use for a site as a RF Domain is site specific. RF Domain alias values override alias values defined in a global alias or a profile alias configuration.
- *Device aliases* are defined from the **Configuration > Devices > Device Overrides > Network > Alias** screen. Device aliases are utilized by a singular device only. Device alias values override global, profile or RF Domain alias configurations.

Using an alias, configuration changes made at a remote location override any updates at the management center. For example, if an network alias defines a network range as 192.168.10.0/24 for the entire network, and at a remote deployment location, the local network range is 172.16.10.0/24, the network alias can be overridden at the deployment location to suit the local requirement. For the remote deployment location, the network alias work with the 172.16.10.0/24 network. Existing ACLs using this network alias need not be modified and will work with the local network for the deployment location. This simplifies ACL definition and management while taking care of specific local deployment requirements.

For more information, refer to the following:

- *Basic Alias*
- *Network Group Alias*
- *Network Service Alias*

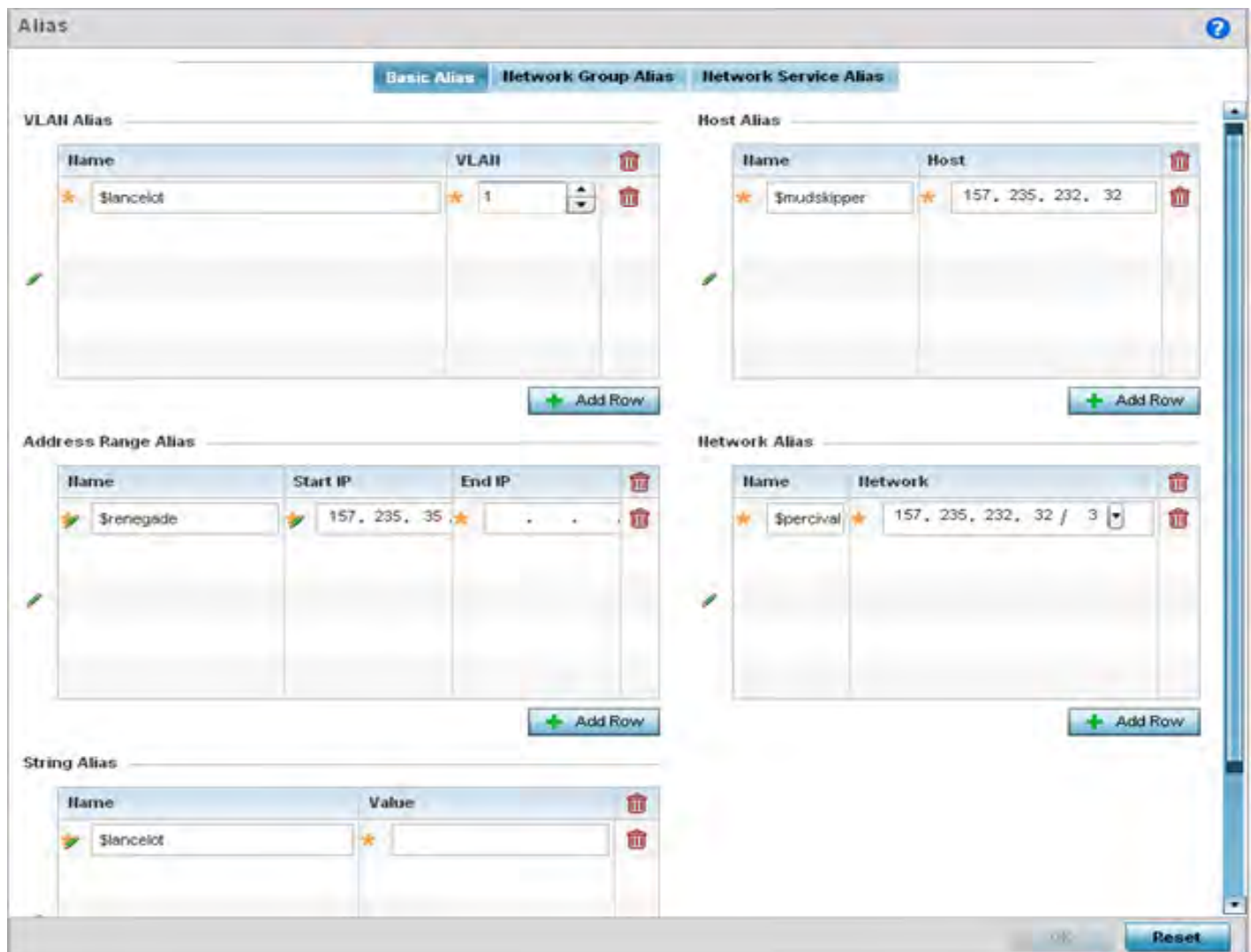
### 8.8.17.1 Basic Alias

#### ▶ *Setting a Profile's Alias Configuration*

A *basic alias* is a set of configurations consisting of *VLAN*, *Host*, *Network* and *Address Range* alias configurations. A VLAN alias is a configuration for optimal VLAN re-use and management for local and remote deployments. A host alias configuration is for a particular host device's IP address. A network alias configuration is utilized for an IP address on a particular network. An address range alias is a configuration for a range of IP addresses.

To set a network basic alias configuration:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Profiles > Network**.
- 2 Expand the Network menu to display its submenu options.
- 3 Select **Alias**.  
The Alias screen displays with the Basic Alias tab displayed by default.



**Figure 8-85** Basic Alias screen

- 4 Select **+ Add Row** to define **VLAN Alias** settings:

Use the **Vlan Alias** field to create unique aliases for VLANs that can be utilized at different deployments. For example, if a VLAN ID is set as 10 for the central network, and the VLAN is set as 26 at a remote location, the VLAN can be overridden at the remote location using an alias. At the remote location, the network is functional with an ID of 26, but utilizes the name defined at the central local network. A new VLAN need not be created specifically at the remote location.

<b>Name</b>	If adding a new <i>VLAN Alias</i> , provide it a distinguishing name up to 32 characters. The alias name always starts with a dollar sign (\$).
<b>Vlan</b>	Use the spinner control to set a numeric VLAN ID from 1 - 4094.

- 5 Select **+ Add Row** to define **Address Range Alias** settings:

Use the **Address Range Alias** field to create aliases for IP address ranges that can be utilized at different deployments. For example, if an ACL defines a pool of network addresses as 192.168.10.10 through 192.168.10.100 for an entire network, and a remote location's network range is 172.16.13.20 through 172.16.13.110,



the remote location's ACL can be overridden using an alias. At the remote location, the ACL works with the 172.16.13.20-110 address range. A new ACL need not be created specifically for the remote deployment location.

<b>Name</b>	If adding a new <i>Address Alias</i> , provide it a distinguishing name up to 32 characters. The alias name always starts with a dollar sign (\$).
<b>Start IP</b>	Set a starting IP address used with a range of addresses utilized with the address range alias.
<b>End IP</b>	Set an ending IP address used with a range of addresses utilized with the address range alias.

6 Select **+ Add Row** to define **String Alias** settings:

Use the **String Alias** field to create aliases for hosts that can be utilized at different deployments. For example, if the main domain at a remote location is called loc1.domain.com and at another deployment location it is called loc2.domain.com, the alias can be overridden at the remote location to suit the local (but remote) requirement. At one remote location, the alias functions with the loc1.domain.com domain and at the other with the loc2.domain.com domain.

<b>Name</b>	If adding a new <i>String Alias</i> , provide it a distinguishing name up to 32 characters. The alias name always starts with a dollar sign (\$).
<b>Value</b>	Provide a string value to use in the alias.

7 Select **+ Add Row** to define **Host Alias** settings:

Use the **Host Alias** field to create aliases for hosts that can be utilized at different deployments. For example, if a central network DNS server is set a static IP address, and a remote location's local DNS server is defined, this host can be overridden at the remote location. At the remote location, the network is functional with a local DNS server, but uses the name set at the central network. A new host need not be created at the remote location. This simplifies creating and managing hosts and allows an administrator to better manage specific local requirements.

<b>Name</b>	If adding a new <i>Host Alias</i> , provide it a distinguishing name up to 32 characters. The alias name always starts with a dollar sign (\$).
<b>Host</b>	Set the IP address of the host machine.

8 Select **+ Add Row** to define **Network Alias** settings:

Use the **Network Alias** field to create aliases for IP networks that can be utilized at different deployments. For example, if a central network ACL defines a network as 192.168.10.0/24, and a remote location's network range is 172.16.10.0/24, the ACL can be overridden at the remote location to suit their local (but remote) requirement. At the remote location, the ACL functions with the 172.16.10.0/24 network. A new ACL need not be created specifically for the remote deployment. This simplifies ACL definition and allows an administrator to better manage specific local requirements.

<b>Name</b>	If adding a new <i>Network Alias</i> , provide it a distinguishing name up to 32 characters. The alias name always starts with a dollar sign (\$).
<b>Network</b>	Provide a network address in the form of <i>host/mask</i> .

9 Select **OK** when completed to update the set of basic alias rules. Select **Reset** to revert the screen back to its last saved configuration.

### 8.8.17.2 Network Group Alias

A *network group alias* is a set of configurations consisting of host and network configurations. Network configurations are complete networks in the form of 192.168.10.0/24 or an IP address range in the form of 192.168.10.10-192.168.10.20. Host configurations are in the form of a single IP address, 192.168.10.23.

A network group alias can contain multiple definitions for a host, network, and IP address range. A maximum of eight (8) Host entries, eight (8) network entries and eight (8) IP addresses range can be configured inside a network group alias. A maximum of 32 network group alias entries can be created.

To set a network group alias configuration:

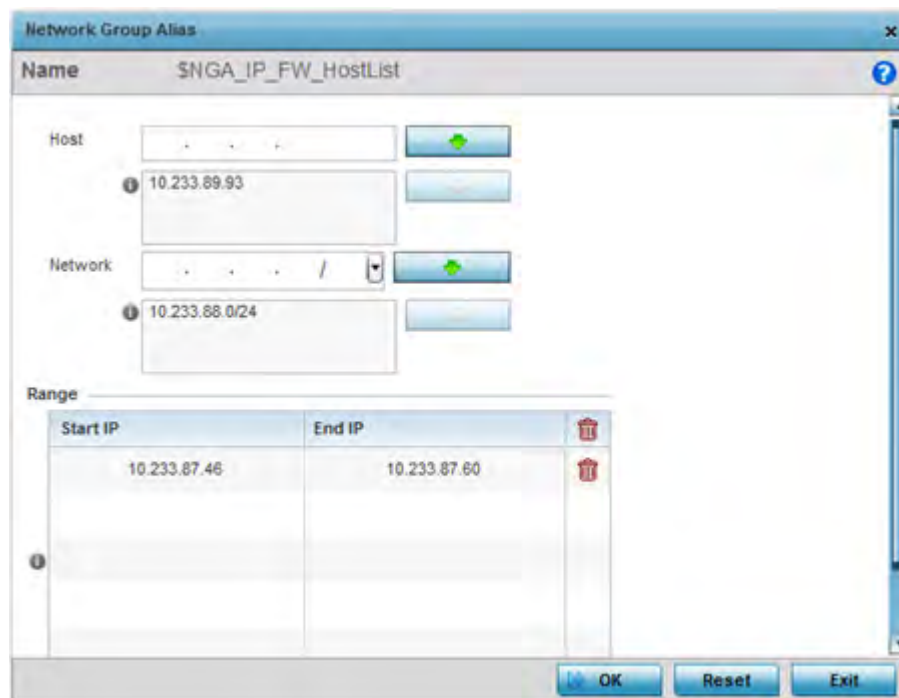
- 1 Select **Configuration > Profiles > Network**.
- 2 Expand the Network menu to display its submenu options.
- 3 Select **Alias**.
- 4 Select the **Network Group Alias** tab. The screen displays the attributes of existing network group alias configurations.

Name	Host	Network
SNGA_IP_FW_HostList	10.233.89.93	10.233.88.0/24

**Figure 8-86** Network Group Alias screen

<b>Name</b>	Displays the administrator assigned name used with the network group alias.
<b>Host</b>	Displays all the host aliases configured in the listed network group alias. Displays a blank column if no host alias is defined.
<b>Network</b>	Displays all network aliases configured in the listed network group alias. Displays a blank column if no network alias is defined.

- 5 Select **Add** to create a new policy, **Edit** to modify the attributes of an existing policy or **Delete** to remove obsolete policies.
- 6 Select the added row to expand it into configurable parameters for defining the network alias rule.



**Figure 8-87** Network Group Alias Add screen

- 7 If adding a new **Network Alias Rule**, provide it a name up to 32 characters. The network group alias name always starts with a dollar sign (\$).
- 8 Define the following network group alias parameters:

<b>Host</b>	Specify the Host IP address for up to eight IP addresses supporting network aliasing. Select the down arrow to add the IP address to the table.
<b>Network</b>	Specify the netmask for up to eight IP addresses supporting network aliasing. Subnets can improve network security and performance by organizing hosts into logical groups. Applying the subnet mask to an IP address separates the address into a host address and an extended network address. Select the down arrow to add the mask to the table.

- 9 Within the **Range** table, use the **+ Add Row** button to specify the **Start IP** address and **End IP** address for the alias range or double-click on an existing an alias range entry to edit it.
- 10 Select **OK** when completed to update the network alias rules. Select **Reset** to revert the screen back to its last saved configuration.

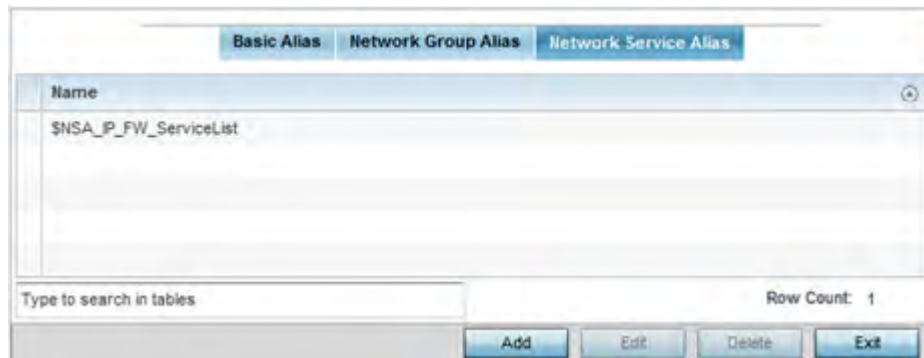
### 8.8.17.3 Network Service Alias

A *network service alias* is a set of configurations that consist of protocol and port mappings. Both source and destination ports are configurable. For each protocol, up to 2 source port ranges and up to 2 destination port ranges can be configured. A maximum of 4 protocol entries can be configured per network service alias.

Use a service alias to associate more than one IP address to a network interface, providing multiple connections to a network from a single IP node.

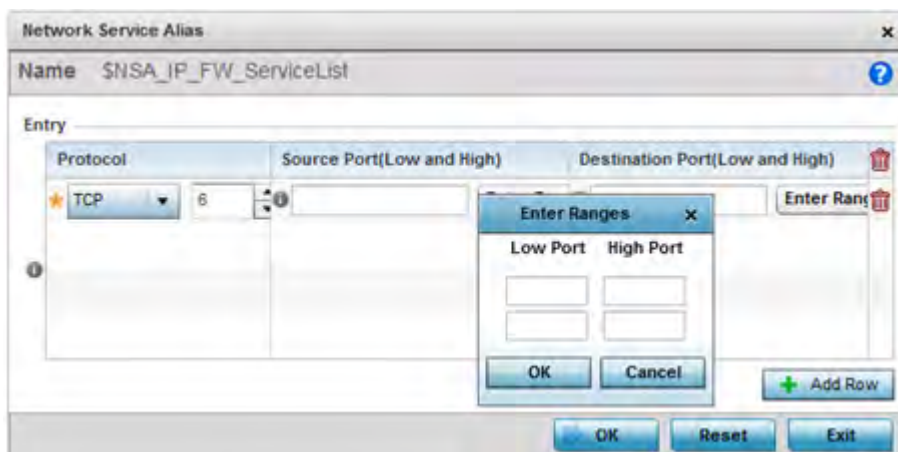
To define a service alias configuration:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Profiles > Network**.
- 2 Expand the Network menu to display its submenu options.
- 3 Select **Alias**.
- 4 Select the **Network Service Alias** tab. The screen displays existing network service alias configurations.



**Figure 8-88** Network Service Alias screen

- 5 Select **Add** to create a new policy, **Edit** to modify the attributes of an existing policy or **Delete** to remove obsolete policies.
- 6 Select the added row to expand it into configurable parameters for defining the service alias rule.



**Figure 8-89** Network Service Alias Add screen

- 7 If adding a new **Network Service Alias Rule**, provide it a name up to 32 characters. Ensure a \$ precedes the name.
- 8 Select **+ Add Row** and provide the following configuration parameters:

<b>Protocol</b>	Specify the protocol for which the alias has to be created. Use the drop down to select the protocol from <i>eigrp</i> , <i>gre</i> , <i>icmp</i> , <i>igmp</i> , <i>ip</i> , <i>vrrp</i> , <i>igp</i> , <i>ospf</i> , <i>tcp</i> and <i>udp</i> . Select <i>other</i> if the protocol is not listed. When a protocol is selected, its protocol number is automatically selected.
<b>Source Port (Low and High)</b>	This field is only relevant if the protocol is either <i>tcp</i> or <i>udp</i> . Specify the source ports for this protocol entry. A range of ports can be specified. Select the <i>Enter Ranges</i> button next to the field to enter a lower and higher port range value. Up to eight (8) such ranges can be specified.

<b>Destination Port (Low and High)</b>	This field is only relevant if the protocol is either <i>tcp</i> or <i>udp</i> . Specify the destination ports for this protocol entry. A range of ports can be specified. Select the <i>Enter Ranges</i> button next to the field to enter a lower and higher port range value. Up to eight (8) such ranges can be specified.
--	---

- 9 Within the **Range** field, use the **+ Add Row** button to specify the **Start IP** address and **End IP** address for the service alias range or double-click on an existing service alias range entry to edit it.
- 10 Select **OK** when completed to update the service alias rules. Select **Reset** to revert the screen back to its last saved configuration.

## 8.8.18 Setting a Profile's IPv6 Neighbor Configuration

### ► Profile Network Configuration

IPv6 neighbor discovery uses ICMP messages and solicited multicast addresses to find the link layer address of a neighbor on the same local network, verify the neighbor's reachability and track neighboring devices.

Upon receiving a neighbor solicitation message, the destination replies with *neighbor advertisement* (NA). The source address in the advertisement is the IPv6 address of the device sending the message. The destination address in the advertisement message is the IPv6 address of the device sending the neighbor solicitation. The data portion of the NA includes the link layer address of the node sending the neighbor advertisement.

Neighbor solicitation messages also verify the availability of a neighbor once its the link layer address is identified. When a node wants to verify the reachability of a neighbor, the destination address in a neighbor solicitation message is the unicast address of the neighbor.

A neighbor is interpreted as reachable when an acknowledgment is returned indicating packets have been received and processed. If packets are reaching the device, they're also reaching the next hop neighbor, providing a confirmation the next hop is reachable.

To set an IPv6 neighbor discovery configuration:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Profiles > Network**.
- 2 Expand the **Network** menu to display its submenu options.
- 3 Select **IPv6 Neighbor**.

**IPv6 Neighbor Timeout**

Neighbor Entry Timeout: 1 Hours (1 to 24)

**IPv6 Neighbor Discovery**

IPv6 Address	MAC Address	Switch VLAN Interface	Device Type
IPv6	00-00-00-00-00-00	1	Host

+ Add Row

Reset Exit

**Figure 8-90** IPv6 Neighbor screen

- Set an **IPv6 Neighbor Entry Timeout** in either *Seconds* (15 - 86,400), *Minutes* (1 - 1,440), *Hours* (1 - 24) or *Days* (1). The default setting is 1 hour.
- Select **+ Add Row** to define the configuration of **IPv6 Neighbor Discovery** configurations. A maximum of 256 neighbor entries can be defined.

<b>IPv6 Address</b>	Provide a static IPv6 IP address for neighbor discovery. IPv6 hosts can configure themselves automatically when connected to an IPv6 network using the neighbor discovery protocol via CMPv6 router discovery messages. When first connected to a network, a host sends a link-local router solicitation multicast request for its configuration parameters; routers respond to such a request with a router advertisement packet that contains Internet Layer configuration parameters. IPv6 addresses are composed of eight groups of four hexadecimal digits separated by colons.
<b>MAC Address</b>	Enter the hardware encoded MAC addresses of up to 256 IPv6 neighbor devices. A neighbor is interpreted as reachable when an acknowledgment is returned indicating packets have been received and processed. If packets are reaching the device, they're also reaching the next hop neighbor, providing a confirmation the next hop is reachable.
<b>Switch VLAN Interface</b>	Use the spinner control to set the virtual interface (from 1 - 4094) used for neighbor advertisements and solicitation messages.
<b>Device Type</b>	Specify the device type for this neighbor solicitation. Neighbor solicitations request the link layer address of a target node while providing the sender's own link layer address to the target. Neighbor solicitations are multicast when the node needs to resolve an address and unicast when the node seeks to verify the reachability of a neighbor. Options include <i>Host</i> , <i>Router</i> and <i>DHCP Server</i> . The default setting is <i>Host</i> .

- Select **OK** to save the changes. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 8.8.19 Profile Network Configuration and Deployment Considerations

### ▶ Profile Network Configuration

Before defining a profile's network configuration, refer to the following deployment guidelines to ensure the profile configuration is optimally effective:

- Administrators often need to route traffic between different VLANs. Bridging VLANs are only for non-routable traffic, like tagged VLAN frames destined to some other device which will untag it. When a data frame is received on a port, the VLAN bridge determines the associated VLAN based on the port of reception.
- Static routes, while easy, can be overwhelming within a large or complicated network. Each time there is a change, someone must manually make changes to reflect the new route. If a link goes down, even if there is a second path, the router would ignore it and consider the link down.
- Static routes require extensive planning and have a high management overhead. The more routers in a network, the more routes need that to be configured. If you have  $N$  number of routers and a route between each router is needed, then you must configure  $N \times N$  routes. Thus, for a network with nine routers, you'll need a minimum of 81 routes ( $9 \times 9 = 81$ ).

## 8.9 Profile Security Configuration

A profile can have its own firewall policy, wireless client role policy, WEP shared key authentication, NAT policy and VPN policy applied. If an existing firewall, client role or NAT policy is unavailable, an administrator can navigate from **Configuration > Profiles** to **Configuration > Security** to create the required security policy configuration. Once created, separate policies can be applied to the profile to best support the data protection and security requirements of the device model supported by the profile.

For more information, refer to the following sections:

- [Setting the Profile's Security Settings](#)
- [Setting the Profile's Certificate Revocation List \(CRL\) Configuration](#)
- [Setting the Profile's Trustpoint Configuration](#)
- [Setting the Profile's VPN Configuration](#)
- [Setting the Profile's Auto IPSec Tunnel Configuration](#)
- [Setting the Profile's NAT Configuration](#)
- [Setting the Profile's Bridge NAT Configuration](#)
- [Setting the Profile's Application Visibility \(AVC\) Configuration](#)

### 8.9.1 Setting the Profile's Security Settings

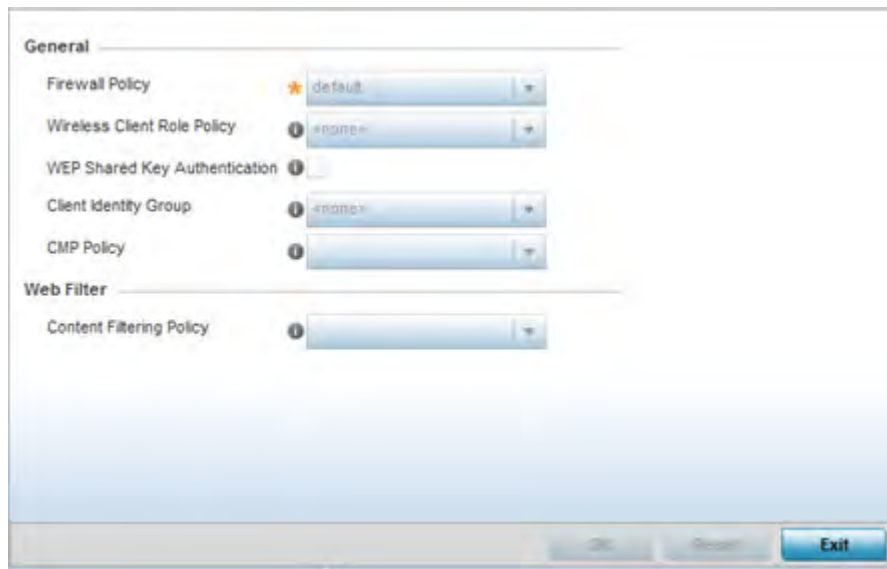
#### ▶ Profile Security Configuration

A profile can leverage existing firewall, wireless client role and WIPS policies and apply them to the profile's configuration. This affords each profile a truly unique combination of data protection policies best meeting the data protection requirements of the profile's supported device model.

To define a profile's security settings:

- 1 Select the Configuration tab from the Web UI.
- 2 Select **Profiles** from the Configuration tab.
- 3 Select **Manage Profiles** from the Configuration > Profiles menu.
- 4 Select **Security**.



5 Select **Settings**.**Figure 8-91** Security - Settings screen6 Refer to the **General** field to assign or create the following security policy's to the profile:

<b>Firewall Policy</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select an existing Firewall Policy to use as an additional security mechanism with this profile. All devices using this profile must meet the requirements of the firewall policy to access the network. A firewall is a mechanism enforcing access control, and is considered a first line of defense in protecting proprietary information within the network. The means by which this is accomplished varies, but in principle, a firewall can be thought of as mechanisms both blocking and permitting data traffic within the network. If an existing Firewall policy does not meet your requirements, select the <i>Create</i> icon to create a new firewall policy that can be applied to this profile. An existing policy can also be selected and edited as needed using the <i>Edit</i> icon.
<b>Wireless Client Role Policy</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select a client role policy used to strategically filter client connections based on a pre-defined set of filter rules and connection criteria. If an existing Wireless Client Role policy does not meet your requirements, select the <i>Create</i> icon to create a new configuration that can be applied to this profile. An existing policy can also be selected and edited as needed using the <i>Edit</i> icon.
<b>WEP Shared Key Authentication</b>	Select this option to require devices to use a WEP key to access the network using this profile. The controller or service platform use the key algorithm to convert an ASCII string to the same hexadecimal number. Clients without adapters need to use WEP keys manually configured as hexadecimal numbers. This option is disabled by default.

<b>Client Identity Group</b>	Select the client identity group to apply to this device profile. Client identity is a set of unique fingerprints used to identify a class of devices. A <i>Client identity group</i> is a set of client attributes that identify devices and apply specific permissions and restrictions on them. The information is used to configure permissions and access rules for that device class and can assist administrators by applying permissions and rules to multiple devices simultaneously. For information on setting a client identity group configuration that can be selected and applied to a device profile, see <i>Device Fingerprinting on page 10-47</i> .
<b>CMP Policy</b>	Use the drop down-menu to assign a CMP policy to allow a device to communicate to a CMP supported CA server, initiate a certificate request and download the required certificates from the CA server. CMP supports multiple request options through for device communicating to a CMP supported CA server. The device can initiate a request for getting the certificates from the server. It can also auto update the certificates which are about to expire.

- 7 Use the **Content Filtering Policy** drop-down menu to select or override the **URL Filter** configuration applied to this virtual interface.  
URL filtering is used to restrict access to specific resources (by category) on the Internet.
- 8 Select **OK** to save the changes made within the Settings screen. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

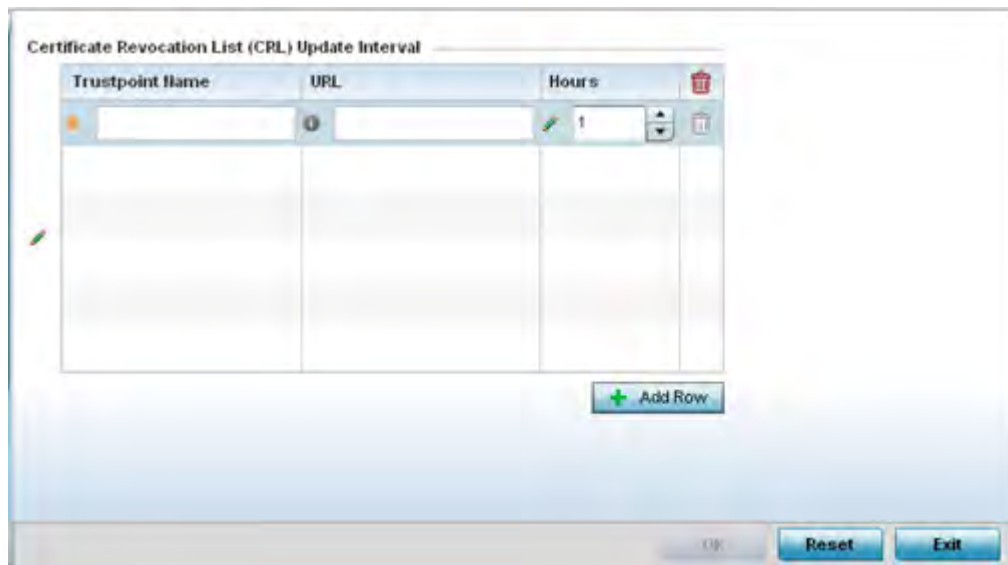
## 8.9.2 Setting the Profile's Certificate Revocation List (CRL) Configuration

### ▶ Profile Security Configuration

A *certificate revocation list* (CRL) is a list of certificates that have been revoked or are no longer valid. A certificate can be revoked if the *certificate authority* (CA) had improperly issued a certificate, or if a private-key is compromised. The most common reason for revocation is the user no longer being in sole possession of the private key.

To define a CRL configuration that can be applied to a profile:

- 1 Select the **Configuration** tab from the Web UI.
- 2 Select **Profiles** from the Configuration tab.
- 3 Select **Manage Profiles** from the Configuration > Profiles menu.
- 4 Select **Security**.
- 5 Select **Certificate Revocation**.



**Figure 8-92** Security - Certificate Revocation screen

- 6 Select the **+ Add Row** button to add a column within the **Certificate Revocation List (CRL) Update Interval** table to quarantine certificates from use in the network.

Additionally, a certificate can be placed on hold for a defined period. If, for instance, a private key was found and nobody had access to it, its status could be reinstated.

- a Provide the name of the trustpoint in question within the **Trustpoint Name** field. The name cannot exceed 32 characters.
  - b Enter the resource ensuring the trustpoint's legitimacy within the **URL** field.
  - c Use the spinner control to specify an interval (in hours) after which a device copies a CRL file from an external server and associates it with a trustpoint.
- 7 Select **OK** to save the changes made within the Certificate Revocation screen. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

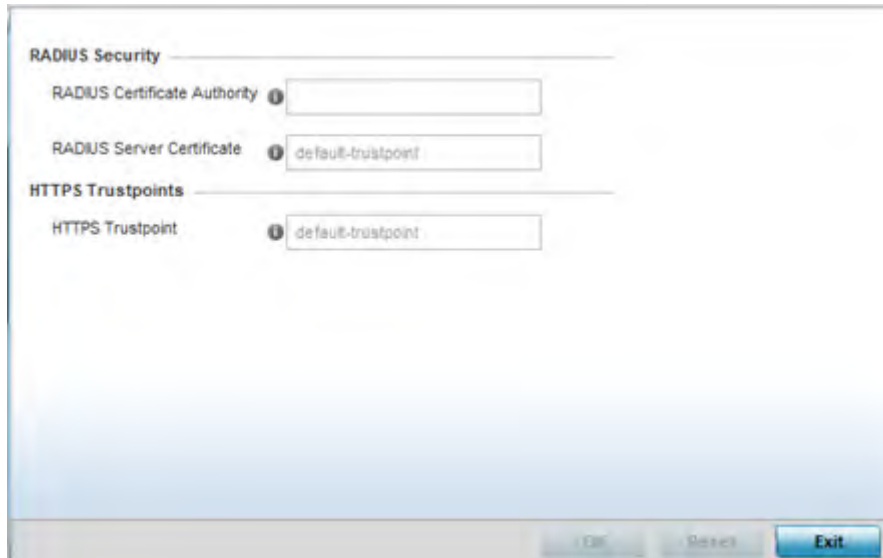
### 8.9.3 Setting the Profile's Trustpoint Configuration

#### ► Profile Security Configuration

A RADIUS certificate links identity information with a public key enclosed in the certificate. A *certificate authority* (CA) is a network authority that issues and manages security credentials and public keys for message encryption. The CA signs all digital certificates it issues with its own private key. The corresponding public key is contained within the certificate and is called a CA certificate.

To define a RADIUS Trustpoint configuration that can be applied to a profile:

- 1 Select the **Configuration** tab from the Web UI.
- 2 Select **Profiles** from the Configuration tab.
- 3 Select **Manage Profiles** from the Configuration > Profiles menu.
- 4 Select **Security**.
- 5 Select **Trustpoints**.



**Figure 8-93** Security - Trustpoint screen

- 6 Set the following **RADIUS Security** certificate settings:

<b>RADIUS Certificate Authority</b>	Either use the default-trustpoint or select an existing certificate.
<b>RADIUS Server Certificate</b>	Either use the default-trustpoint or select an existing certificate/trustpoint.

- 7 Set the following **HTTPS Trustpoints** settings:

<b>HTTPS Trustpoint</b>	Either use the default trustpoint or select the Stored radio button to enable a drop-down menu where an existing certificate/trustpoint can be utilized. For more information, see <a href="#">Certificate Management on page 5-12</a> .
-------------------------	--

- 8 Select **OK** to save the changes made within the RADIUS Trustpoints screen. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration,

## 8.9.4 Setting the Profile's VPN Configuration

### ► Profile Security Configuration

IPSec VPN provides a secure tunnel between two networked peer controllers or service platforms. Administrators can define which packets are sent within the tunnel, and how they're protected. When a tunnelled peer sees a sensitive packet, it creates a secure tunnel and sends the packet through the tunnel to its remote peer destination.

Tunnels are sets of *security associations* (SA) between two peers. SAs define the protocols and algorithms applied to sensitive packets and specify the keying mechanisms used by tunnelled peers. SAs are unidirectional and exist in both the inbound and outbound direction. SAs are established per the rules and conditions of defined security protocols (*AH* or *ESP*).

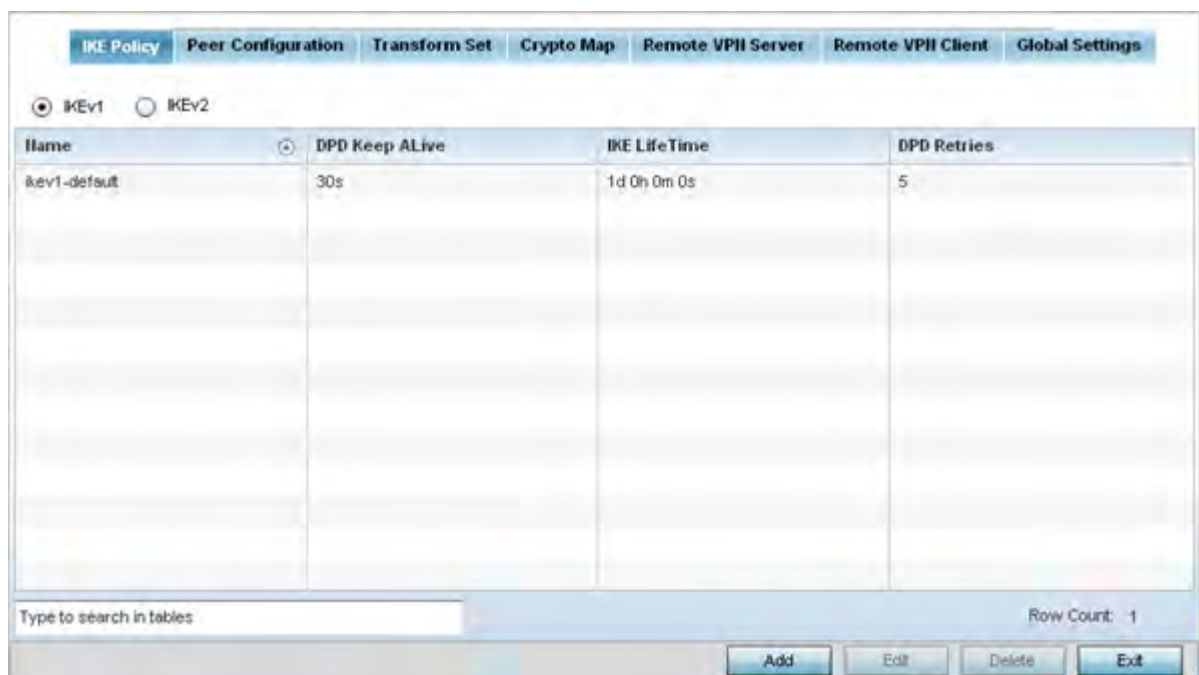
Use *crypto maps* to configure IPSec VPN SAs. Crypto maps combine the elements comprising IPSec SAs. Crypto maps also include *transform sets*. A transform set is a combination of security protocols, algorithms and other settings applied to IPSec protected traffic. One crypto map is utilized for each IPsec peer, however for remote VPN deployments one crypto map is used for all the remote IPsec peers.

*Internet Key Exchange* (IKE) protocol is a key management protocol standard used in conjunction with IPsec. IKE enhances IPsec by providing additional features, flexibility, and configuration simplicity for the IPsec standard. IKE automatically negotiates IPsec SAs, and enables secure communications without time consuming manual pre-configuration.

To define a profile's VPN settings:

- 1 Select the **Configuration** tab from the Web UI.
- 2 Select **Profiles** from the Configuration tab.
- 3 Select **Manage Profiles** from the Configuration > Profiles menu.
- 4 Select **Security**.
- 5 Select **VPN Configuration**.

The **Basic Settings** tab displays by default. Refer to the Peer Settings table to add peer addresses and keys for VPN tunnel destinations. Use the **+ Add Row** function as needed to add additional destinations and keys.



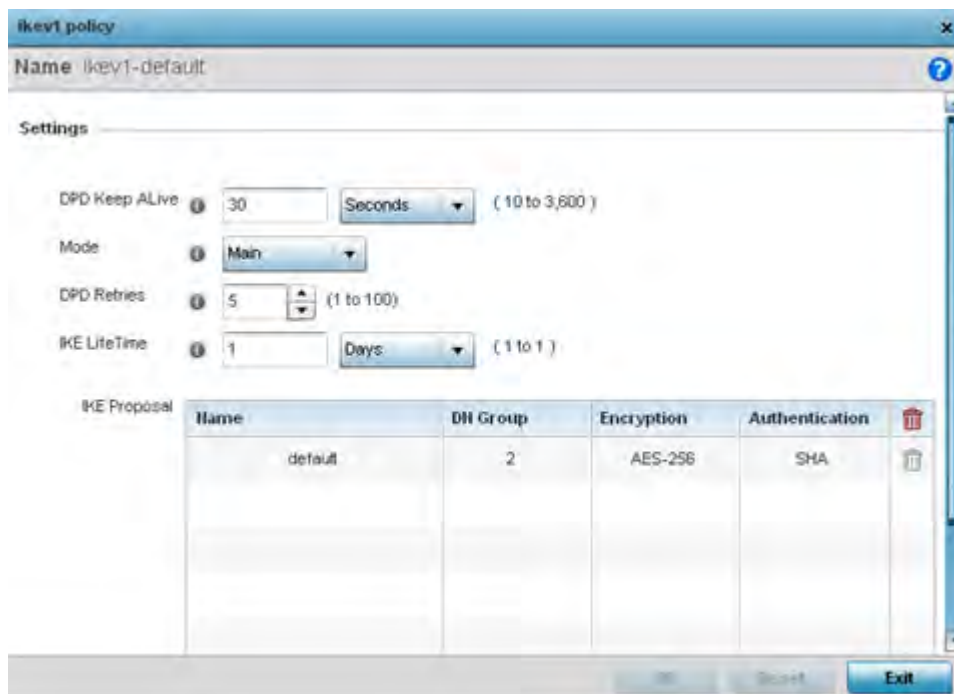
**Figure 8-94** Profile Security - VPN IKE Policy screen

- 6 Select either the **IKEv1** or **IKEv2** radio button to enforce VPN peer key exchanges using either *IKEv1* or *IKEv2*. IKEv2 provides improvements from the original IKEv1 design (improved cryptographic mechanisms, NAT and firewall traversal, attack resistance etc.) and is recommended in most deployments. The appearance of the IKE Policy screens differ depending on the selected IKEv1 or IKEv2 mode.
- 7 Refer to the following to determine whether an IKE Policy requires creation, modification or removal:

<b>Name</b>	Displays the 32 character maximum name assigned to the IKE policy.
<b>DPD Keep Alive</b>	Lists each policy's IKE keep alive message interval defined for IKE VPN tunnel dead peer detection.

<b>IKE LifeTime</b>	Displays each policy's lifetime for an IKE SA. The lifetime defines how long a connection (encryption/authentication keys) should last, from successful key negotiation to expiration. Two peers need not exactly agree on the lifetime, though if they do not, there is some clutter for a superseded connection on the peer defining the lifetime as longer.
<b>DPD Retries</b>	Lists each policy's number maximum number of keep alive messages sent before a VPN tunnel connection is defined as dead by the peer. This screen only appears when IKEv1 is selected.

8 Select **Add** to define a new IKE Policy configuration, **Edit** to modify an existing configuration or **Delete** to remove an existing configuration.



**Figure 8-95** Profile Security - IKE Policy - Add/Edit screen

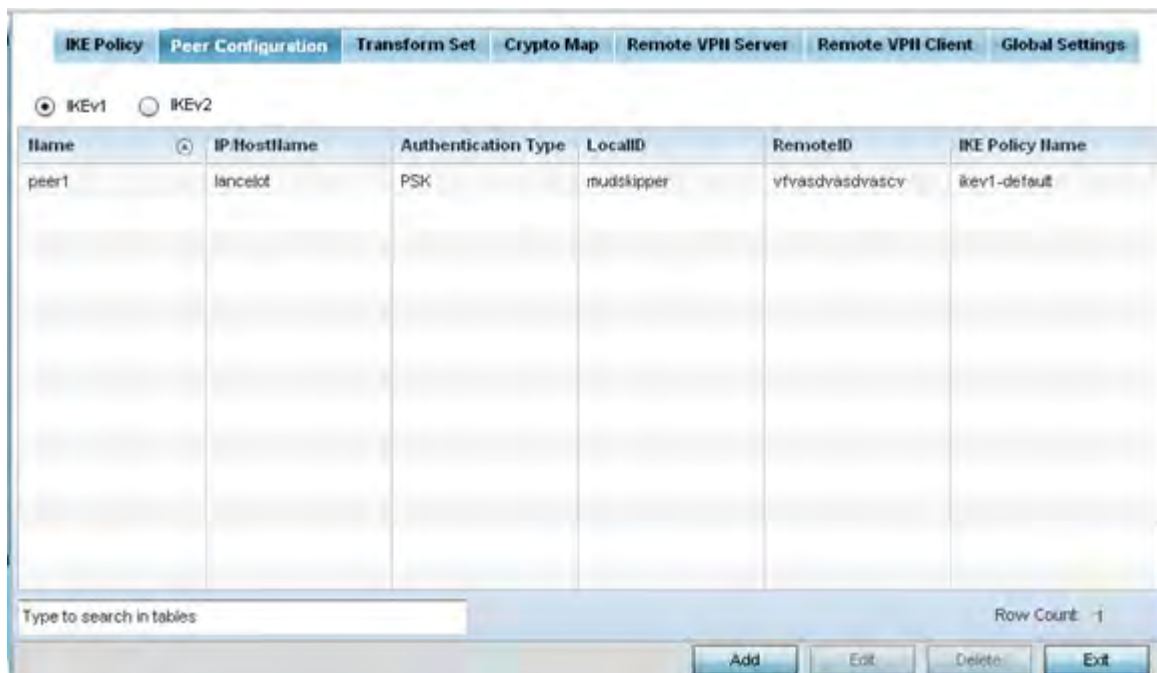
<b>Name</b>	If creating a new IKE policy, assign it a 32 character maximum name to help differentiate this IKE configuration from others with similar parameters.
<b>DPD Keep Alive</b>	Configure the IKE keep alive message interval used for dead peer detection on the remote end of the IPsec VPN tunnel. Set this value in either <i>Seconds</i> (10 - 3,600), <i>Minutes</i> (1 - 60) or <i>Hours</i> (1). The default setting is 30 seconds. This setting is required for both IKEv1 and IKEv2.
<b>Mode</b>	If using IKEv1, use the drop-down menu to define the IKE mode as either <i>Main</i> or <i>Aggressive</i> . IPSEC has two modes in IKEv1 for key exchanges. Aggressive mode requires 3 messages be exchanged between the IPSEC peers to setup the SA, Main requires 6 messages. The default setting is Main.
<b>DPD Retries</b>	Use the spinner control to set the maximum number of keep alive messages sent before a VPN tunnel connection is defined as dead. The available range is from 1 - 100. The default setting is 5.

<b>IKE LifeTime</b>	Set the lifetime defining how long a connection (encryption/authentication keys) should last from successful key negotiation to expiration. Set this value in either <i>Seconds</i> (600 - 86,400), <i>Minutes</i> (10 - 1,440), <i>Hours</i> (1 - 24) or <i>Days</i> (1). This setting is required for both IKEv1 and IKEv2.
---------------------	---

- 9 Select **+ Add Row** to define the network address of a target peer and its security settings.

<b>Name</b>	If creating a new IKE policy, assign the target peer (tunnel destination) a 32 character maximum name to distinguish it from others with a similar configuration.
<b>DH Group</b>	Use the drop-down menu to define a <i>Diffie-Hellman</i> (DH) identifier used by the VPN peers to derive a shared secret password without having to transmit. DH groups determine the strength of the key used in key exchanges. The higher the group number, the stronger and more secure the key. Options include 2, 5 and 14. The default setting is 5.
<b>Encryption</b>	Select an encryption method used by the tunnelled peers to securely interoperate. Options include <i>3DES</i> , <i>AES</i> , <i>AES-192</i> and <i>AES-256</i> . The default setting is AES-256.
<b>Authentication</b>	Select an authentication hash algorithm used by the peers to exchange credential information. Options include <i>SHA</i> , <i>SHA256</i> , <i>AES-XCBC-HMAC-128</i> and <i>MD5</i> . The default setting is SHA.

- 10 Select **OK** to save the changes made within the IKE Policy screen. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration. Select the **Delete Row** icon as needed to remove a peer configuration.
- 11 Select the **Peer Configuration** tab to assign additional network address and IKE settings to the an intended VPN tunnel peer destination.



**Figure 8-96** Profile Security - VPN Peer Destination screen (IKEv1 example)

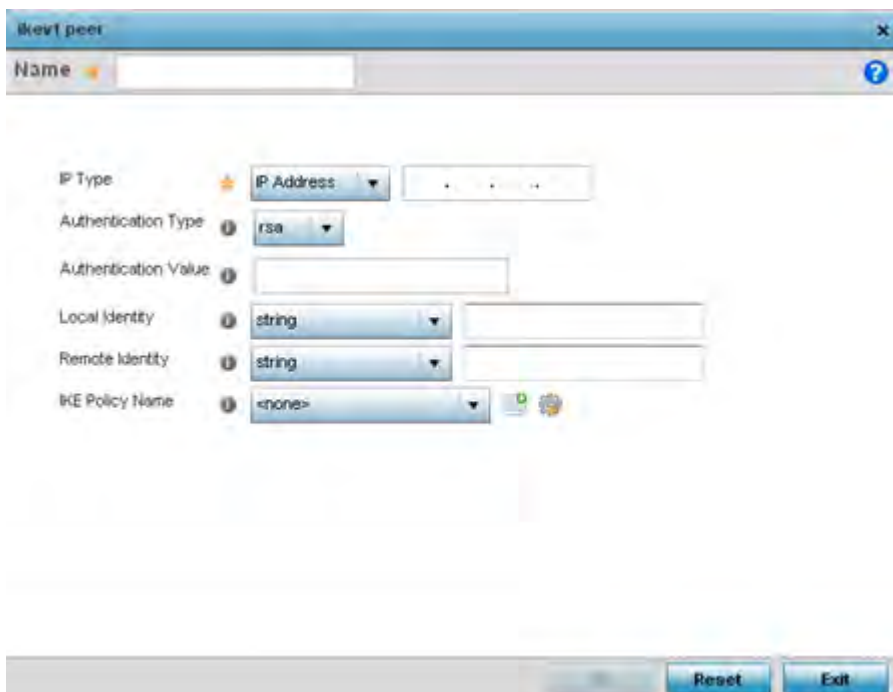
- 12 Select either the **IKEv1** or **IKEv2** radio button to enforce VPN key exchanges using either *IKEv1* or *IKEv2*.



13 Refer to the following to determine whether a new VPN **Peer Configuration** requires creation, an existing configuration requires modification or a configuration requires removal.

<b>Name</b>	Lists the 32 character maximum name assigned to each listed peer configuration upon creation.
<b>IP/Hostname</b>	Displays the IP address (or host address FQDN) of the IPsec VPN peer targeted for secure tunnel connection and data transfer.
<b>Authentication Type</b>	Lists whether the peer configuration has been defined to use <i>pre-shared key</i> (PSK) or RSA. <i>Rivest, Shamir, and Adleman</i> (RSA) is an algorithm for public key cryptography. It's the first algorithm known to be suitable for both signing and encryption. If using IKEv2, this screen displays both <i>local</i> and <i>remote</i> authentication, as both ends of the VPN connection require authentication.
<b>LocalID</b>	Lists the local identifier used within this peer configuration for an IKE exchange with the target VPN IPsec peer.
<b>RemoteID</b>	Displays the means the target remote peer is to be identified (string, FQDN etc.) within the VPN tunnel.
<b>IKE Policy Name</b>	Lists the IKEv1 or IKE v2 policy used with each listed peer configuration. If a policy requires creation, select the <i>Create</i> button.

14 Select **Add** to define a new peer configuration, **Edit** to modify an existing configuration or **Delete** to remove an existing peer configuration. The parameters that can be defined for the peer configuration vary depending on whether IKEv1 or IKEv2 was selected.

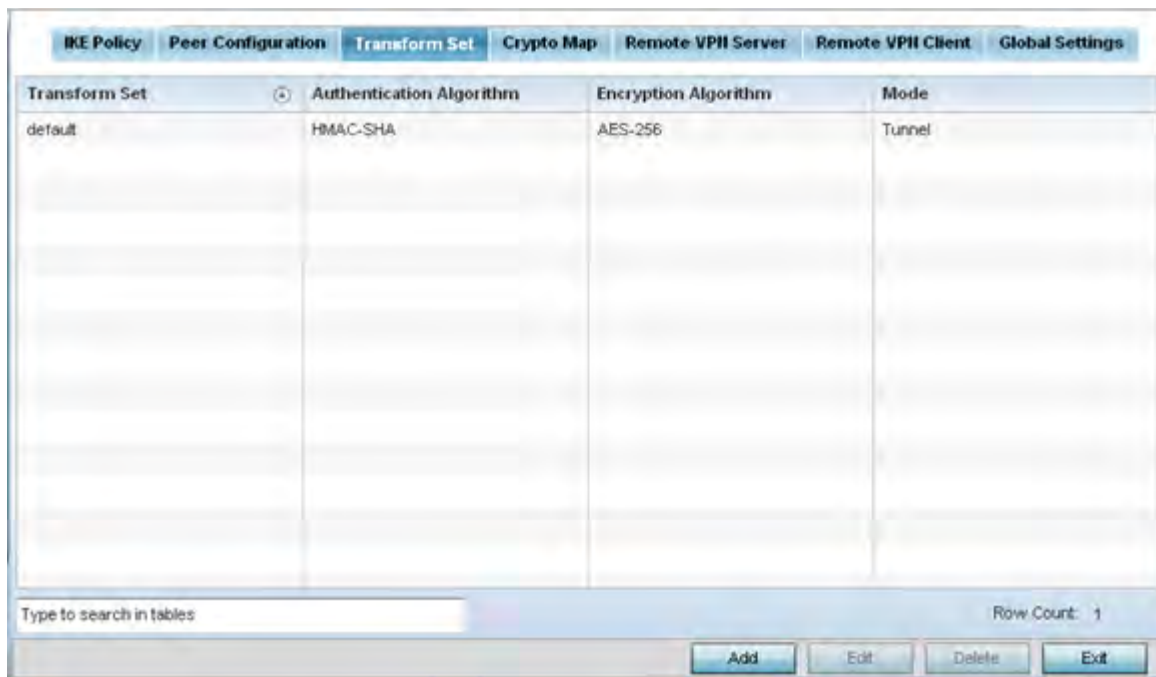


**Figure 8-97** Profile Security - VPN IKE Policy - Add IKE Peer screen

<b>Name</b>	If creating a new peer configuration (remote gateway) for VPN tunnel connection, assign it a 32 character maximum name to distinguish it from other with similar attributes.
-------------	--

<b>IP Type or Select IP/Hostname</b>	Enter either the <i>IP address</i> or <i>FQDN hostname</i> of the IPsec VPN peer used in the tunnel setup. If IKEv1 is used, this value is titled <i>IP Type</i> , if IKEv2 is used, this parameter is titled <i>Select IP/Hostname</i> . A Hostname cannot exceed 64 characters.
<b>Authentication Type</b>	Select either <i>pre-shared key (PSK)</i> or <i>RSA. Rivest, Shamir, and Adleman (RSA)</i> is an algorithm for public key cryptography. It's the first algorithm known to be suitable for signing and encryption. If using IKEv2, this screen displays both <i>local</i> and <i>remote</i> authentication options, as both ends of the VPN connection require authentication. RSA is the default value for both local and remote authentication (regardless of IKEv1 or IKEv2).
<b>Authentication Value</b>	Define the authentication string (shared secret) shared by both ends of the VPN tunnel connection. The string must be between 8 - 21 characters long. If using IKEv2, both a local and remote string must be specified for handshake validation at both ends (local and remote) of the VPN connection.
<b>Local Identity</b>	Select the local identifier used with this peer configuration for an IKE exchange with the target VPN IPsec peer. Options include <i>IP Address</i> , <i>Distinguished Name</i> , <i>FQDN</i> , <i>email</i> and <i>string</i> . The default setting is <i>string</i> .
<b>Remote Identity</b>	Select the remote identifier used with this peer configuration for an IKE exchange with the target VPN IPsec peer. Options include <i>IP Address</i> , <i>Distinguished Name</i> , <i>FQDN</i> , <i>email</i> and <i>string</i> . The default setting is <i>string</i> .
<b>IKE Policy Name</b>	Select the IKEv1 or IKE v2 policy name (and settings) to apply to this peer configuration. If a policy requires creation, select the <i>Create</i> icon.

- 15 Select **OK** to save the changes made within the peer configuration screen. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.
- 16 Select the **Transform Set** tab.  
Create or modify *Transform Set* configurations to specify how traffic is protected.

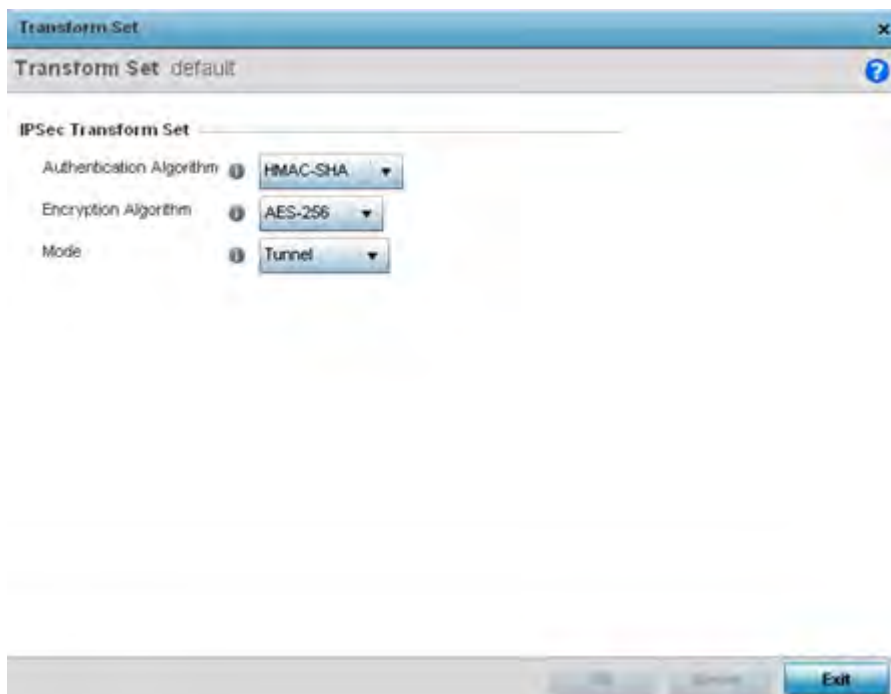


**Figure 8-98** Profile Security - VPN Transform Set screen

17 Review the following attributes of existing **Transform Set** configurations:

<b>Name</b>	Lists the 32 character maximum name assigned to each listed transform set upon creation. Again, a transform set is a combination of security protocols, algorithms and other settings applied to IPSec protected traffic.
<b>Authentication Algorithm</b>	Lists each transform sets's authentication scheme used to validate identity credentials. The authentication scheme is either <i>HMAC-SHA</i> or <i>HMAC-MD5</i> .
<b>Encryption Algorithm</b>	Displays each transform set's encryption method for protecting transmitted traffic.
<b>Mode</b>	Displays either <i>Tunnel</i> or <i>Transport</i> as the IPSec tunnel type used with the transform set. Tunnel is used for site-to-site VPN and Transport should be used for remote VPN deployments.

18 Select **Add** to define a new transform set configuration, **Edit** to modify an existing configuration or **Delete** to remove an existing transform set.



**Figure 8-99** Profile Security - VPN Transform Set create/modify screen

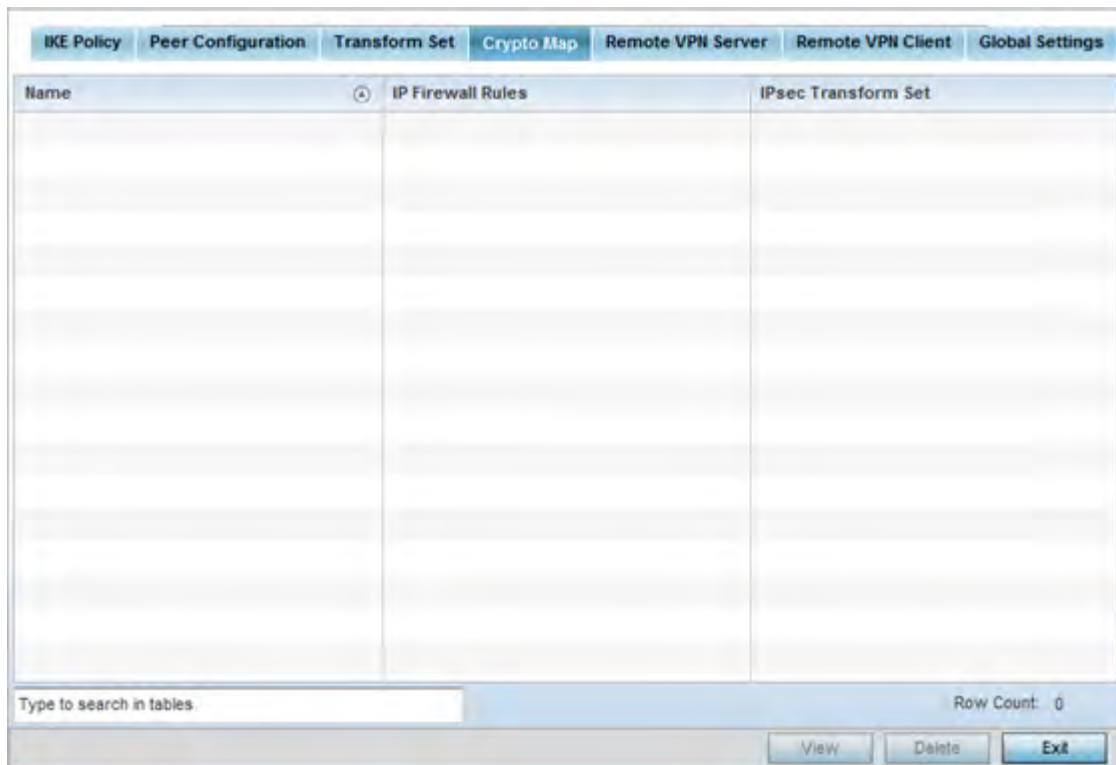
19 Define the following settings for the new or modified transform set configuration:

<b>Name</b>	If creating a new transform set, define a 32 character maximum name to differentiate this configuration from others with similar attributes.
<b>Authentication Algorithm</b>	Set the transform sets's authentication scheme used to validate identity credentials. Use the drop-down menu to select either <i>HMAC-SHA</i> or <i>HMAC-MD5</i> . The default setting is <i>HMAC-SHA</i> .
<b>Encryption Algorithm</b>	Set the transform set encryption method for protecting transmitted traffic. Options include <i>DES</i> , <i>3DES</i> , <i>AES</i> , <i>AES-192</i> and <i>AES-256</i> . The default setting is <i>AES-256</i> .
<b>Mode</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select either <i>Tunnel</i> or <i>Transport</i> as the IPSec tunnel type used with the transform set. <i>Tunnel</i> is used for site-to-site VPN and <i>Transport</i> should be used for remote VPN deployments.

20 Select **OK** to save the changes made within the Transform Set screen. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

21 Select the **Crypto Map** tab.

Use crypto maps (as applied to IPSec VPN) to combine the elements used to create IPSec SAs (including transform sets).



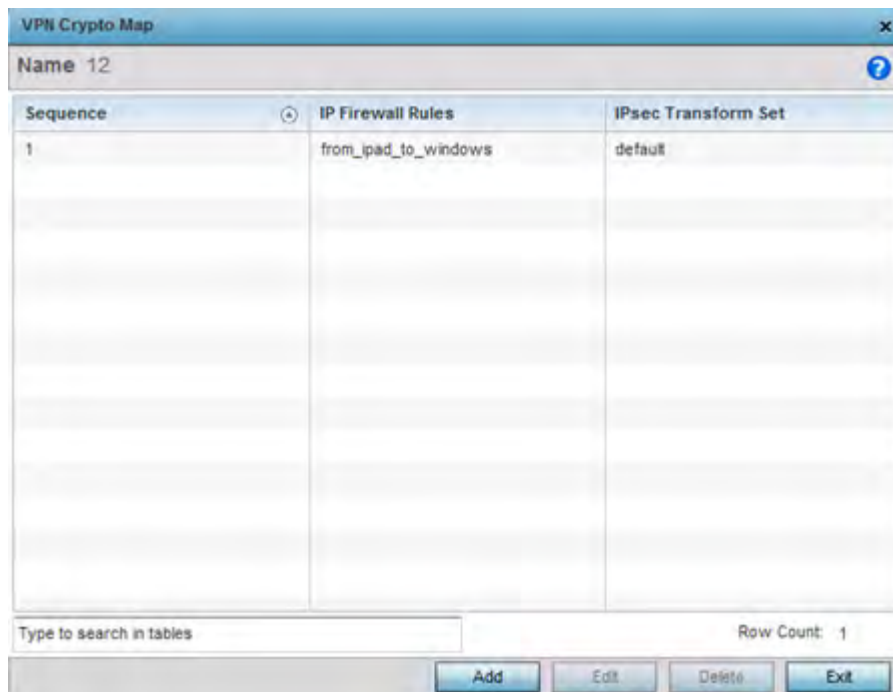
**Figure 8-100** Profile Security - VPN Crypto Map screen

22 Review the following **Crypto Map** configuration parameters to assess their relevance:

<b>Name</b>	Lists the 32 character maximum name assigned for each crypto map upon creation. This name cannot be modified as part of the edit process.
<b>IP Firewall Rules</b>	Lists the IP firewall rules defined for each displayed crypto map configuration. Each firewall policy contains a unique set of access/deny permissions applied to the VPN tunnel and its peer connection.
<b>IPSec Transform Set</b>	Displays the transform set (encryption and has algorithms) applied to each listed crypto map configuration. Thus, each crypto map can be customized with its own data protection and peer authentication schemes.

23 If requiring a new crypto map configuration, select the **Add** button. If updating the configuration of an existing crypto map, select it from amongst those available and select the **Edit** button.

24 If adding a new crypto map, assign it a name up to 32 characters in length as a unique identifier. Select the **Continue** button to proceed to the **VPN Crypto Map** screen.

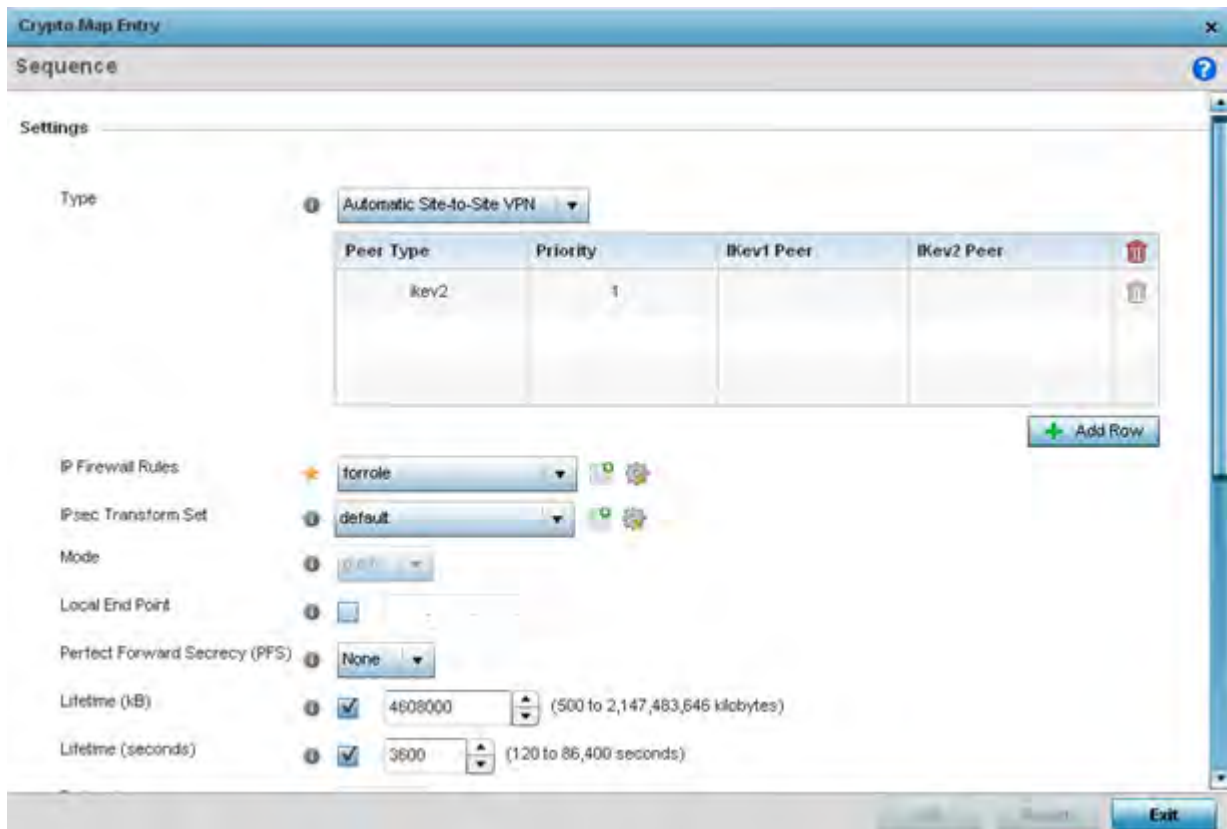


**Figure 8-101** Profile Security - VPN Crypto Map Add / Edit screen

25 Review the following before determining whether to add or modify a crypto map configuration.

<b>Sequence</b>	Each crypto map configuration uses a list of entries based on a sequence number. Specifying multiple sequence numbers within the same crypto map, provides the flexibility to connect to multiple peers from the same interface, based on the sequence number (from 1 - 1,000).
<b>IP Firewall Rules</b>	Lists the IP firewall rules defined for each displayed crypto map configuration. Each firewall policy contains a unique set of access/deny permissions applied to the VPN tunnel and its peer connection.
<b>IPSec Transform Set</b>	Displays the transform set (encryption and hash algorithms) applied to each listed crypto map configuration. Thus, each crypto map can be customized with its own data protection and peer authentication schemes.

26 If requiring a new crypto map configuration, select the **Add** button. If updating the configuration of an existing crypto map, select it from amongst those available and select the **Edit** button.



**Figure 8-102** Profile Security - VPN Crypto Map Entry screen

27 Define the following **Settings** to set the crypto map configuration:

<b>Sequence</b>	Each crypto map configuration uses a list of entries based on a sequence number. Specifying multiple sequence numbers within the same crypto map extends connection flexibility to multiple peers on the same interface, based on this selected sequence number (from 1 - 1,000).
<b>Type</b>	Define the <i>site-to-site-manual</i> , <i>site-to-site-auto</i> or <i>remote VPN</i> configuration defined for each listed crypto map configuration.
<b>IP Firewall Rules</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the ACL used to protect IPsec VPN traffic. New access/deny rules can be defined for the crypto map by selecting the <i>Create</i> icon, or an existing set of firewall rules can be modified by selecting the <i>Edit</i> icon.
<b>IPsec Transform Set</b>	Select the transform set (encryption and hash algorithms) to apply to this crypto map configuration.
<b>Mode</b>	Use the drop-down menu to define which mode ( <i>pull</i> or <i>push</i> ) is used to assign a virtual IP. This setting is relevant for IKEv1 only, since IKEv2 always uses the configuration payload in pull mode. The default setting is push.
<b>Local End Point</b>	Select this radio button to define an IP address as a local tunnel end point address. This setting represents an alternative to an interface IP address.

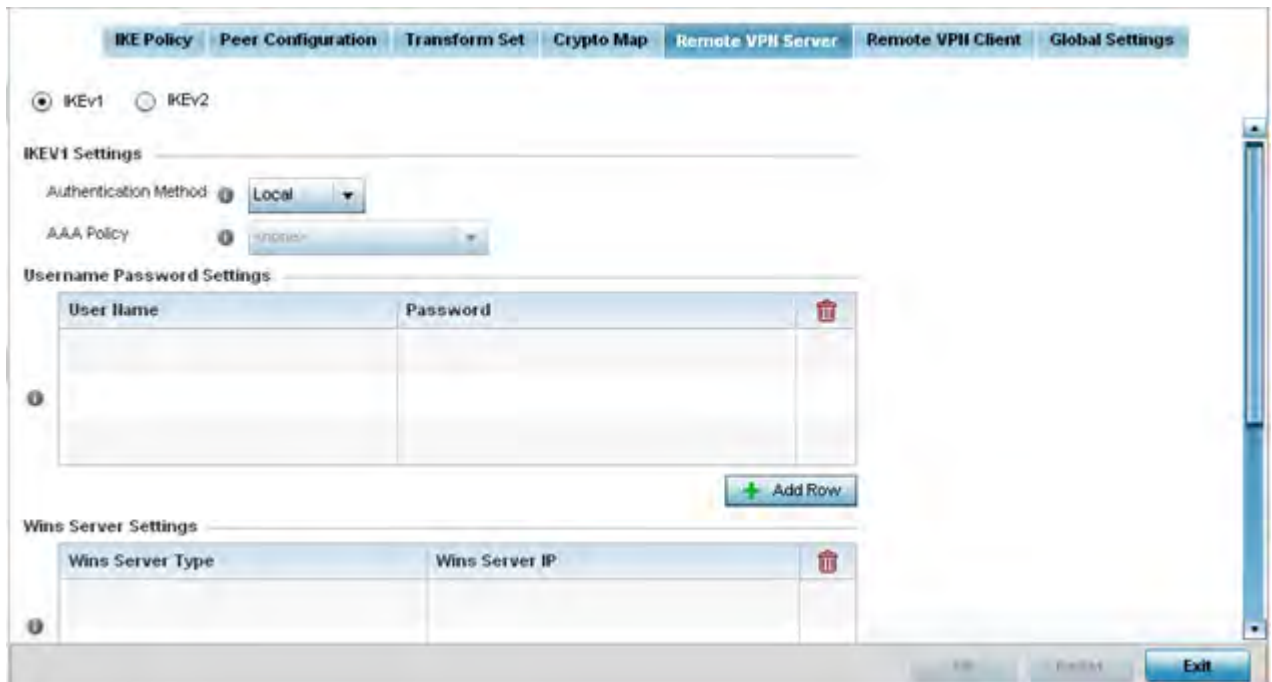


<b>Perfect Forward Secrecy (PFS)</b>	PFS is key-establishment protocol, used to secure VPN communications. If one encryption key is compromised, only data encrypted by that specific key is compromised. For PFS to exist, the key used to protect data transmissions must <i>not</i> be used to derive any additional keys. Options include <i>None</i> , <i>2</i> , <i>5</i> and <i>14</i> . The default setting is <i>None</i> .
<b>Lifetime (kB)</b>	Select this option to define a connection volume lifetime (in kilobytes) for the duration of an IPSec VPN security association. Once the set volume is exceeded, the association is timed out. Use the spinner control to set the volume from 500 - 2,147,483,646 kilobytes.
<b>Lifetime (seconds)</b>	Select this option to define a lifetime (in seconds) for the duration of an IPSec VPN security association. Once the set value is exceeded, the association is timed out. The available range is from 120 - 86,400 seconds. The default setting is 120 seconds.
<b>Protocol</b>	Select the security protocol used with the VPN IPSec tunnel connection. SAs are unidirectional, existing in each direction and established per security protocol. Options include <i>ESP</i> and <i>AH</i> . The default setting is <i>ESP</i> .
<b>Remote VPN Type</b>	Define the remote VPN type as either <i>None</i> or <i>XAuth</i> . <i>XAuth</i> (extended authentication) provides additional authentication validation by permitting an edge device to request extended authentication information from an IPSec host. This forces the host to respond with additional authentication credentials. The edge device responds with a failed or passed message. The default setting is <i>XAuth</i> .
<b>Manual Peer IP</b>	Select this option to define the IP address of an additional encryption/decryption peer.
<b>Time Out</b>	Set an IPSec <i>security association</i> (SA) timeout in either <i>Seconds</i> (120 - 86,400), <i>Minutes</i> (2 - 1,440), <i>Hours</i> (1 - 24) or <i>Days</i> (1). The default setting is 15 minutes.
<b>Enable NAT after IPSec</b>	Enable this setting to utilize IP/Port NAT on the VPN tunnel. This setting is disabled by default.

28 Select **OK** to save the updates made to the Crypto Map Entry screen. Selecting **Reset** reverts the screen to its last saved setting.

29 Select **Remote VPN Server**.

Use this screen to define the server resources used to secure (authenticate) a remote VPN connection with a target peer.



**Figure 8-103** Profile Security - Remote VPN Server screen (IKEv1 example)

30 Select either the **IKEv1** or **IKEv2** radio button to enforce peer key exchanges over the remote VPN server using either IKEv1 or IKEv2.

IKEv2 provides improvements from the original IKEv1 design (improved cryptographic mechanisms, NAT and firewall traversal, attack resistance etc.) and is recommended in most deployments. The appearance of the screen differs depending on the selected IKEv1 or IKEv2 mode.

31 Set the following **IKEv1** or **IKEv2 Settings**:

<b>Authentication Method</b>	Use the drop-down menu to specify the authentication method used to validate the credentials of the remote VPN client. Options include <i>Local</i> (on board RADIUS resource if supported) and <i>RADIUS</i> (designated external RADIUS resource). If selecting Local, select the <i>+ Add Row</i> button and specify a <i>User Name</i> and <i>Password</i> for authenticating remote VPN client connections with the local RADIUS resource. The default setting is Local. AP6521 model Access Point does not have a local RADIUS resource and must use an external RADIUS server resource.
<b>AAA Policy</b>	Select the AAA policy used with the remote VPN client. AAA policies define RADIUS authentication and accounting parameters. The Access Point can optionally use AAA server resources (when using RADIUS as the authentication method) to provide user database and authentication data.

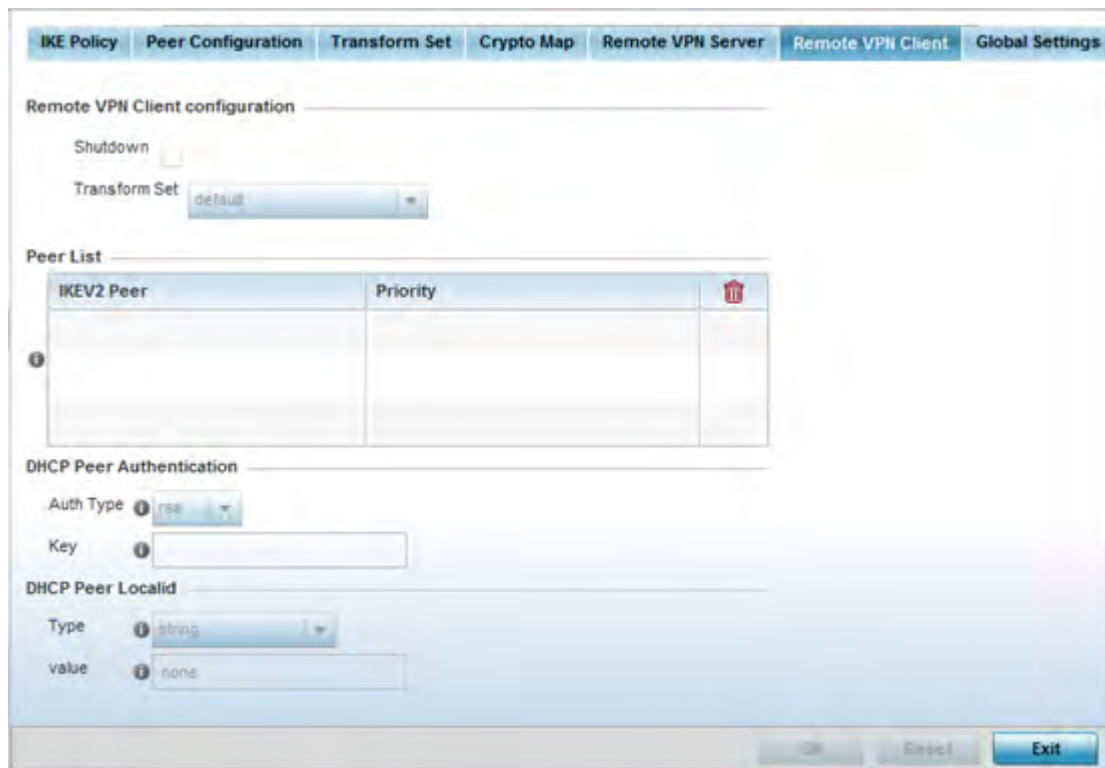
32 Refer to the **Username Password Settings** field and specify local user database user name and password credentials required for user validation when conducting authentication locally.

33 Refer to the **Wins Server Settings** field and specify *primary* and *secondary* server resources for validating RADIUS authentication requests on behalf of a remote VPN client. These external WINS server resources are available to validate RADIUS resource requests.

- 34 Refer to the **Name Server Settings** field and specify *primary* and *secondary* server resources for validating RADIUS authentication requests on behalf of a remote VPN client. These external name server resources are available to validate RADIUS resource requests.
- 35 Select the **IP Local Pool** option to define an IP address and mask for a virtual IP pool used to IP addresses to remote VPN clients.
- 36 If using IKEv2, specify these additional DHCP settings (required for IKEv2 only):

<b>DHCP Server Type</b>	Specify whether the DHCP server is specified as an <i>IP address</i> , <i>Hostname (FQDN)</i> or <i>None</i> (a different classification will be defined). <i>Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP)</i> allows hosts on an IP network to request and be assigned IP addresses and discover information about the network where they reside.
<b>DHCP Server</b>	Depending on the DHCP server type selected, enter either the numerical IP address, hostname or other (if None is selected as the server type). A Hostname cannot exceed 64 characters.
<b>IP Local Pool</b>	Define an IP address and mask for a virtual IP pool used to assign IP addresses to requesting remote VPN clients.
<b>Relay Agent IP Address</b>	Select this option to define a DHCP relay agent IP address. DHCP relays exchange messages between a DHCPv6 server and client. A client and relay agent exist on the same link. When A DHCP request is received from the client, the relay agent creates a relay forward message and sends it to a specified server address. If no addresses are specified, the relay agent forwards the message to all DHCP server relay multicast addresses. The server creates a relay reply and sends it back to the relay agent. The relay agent then sends back the response to the client.

- 37 Select **OK** to save the updates made to the Remote VPN Server screen. Selecting **Reset** reverts the screen to its last saved configuration.
- 38 Select the **Remote VPN Client** tab.



**Figure 8-104** Profile Security - Remote VPN Client screen

39 Set the following **Remote VPN Client configuration** settings:

<b>Shutdown</b>	Select this option to shutdown the remote VPN client.
<b>Transform Set</b>	Select the transform set configuration to apply to remote client VPN connections. A transform set is a combination of security protocols, algorithms and other settings applied to IPSec protected client traffic.

40 Refer to the **Peer List** to select IKEV2 peer configurations and assign them priorities for utilization with Remote VPN client connections.

IKEv2 uses an initial handshake in which VPN peers negotiate cryptographic algorithms, mutually authenticate, and establish a session key, creating an IKE-SA. Additionally, a first IPsec SA is established during the initial SA creation. All IKEv2 messages are request/response pairs. It is the responsibility of the side sending the request to retransmit if it does not receive a timely response.

41 Set the following **DHCP Peer Authentication** settings:

<b>Auth Type</b>	Use the drop-down menu to specify the DHCP peer authentication type. Options include <i>PSK</i> and <i>rsa</i> . The default setting is <i>rsa</i> .
<b>Key</b>	Provide a 8 - 21 character shared key password for DHCP peer authentication.

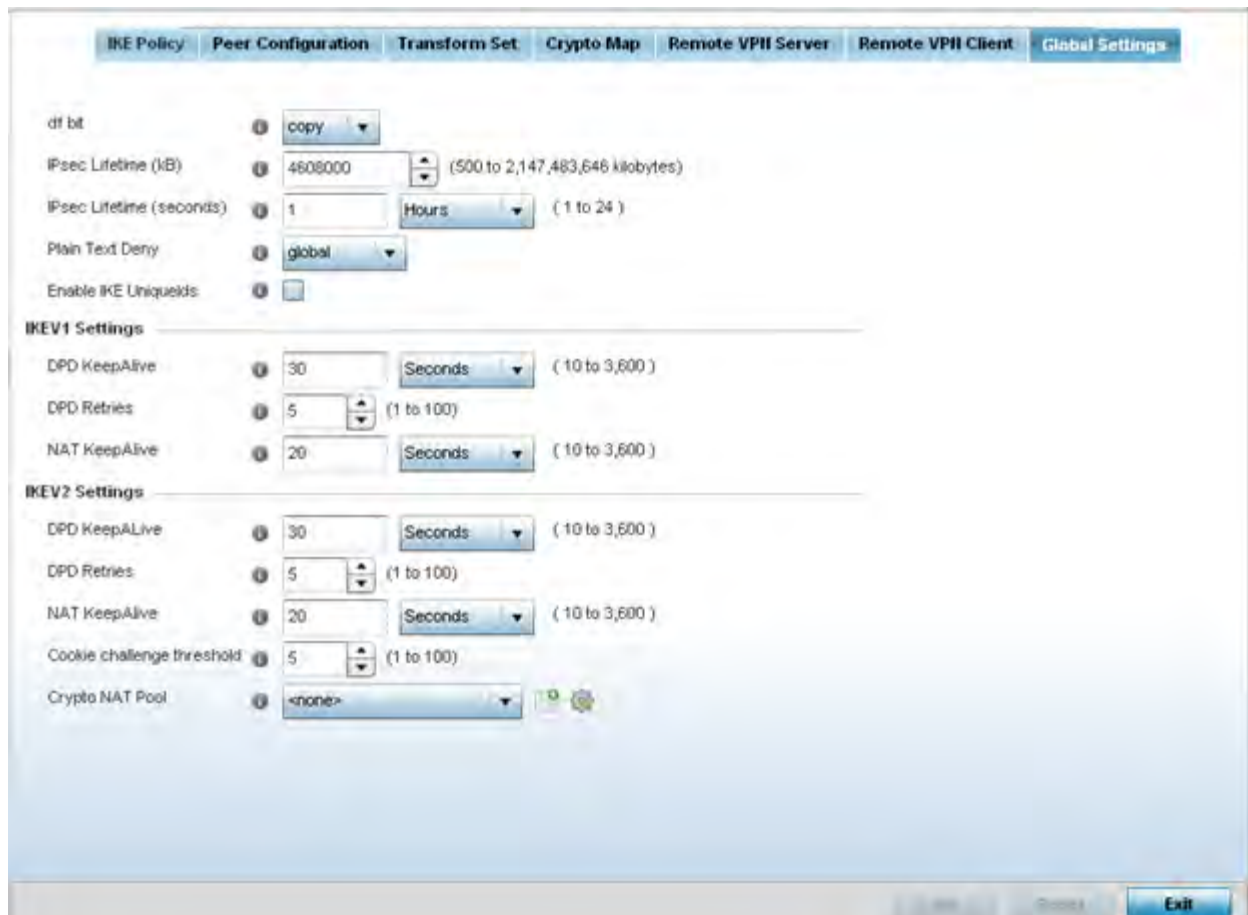
42 Set the following **DHCP Peer Localid** settings:

<b>Type</b>	Select the DHCP peer local ID type. Options include <i>string</i> and <i>autogen-uniqueid</i> . The default setting is <i>string</i> .
<b>value</b>	Set the DHCP peer local ID. The ID cannot exceed 128 characters.

43 Select **OK** to save the updates made to the Remote VPN Client screen. Selecting **Reset** reverts the screen to its last saved configuration.

44 Select the **Global Settings** tab.

The Global Settings screen provides options for *Dead Peer Detection* (DPD). DPD represents the actions taken upon the detection of a dead peer within the IPSec VPN tunnel connection.



**Figure 8-105** Profile Security - Global VPN Settings screen

45 Define the following **IPSec Global** settings:

<b>df bit</b>	Select the DF bit handling technique used for the ESP encapsulating header. Options include <i>Clear</i> , <i>set</i> and <i>copy</i> . The default setting is Copy.
<b>IPsec Lifetime (kB)</b>	Set a connection volume lifetime (in kilobytes) for the duration of an IPSec VPN security association. Once the set volume is exceeded, the association is timed out. Use the spinner control to set the volume from 500 - 2,147,483,646 kilobytes. The default settings is 4,608,000 kilobytes.
<b>IPsec Lifetime (seconds)</b>	Set a lifetime (in seconds) for the duration of an IPSec VPN security association. Once the set value is exceeded, the association is timed out. The available range either <i>Seconds</i> (120 - 86,400), <i>Minutes</i> (2 - 1,440), <i>Hours</i> (1 - 24) or <i>Days</i> (1). The default setting is 3,600 seconds.
<b>Plain Text Deny</b>	Select <i>global</i> or <i>interface</i> to set the scope of the ACL. The default setting is global, expanding the rules of the ACL beyond just the interface.

<b>Enable IKE Uniquelds</b>	Select this option to initiate a unique ID check. This setting is disabled by default.
-----------------------------	--

46 Set the following **IKEV1 Settings**:

<b>DPD KeepAlive</b>	Define the interval (or frequency) for IKE keep alive messages for dead peer detection. Options include <i>Seconds</i> (10 - 3,600), <i>Minutes</i> (1 - 60) and <i>Hours</i> (1). The default setting is 30 seconds.
<b>DPD Retries</b>	Use the spinner control to define the number of keep alive messages sent to an IPSec VPN client before the tunnel connection is defined as dead. The available range is from 1 - 100. The default number of messages is 5.
<b>NAT KeepAlive</b>	Define the interval (or frequency) for NAT keep alive messages for dead peer detection. Options include <i>Seconds</i> (10 - 3,600), <i>Minutes</i> (1 - 60) and <i>Hours</i> (1). The default setting is 20 seconds.

47 Set the following **IKEV2 Settings**:

<b>DPD KeepAlive</b>	Define the interval (or frequency) for IKE keep alive messages for dead peer detection. Options include <i>Seconds</i> (10 - 3,600), <i>Minutes</i> (1 - 60) and <i>Hours</i> (1). The default setting is 30 seconds.
<b>DPD Retries</b>	Use the spinner control to define the number of keep alive messages sent to an IPSec VPN client before the tunnel connection is defined as dead. The available range is from 1 - 100. The default number of messages is 5.
<b>NAT KeepAlive</b>	Define the interval (or frequency) for NAT keep alive messages for dead peer detection. Options include <i>Seconds</i> (10 - 3,600), <i>Minutes</i> (1 - 60) and <i>Hours</i> (1). The default setting is 20 seconds.
<b>Cookie Challenge Threshold</b>	Use the spinner control to define the number of half open IKE <i>security associations</i> (SAs) (from 1 - 100) that, when exceeded, enables the cookie challenge mechanism. The is setting applies exclusively to IKEV2. The default setting is 5.
<b>Crypto NAT Pool</b>	Select the NAT pool used for internal source NAT on IPSec tunnels. NAT is used as an IP masquerading technique to hide private IP addresses behind a single, public facing, IP address.

48 Select **OK** to save the updates made to the screen. Selecting **Reset** reverts the screen to its last saved configuration.

## 8.9.5 Setting the Profile's Auto IPSec Tunnel Configuration

### ► Profile Security Configuration

Auto IPSec tunneling provides a secure tunnel between two networked peer controllers or service platforms and associated Access Points. Administrators can define which packets are sent within the tunnel, and how they're protected. When a tunnelled peer sees a sensitive packet, it creates a secure tunnel and sends the packet through the tunnel to its remote peer destination or associated Access Point.

Tunnels are sets of *security associations* (SA) between two peers. SAs define the protocols and algorithms applied to sensitive packets and specify the keying mechanisms used by tunnelled peers. SAs are unidirectional and exist in both the inbound and outbound direction. SAs are established per the rules and conditions of defined security protocols (*AH* or *ESP*).

*Internet Key Exchange* (IKE) protocol is a key management protocol standard used in conjunction with IPsec. IKE enhances IPsec by providing additional features, flexibility, and configuration simplicity for the IPsec standard. IKE enables secure communications without time consuming manual pre-configuration for auto IPsec tunneling.

To define an Auto IPsec Tunnel configuration that can be applied to a profile:

- 1 Select the **Configuration** tab from the Web UI
- 2 Select **Profiles** from the Configuration tab.
- 3 Select **Manage Profiles** from the Configuration > Profiles menu.
- 4 Select **Security**.
- 5 Select **Auto IPsec Tunnel**.

**Figure 8-106** Security Auto IPsec Tunnel screen

- 6 The **Auto IPsec Tunnel** screen displays by default. Refer to the **Settings** field to set an Auto IPsec Tunnel configuration for use with this profile.

<b>Group ID</b>	Define a 1 - 64 character group identifier for an IKE exchange supporting auto IPsec tunnel secure peers.
<b>Authentication Type</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select either RSA or PSK (Pre Shared Key) as the authentication type for secure peer authentication on the auto IPsec secure tunnel. <i>Rivest, Shamir, and Adleman</i> (RSA) is an algorithm for public key cryptography. It's the first algorithm known to be suitable for signing, as well as encryption. The default setting is RSA.
<b>Authentication Key</b>	Enter the 8 - 21 character shared key (password) used for auto IPsec tunnel secure peer authentication.
<b>IKE Version</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the IKE version used for auto IPsec tunnel secure authentication with the IPsec gateway.
<b>Enable NAT after IPsec</b>	Select this option to enable internal source port NAT on the auto IPsec secure tunnel.
<b>Use Unique ID</b>	Select this option to use a unique ID with auto IPsec secure authentication for the IPsec remote gateway (appending the MiNT ID). This setting is disabled by default.



<b>Re-Authentication</b>	Select this option to re-authenticate the key on an IKE rekey. This setting is enabled by default.
<b>IKE Lifetime</b>	Set a lifetime in either <i>Seconds</i> (600 - 86,400), <i>Minutes</i> (10 - 1,440), <i>Hours</i> (1 - 24) or <i>Days</i> (1) for IKE security association duration. The default is 8600 seconds.

- 7 Select **OK** to save the changes made to the auto IPSec tunnel configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 8.9.6 Setting the Profile's NAT Configuration

### ► Profile Security Configuration

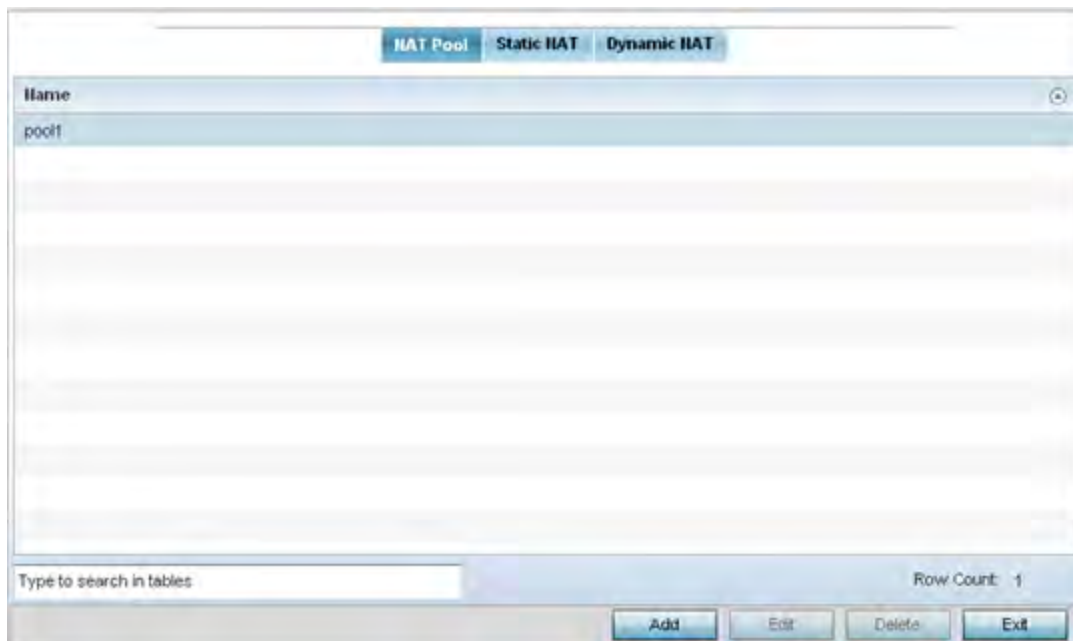
*Network Address Translation* (NAT) is a technique to modify network address information within IP packet headers in transit across a traffic routing device. This enables mapping one IP address to another to protect network address credentials. With typical deployments, NAT is used as an IP masquerading technique to hide private IP addresses behind a single, public facing, IP address.

NAT is a process of modifying network address information in IP packet headers while in transit across a traffic routing device for the purpose of remapping one IP address to another. In most deployments NAT is used in conjunction with IP masquerading which hides RFC1918 private IP addresses behind a single public IP address.

NAT can provide an profile outbound Internet access to wired and wireless hosts connected to either an Access Point or a wireless controller. Many-to-one NAT is the most common NAT technique for outbound Internet access. Many-to-one NAT allows an Access Point or wireless controller to translate one or more internal private IP addresses to a single, public facing, IP address assigned to a 10/100/1000 Ethernet port or 3G card.

To define a NAT configuration that can be applied to a profile:

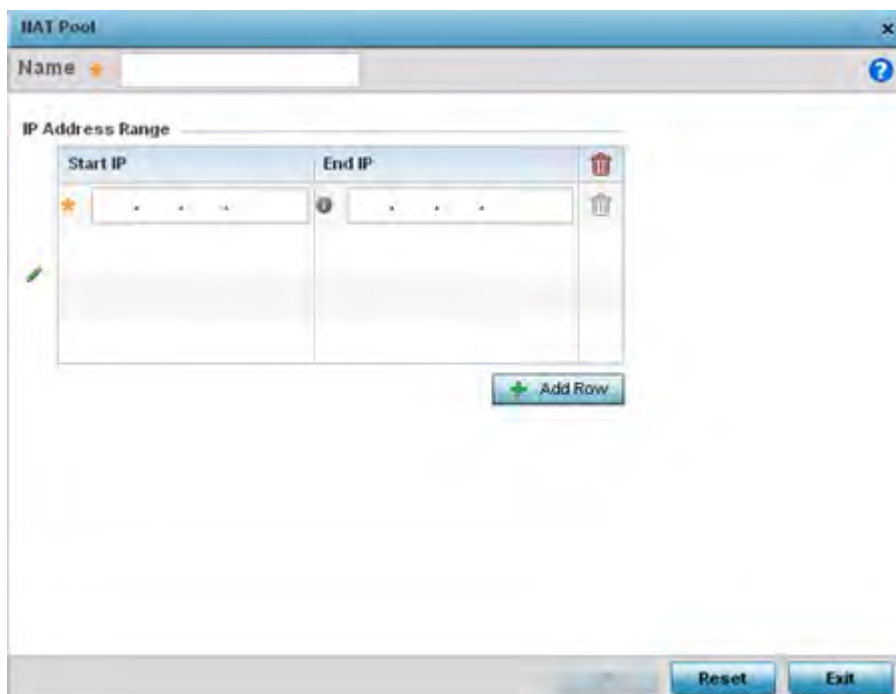
- 1 Select the Configuration tab from the Web UI
- 2 Select **Profiles** from the Configuration tab.
- 3 Select **Manage Profiles** from the Configuration > Profiles menu.
- 4 Select **Security**.
- 5 Select **NAT**.



**Figure 8-107** Security NAT screen - NAT Pool tab

The **NAT Pool** displays by default. The NAT Pool screen lists those NAT policies created thus far. Any of these policies can be selected and applied to a profile.

- 6 Select **Add** to create a new NAT policy that can be applied to a profile. Select **Edit** to modify the attributes of an existing policy or select **Delete** to remove obsolete NAT policies from the list of those available to a profile.



**Figure 8-108** Security NAT Pool screen

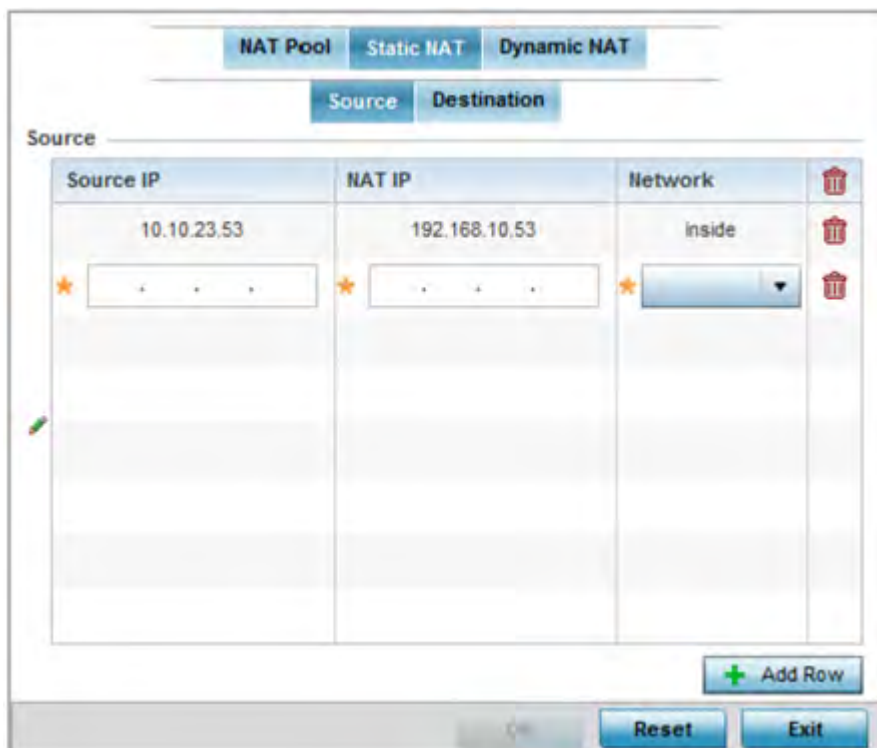
- 7 If adding a new NAT policy or editing the configuration of an existing policy, define the following parameters:

<b>Name</b>	If adding a new NAT policy, provide a name to help distinguish it from others with similar configurations. The length cannot exceed 64 characters.
<b>IP Address Range</b>	Define a range of IP addresses hidden from the public Internet. NAT modifies network address information in the defined IP range while in transit across a traffic routing device. NAT only provides IP address translation and does not provide a firewall. A branch deployment with NAT by itself will not block traffic from being potentially routed through a NAT device. Consequently, NAT should be deployed with a stateful firewall.

- 8 Select the **+ Add Row** button as needed to append additional rows to the IP Address Range table.
- 9 Select **OK** to save the changes made to the profile's NAT Pool configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.
- 10 Select the **Static NAT** tab.

The **Source** tab displays by default and lists existing static NAT configurations. Existing static NAT configurations are not editable, but new configurations can be added or existing ones deleted as they become obsolete.

*Static* NAT creates a permanent, one-to-one mapping between an address on an internal network and a perimeter or external network. To share a Web server on a perimeter interface with the Internet, use static address translation to map the actual address to a registered IP address. Static address translation hides the actual address of the server from users on insecure interfaces. Casual access by unauthorized users becomes much more difficult. Static NAT requires a dedicated address on the outside network for each host.

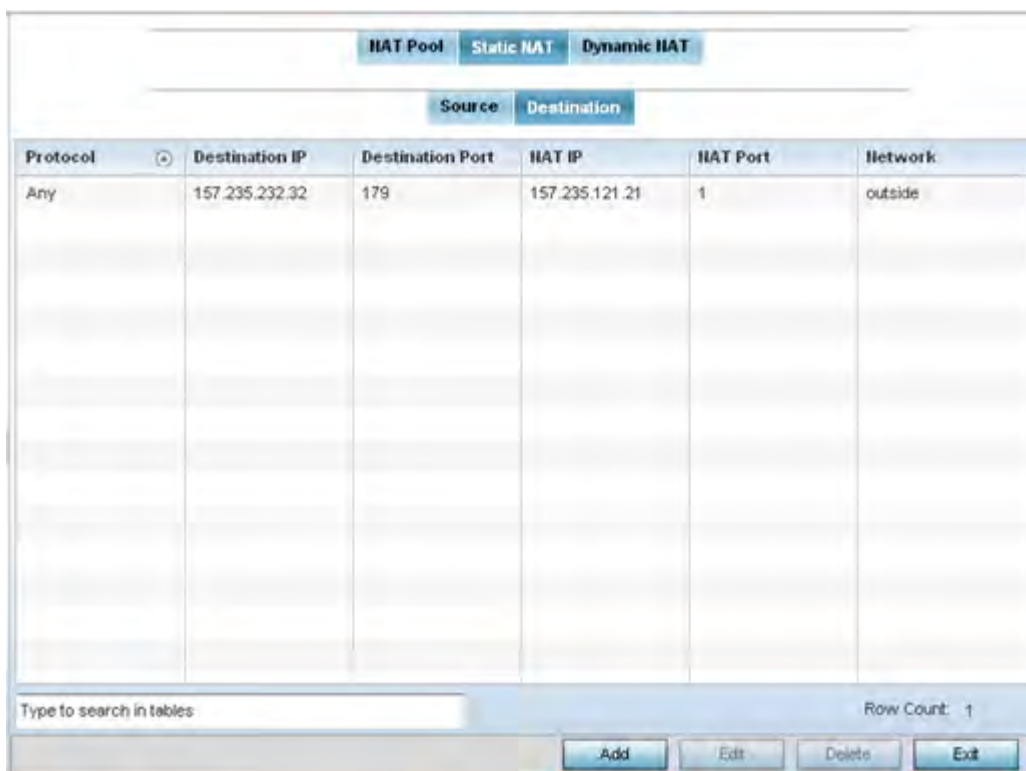


**Figure 8-109** *Static NAT screen*

- 11 Select **+ Add Row** to create a new static NAT configuration. Existing NAT source configurations are not editable.
- 12 Set or override the following **Source** configuration parameters:

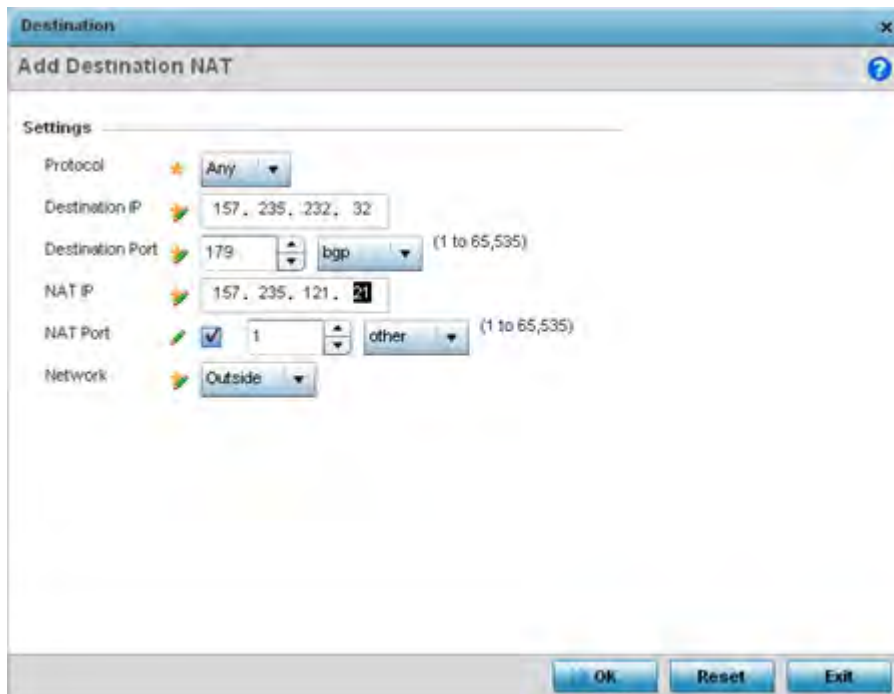
<b>Source IP</b>	Enter the local address used at the origination of the static NAT configuration. This address (once translated) is not exposed to the outside world when the translation address is used to interact with the remote destination.
<b>NAT IP</b>	Enter the IP address of the matching packet to the specified value. The IP address modified can be either source or destination based on the direction specified.
<b>Network</b>	Select <i>Inside</i> or <i>Outside</i> NAT as the network direction. Select <i>Inside</i> to create a permanent, one-to-one mapping between an address on an internal network and a perimeter or external network. To share a Web server on a perimeter interface with the Internet, use static address translation to map the actual address to a registered IP address. Static address translation hides the actual address of the server from users on insecure interfaces. Casual access by unauthorized users becomes much more difficult. Static NAT requires a dedicated address on the outside network for each host. Inside NAT is the default setting. Inside is the default setting.

- 13 Select the **Destination** tab to view destination NAT configurations and ensure packets passing through the NAT back to the managed LAN are searched against the records kept by the NAT engine. The destination IP address is changed back to the specific internal private class IP address to reach the LAN over the network.



**Figure 8-110** NAT Destination screen

- 14 Select **Add** to create a new NAT destination configuration. Existing NAT destination configurations are not editable.



**Figure 8-111** NAT Destination Add screen

15 Set the following **Destination** configuration parameters:

<b>Protocol</b>	Select the protocol for use with static translation. <i>TCP</i> , <i>UDP</i> and <i>Any</i> are available options. TCP is a transport layer protocol used by applications requiring guaranteed delivery. It's a sliding window protocol handling both timeouts and retransmissions. TCP establishes a full duplex virtual connection between two endpoints. Each endpoint is defined by an IP address and a TCP port number. The <i>User Datagram Protocol</i> (UDP) offers only a minimal transport service, non-guaranteed datagram delivery, and provides applications direct access to the datagram service of the IP layer. UDP is used by applications not requiring the level of service of TCP or are using communications services (multicast or broadcast delivery) not available from TCP. The default setting is <i>Any</i> .
<b>Destination IP</b>	Enter the local address used at the (source) end of the static NAT configuration. This address (once translated) is not be exposed to the outside world when the translation address is used to interact with the remote destination.
<b>Destination Port</b>	Use the spinner control to set the local port used at the (source) end of the static NAT configuration. The default port is 1.
<b>NAT IP</b>	Enter the IP address of the matching packet to the specified value. The IP address modified can be either <i>source</i> or <i>destination</i> based on the direction specified.
<b>NAT Port</b>	Set the port number of the matching packet to the specified value. This option is valid only if the direction specified is destination.
<b>Network</b>	Select <i>Inside</i> or <i>Outside</i> NAT as the network direction. <i>Inside</i> is the default setting.

16 Select **OK** to save the changes made to the static NAT configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

17 Select the **Dynamic NAT** tab.

Dynamic NAT translates the IP address of packets from one interface to another interface based on configured conditions. Dynamic NAT requires packets be switched through a NAT router to generate translations in the translation table.

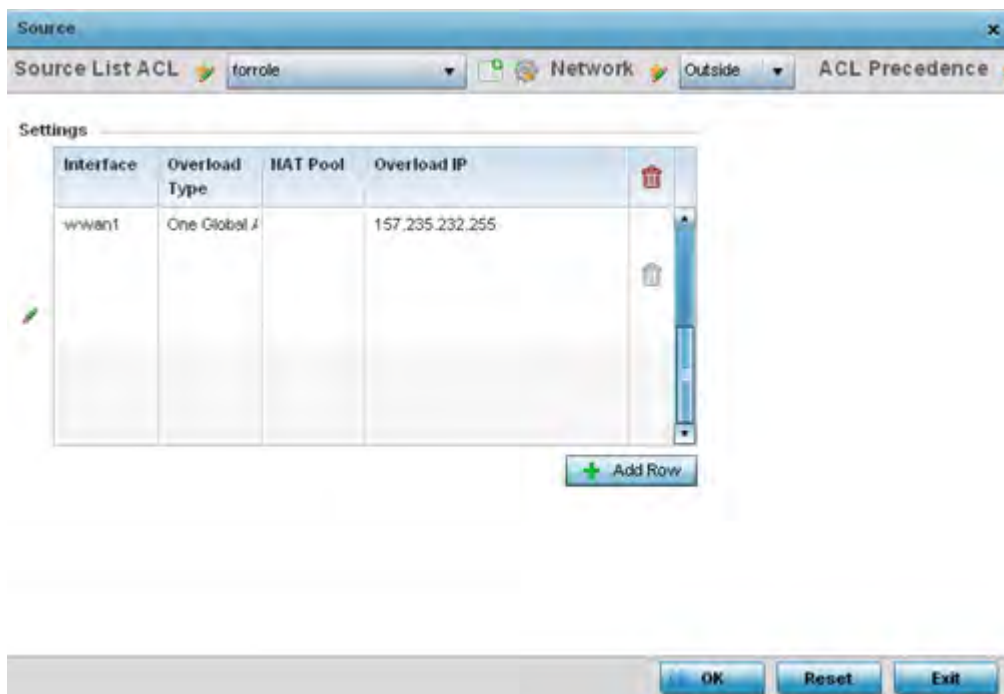
Source List ACL	Network	Interface	Overload Type	NAT Pool	Overload IP	ACL Precedence
forrole	outside	vwan1	One Global Address		157.235.232.255	1

**Figure 8-112** Dynamic NAT screen

## 18 Refer to the following to determine whether a new Dynamic NAT configuration requires creation, edit or deletion:

<b>Source List ACL</b>	Lists an ACL name to define the packet selection criteria for the NAT configuration. NAT is applied only on packets which match a rule defined in the access list. These addresses (once translated) are not exposed to the outside world when the translation address is used to interact with the remote destination.
<b>Network</b>	Displays <i>Inside</i> or <i>Outside</i> NAT as the network direction for the dynamic NAT configuration.
<b>Interface</b>	Lists the VLAN (between 1 - 4094) used as the communication medium between the source and destination points within the NAT configuration.
<b>Overload Type</b>	Lists the Overload Type used with the listed IP ACL rule. Options include <i>NAT Pool</i> , <i>One Global Address</i> and <i>Interface IP Address</i> . Interface IP Address is the default setting.
<b>NAT Pool</b>	Displays the name of an existing NAT pool used with the dynamic NAT configuration.
<b>Overload IP</b>	Enables the use of one global address for numerous local addresses.
<b>ACL Precedence</b>	Lists the administrator assigned priority set for the listed source list ACL. The lower the value listed the higher the priority assigned to these ACL rules.

- 19 Select **Add** to create a new Dynamic NAT configuration, **Edit** to modify an existing configuration or **Delete** to permanently remove a configuration.



**Figure 8-113** Source ACL List screen

- 20 Set the following to define the Dynamic NAT configuration:

<b>Source List ACL</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select an ACL name to define the packet selection criteria for NAT. NAT is applied only on packets which match a rule defined in the access list. These addresses (once translated) are not exposed to the outside world when the translation address is used to interact with the remote destination.
<b>Network</b>	Select <i>Inside</i> or <i>Outside</i> NAT as the network direction for the dynamic NAT configuration. Inside is the default setting.
<b>ACL Precedence</b>	Set the priority (from 1 - 5000) for the source list ACL. The lower the value, the higher the priority assigned to these ACL rules.
<b>Interface</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the VLAN (between 1 - 4094) used as the communication medium between the source and destination points within the NAT configuration. Ensure the VLAN selected represents the intended network traffic within the NAT supported configuration. VLAN1 is available by default.
<b>Overload Type</b>	Select the check box of Overload Type used with the listed IP ACL rule. Options include <i>NAT Pool</i> , <i>One Global Address</i> and <i>Interface IP Address</i> . Interface IP Address is the default setting.
<b>NAT Pool</b>	Provide the name of an existing NAT pool for use with the dynamic NAT configuration.
<b>Overload IP</b>	Enables the use of one global address for numerous local addresses.

- 21 Select **OK** to save the changes made to the dynamic NAT configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.



## 8.9.7 Setting the Profile's Bridge NAT Configuration

### ► Profile Security Configuration

Use *Bridge NAT* to manage Internet traffic originating at a remote site. In addition to traditional NAT functionality, Bridge NAT provides a means of configuring NAT for bridged traffic through an Access Point. NAT rules are applied to bridged traffic through the Access Point, and matching packets are NATed to the WAN link instead of being bridged on their way to the router.

Using Bridge NAT, a tunneled VLAN (extended VLAN) is created between the NoC and a remote location. When a remote client needs to access the Internet, Internet traffic is routed to the NoC, and from there routed to the Internet. This increases the access time for the end user on the client.

To resolve latency issues, Bridge NAT identifies and segregates traffic heading towards the NoC and outwards towards the Internet. Traffic towards the NoC is allowed over the secure tunnel. Traffic towards the Internet is switched to a local WLAN link with access to the Internet.

To define a NAT configuration that can be applied to a profile:

- 1 Select the Configuration tab from the Web UI
- 2 Select **Profiles** from the Configuration tab.
- 3 Select **Manage Profiles** from the Configuration > Profiles menu
- 4 Select **Security**.
- 5 Select **Bridge NAT**.

Access List	Interface	NAT pool	Overload IP	Overload Type	ACL Precedence
forrole	vlan1			use-interface-address	1

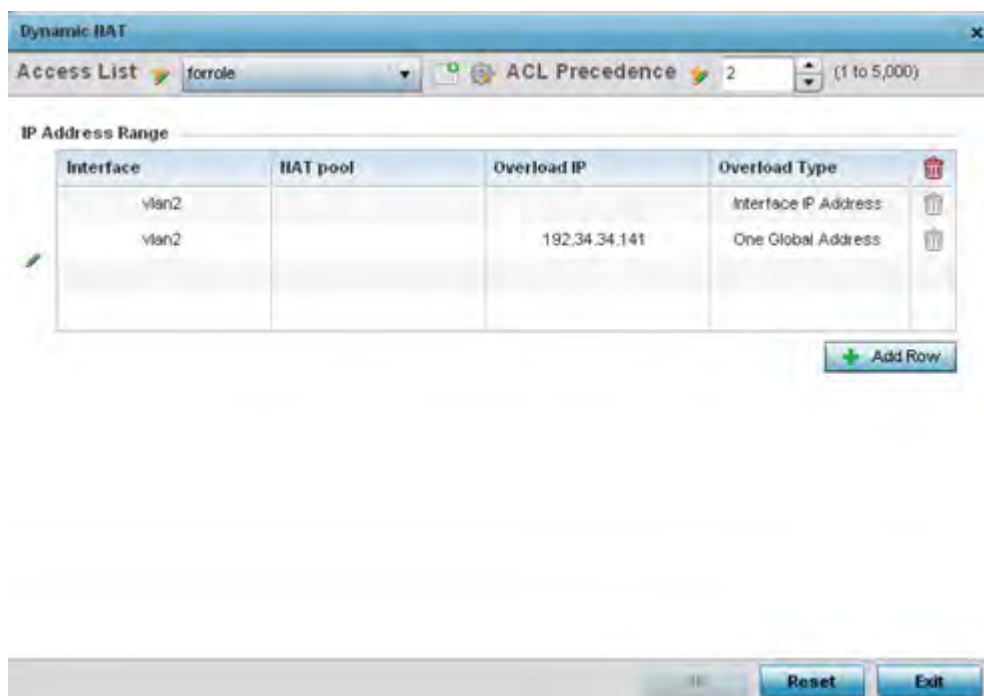
Type to search in tables Row Count: 1

**Figure 8-114** Security Bridge NAT screen

- 6 Review the following Bridge NAT configurations to determine whether a new Bridge NAT configuration requires creation or an existing configuration be modified or removed.

<b>Access List</b>	Lists the ACL applying IP address access/deny permission rules to the Bridge NAT configuration.
<b>Interface</b>	Lists the communication medium (outgoing layer 3 interface) between source and destination points. This is either the Access Point's <i>pppoe1</i> or <i>wwan1</i> interface or the VLAN used as the redirection interface between the source and destination.
<b>NAT Pool</b>	Lists the names of existing NAT pools used with the Bridge NAT configuration. This displays only when the <i>Overload Type</i> is NAT Pool.
<b>Overload IP</b>	Lists the address used globally and collectively for numerous local addresses.
<b>Overload Type</b>	Lists the overload type used with the listed IP ACL rule. Set as either <i>NAT Pool</i> , <i>One Global Address</i> or <i>Interface IP Address</i> .
<b>ACL Precedence</b>	Lists the administrator assigned priority set for the ACL. The lower the value listed the higher the priority assigned to these ACL rules.

- 7 Select **Add** to create a new Bridge VLAN configuration, **Edit** to modify an existing configuration or **Delete** to remove a configuration.



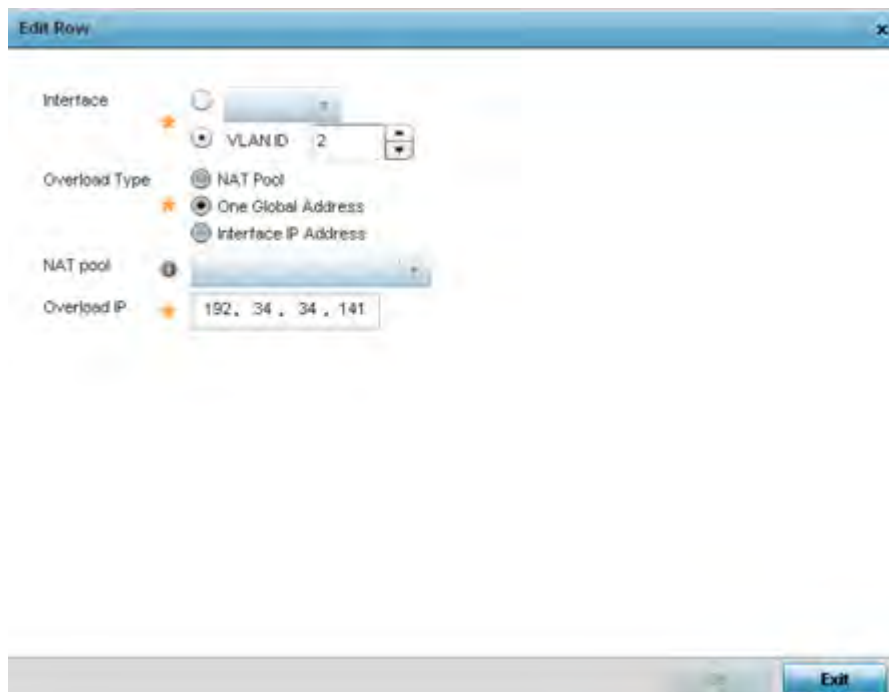
**Figure 8-115** Security Source Dynamic NAT screen

- 8 Select the **Access List** whose IP rules are applied to this policy based forwarding rule. A new ACL can be defined by selecting the **Create** icon, or an existing set of IP ACL rules can be modified by selecting the **Edit** icon.
- 9 Use the **IP Address Range** table to configure IP addresses and address ranges used to access the Internet.

<b>ACL Precedence</b>	Set the priority (from 1 - 5000) for the ACL. The lower the value, the higher the priority assigned to these ACL rules.
-----------------------	---

<b>Interface</b>	Lists the outgoing layer 3 interface on which traffic is re-directed. The interface can be an Access Point <i>wwan1</i> or <i>pppoe1</i> interface. Traffic can also be redirected to a designated VLAN.
<b>NAT Pool</b>	Displays the NAT pool used by this Bridge NAT entry. A value is only displayed only when Overload Type has been set to <i>NAT Pool</i> .
<b>Overload IP</b>	Lists whether a single global address collectively supports numerous local addresses.
<b>Overload Type</b>	Displays the override type for this policy based forwarding rule.

10 Select **+ Add Row** to set IP address range settings for the Bridge NAT configuration.



**Figure 8-116** Security Source Dynamic NAT screen

11 Select **OK** to save the changes made within the Add Row and Source Dynamic NAT screen. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 8.9.8 Setting the Profile's Application Visibility (AVC) Configuration

### ► Profile Security Configuration

*Deep packet inspection* (DPI) is an advanced packet analysis technique, which analyzes packet and packet content headers to determine the nature of network traffic. When DPI is enabled, packets of all flows are subjected to DPI to get accurate results. DPI identifies applications (such as, Netflix, Twitter, Facebook, etc.) and extracts metadata (such as, host name, server name, TCP-RTT, etc.) for further use by the WiNG firewall.

To configure a profile's application visibility settings and overrides:

- 1 Select the Configuration tab from the Web UI
- 2 Select **Profiles** from the Configuration tab.
- 3 Select **Manage Profiles** from the Configuration > Profiles menu

- 4 Select **Security**.
- 5 Select **Application Visibility**.

**Figure 8-117** Profile - Security - Application Visibility screen

- 6 Refer the following **Application Visibility and Control Settings**:

<b>Enable dpi</b>	Enable this setting to provide deep-packet inspection. When enabled, network flows are inspected at a granular level to identify applications (such as, Netflix, Twitter, Facebook, etc.) and extract metadata (such as, host name, server name, TCP-RTT, etc.) for further use by the WiNG firewall.
<b>Enable Applications Logging</b>	Select this option to enable event logging for DPI application recognition. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Application Logging Level</b>	If enabling DPI application recognition, set the logging level. Severity levels include <i>Emergency</i> , <i>Alert</i> , <i>Critical</i> , <i>Errors</i> , <i>Warning</i> , <i>Notice</i> , <i>Info</i> and <i>Debug</i> . The default logging level is Notification.
<b>Enable Voice/Video Metadata</b>	Select this option to enable the metadata extraction from voice and video classified flows. The default setting is disabled.
<b>Enable HTTP Metadata</b>	Select this option to enable the metadata extraction from HTTP flows. The default setting is disabled.

<b>Enable SSL Metadata</b>	Select this option to enable the metadata extraction from SSL flows. The default setting is disabled.
<b>Enable TCP RTT</b>	Select this option to enable extraction of RTT information from TCP flows. The default setting is disabled.

- 7 Review the **Custom Applications for DPI** field to select the custom applications available for this device profile. For information on creating custom applications and their categories, see [Application on page 7-58](#).

If enabling TCP-RTT metadata collection, in the **App Groups for TCP RTT** field, specify the application groups for which TCP-RTT metadata collection is to be enabled. Select the *Application Groups* from the drop-down menu and use the green, down arrow to move the selection to the box below. Note, you can add maximum of 8 (eight) groups to the list. If the desired application group is not available, select the **Create** icon to define a new application group configuration or select the **Edit** icon to modify an existing application group. For information on creating custom application groups, see [Application Group on page 7-60](#).

- 8 Select **OK** to save the changes or overrides. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

### 8.9.9 Profile Security Configuration and Deployment Considerations

#### ▶ Profile Security Configuration

Before defining a profile's security configuration, refer to the following deployment guidelines to ensure the profile configuration is optimally effective:

- Make sure the contents of the certificate revocation list are periodically audited to ensure revoked certificates remain quarantined or validated certificates are reinstated.
- A RFS4000 model wireless controller ships with a baseline configuration supporting many-to-one NAT between devices connected to GE1 - GE5 ports on VLAN 1, and the UP1 port assigned to VLAN 2100. A RFS4000 can be deployed within a small site using its default configuration, and then be connected to a Internet service providing instant access to the Internet.
- NAT alone does not provide a firewall. If deploying NAT on a controller or service platform profile, add a firewall on the profile to block undesirable traffic from being routed. For outbound Internet access, a stateful firewall can be configured to deny all traffic. If port address translation is required, a stateful firewall should be configured to only permit the TCP or UDP ports being translated.
- A RFS6000 model wireless controller ships with a minimum baseline configuration without NAT enabled. A RFS6000 wireless controller requires VLAN configuration, IP addressing and NAT rules be created before many-to-one NAT services can be defined.
- RFS4000 and RFS6000 model wireless controllers can provide outbound NAT services for hosts connected to multiple VLANs. For small deployments, VLANs should be terminated within a RFS4000 wireless controller providing site routing services. For medium-scale deployments, VLANs are typically terminated on a L3 (IP layer) or L2 (Ethernet layer).

## 8.10 Profile VRRP Configuration

A default gateway is a critical resource for connectivity. However, it's prone to a single point of failure. Thus, redundancy for the default gateway is required. If WAN backhaul is available, and a router failure occurs, then the Access Point should act as a router and forward traffic on to its WAN link.

Define an external *Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol* (VRRP) configuration when router redundancy is required in a network requiring high availability.

Central to the configuration of VRRP is the election of a VRRP master. A VRRP master (once elected) performs the following functions:

- Responds to ARP requests
- Forwards packets with a destination link layer MAC address equal to the virtual router MAC address
- Rejects packets addressed to the IP address associated with the virtual router, if it is not the IP address owner
- Accepts packets addressed to the IP address associated with the virtual router, if it is the IP address owner or accept mode is true.

Those nodes that lose the election process enter a backup state. In the backup state they monitor the master for any failures, and in case of a failure one of the backups, in turn, becomes the master and assumes the management of the designated virtual IPs. A backup does not respond to an ARP request, and discards packets destined for a virtual IP resource.

To define the configuration of a VRRP group:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Profiles**.
- 2 Select **VRRP**.

Virtual Router ID	Description	Virtual IP Addresses	Interface	Priority
1	lancelot	157.235.121.212	3	101

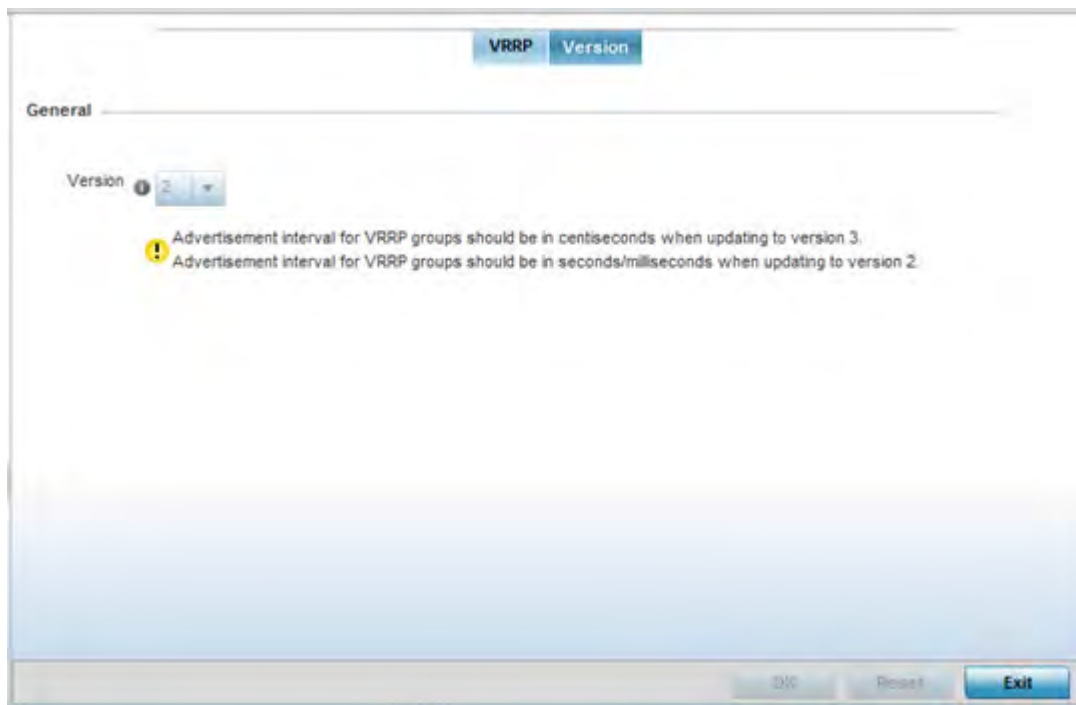
**Figure 8-118** Profile - VRRP screen

- 3 Review the following VRRP configuration data to assess if a new VRRP configuration is required or if an existing VRRP configuration requires modification or removal:

<b>Virtual Router ID</b>	Lists a numerical index (1 - 254) used to differentiate VRRP configurations. The index is assigned when a VRRP configuration is initially defined. This ID identifies the virtual router a packet is reporting status for.
<b>Description</b>	Displays a description assigned to the VRRP configuration when it was either created or modified. The description is implemented to provide additional differentiation beyond the numerical virtual router ID.
<b>Virtual IP Addresses</b>	Lists the virtual interface IP address used as the redundant gateway address for the virtual route.

<b>Interface</b>	Displays the interfaces selected on the Access Point to supply VRRP redundancy failover support.
<b>Priority</b>	Lists a numerical value (1 - 254) used for the virtual router master election process. The higher the numerical value, the higher the priority in the election process.

- 4 Select the **Version** tab to define the VRRP version scheme used with the configuration.



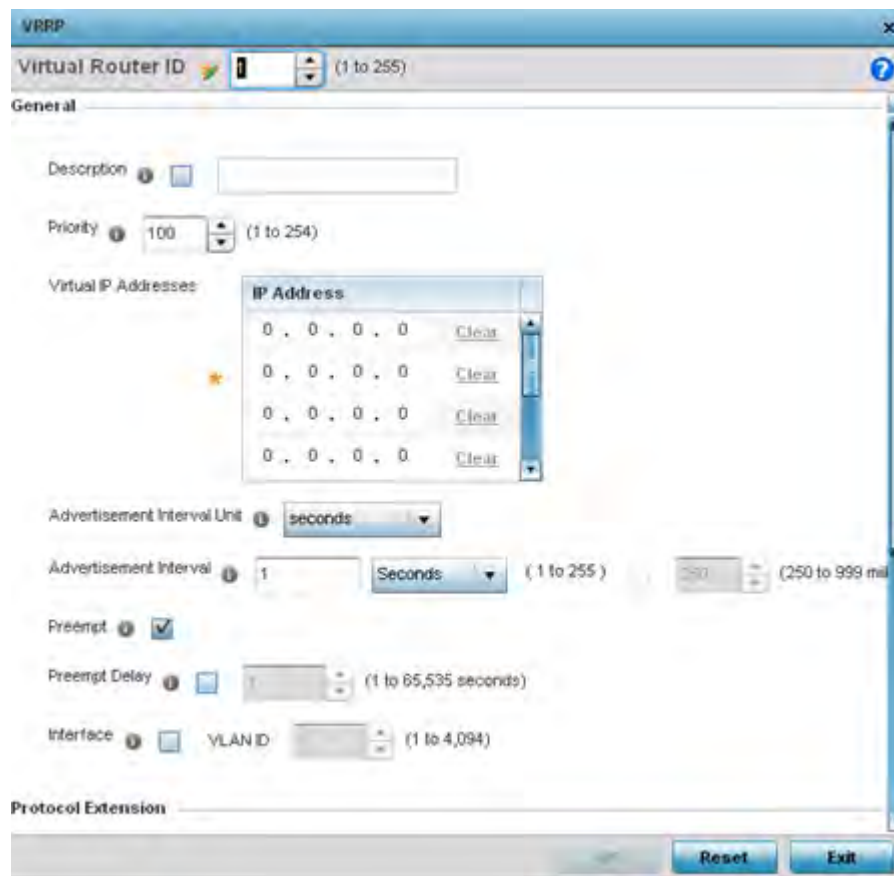
**Figure 8-119** VRRP screen - Version tab

VRRP version 3 (RFC 5798) and 2 (RFC 3768) are options for router redundancy. Version 3 supports sub-second (centisecond) VRRP failover and support services over virtual IP. For more information on the VRRP protocol specifications (available publicly) refer to <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc3768.txt> (version 2) and <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc5798.txt> (version 3).

- 5 From within VRRP tab, select **Add** to create a new VRRP configuration or **Edit** to modify the attributes of an existing VRRP configuration. If necessary, existing VRRP configurations can be selected and permanently removed by selecting **Delete**.

If adding or editing a VRRP configuration, the following screen displays:





**Figure 8-120** VRRP screen

- 6 If creating a new VRRP configuration, assign a **Virtual Router ID** from (1 - 255). In addition to functioning as numerical identifier, the ID identifies the Access Point's virtual router a packet is reporting status for.
- 7 Define the following VRRP **General** parameters:

<b>Description</b>	In addition to an ID assignment, a virtual router configuration can be assigned a textual description (up to 64 characters) to further distinguish it from others with a similar configuration.
<b>Priority</b>	Use the spinner control to set a VRRP priority setting from 1 - 254. The Access Point uses the defined setting as criteria in selection of a virtual router master. The higher the value, the greater the likelihood of this virtual router ID being selected as the master.
<b>Virtual IP Addresses</b>	Provide up to 8 IP addresses representing Ethernet switches, routers or security appliances defined as virtual routing resources.
<b>Advertisement Interval Unit</b>	Select either <i>seconds</i> , <i>milliseconds</i> or <i>centiseconds</i> as the unit used to define VRRP advertisements. Once an option is selected, the spinner control becomes enabled for that <i>Advertisement Interval</i> option. The default interval unit is seconds. If changing the VRRP group version from 2 to 3, ensure the advertisement interval is in centiseconds. Use VRRP group version 2 when the advertisement interval is either in seconds or milliseconds.

<b>Advertisement Interval</b>	Once a Advertisement Interval Unit has been selected, use the spinner control to set the Interval at which the VRRP master sends out advertisements on each of its configured VLANs. The default setting is 1 second.
<b>Preempt</b>	Select this option to ensure a high priority backup router is available to preempt a lower priority backup router resource. The default setting is enabled. When selected, the <i>Preempt Delay</i> option becomes enabled to set the actual delay interval for pre-emption. This setting determines if a node with a higher priority can takeover all the Virtual IPs from the nodes with a lower priority.
<b>Preempt Delay</b>	If the Preempt option is selected, use the spinner control to set the delay interval (in seconds) for pre-emption.
<b>Interface</b>	Select this value to enable/disable VRRP operation and define the VLAN (1 - 4,094) interface where VRRP is running. These are the interfaces monitored to detect a link failure.

8 Refer to the **Protocol Extension** field to define the following:

<b>Sync Group</b>	Select the option to assign a VRRP sync group to this VRRP ID's group of virtual IP addresses. This triggers VRRP failover if an advertisement is not received from the virtual masters that are part of this VRRP sync group. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Network Monitoring: Local Interface</b>	Select the <i>wwan1</i> , <i>pppoe1</i> and <i>VLAN ID(s)</i> as needed to extend VRRP monitoring to these local interfaces. Once selected, these interfaces can be assigned an <i>increasing</i> or <i>decreasing</i> level or priority for virtual routing within the VRRP group.
<b>Network Monitoring: Critical Resource Name</b>	Assign the priority level for the selected local interfaces. Backup virtual routers can <i>increase</i> or <i>decrease</i> their priority in case the critical resources connected to the master router fail, and transition to the master state. Additionally, the master virtual router can lower its priority if the critical resources connected to it fails, so the backup can transition to the master state. This value can only be set on the backup or master router resource, not both. Options include <i>None</i> , <i>increment-priority</i> and <i>decrement priority</i> .
<b>Network Monitoring: Delta Priority</b>	Use this setting to decrement the configured priority (by the set value) when the monitored interface is down. When critical resource monitoring, the configured value is incremented by the value defined.

9 Select **OK** to save the changes made to the VRRP configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 8.11 Profile Critical Resources Configuration

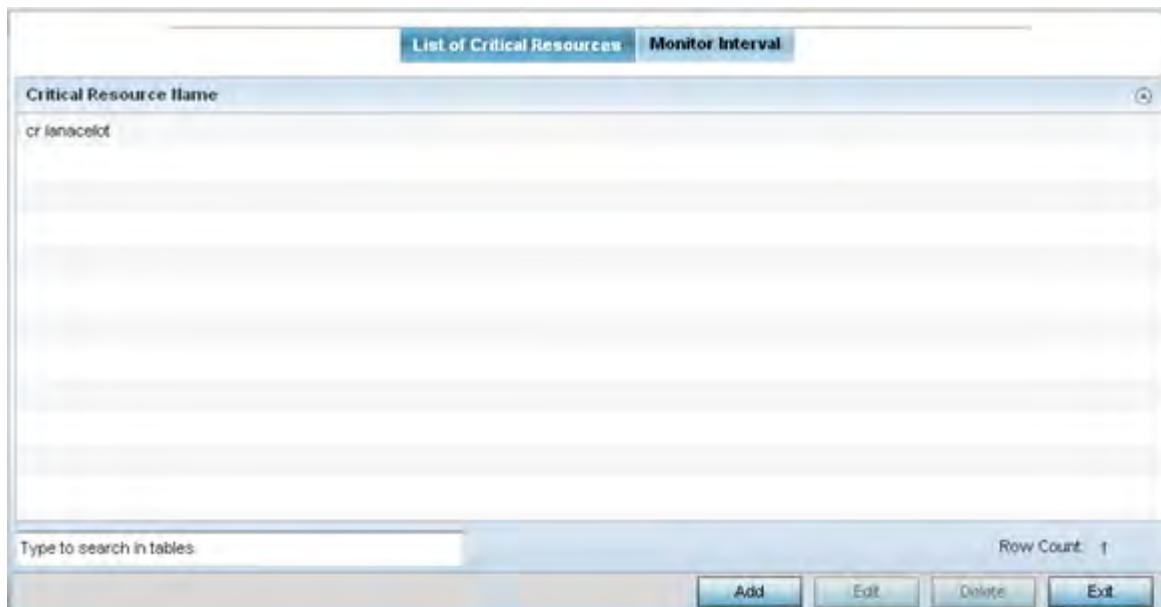
Critical resources are device IP addresses or interface destinations on the network defined as critical to the health of the network. The critical resource feature allows for the continuous monitoring of these addresses. A critical resource, if not available, can result in the network suffering performance degradation. A critical resource can be a gateway, AAA server, WAN interface or any hardware or service on which the stability of the network depends. Critical resources are pinged regularly. If there's a connectivity issue, an event is generated stating a critical resource is unavailable. By default, there's no enabled critical resource policy and one needs to be created and implemented.

Critical resources can be monitored directly through the interfaces on which they're discovered. For example, a critical resource on the same subnet as an Access Point can be monitored by its IP address. However, a critical resource located on a VLAN must continue to be monitored on that VLAN.

Critical resources can be configured for Access Points and wireless controllers using their respective profiles.

To define critical resources:

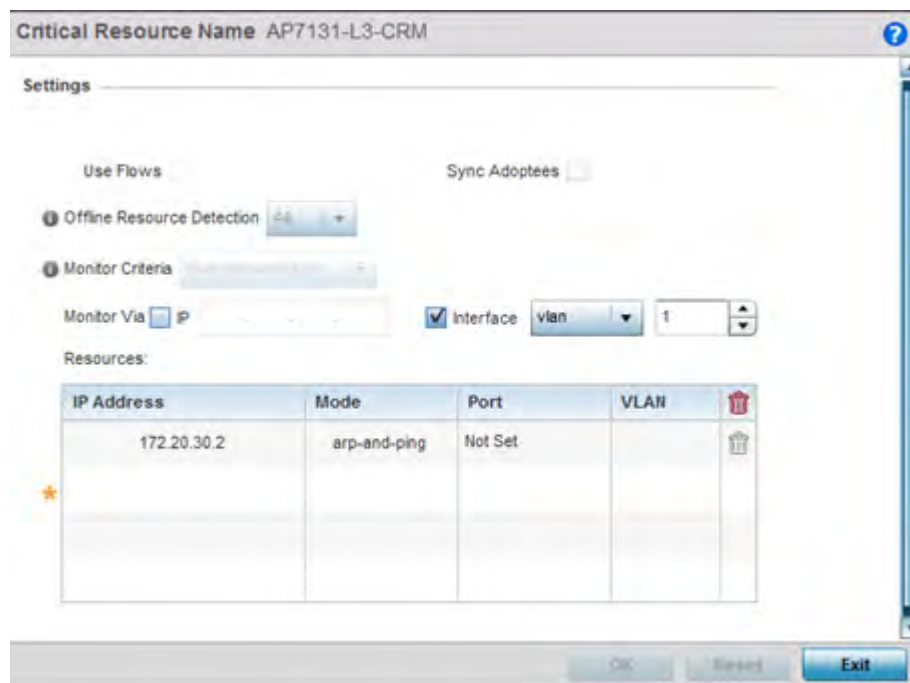
- 1 Select **Configuration > Profiles**.
- 2 Select **Critical Resources**.



**Figure 8-121** Critical Resources screen - List of Critical Resources tab

The screen lists the destination IP addresses or interfaces (VLAN, WWAN, or PPPoE) used for critical resource connection. IP addresses can be monitored directly by the controller or service platform, whereas a VLAN, WWAN or PPPoE must be monitored behind an interface.

- 3 Click the **Add** button at the bottom of the screen to add a new critical resource and connection method, or select an existing resource and select **Edit** to update the resource's configuration.



**Figure 8-122** Critical Resources screen - Adding a Critical Resource

- 4 Select **Use Flows** to configure the critical resource to monitor using firewall flows for DHCP or DNS instead of ICMP or ARP packets to reduce the amount of traffic on the network. Select **Sync Adoptees** to sync adopted devices to state changes with a resource-state change message. These settings are disabled by default.
- 5 Use the **Offline Resource Detection** drop-down menu to define how critical resource event messages are generated. Options include *Any* and *All*. If selecting **Any**, an event is generated when the state of any single critical resource changes. If selecting **All**, an event is generated when the state of all monitored critical resources change.
- 6 Use the **Monitor Criteria** drop-down menu to select either *rf-domain-manager*, *cluster-master* or *All* as the resource for monitoring critical resources by one device and updating the rest of the devices in a group. If selecting **rf-domain-manager**, the current rf-domain manager performs resource monitoring, and the rest of the devices do not. The RF-domain-manager updates any state changes to the rest of the devices in the RF Domain. With the **cluster-master** option, the cluster master performs resource monitoring and updates the cluster members with state changes. With a controller managed RF Domain, Monitoring Criteria should be set for **All**, since the controller might not know the VLAN bridged locally by the devices in the RF Domain monitoring DHCP.
- 7 Select the **IP** option (within the **Monitor Via** field at the top of the screen) to monitor a critical resource directly (within the same subnet) using the provided IP address as a network identifier.
- 8 Select the **Interface** checkbox (within the **Monitor Via** field at the top of the screen) to monitor a critical resource using either the critical resource's VLAN, WWAN1 or PPPoE1 interface. If VLAN is selected, a spinner control is enabled to define the destination VLAN ID used as the interface for the critical resource.
- 9 Select **+ Add Row** to define the following for critical resource configurations:

<b>IP Address</b>	Provide the IP address of the critical resource. This is the address used to ensure the critical resource is available. Up to four addresses can be defined.
-------------------	--

<b>Mode</b>	Set the ping mode used when the availability of a critical resource is validated. Select from:  <i>arp-only</i> - Use the <i>Address Resolution Protocol</i> (ARP) for only pinging the critical resource. ARP is used to resolve hardware addresses when only the network layer address is known.  <i>arp-and-ping</i> - Use both ARP and <i>Internet Control Message Protocol</i> (ICMP) for pining the critical resource and sending control messages (device not reachable, requested service not available, etc.).
<b>Port</b>	Use the drop-down menu to provide the physical port for each critical resource. The ports available depend on the device in use.
<b>VLAN</b>	Define the VLAN on which the critical resource is available using the spinner control.

10 Select the **Monitor Interval** tab.



**Figure 8-123** Critical Resources screen - Monitor Interval tab

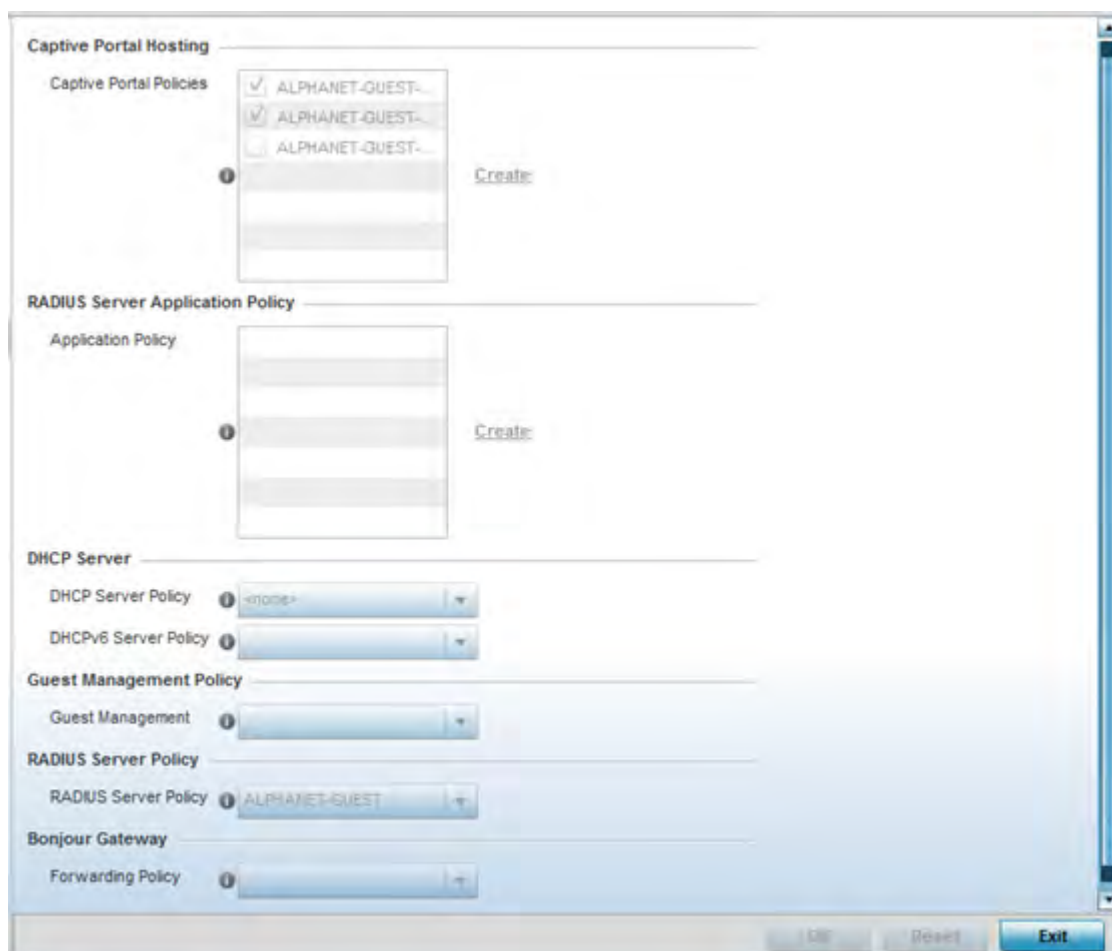
- 11 Set **Monitor Interval** as the duration between two successive pings to the critical resource. Define this value in seconds from 5 - 86,400. The default setting is 30 seconds.
- 12 Set the **Source IP for Port-Limited Monitoring** to define the IP address used as the source address in ARP packets used to detect a critical resource on a layer 2 interface. Generally, the source address 0.0.0.0 is used in the APR packets used to detect critical resources. However, some devices do not support the above IP address and drop the ARP packets. Use this field to provide an IP address specifically used for this purpose. The IP address used for Port-Limited Monitoring must be different from the IP address configured on the device.
- 13 Set the **Monitoring Retries before Marking Resource as DOWN** for the number of retry connection attempts (1 - 10) permitted before this device connection is defined as down (offline). The default setting is three connection attempts.
- 14 Select **OK** to save the changes to the monitor interval. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 8.12 Profile Services Configuration

A profile can contain specific captive portal, DHCP server and RADIUS server configurations supported by the controller or service platform's own internal resources. These captive portal, IP assignment and user authorization resources can be defined uniquely as profile requirements dictate.

To define a profile's services configuration:

- 1 Select the **Configuration** tab from the Web UI.
- 2 Select **Profiles** from the Configuration tab.
- 3 Select **Manage Profiles** from the Configuration > Profiles menu.
- 4 Select **Services**.



**Figure 8-124** Profile Services screen

- 5 Refer to the **Captive Portal Hosting** section to select or set a guest access configuration (captive portal) for use with this profile.

A *captive portal* is guest access policy for providing guests temporary and restrictive access to the network. A captive portal provides secure authenticated access using a standard Web browser. Captive portals provide authenticated access by capturing and re-directing a wireless user's Web browser session to a captive portal login page where the user must enter valid credentials to access to the network. Once logged into the captive

portal, additional *Agreement*, *Welcome* and *Fail* pages provide the administrator with a number of options on screen flow and user appearance.

Either select an existing captive portal policy, use the default captive portal policy or select the **Create** link to create a new captive portal that can be applied to the profile. For more information, see, [Configuring a Captive Portal Policy](#).

- 6 Select a **RADIUS Server Application Policy** policy to authenticate users and authorize access to the network. A RADIUS policy provides the centralized management of authentication data (usernames and passwords). When an client attempts to associate, the controller or service platform sends the authentication request to the RADIUS server. If no existing policies are available select the **Create** link.
- 7 Use the **DHCP Server Policy** drop-down menu assign this profile a DHCP or DHCPv6 server policy. If an existing DHCP or DHCPv6 policy does not meet the profile's requirements, select the **Create** button to create a new policy configuration that can be applied to this profile.

*Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol* (DHCP) allows hosts on an IP network to request and be assigned IP addresses as well as discover information about the network where they reside. Each subnet can be configured with its own address pool. Whenever a DHCP client requests an IP address, the DHCP server assigns an IP address from that subnet's address pool. When the onboard DHCP server allocates an address for a DHCP client, the client is assigned a lease, which expires after an pre-determined interval. Before a lease expires, wireless clients (to which leases are assigned) are expected to renew them to continue to use the addresses. Once the lease expires, the client is no longer permitted to use the leased IP address. The profile's DHCP server policy ensures all IP addresses are unique, and no IP address is assigned to a second client while the first client's assignment is valid (its lease has not expired).

DHCPv6 is a networking protocol for configuring IPv6 hosts with IP addresses, IP prefixes or other configuration attributes required on an IPv6 network. DHCP in IPv6 works in with IPv6 router discovery. With the proper RA flags, DHCPv6 works like DHCP for IPv4. The central difference is the way a device identifies itself if assigning addresses manually instead of selecting addresses dynamically from a pool.

- 8 Use the **Guest Management Policy** drop-down menu to select an existing Guest Management policy to use as a mechanism to manage guest users with this profile.
- 9 Use the **RADIUS Server Policy** drop-down menu to select an existing RADIUS server policy to use as a user validation security mechanism with this profile.

A profile can have its own unique RADIUS server policy to authenticate users and authorize access to the network. A profile's RADIUS policy provides the centralized management of controller or service platform authentication data (usernames and passwords). When an client attempts to associate, an authentication request is sent to the RADIUS server.

For more information, see [Setting the RADIUS Configuration](#).

- 10 From the **Forwarding Policy** drop-down, select the **Bonjour Gateway** forwarding policy. Select the **Create** icon to define a new Bonjour Gateway forwarding policy configuration or select the **Edit** icon to modify an existing Bonjour Gateway forwarding policy configuration.

Bonjour is Apple's implementation of *zero-configuration networking* (Zeroconf). Zeroconf is a group of technologies that include service discovery, address assignment and hostname resolution. Bonjour locates devices such as printers, other computers and services that these computers offer over a local network.

Bonjour provides a general method to discover services on a *local area network* (LAN). It allows users to set up a network without any configuration. Services such as printers, scanners and file-sharing servers can be found using Bonjour. Bonjour only works within a single broadcast domain. However, with special DNS configuration, it can be extended to find services across broadcast domains.



- 11 Select **OK** to save the changes made to the profile's services configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 8.12.1 Services Configuration and Deployment Considerations

### ► Profile Services Configuration

Before defining a profile's captive portal, DHCP and RADIUS services configuration, refer to the following deployment guidelines to ensure the profile configuration is optimally effective:

- A profile plan should consider the number of wireless clients allowed on the captive portal and the services provided, or if the profile should support captive portal access at all.
- Profile configurations supporting a captive portal should include firewall policies to ensure logical separation is provided between guest and internal networks so internal networks and hosts are not reachable from captive portals.
- DHCP's lack of an authentication mechanism means a DHCP server supported profile cannot check if a client or user is authorized to use a given user class. This introduces a vulnerability when using user class options. Ensure a profile using an internal DHCP resource is also provisioned with a strong user authorization and validation configuration.

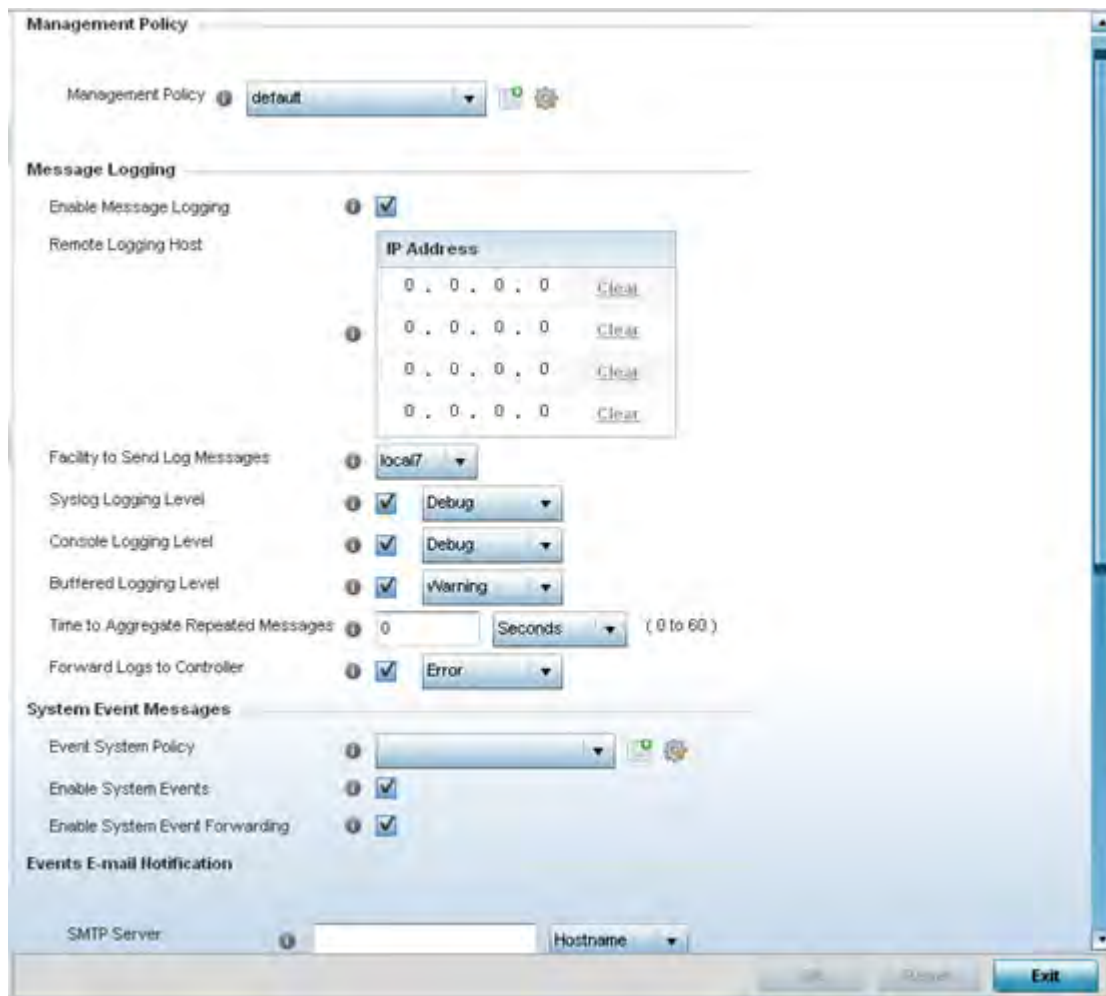
## 8.13 Profile Management Configuration

Controllers and service platforms have mechanisms to allow/deny management access to the network for separate interfaces and protocols (*HTTP, HTTPS, Telnet, SSH or SNMP*). These management access configurations can be applied strategically to profiles as resource permissions dictate.

Additionally, an administrator can define a profile with unique configuration file and device firmware upgrade support. In a clustered environment, these operations can be performed on one controller or service platform, then propagated to each member of the cluster and onwards to the devices managed by each cluster member.

To define a profile's management configuration:

- 1 Select the **Configuration** tab from the Web UI.
- 2 Select **Profiles** from the Configuration tab.
- 3 Select **Manage Profiles** from the Configuration > Profiles menu.
- 4 Select **Management**.
- 5 Expand the Management menu item to display its sub menu options.
- 6 Select **Settings** from the Management menu.



**Figure 8-125** Profile Management Settings screen

- 7 Refer to the **Management Policy** field to select or set a management configuration for use with this profile. A default management policy is also available if no existing policies are usable.  
Use the drop-down menu to select an existing management policy to apply to this profile. If no management policies exist meeting the data access requirements of this profile, select the **Create** icon to access a series of screens used to define administration, access control and SNMP configurations. Select an existing policy and select the **Edit** icon to modify the configuration of an existing management policy. For more information, see [Viewing Management Access Policies](#).
- 8 Refer to the **Message Logging** field to define how the profile logs system events. It's important to log individual events to discern an overall pattern that may be negatively impacting performance using the configuration defined for this profile.

<b>Enable Message Logging</b>	Select this option to enable the profile to log system events to a user defined log file or a syslog server. Selecting this check box enables the rest of the parameters required to define the profile's logging configuration. This option is disabled by default.
<b>Remote Logging Host</b>	Use this table to define numerical (non DNS) IP addresses for up to three external resources where logged system events can be sent on behalf of the profile. Select <i>Clear</i> as needed to remove an IP address.

<b>Facility to Send Log Messages</b>	Use the drop-down menu to specify the local server facility (if used) for the profile's syslog event log transfer.
<b>Syslog Logging Level</b>	Event severity coincides with the syslog logging level defined for the profile. Assign an identifier to log events based on criticality. Severity levels include 0 - <i>Emergency</i> , 1 - <i>Alert</i> , 2 - <i>Critical</i> , 3 - <i>Errors</i> , 4 - <i>Warning</i> , 5 - <i>Notice</i> , 6 - <i>Info</i> and 7 - <i>Debug</i> . The default logging level is 4.
<b>Console Logging Level</b>	Event severity coincides with the syslog logging level defined for the profile. Assign an identifier to log events based on criticality. Severity levels include 0 - <i>Emergency</i> , 1 - <i>Alert</i> , 2 - <i>Critical</i> , 3 - <i>Errors</i> , 4 - <i>Warning</i> , 5 - <i>Notice</i> , 6 - <i>Info</i> and 7 - <i>Debug</i> . The default logging level is 4.
<b>Buffered Logging Level</b>	Event severity coincides with the syslog logging level defined for the profile. Assign an identifier to log events based on criticality. Severity levels include 0 - <i>Emergency</i> , 1 - <i>Alert</i> , 2 - <i>Critical</i> , 3 - <i>Errors</i> , 4 - <i>Warning</i> , 5 - <i>Notice</i> , 6 - <i>Info</i> and 7 - <i>Debug</i> . The default logging level is 4.
<b>Time to Aggregate Repeated Messages</b>	Define the increment (or interval) system events are logged on behalf of this profile. The shorter the interval, the sooner the event is logged. Either define an interval in <i>Seconds</i> (0 - 60) or <i>Minutes</i> (0 -1). The default value is 0 seconds.
<b>Forward Logs to Controller</b>	Select the checkbox to define a log level for forwarding event logs. Log levels include <i>Emergency</i> , <i>Alert</i> , <i>Critical</i> , <i>Error</i> , <i>Warning</i> , <i>Notice</i> , <i>Info</i> and <i>Debug</i> . The default logging level is <i>Error</i> .

- 9 Refer to the **System Event Messages** section to define how system messages are logged and forwarded on behalf of the profile.

<b>Event System Policy</b>	Select an Event System Policy from the drop-down menu. If an appropriate policy does not exist click the <i>Create</i> button to make a new policy.
<b>Enable System Events</b>	Select this option to allow the profile to capture system events and append them to a log file. It's important to log individual events to discern an overall pattern that may be negatively impacting system performance. This setting is enabled by default.
<b>Enable System Event Forwarding</b>	Select the <i>Enable System Event Forwarding</i> box to enable the forwarding of system events to another cluster member. This setting is enabled by default.

- 10 Refer to the **Events E-mail Notification** section to define how system event notification emails are sent.

<b>SMTP Server</b>	Specify either the <i>Hostname</i> or <i>IP Address</i> of the outgoing SMTP server where notification emails will be originated. A Hostname cannot exceed 64 characters.
<b>Port of SMTP</b>	If a non-standard SMTP port is used on the outgoing SMTP server check this box and specify a port between 1 and 65,535 for the outgoing SMTP server to use.
<b>Sender Email Address</b>	Specify the 64 character maximum email address from which notification emails are originated. This is the <i>from</i> address on notification emails.
<b>Recipient's E-mail Address</b>	Specify up to 6 Email addresses to be the recipient's of event Email notifications.

<b>Username for SMTP Server</b>	Specify the username of the sender on the outgoing SMTP server. Many SMTP servers require users to authenticate with a <i>username</i> and <i>password</i> before sending email through the server.
<b>Password for SMTP Server</b>	Specify the password associated with the username of the sender on the outgoing SMTP server. Many SMTP servers require users to authenticate with a <i>username</i> and <i>password</i> before sending email through the server.

- 11 Refer to the **Persist Configurations Across Reloads** field to define or override how configuration settings are handled after reloads.

<b>Persist Configurations Across Reloads</b>	Use the drop-down menu to configure whether configuration overrides should persist when the device configuration is reloaded. Available options are <i>Enabled</i> , <i>Disabled</i> and <i>Secure</i> .
--	--

- 12 Refer to the **HTTP Analytics** field to define analytic compression settings and update intervals.

<b>Compress</b>	Select this option to use compression to when sending updates to the controller. This option is disabled by default.
<b>Update Interval</b>	Define an interval in either <i>Seconds</i> (1 - 3,600), <i>Minutes</i> (1 - 60) or <i>Hours</i> (1) for interval to push buffered packets. The default setting is 1 minute.

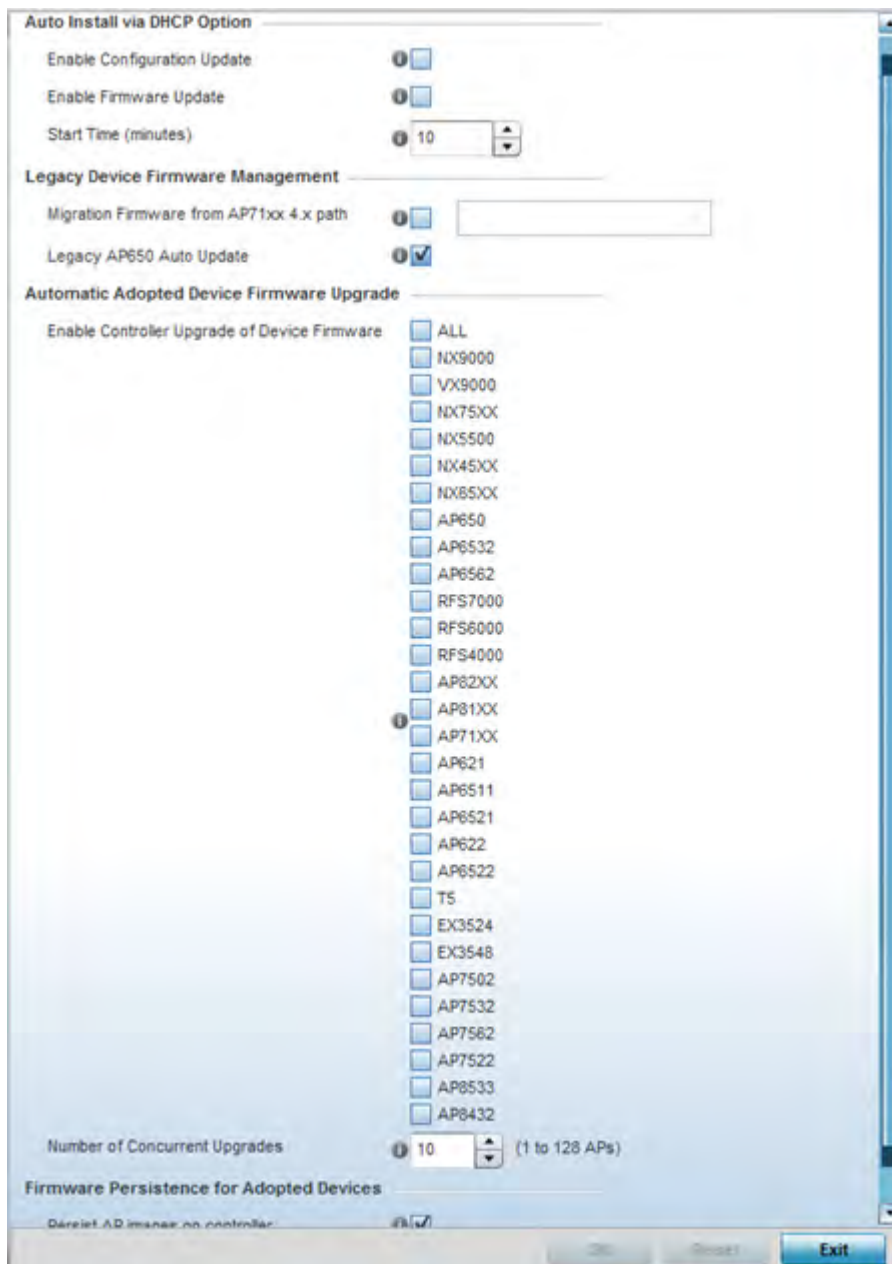
- 13 Refer to the **External Analytics Engine** section to define or override analytics engine login information for an external host.

The Guest Access & Analytics software module is a site-wide Enterprise License available only on the NX9000 service platforms. When a customer visits a store, they connect to the Wireless LAN via guest access using a mobile device. The user needs to authenticate only on their first visit, and will automatically connect to the network for subsequent visits. The Analytics module helps gather data about customer behavior such as web sites visited, search terms used, mobile device types, number of new users vs. repeat users. This data provides a better understanding of pricing strategies and promotions being run by competitors. The data can be exported for additional in-depth analysis.

<b>Controller</b>	Select this option to provide service platform analytics to a local device. This setting is enabled by default.
<b>URL</b>	When using an external analytics engine with a NX9000 series service platform, enter the IP address or <i>uniform resource locator</i> (URL) for the system providing external analytics functions.
<b>User Name</b>	Enter the user name needed to access the external analytics engine.
<b>Password</b>	Enter the password associated with the username on the external analytics engine.
<b>Update Interval</b>	Set the interval in either <i>Seconds</i> (1 - 3,600), <i>Minutes</i> (1 - 60) or <i>Hours</i> (1) to forward buffered information to an external server resource, even when the buffers are not full. The default setting is 1 minute.

- 14 Select **OK** to save the changes made to the profile's management settings. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

- 15 Select **Firmware** from the Management menu.



**Figure 8-126** Profile Management Firmware screen

16 Refer to the **Auto Install via DHCP Option** section to configure automatic configuration file and firmware updates.

<p><b>Enable Configuration Update</b></p>	<p>Select the <i>Enable Configuration Update</i> radio button (from within the Automatic Configuration Update field) to enable automatic configuration file updates for the profile from an external location. If enabled (the setting is disabled by default), provide a complete path to the target configuration file used in the update.</p>
<p><b>Enable Firmware Upgrade</b></p>	<p>Select this option to enable automatic firmware upgrades (for this profile) from a user defined remote location. This value is disabled by default.</p>

<b>Start Time (minutes)</b>	Use the spinner control to set the number of minutes to delay the start of an auto upgrade operation. Stagger the start of an upgrade operation as needed in respect to allowing an Access Point to complete its current client support activity before being rendered offline during the update operation. The default setting is 10 minutes.
-----------------------------	--

- 17 Refer to the parameters within the **Legacy Device Firmware Management** field to set legacy Access Point firmware provisions:

<b>Migration Firmware from AP71xx 4.x path</b>	Provide a path to a firmware image used to provision AP71xx model Access Points currently utilizing a 4.x version legacy firmware file. Once a valid path is provided, the update is enabled to the version maintained locally for AP71xx models.
<b>Legacy AP650 Auto Update</b>	Select this option to provision AP650 model Access Points from their legacy firmware versions to the version maintained locally for that model. This setting is enabled by default, making updates to AP650 models automatic if a newer AP650 image is maintained locally.

- 18 Use the parameters within the **Automatic Adopted Device Firmware Upgrade** section to define an automatic firmware upgrade from a local file.

<b>Enable Controller Upgrade of Device Firmware</b>	Select this radio button to enable adopted devices to upgrade to a newer firmware version using its associated controller or service platform's most recent resident firmware file for that specific model. This parameter is disabled by default.
<b>Number of Concurrent Upgrades.</b>	Use the spinner control to define the maximum number (1 - 20) of adopted Access Points that can receive a firmware upgrade at the same time. Keep in mind, during a firmware upgrade, the Access Point is offline and unable to perform its normal wireless client support function until the upgrade process is complete.

- 19 Select the **Persist AP images on Controller** button (from within the **Firmware Persistence for Adopted Devices** field) to enable the RF domain manager to retain and store the new image of an Access Point selected for a firmware update. The image is only stored on the RF domain manager when there's space to accommodate it. The upgrade sequence is different depending on whether the designated RF domain manager is a controller/ service platform or Access Point.

- *When the RF domain manager is an Access Point* - The NOC uploads a provisions an Access Point model's firmware on to the Access Point RF domain manager. The NOC initiates an auto-update for Access Points using that model's firmware. If the **Persist Image on Controller** option is selected, the RF domain manager retains the image for that model. The NOC then provisions the firmware of the next Access Point type to the RF domain manager. The auto-update process is then repeated for that model. Once all the selected models have been updated, the RF domain manager's model is updated last.
- *When the RF domain manager is a controller or service platform* - The NOC adopts controllers to the NOC's cluster within its RF domain. The NOC triggers an update on active controllers or service platforms and reboots them as soon as the update is complete. As soon as the active nodes come back up, the NOC triggers an update on standby controllers or service platforms and reboots them as soon as the update is complete. When the standby controllers or service platforms come back up:
  - *If the reboot is not scheduled* - The Access Points adopted to RF domain members are not updated. It's expected the controllers and service platforms have auto-upgrade enabled which will update the Access Points when re-adopted.
  - *If the reboot is scheduled* - The NOC pushes the first Access Point model's firmware to the RF domain manager. The NOC initiates an Access Point upgrade on all Access Points on the RF domain manager for that model. If the **Persist Image on Controller** option is selected, the RF domain manager retains the image for

that model. The NOC then provisions the firmware of the next Access Point type to the RF domain manager. This process is repeated until each selected Access Point model is updated.

The Firmware Persistence feature is *enabled* for all controller and service platform RF domain managers with the flash memory capacity to store firmware images for the selected Access Point models they provision. This feature is *disabled* for Access Point RF domain managers that do not typically have the required flash memory capacity.

- 20 Select **Heartbeat** from the Management menu. Select the **Service Watchdog** option to implement heartbeat messages to ensure associated devices are up and running and capable of effectively interoperating. The Service Watchdog is enabled by default.
- 21 Select **OK** to save the changes made to the profile maintenance Heartbeat tab. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

### 8.13.1 Profile Management Configuration and Deployment Considerations

#### ► Profile Management Configuration

Before defining a profile's management configuration, refer to the following deployment guidelines to ensure the profile configuration is optimally effective:

- Define profile management access configurations providing both encryption and authentication. Management services like HTTPS, SSH and SNMPv3 should be used when possible, as they provide data privacy and authentication.
- SNMPv3 should be used for management profile configurations, as it provides both encryption and authentication and SNMPv1 and v2 do not.

## 8.14 Profile Mesh Point Configuration

---

Mesh points are Access Points dedicated to mesh network support. Mesh networking enables users to access broadband applications anywhere (including moving vehicles).

To review a profile's mesh point configuration:

- 1 Select the **Configuration** tab from the Web UI.
- 2 Select **Profiles** from the Configuration tab.
- 3 Select **Manage Profiles** from the Configuration > Profiles menu.
- 4 Select **Mesh Point**.



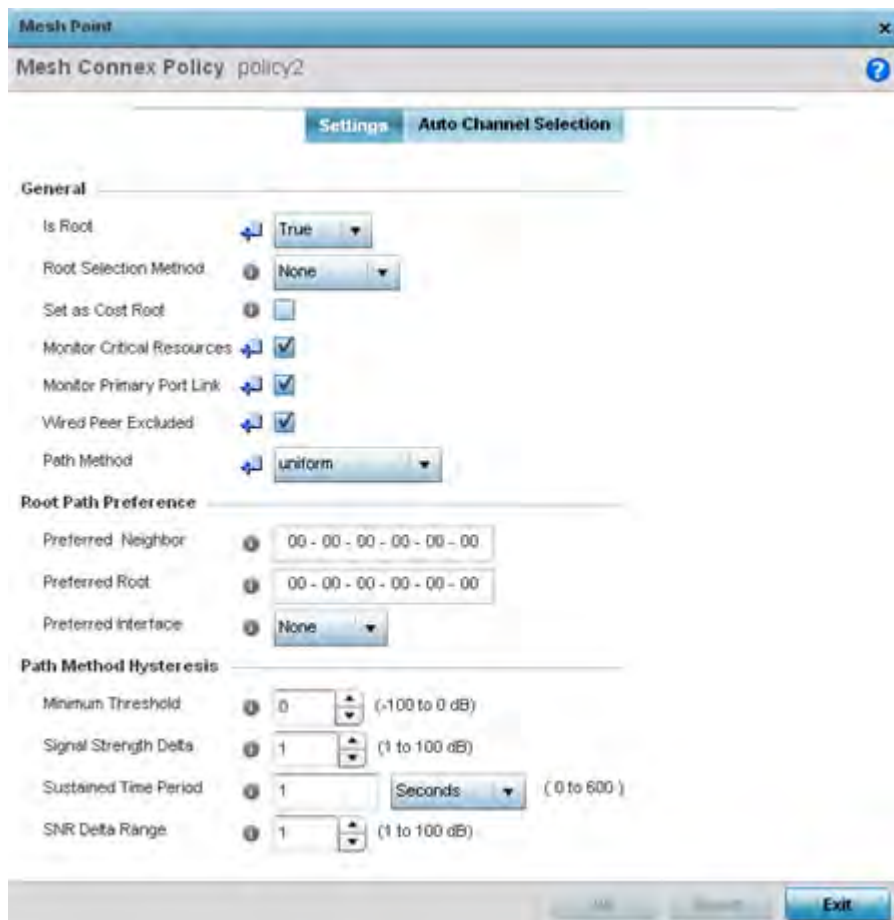
Mesh Conn x	Is Root	Preferred Root	Root Selection Method	Preferred Neighbor	Preferred Interface	Monitor Critical Resources	Monitor Primary Port Link	Path Method
mesh point 1	No		None		None	No	No	None
mesh point 2	No		None		None	Yes	Yes	None

Type to search in tables:  Row Count: 2

Add Edit Delete Exit

**Figure 8-127** Profile - Mesh Point screen

- 5 Refer to the **Mesh Point** screen to view existing Mesh Points. If an existing Mesh Point configuration does not meet your requirements, select the **Add** button to create a new mesh point configuration or the **Edit** button to modify the parameters of an existing mesh point configuration. The Mesh Point screen displays the **Settings** tab by default.



**Figure 8-128** Mesh Point - Settings Screen

6 Define the following **Settings**:

<b>MeshConnex Policy</b>	If adding a new policy, specify a name for the MeshConnex Policy. The name cannot be edited later with other configuration parameters. Until a viable name is provided, the Settings tab cannot be enabled for configuration.
<b>Is Root</b>	Select the root behavior of this mesh point. Select <i>True</i> to indicate this mesh point is a root node for this mesh network. Select <i>False</i> to indicate this mesh point is not a root node for this mesh network.
<b>Root Selection Method</b>	Use the drop-down menu to determine whether this meshpoint is the root or non-root meshpoint. Select either <i>None</i> , <i>auto-mint</i> or <i>auto-proximity</i> . The default setting is <i>None</i> . When <i>auto-mint</i> is selected, root selection is based on the total cost to the root. Cost to the root is measured as total cost through hops to the root node. Root selection occurs for the root with the least path cost. When <i>auto-proximity</i> is selected, root selection is based on signal strength of candidate roots. <i>None</i> indicates no preference in root selection.
<b>Set as Cost Root</b>	Select this option to set the mesh point as the cost root for meshpoint root selection. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Monitor Critical Resources</b>	Enable this feature to allow dynamic conversion of a mesh point from root to non-root when there is a critical resource failure. This option is disabled by default.

<b>Monitor Primary Port Link</b>	Enable this feature to allow dynamic conversion of a mesh point from root to non-root during a link down event. This option is disabled by default.
<b>Wired Peer Excluded</b>	Select this option to exclude a mesh from forming a link with another mesh device that's a wired peer. This option is disabled by default.
<b>Path Method</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the method (criteria) used for selecting the root path. The following options are available:  <i>None</i> - Select this to indicate no criteria used in root path selection. <i>uniform</i> - Select this to indicate that the path selection method is uniform. When selected, two paths will be considered equivalent if the average value is the same for these paths. <i>mobile-snr-leaf</i> - Select this option if the Access Point is mounted on a vehicle or a mobile platform (AP7161 models only). When selected, the path to the route will be selected based on the <i>Signal To Noise Ratio</i> (SNR) to the neighbor device. <i>snr-leaf</i> - Select this to indicate the path with the best signal to noise ratio is always selected. <i>bound-pair</i> - Select this option to bind one mesh point connection at a time. Once established, other mesh point connection requests are denied.



**NOTE:** An AP7161 model Access Point can be deployed as a *vehicular mounted modem* (VMM) to provide wireless network access to a mobile vehicle (car, train etc.). A VMM provides layer 2 mobility for connected devices. VMM does not provide layer 3 services, such as IP mobility. For VMM deployment considerations, see [Vehicle Mounted Modem \(VMM\) Deployment Considerations on page 8-221](#).



**NOTE:** When using 4.9GHz, the root preferences selection for the radio's preferred interface still displays as 5GHz.

7 Set the following **Root Path Preference**:

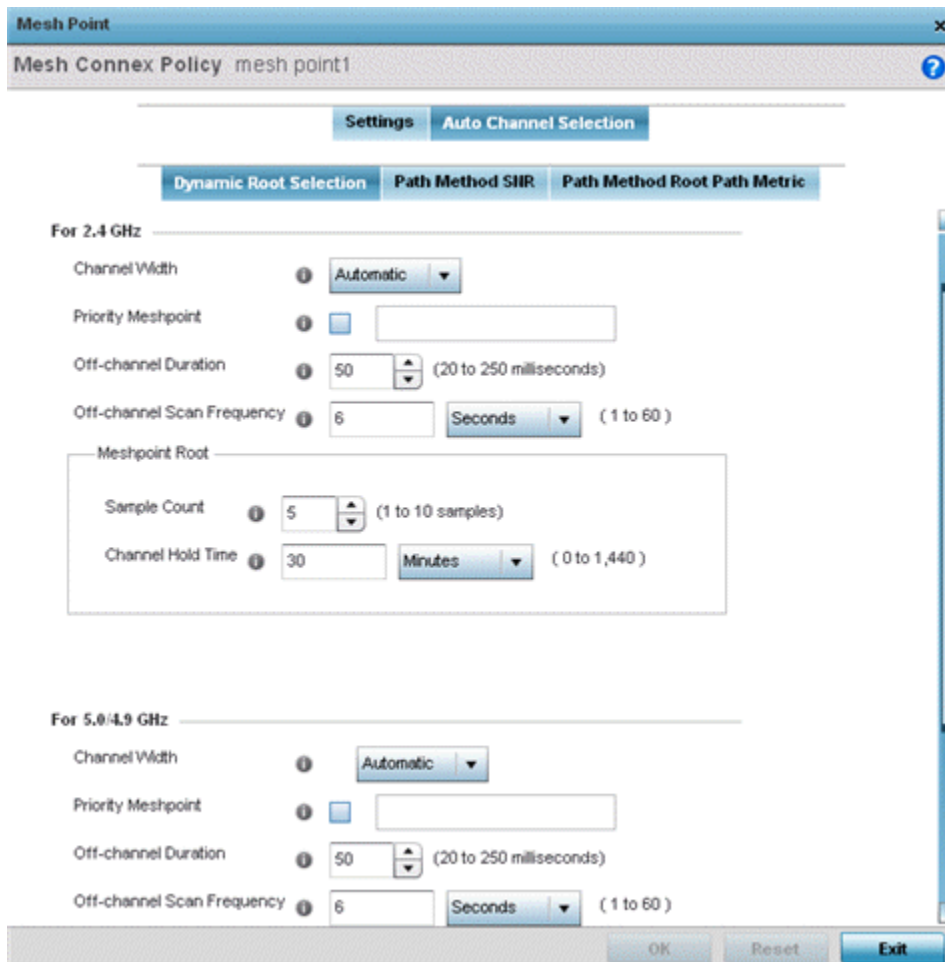
<b>Preferred Neighbor</b>	Specify the MAC address of a preferred mesh point neighbor.
<b>Preferred Root</b>	Specify the MAC address of a a preferred root device.
<b>Preferred Interface</b>	Use the drop-down menu to set the preferred mesh point interface to <i>2.4GHz</i> , <i>4.9 GHz</i> or <i>5.0GHz</i> . Selecting <i>None</i> makes all mesh point interfaces of equal priority for root path preference.

8 Set the following **Path Method Hysteresis**:

<b>Minimum Threshold</b>	Enter the minimum value for SNR above which a candidate for the next hop in a dynamic mesh network is considered for selection. This field along with <i>Signal Strength Delta</i> and <i>Sustained Time Period</i> are used to dynamically select the next hop in a dynamic mesh network. The default setting is 0 dB.
<b>Signal Strength Delta</b>	Enter a delta value in dB. A candidate for selection as a next hop in a dynamic mesh network must have a SNR value higher than the set value. This field, along with the <i>Minimum Threshold</i> and <i>Sustained Time Period</i> , are used to dynamically select the next hop in a dynamic mesh network. The default setting is 1 dB.

<b>Sustained Time Period</b>	Enter the duration (in seconds or minutes) for the duration a signal must sustain the constraints specified in the <i>Minimum Threshold</i> and <i>Signal Strength Delta</i> path hysteresis value. These values are used to dynamically select the next hop in a dynamic mesh network. The default setting is 1 second.
<b>SNR Delta Range</b>	Select the root selection method hysteresis (from 1 - 100dB) SNR delta range a candidate must sustain. The default setting is 1 dB.

9 Select the **Auto Channel Selection** tab.



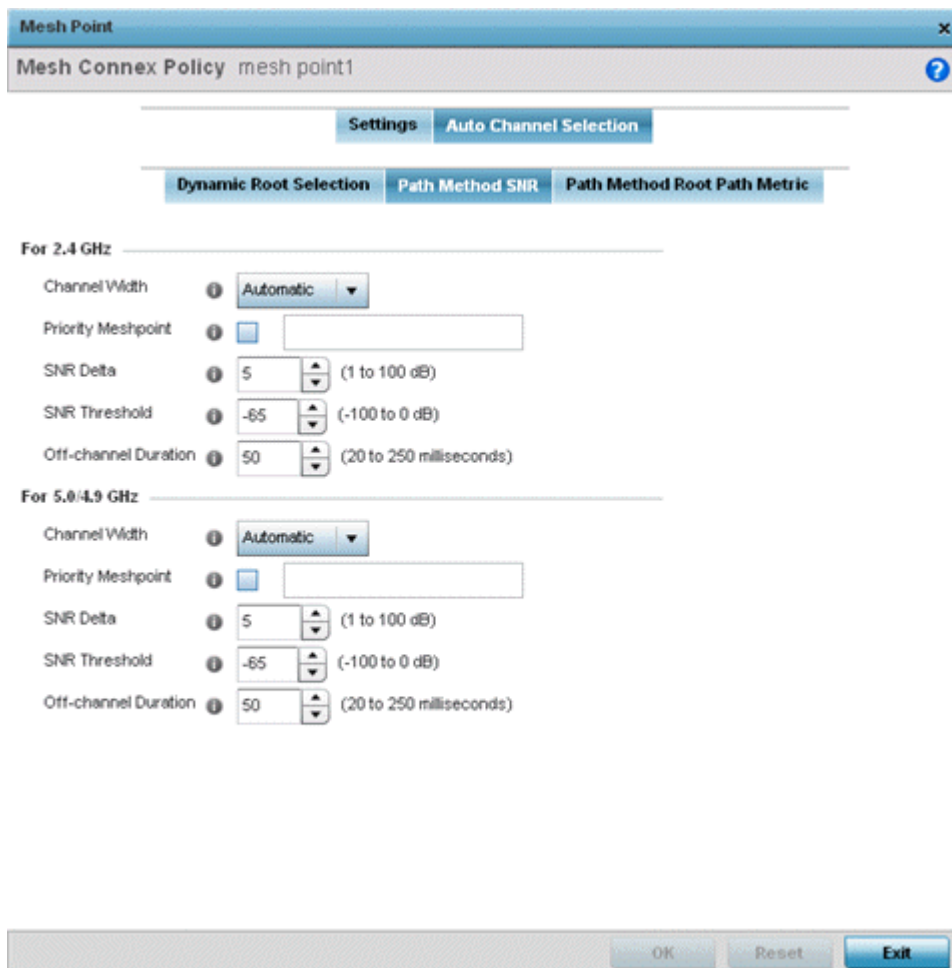
**Figure 8-129** Mesh Point Auto Channel Selection - Dynamic Root Selection screen

The **Dynamic Root Selection** screen displays by default. The Dynamic Root Selection screen provides configuration options for the 2.4 GHz and 5.0/4.9 GHz frequencies.

10 Set the following values (common to both 2.4 GHz and 5.0/4.9 GHz):

<b>Channel Width</b>	<p>Set the channel width the meshpoint's automatic channel scan assigns to the selected radio. Available options include:</p> <p><i>Automatic</i> - Defines the channel width is calculated automatically. This is the default value.</p> <p><i>20 MHz</i> - Sets the width between two adjacent channels as 20 MHz.</p> <p><i>40 MHz</i> - Sets the width between two adjacent channels as 40 MHz.</p> <p><i>80 MHz</i> - Sets the width between two adjacent channels as 80 MHz for 802.11ac Access Points.</p>
<b>Priority Meshpoint</b>	<p>Configure the meshpoint monitored for automatic channel scans. This is the meshpoint assigned priority over other available mesh points. When configured, a mesh connection is established with this mesh point. If not configured, a meshpoint is automatically selected. This setting is disabled by default.</p>
<b>Off-channel Duration</b>	<p>Set the duration (from 20 - 250 milliseconds) the scan dwells on each channel when performing an off channel scan. The default is 50 milliseconds.</p>
<b>Off-channel Scan Frequency</b>	<p>Set the duration (from 1- 60 seconds) between two consecutive off channel scans. The default is 6 seconds.</p>
<b>Meshpoint Root - Sample Count</b>	<p>Configure the number of scan samples (from 1- 10) performed for data collection before a mesh channel is selected. The default is 5.</p>
<b>Meshpoint Root - Channel Hold Time</b>	<p>Configure the duration (from 0 - 1440 minutes) to remain on a channel before channel conditions are reassessed for a possible channel change. Set this value to zero (0) to prevent an automatic channel selection from occurring. The default setting is 30 minutes.</p>

11 Select the **Path Method SNR** tab to configure *signal to noise* (SNR) ratio values when selecting the path to the meshpoint root.



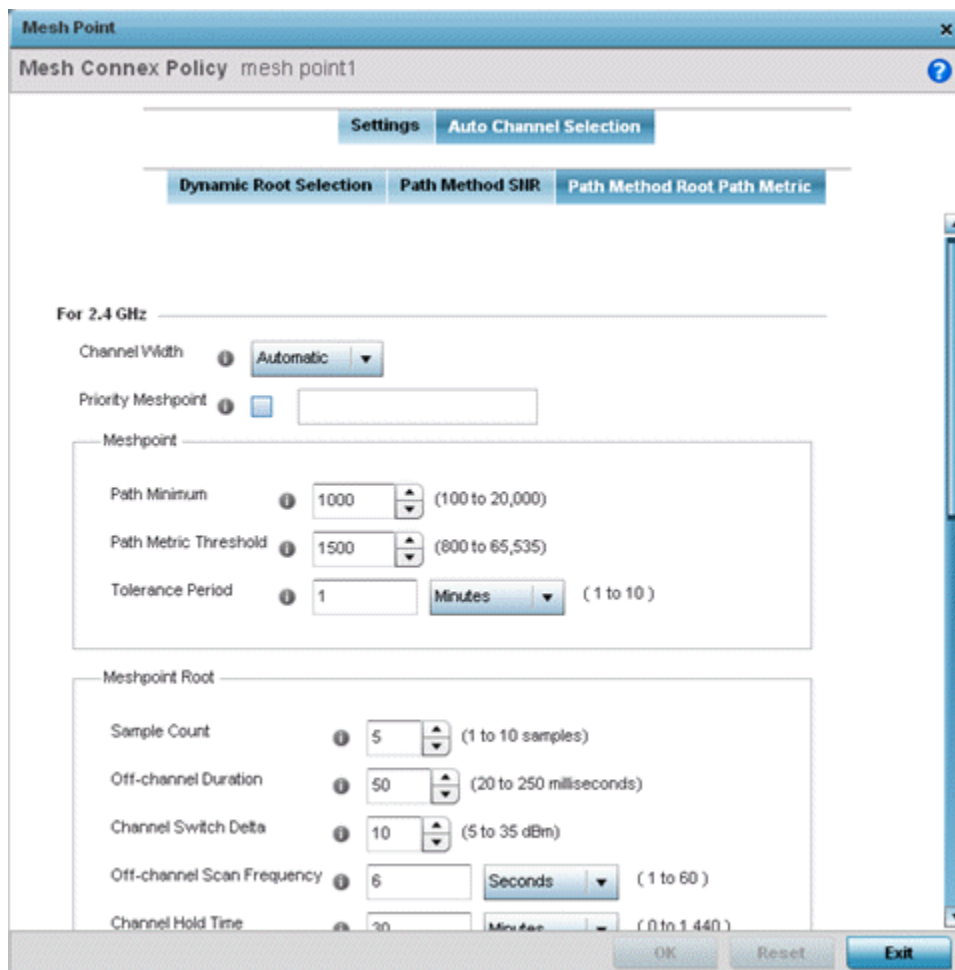
**Figure 8-130** Mesh Point Auto Channel Selection - Path Method SNR screen

12 Set the following 2.4 GHz and 5.0/4.9 GHz path method SNR data:

<p><b>Channel Width</b></p>	<p>Set the channel width the meshpoint automatic channel scan assigns to the selected radio. Available options include:</p> <p><i>Automatic</i> – Defines the channel width calculation automatically. This is the default value.</p> <p><i>20 MHz</i> – Sets the width between two adjacent channels as 20 MHz.</p> <p><i>40 MHz</i> – Sets the width between two adjacent channels as 40 MHz.</p> <p><i>80 MHz</i> – Sets the width between two adjacent channels as 80 MHz for 802.11ac Access Points.</p>
<p><b>Priority Meshpoint</b></p>	<p>Set the meshpoint monitored for automatic channel scans. This is the meshpoint assigned priority over other available mesh points. When configured, a mesh connection is established with this mesh point. If not configured, a meshpoint is automatically selected. This setting is disabled by default.</p>

<p><b>SNR Delta</b></p>	<p>Set the <i>signal to noise</i> (SNR) ratio delta (from 1 - 100 dB) for mesh path selections.</p> <p>When path selection occurs, the defined value is utilized for selecting the optimal path. A better candidate, on a different channel, must have a signal strength that exceeds this delta value when compared to the signal strength of the next hop in the mesh network. The default setting is 5 dB.</p>
<p><b>SNR Threshold</b></p>	<p>Set the SNR threshold for mesh path selections (from -100 to 0 dB).</p> <p>If the signal strength of the next mesh hop falls below this set value, a scan is triggered to select a better next hop. the default setting is -65 dB.</p>
<p><b>Off-channel Duration</b></p>	<p>Configure the duration (from 20 - 250 milliseconds) for scan dwells on each channel, when performing an off channel scan. The default setting is 50 milliseconds.</p>

13 Select the **Path Method Root Path Metric** tab to calculate root path metrics for a mesh point.



**Figure 8-131** Mesh Point Auto Channel Selection - Root Path Metric screen



14 Set the following **Path Method Root Path Metrics** (applying to both the 2.4 GHz and 5.0/4.9 GHz frequencies):

<b>Channel Width</b>	Set the channel width meshpoint automatic channel scan should assign to the selected radio. The available options are: <i>Automatic</i> - Defines the channel width as calculated automatically. This is the default value. <i>20 MHz</i> - Set the width between two adjacent channels as 20 MHz. <i>40 MHz</i> - Set the width between two adjacent channels as 40 MHz. <i>80 MHz</i> - Sets the width between two adjacent channels as 80 MHz for 802.11ac Access Points.
<b>Priority Meshpoint</b>	Define the meshpoint assigned priority over other available mesh points. When configured, a mesh connection is established with this mesh point. If not configured, a meshpoint is automatically selected.
<b>Meshpoint: Path Minimum</b>	Set the minimum path metric (from 100 - 20,000) for mesh connection establishment. The default setting is 1000.
<b>Meshpoint: Path Metric Threshold</b>	Configure a minimum threshold (from 800 - 65535) for triggering an automatic channel selection for meshpoint selection. The default is 1500.
<b>Meshpoint: Tolerance Period</b>	Configure a duration to wait before triggering an automatic channel selection for the next mesh hop. The default is one minute.
<b>Meshpoint Root: Sample Count</b>	Set the number of scans (from 1- 10) for data collection before a mesh point root is selected. The default is 5.
<b>Meshpoint Root: Off-channel Scan Frequency</b>	Configure the duration (from 1 -60 seconds) between two consecutive off channel scans for meshpoint root. The default is 6 seconds.
<b>Meshpoint Root: Channel Hold Time</b>	Set the minimum duration (from 0 - 1440 minutes) to remain on a selected channel before channel conditions are reassessed for a possible channel change. Set this value to zero (0) to prevent an automatic channel selection from occurring. The default is 30 minutes.
<b>Meshpoint Root: Channel Switch Delta</b>	Configure the delta (from 5 - 35 dBm) that triggers a meshpoint root automatic channel selection when exceeded. The default is 10 dBm.

15 Select **OK** to save the updates to the Mesh Point configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

### 8.14.1 Vehicle Mounted Modem (VMM) Deployment Considerations

Before defining a VMM configuration (mounting an AP7161 mesh point on a moving vehicle), refer to the following deployment guidelines to ensure the configuration is optimally effective:

- Disable layer 2 stateful packet inspection from the firewall policy. For more information, see [Firewall Policy Advanced Settings on page 10-10](#).
- Set the RTS threshold value to 1 on all mesh devices. The default is 2347. For more information on defining radio settings, refer to [Access Point Radio Configuration on page 8-55](#).
- Use Opportunistic as the rate selection setting for the AP7161 radio. The default is Standard.
- Disable Dynamic Chain Selection (radio setting). The default is enabled. This setting can be disabled in the CLI using the dynamic-chain-selection command, or in the UI.
- Disable A-MPDU Aggregation if the intended vehicular speed is greater than 30 mph.

- Setting a misconfiguration recovery time for the non-root AP profile is recommended. This should delay the rejection of the newest configuration push from the controller, potentially causing adoption loss.
- The additional delay is to support cases when the new configuration from the controller causes the root AP to move from current channel to other channels, resulting in a mesh link going down, and in turn non-root APs losing adoption. This delay accommodates the time needed for the non-root AP to scan all channels and finding the best root node. The non-root AP can begin operating on the new channel, and establish the mesh link re-adopt to the controller. (For countries using DFS, the scan time is also factored in for the configured value). If the AP fails to find a suitable root node within this time, this new config is a misconfiguration and the device would reject the latest config.
- For outdoor APs, it is recommended the misconfiguration-recovery-time be disabled. This can be accomplished by setting the value to 0. Update non root ap71xx profiles on the controller to include this change.

Using an appropriate console terminal and or connection to your device log on to the CLI and follow these steps:

```
rfs6000-xxxxxxx>enable
rfs6000-xxxxxxx #configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
rfs6000-xxxxxxx (config)#profile ap71xx Non-Root AP71xx
rfs6000-xxxxxxx (config-profile-Non-Root-AP71xx)#misconfiguration-recovery-time
0
rfs6000-xxxxxxx (config-profile-Non-Root-AP71xx)#
```

## 8.15 Profile Environmental Sensor Configuration (AP8132 Only)

A sensor module is a USB environmental sensor extension to either an AP8132 or AP8232 model Access Point. It provides a variety of sensing mechanisms, allowing the monitoring and reporting of the Access Point's radio coverage area. The output of the sensor's detection mechanisms are viewable using either the Environmental Sensor screen.

To set or override an environmental sensor configuration for an AP8132 model Access Point:

- 1 Select the **Configuration** tab from the Web UI.
- 2 Select **Profiles** from the Configuration tab.
- 3 Select **Manage Profiles** from the Configuration > Profiles menu.
- 4 Select **Environmental Sensor**.

**Figure 8-132** Profile - Environmental Sensor screen

- 5 Set the following **Light Sensor** settings for the sensor module:

<b>Enable Light Sensor</b>	Select this option to enable the light sensor on the module. This setting is enabled by default. The light sensor reports whether the deployment location has its lights powered on or off.
<b>Polling Time to Determine if Light is On/Off</b>	Define an interval in <i>Seconds</i> (2 - 201) or <i>Minutes</i> (1 - 4) for the sensor module to poll its environment to assess light intensity to determine whether lighting is on or off. The default polling interval is 10 seconds. Light intensity is used to determine whether the Access Point's deployment location is currently populated with clients.
<b>Shutdown WLAN Radio at Low Limit of Light Threshold</b>	Select this option to power off the Access Point's radio if the light intensity dims below the set threshold. If enabled, select All (both radios), radio-1 or radio-2.
<b>Low Limit of Light Threshold</b>	Set the low threshold limit (from 0 - 1,000 lux) to determine whether the lighting is off in the Access Point's deployment location. The default is 200. In daytime, the light sensor's value is between 350-450. The default values for the low threshold is 200, i.e., the radio is turned off if the average reading value is lower than 200.
<b>High Limit of Light Threshold</b>	Set the upper threshold limit (from 100 - 10,000 lux) to determine whether the lighting is on in the Access Point's deployment location. The default high threshold is 400. The radios are turned on when the average value is higher than 400.

- 6 Enable or disable the following **Environmental Sensors**:

<b>Enable Temperature Sensor</b>	Select this option to enable the module's temperature sensor. Results are reported back to the Access Point's Environment screens within the Statistics node. This setting is enabled by default.
----------------------------------	---

<b>Enable Motion Sensor</b>	Select this option to enable the module's motion sensor. Results are reported back to the Access Point's Environment screens within the Statistics node. This setting is enabled by default.
<b>Enable Humidity Sensor</b>	Select this option to enable the module's humidity sensor. Results are reported back to the Access Point's Environment screens within the Statistics node. This setting is enabled by default.

7 Define or override the following **Shared Configuration** setting:

<b>Polling Interval for All Sensors</b>	Set an interval in either <i>Seconds</i> (1 - 100) or <i>Minutes</i> (1 - 2) for the time between all environmental polling (both light and environment). The default setting is 5 seconds.
---	---

8 Select **OK** to save the changes made to the environmental sensor screen. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 8.16 Advanced Profile Configuration

A profile's advanced configuration is comprised of defining its MINT protocol configuration and the profile's NAS identifier and port ID attributes. MINT provides secure profile communications at the transport layer. Using MINT, a device can be configured to only communicate with other authorized (MINT enabled) devices. Therefore, MINT is well designed for profile support, wherein a group of managed devices share the same configuration attributes.

Refer to the advanced profile's Miscellaneous menu item to set the profile's NAS configuration. The profile database on the RADIUS server consists of user profiles for each connected *network access server* (NAS) port.

To set a profile's advanced configuration:

- 1 Select the **Configuration** tab from the Web UI.
- 2 Select **Profiles** from the Configuration tab.
- 3 Select **Manage Profiles** from the Configuration > Profiles menu.
- 4 Select **Advanced** and expand the menu item.

The following sub menu items are available as advanced profile configuration options:

- *Client Load Balance Configuration*
- *Configuring MINT Protocol*
- *Advanced Profile Miscellaneous Configuration*

### 8.16.1 Client Load Balance Configuration

#### ▶ *Advanced Profile Configuration*

Set a the ratios and calculation values used by Access Points to distribute client loads both amongst neighbor devices and the 2.4 and 5 GHz radio bands.

To define Access Point client load balance algorithms:

- 1 Select **Client Load Balancing** from the Advanced menu item.



**Figure 8-133** Advanced Profile - Client Load Balancing screen

- 2 Use the **Group ID** field to define a group ID of up to 32 characters to differentiate the ID from others with similar configurations.
- 3 Select the **SBC strategy** from the drop-down menu to determine how band steering is conducted. Band steering directs 5 GHz-capable clients to that band. When an Access Point hears a request from a client to associate on both the 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz bands, it knows the client is capable of operation in 5 GHz. Band steering steers the client by responding only to the 5 GHz association request and not the 2.4 GHz request. The client only associates in the 5 GHz band.
- 4 Set the following **Neighbor Selection Strategies**:

<b>Using Probes from common clients</b>	Select this option to select neighbors (peer devices) using probes from common clients. This setting is enabled by default.
<b>Using Notifications from roamed clients</b>	Select this option to select neighbors (peer devices) using roam notifications from roamed clients. This setting is enabled by default.
<b>Using smart-rf neighbor detection</b>	Select this option to select neighbors (peer devices) using Smart RF. This setting is enabled by default.

5 Enable **Balance Band Loads by Radio** to distribute an Access Points client traffic load across both the 2.4 and 5 GHz radio bands.

6 Set the following **Channel Load Balancing** settings:

<b>Balance 2.4 GHz Channel Loads</b>	Select this option to balance an Access Point's 2.4 GHz client load across all channels available to that model SKU. This setting is enabled by default.
<b>Balance 5 GHz Channel Loads</b>	Select this option to balance an Access Point's 5 GHz client load across all channels available to that model SKU. This setting is enabled by default.

7 Enable **Balance AP Loads** (from within the **AP Load Balance** field) to distribute client traffic evenly amongst neighbor Access Points. This setting is enabled by default.

8 Set the following **Band Control** values:

<b>Max. Band Load Difference Considered Equal</b>	Set the maximum load difference (from 1 - 100%) considered equal when comparing band loads. The default setting is 1%.
<b>Band Ratio (2.4 GHz)</b>	Set the relative load for the 2.4 GHz radio band as a leveled ratio from 1 - 10. The default setting is 0.
<b>Band Ratio (5 GHz)</b>	Set the relative load for the 5 GHz radio band as a leveled ratio from 1 - 10. The default setting is 0.
<b>5 GHz load at which both bands enabled</b>	Define the 5 GHz radio load value (from 1 - 100%) above which the 5 GHz radio is equally preferred in the overall load balance distribution. The default is 75%.
<b>2.4 GHz load at which both bands enabled</b>	Define the 2.4 GHz radio load value (from 1 - 100%) above which the 2.4 GHz radio is equally preferred in the overall load balance distribution. The default is 75%.

9 Define the following **Neighbor Selection** settings:

<b>Minimal signal strength for common clients</b>	Define the minimum signal strength value (from -100 to 30 dBm) that must be exceeded for an Access Point's detected client to be considered a common client. the default setting is -100 dBi.
<b>Minimum number of clients seen</b>	Set the minimum number of clients (from 0 - 256) that must be common to two or more Access Points for the Access Points to regard one another as neighbors using the common client neighbor detection strategy. The default setting is 0.
<b>Max confirmed neighbors</b>	Set the maximum number (from 1 - 16) of neighbor Access Points that must be detected amongst peer Access Point to initiate load balancing. The default setting is 16.
<b>Minimum signal strength for smart-rf neighbors</b>	Set the minimal signal strength value (from -100 to 30 dBm) for an Access Point detected using Smart RF to qualify as a neighbor Access Point. the default setting is - 65 dBm.

10 Set the following **Advanced Parameters** for client load balancing:

<b>Max. 2.4 GHz Difference Considered Equal</b>	Set the maximum load difference (from 1 - 100%) considered equal when comparing 2.4 GHz client loads. The default setting is 1%.
---	--

<b>Min. Value to Trigger 2.4 Ghz Channel Balancing</b>	Set the threshold (from 1 - 100%) beyond which channel load balancing is triggered in the 2.4 GHz radio band. The default setting is 5%.
<b>Weightage given to Client Count</b>	Set the weightage (from 1- 100%) applied to client count calculations in the 2.4 GHz radio band. The default setting is 90%.
<b>Weightage given to Throughput</b>	Set the weightage (from 1- 100%) applied to client throughput calculations in the 2.4 GHz radio band. The default setting is 10%.
<b>Max. 5 GHz Difference Considered Equal</b>	Set the maximum load difference (from 1 - 100%) considered equal when comparing 5 GHz client loads. The default setting is 1%.
<b>Min. Value to Trigger 5 Ghz Channel Balancing</b>	Set the threshold (from 1 - 100%) beyond which channel load balancing is triggered in the 5 GHz radio band. The default setting is 5%.
<b>Weightage given to Client Count</b>	Set the weightage (from 1- 100%) applied to client count calculations in the 5 GHz radio band. The default setting is 90%.
<b>Weightage given to Throughput</b>	Set the weightage (from 1- 100%) applied to client throughput calculations in the 5 GHz radio band. The default setting is 10%.

11 Define the following **AP Load Balancing** settings:

<b>Min. Value to Trigger Balancing</b>	Set a value (from 1 - 100%) used to trigger client load balancing when exceeded. The default setting is 5%.
<b>Max. AP Load Difference Considered Equal</b>	Set the maximum load balance differential (from 1 - 100%) considered equal when comparing neighbor Access Point client loads. The default setting is 1%.
<b>Weightage Given to Client Count</b>	Set the weightage (from 1- 100%) applied to client count in an Access Point's overall load calculation. The default setting is 90%.
<b>Weightage Given to Throughput</b>	Set the weightage (from 1- 100%) applied to client throughput in an Access Point's overall load calculation. The default setting is 10%.

12 Select **OK** to save the changes made to the profile's client load balance configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 8.16.2 Configuring MINT Protocol

### ► *Advanced Profile Configuration*

MINT provides the means to secure profile communications at the transport layer. Using MINT, a device can be configured to only communicate with other authorized (MINT enabled) devices.

Keys can be generated externally using any application (like openssl). These keys must be present on the managed device managing the domain for key signing to be integrated with the UI. A MAP device that needs to communicate with another first negotiates a security context with that device. The security context contains the transient keys used for encryption and authentication. A secure network requires users to know about certificates and PKI. However, administrators do not need to define security parameters for Access Points to be adopted (secure WISPe being an exception, but that isn't a commonly used feature). Also, users can replace any device on the network or move devices around and they continue to work. Default security parameters for MiNT are such that these scenarios continue to function as expected, with minimal user intervention required only when a new network is deployed.

To define a profile's MINT configuration:



- 1 Select **MINT Protocol** from the Advanced profile menu item.

The screenshot shows the 'Settings' tab of the 'Advanced Profile MINT' configuration screen. It includes sections for 'Area Identifier' (Level 1 Area ID with a spinner and an 'Alias' button), 'Priority Adjustment' (Designated IS Priority Adjustment with a spinner), 'Shortest Path First (SPF)' (Latency of Routing Recalculation with a spinner and a checked checkbox), 'MINT Link Settings' (MLCP IP, MLCP IPv6, MLCP VLAN, and Tunnel MINT across extended VLAN, all with checked checkboxes), 'Tunnel Controller Load Balancing' (Tunnel Controller Load Balancing (Level1) with a checked checkbox), 'Inter Tunnel Bridging' (Inter Tunnel Bridging (Level2) with a checked checkbox), 'Tunnel Controller Group' (Tunnel Controller Name), and 'Preferred Tunnel Controller Group' (Preferred Tunnel Controller Name). At the bottom, there are 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Exit' buttons.

**Figure 8-134** Advanced Profile MINT screen - Settings tab

The **Settings** tab displays by default.

- 2 Refer to the **Area Identifier** field to define the Level 1 and Level 2 Area IDs used by the profile's MINT configuration.

<b>Level 1 Area ID</b>	Select this option to either use a spinner control for setting the Level 1 Area ID (1 - 16,777,215) or create an alias for the ID. An alias enables an administrator to define a configuration item, such as a this area ID, as an alias once and use the alias across different configuration items. The default value is disabled.
------------------------	--

- 3 Define the following **Priority Adjustment** in respect to devices supported by the profile:

<b>Designated IS Priority Adjustment</b>	Set a <b>Designated IS Priority Adjustment</b> setting from -255 and 255. This is the value added to the base level DIS priority to influence the <i>Designated IS</i> (DIS) election. A value of +1 or greater increases DISiness. The default setting is 0.
--	---

- 4 Select the **Latency of Routing Recalculation** check box (within the **Shortest Path First (SPF)** field) to enable the spinner control used for defining a latency period from 0 - 60 seconds. The default setting has the check box disabled.

5 Define the following **MINT Link Settings** in respect to devices supported by the profile:

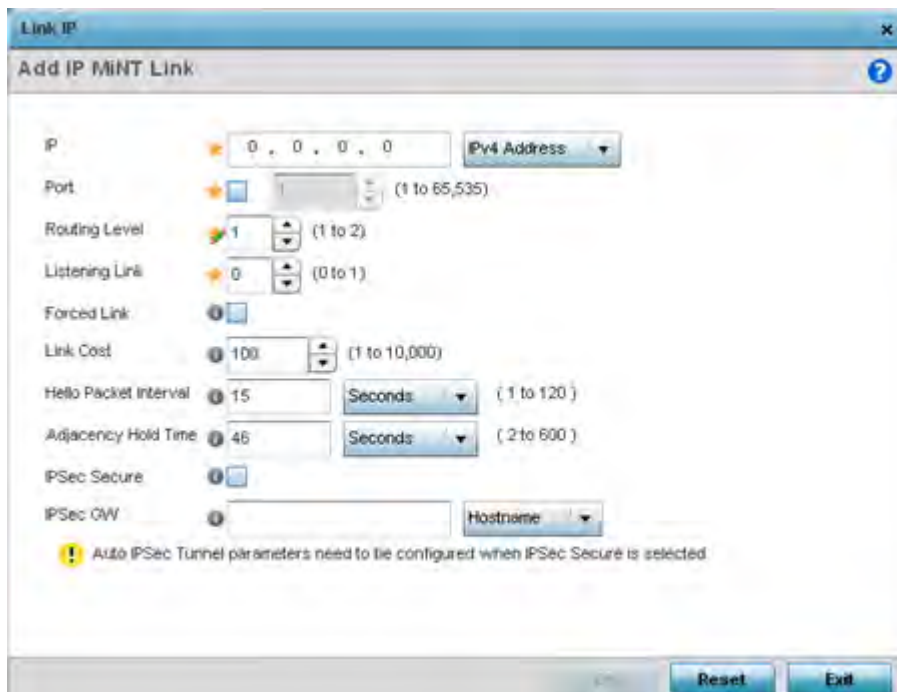
<b>MLCP IP</b>	Check this box to enable <i>MINT Link Creation Protocol</i> (MLCP) by IP Address. MLCP is used to create one UDP/IP link from the device to a neighbor. The neighboring device does not need to be a controller or service platform, it can be another Access Point with a path to the controller or service platform.
<b>MLCP IPv6</b>	Check this box to enable MLCP for automated MiNT UDP/IP link creation. This setting is enabled by default.
<b>MLCP VLAN</b>	Check this box to enable MLCP by VLAN. MLCP is used to create one VLAN link from the device to a neighbor. That neighboring device does not need to be a controller or service platform, it can be another Access Point with a path to the controller or service platform.
<b>Tunnel MiNT across extended VLAN</b>	Select this option to tunnel MiNT protocol packets across an extended VLAN. This setting is disabled by default.

- 6 Select **Tunnel Controller Load Balancing (Level 1)** to enable load balance distribution via a WLAN tunnel controller. This setting is disabled by default.
- 7 Select **Inter Tunnel Bridging (Level 2)** to enable inter tunnel bridging. This setting is disabled by default.
- 8 Enter a 64 character maximum **Tunnel Controller Name** for this tunneled-WLAN-controller interface.
- 9 Enter a 64 character maximum **Preferred Tunnel Controller Name** this Access Point prefers to tunnel traffic to via an extended VLAN.
- 10 Select the **IP** tab to display the link IP network address information shared by the devices managed by the MINT configuration.

Settings   IP   VLAN									
IP	Routing Level	Listening Link	Port	Forced Link	Link Cost	Hello Packet Interval	Adjacency Hold Time	IPSec Secure	IPSec GW
157.235.131	1	0	Not Set	✗	100	15s	46s	✗	

**Figure 8-135** Advanced Profile MINT screen - IP tab

- 11 The IP tab displays the IP address, routing level, link cost, hello packet interval and Adjacency Hold Time managed devices use to securely communicate amongst one another within the managed network. Select **Add** to create a new Link IP configuration or **Edit** to modify an existing MINT configuration.



**Figure 8-136** Advanced Profile MINT screen - IP Add tab

12 Set the following **Link IP** parameters to complete the MINT network address configuration:

<b>IP</b>	Define or override the IP address used by peers for interoperation when supporting the MINT protocol. Use the drop-down to select the type of IP address provided. The available choices are <i>IPv4 Address</i> and <i>IPv6 Address</i> .
<b>Port</b>	To specify a custom port for MiNT links, select this option and use the spinner control to define the port number between 1 and 65,535.
<b>Routing Level</b>	Use the spinner control to define a routing level of either 1 or 2.
<b>Listening Link</b>	Specify a listening link of either 0 or 1. UDP/IP links can be created by configuring a matching pair of links, one on each end point. However, that is error prone and doesn't scale. So UDP/IP links can also listen (in the TCP sense), and dynamically create connected UDP/IP links when contacted.
<b>Forced Link</b>	Check this box to specify the MiNT link as a forced link.
<b>Link Cost</b>	Use the spinner control to define a link cost between 1 - 10,000. The default value is 100.
<b>Hello Packet Interval</b>	Set an interval in either <i>Seconds</i> (1 - 120) or <i>Minutes</i> (1 - 2) for the transmission of hello packets. The default interval is 15 seconds.
<b>Adjacency Hold Time</b>	Set a hold time interval in either <i>Seconds</i> (2 - 600) or <i>Minutes</i> (1 - 10) for the transmission of hello packets. The default interval is 46 seconds.
<b>IPsec Secure</b>	Enable this option to provide IPsec secure peer authentication on the MiNT connection (link). This option is disabled by default.
<b>IPsec GW</b>	Select the numerical IP address or administrator defined hostname of the IPsec gateway.



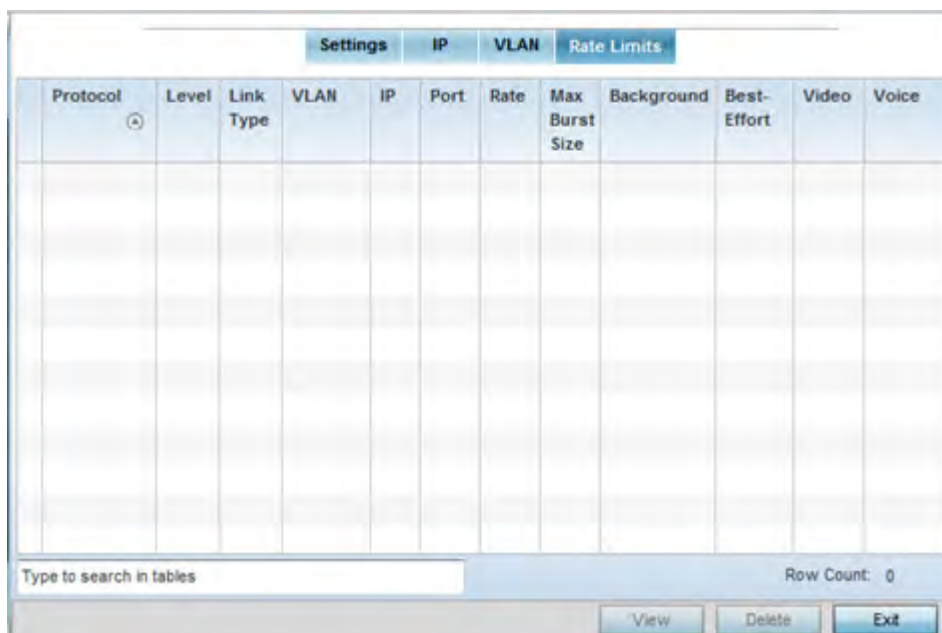
15 Set the following **VLAN** parameters for the MINT configuration:

<b>VLAN</b>	Define a VLAN ID between 1 - 4,094 used by peers for interoperation when supporting the MINT protocol.
<b>Routing Level</b>	Use the spinner control to define a routing level of either 1 or 2.
<b>Link Cost</b>	Use the spinner control to define a link cost between 1 - 10,000. The default value is 100.
<b>Hello Packet Interval</b>	Set an interval in either <i>Seconds</i> (1 - 120) or <i>Minutes</i> (1 - 2) for the transmission of hello packets. The default interval is 15 seconds.
<b>Adjacency Hold Time</b>	Set a hold time interval in either <i>Seconds</i> (2 - 600) or <i>Minutes</i> (1 - 10) for the transmission of hello packets. The default interval is 46 seconds.

16 Select **OK** to save the updates and overrides to the MINT Protocol's VLAN configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

17 Select the **Rate Limits** tab to display data rate limits configured on extended VLANs and optionally add or edit rate limit configurations.

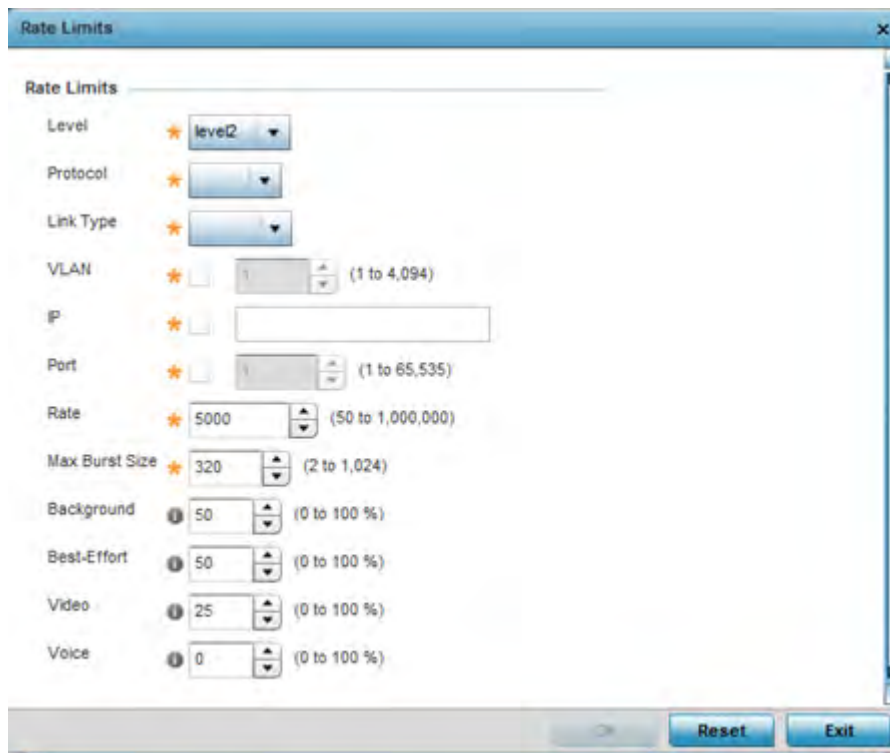
Excessive traffic can cause performance issues on an extended VLAN. Excessive traffic can be caused by numerous sources including network loops, faulty devices or malicious software such as a worm or virus that has infected on one or more devices. Rate limiting reduces the maximum rate sent or received per wireless client. It prevents any single user from overwhelming the wireless network. It can also provide differential service for service providers. Uplink and downlink rate limits are usually configured on a RADIUS server using vendor specific attributes. Rate limits are extracted from the RADIUS server's response. When such attributes are not present, the settings defined on the controller, service platform or Access Point are applied. An administrator can set separate QoS rate limit configurations for data types transmitted from the network (upstream) and data transmitted from a wireless clients back to associated radios (downstream).



**Figure 8-139** Advanced Profile MINT screen - Rate Limit tab

Existing rate limit configurations display along with their virtual connection protocols and data traffic QoS customizations.

18 Select **Add** to create a new rate limit configuration.



**Figure 8-140** Advanced Profile MINT screen - Add Rate Limit

19 Set the following **Rate Limits** to complete the MINT configuration:

<b>Level</b>	Select <i>level2</i> to apply rate limiting for all links on level2.
<b>Protocol</b>	Select either <i>mlcp</i> or <i>link</i> as this configuration's rate limit protocol. <i>Mint Link Creation Protocol</i> (MLCP) creates a UDP/IP link from the device to a neighbor. The neighboring device does not need to be a controller or service platform, it can be an Access Point with a path to the controller or service platform. Select <i>link</i> to rate limit using statically configured MiNT links.
<b>Link Type</b>	Select either <i>VLAN</i> , to configure a rate limit configuration on a specific virtual LAN, or <i>IP</i> to set rate limits on a static IP address/Port configuration.
<b>VLAN</b>	When the Protocol is set to <i>link</i> and the Link Type is set to <i>VLAN</i> , use the spinner control to select a virtual LAN from 1 - 4094 to refine the rate limiting configuration to a specific VLAN.
<b>IP</b>	When the Protocol is set to <i>link</i> and the Link Type is set to <i>VLAN</i> , enter the IP address as the network target for rate limiting.
<b>Port</b>	When the Protocol is set to <i>link</i> and the Link Type is set to <i>VLAN</i> , use the spinner control to set the virtual port (1 - 65,535) used for rate limiting traffic.
<b>Rate</b>	Define a rate limit between 50 - 1,000,000 kbps. This limit constitutes a threshold for the maximum the number of packets transmitted or received (from all access categories). Traffic that exceeds the defined rate is dropped and a log message is generated. The default setting is 5000 kbps.

<b>Max Burst Size</b>	Use the spinner to set the maximum burst size from 0 - 1024 kb. The smaller the burst, the less likely the upstream packet transmission will result in congestion for the WLAN's client destinations. By trending the typical number of ARP, broadcast, multicast and unknown unicast packets over a period of time, the average rate for each access category can be obtained. Once a baseline is obtained, administrators should add a 10% margin (minimally) to allow for traffic bursts. The default burst size is 320 kbytes.
<b>Background</b>	Configures the random early detection threshold (as a percentage) for low priority background traffic. Background packets are dropped and a log message generated if the rate exceeds the set value. Background traffic consumes the least bandwidth of any access category, so this value can be set to a lower value once a general upstream rate is known by the network administrator (using a time trend analysis). The default setting is 50%.
<b>Best-Effort</b>	Configures the random early detection threshold (as a percentage) for low priority best-effort traffic. Best-effort packets are dropped and a log message generated if the rate exceeds the set value. Best effort traffic consumes little bandwidth, so this value can be set to a lower value once a general upstream rate is known by the network administrator (using a time trend analysis).The default setting is 50%.
<b>Video</b>	Configures the random early detection threshold (as a percentage) for high priority video traffic. Video packets are dropped and a log message generated if the rate exceeds the set value. Video traffic consumes significant bandwidth, so this value can be set to a higher value once a general upstream rate is known by the network administrator (using a time trend analysis).The default setting is 25%.
<b>Voice</b>	Configures the random early detection threshold (as a percentage) for high priority voice traffic. Voice packets are dropped and a log message generated if the rate exceeds the set value. Voice applications consume significant bandwidth, so this value can be set to a higher value once a general upstream rate is known by the network administrator (using a time trend analysis).The default setting is 0%.

20 Select **OK** to save the updates and overrides to the MINT Protocol's rate limit configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

### 8.16.3 Advanced Profile Miscellaneous Configuration

#### ► *Advanced Profile Configuration*

Refer to the advanced profile's Miscellaneous menu item to set the profile's NAS configuration. The profile database on the RADIUS server consists of user profiles for each connected *network access server* (NAS) port. Each profile is matched to a username representing a physical port. When users are authorized, it queries the user profile database using a username representative of the physical NAS port making the connection.



- 1 Select **Miscellaneous** from the Advanced Profile's menu item.

**Figure 8-141** Advanced Profile Miscellaneous screen

- 2 Set a **NAS-Identifier Attribute** up to 253 characters.  
This is the RADIUS NAS-Identifier attribute that typically identifies the controller or service platform where a RADIUS message originates.
- 3 Set a **NAS-Port-Id Attribute** up to 253 characters in length.  
This is the RADIUS NAS port ID attribute which identifies the device port where a RADIUS message originates.
- 4 Select the **Turn on LEDs** option (within the **LEDs (Light Emitting Diodes)** section) to enable the LEDs on Access Point. This parameter is not available for controllers or service platforms.  
Select the **Flash Pattern(2)** option (within the **LEDs (Light Emitting Diodes)** field) to flash an Access Point's LED's in a distinct manner (different from its operational LED behavior) to allow an administrator to validate an Access Point has received its configuration from its managing controller or service platform.  
Enabling this feature allows an administrator to validate an Access Point has received its configuration (perhaps remotely at the site of deployment) without having to log into the managing controller or service platform. This feature is disabled by default.
- 5 Select the **Capable** option (within the **RF Domain Manager** section) to designate this specific profile managed device as being capable of being the RF Domain manager. The default value is enabled.
- 6 Select the **Priority** check box (within the **RF Domain Manager** section) to set a priority value for this specific profile managed device. Once enabled, use the spinner control to set a device priority between 1 - 255. The higher the number set, the higher the priority in the RF Domain manager election process.
- 7 Configure a **Root Path Monitor Interval**, between 1 and 65,535 seconds, to specify how often to check if the meshpoint is up or down.  
Set the **Additional Port** value (within the **RADIUS Dynamic Authorization** field) between 1 and 65,535 seconds, or to 1700 to enable a CISCO *Identity Services Engine (ISE) Authentication, Authorization and Accounting (AAA)* server to dynamically authenticate a client.

When a client requests access to a CISCO ISE RADIUS server supported network, the server presents the client with a URL where a device's compliance is checked for definition file validity (this form of file validity checking is called *posture*). If the client device complies, it is allowed access to the network.

- 8 Select **OK** to save the changes made to the profile's advanced miscellaneous configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

# 9 RF Domains

## About RF Domains

A controller or service platform's configuration is composed of numerous elements including RF Domains, profiles, policies, WLANs and device specific configurations. RF Domains are used to assign regulatory, location and relevant policies to controllers and service platforms. RF Domains are required, and each controller or service platform must be assigned at least one default RF Domain.

RF Domains allow administrators to assign configuration data to multiple devices deployed in a common coverage area, such as in a floor, building or site. Each RF Domain contains policies that can determine a Smart RF or WIPS configuration.

RF Domains enable administrators to override WLAN SSID name and VLAN assignments. This enables the deployment of a global WLAN across multiple sites and unique SSID name or VLAN assignments to groups of Access Points servicing the global WLAN. This WLAN override technique eliminates the requirement for defining and managing a large number of individual WLANs and profiles.

A configuration contains (at a minimum) one default RF Domain and can optionally use additional user defined RF Domains:

- *Default RF Domain* - Automatically assigned to each controller or service platform and associated Access Point by default.
- *User Defined RF Domains* - Created by administrators and manually assigned to individual controller or service platforms, but can be automatically assigned to Access Points using adoption policies.

Each controller and service platform is assigned to only one RF Domain at a time. However, a user defined RF Domain can be assigned to multiple controllers or service platforms as required. User defined RF Domains can be manually assigned or automatically assigned to Access Points using an AP provisioning policy.

## Default RF Domains

Each controller and service platform utilizes a default RF Domain. Access Points are assigned to this default RF Domain as they are discovered by the controller or service platform. The default RF Domain can be used for single site deployments, where regional, regulatory and RF policies are common between devices. When regional, regulatory or RF policies need to be device specific, user defined RF Domains are recommended.

A default RF Domain can also omit configuration parameters to prohibit regulatory configuration from automatically being inherited by devices as they are discovered by the controller or service platform. This is desirable in multi-site deployments with devices spanning multiple countries. Omitting specific configuration parameters eliminates the risk of an incorrect country code from being automatically assigned to a device.

## User Defined RF Domains

Configure and deploy user defined RF Domains for single or multiple sites when controllers or service platforms require unique regulatory and regional configurations, or unique Smart RF and WIPS policies. User defined RF Domains can be used to:

- Assign unique Smart RF or WIPS policies to Access Points deployed on different floors or buildings within a site.
- Assign unique regional or regulatory configurations to Access Points deployed in different states or countries.

- Assign unique WLAN SSIDs and/or VLAN IDs to sites assigned a common WLAN without having to define individual WLANs for each site.

User defined RF Domains must be manually assigned to controllers or service platforms, but can be manually or automatically assigned to Access Points. Manual RF Domain assignment can be performed using the CLI or UI by modifying each device's individual configuration and assigning a specific RF Domain to the device. Automatic RF Domain assignments can be made using an AP provisioning policy which can assign specific RF Domains to Access Points based on an Access Point's model, serial number, VLAN, DHCP option, IP address or MAC address.

Automatic RF Domain assignments are useful in large deployments, as they enable plug-n-play Access Point deployments by automatically applying RF Domains to remote Access Points.

## 9.1 Managing RF Domains

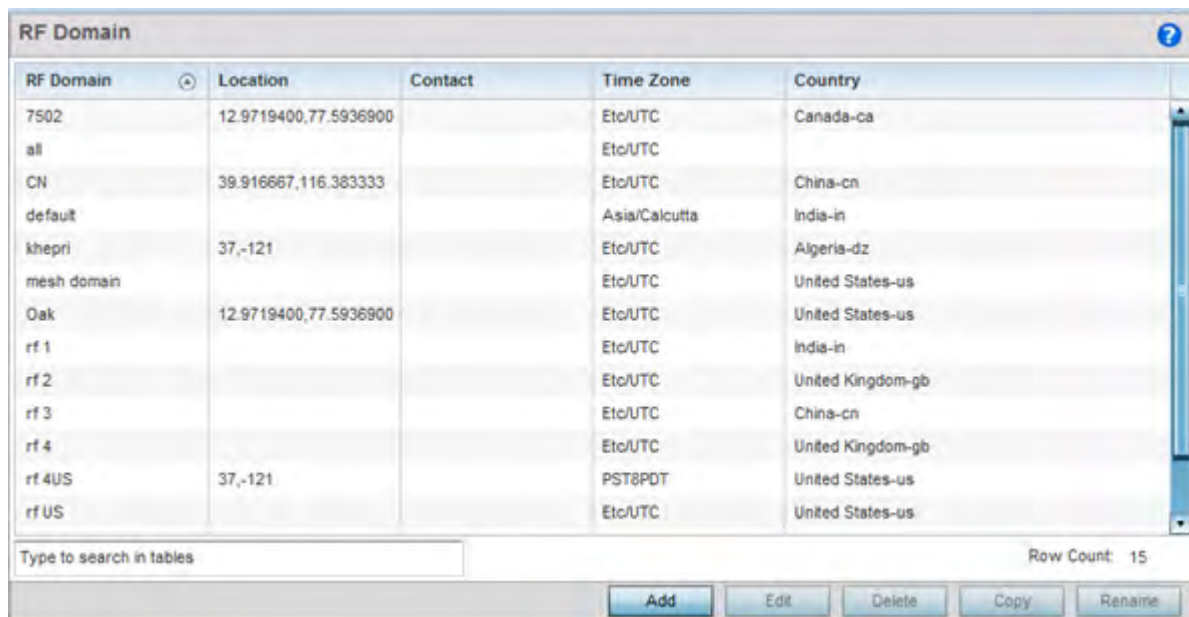
Managing RF Domains entails configuring individual RF Domains as required and managing them as a collective set.

To review the configurations of existing RF Domains:

- Select **Configuration > RF Domains** from the Web UI

The **RF Domain** screen displays within the main portion of the Web UI, and the **RF Domain Browser** displays in the lower, left-hand, portion of the Web UI.

- Refer to the RF Domain screen to review high-level configuration data for existing RF Domain policies.



RF Domain	Location	Contact	Time Zone	Country
7502	12.9719400,77.5936900		Etc/UTC	Canada-ca
all			Etc/UTC	
CN	39.916667,116.383333		Etc/UTC	China-cn
default			Asia/Calcutta	India-in
khepri	37,-121		Etc/UTC	Algeria-dz
mesh domain			Etc/UTC	United States-us
Oak	12.9719400,77.5936900		Etc/UTC	United States-us
rf 1			Etc/UTC	India-in
rf 2			Etc/UTC	United Kingdom-gb
rf 3			Etc/UTC	China-cn
rf 4			Etc/UTC	United Kingdom-gb
rf 4US	37,-121		PST8PDT	United States-us
rf US			Etc/UTC	United States-us

Type to search in tables Row Count: 15

**Figure 9-1** RF Domains screen

- Use the following (read only) information to determine whether a new RF Domain policy requires creation, or an existing RF Domain requires edit or deletion:

<b>RF Domain</b>	Lists each policy's name, as assigned when it was created. The RF Domain name cannot be changed as part of the edit process. Only one RF Domain can be assigned to a controller or service platform.
------------------	--

<b>Location</b>	Displays the physical location assigned to the RF Domain. The name could be as specific as the floor of a building, or as generic as an entire site. The location defines the physical area where a common set of devices are deployed using the policy's RF Domain configuration.
<b>Contact</b>	Lists the contact (or administrator) assigned to respond to events created by, or impacting, RF Domain member devices.
<b>Time Zone</b>	Displays the geographic time zone set for each RF Domain policy. RF Domains can be assigned unique country codes and time zone information for upload by devices deployed and managed across different states or countries, thus making them ideal for configurations across different geographical areas.
<b>Country</b>	Displays the two-digit country code set for the policy. The country code must be set accurately to avoid illegal operation, as device radios transmit in specific channels unique to their country of operation.

- 4 Refer to the **RF Domain Browser** to expand each existing RF Domain policy and review the device MAC addresses operating within the location defined and are using the configuration defined for the policy.



**Figure 9-2** RF Domain Browser

- 5 Once the data within the RF Domain screen and RF Domain Browser is reviewed, determine whether a new policy requires creation, or if an existing policy requires edit or deletion. The management of RF Domains entails the following:
- *RF Domain Basic Configuration*
  - *RF Domain Sensor Configuration*
  - *RF Client Name Configuration*
  - *RF Domain Overrides*
  - *RF Domain Network Alias*

### 9.1.1 RF Domain Basic Configuration

To set a RD Domain basic configuration:

- 1 Select **Configuration > RF Domains** from the Web UI.
- 2 From the RF Domain screen, either select the **Add** button or highlight an existing RF Domain and select **Edit**. An RF Domain configuration can be permanently removed by highlighting it from the list and selecting **Delete**. An existing RF Domain can also be modified by selecting it directly from the RF Domain Browser.

If adding or modifying an existing RF Domain, the RF Domain **Basic Configuration** screen displays by default.

**Figure 9-3** RF Domain - Basic Configuration screen

3 Define the following **Basic Configuration** parameters for the RF Domain:

<b>RF Domain</b>	If creating a new RF Domain, assign it a name representative of its intended function. The name cannot exceed 32 characters. The name cannot be changed as part of the edit process.
<b>Location</b>	Assign the physical location of the controller or service platform RF Domain. This name could be as specific as the floor of a building, or as generic as an entire site. The location defines the physical area where a common set of device configurations are deployed and managed by the RF Domain policy.
<b>Contact</b>	Provide the name of the contact (or administrator) assigned to respond to events created by or impacting the RF Domain.
<b>Time Zone</b>	Set the geographic time zone set for the RF Domain. RF Domains can be assigned unique country codes and time zone information for upload by devices deployed and managed across different states or countries, thus making them ideal for configurations across different geographical areas.
<b>Country</b>	Define the two-digit country code set for the RF Domain. The country code must be set accurately to avoid a device's illegal operation, as device radios transmit in specific channels unique to the country of operation.
<b>Latitude Coordinate</b>	Configures the of the RF Domain's latitude in order to fix its exact geographical location on a map. Use this option to define the geographical area where a common set of device configurations are deployed and managed by this RF Domain policy.

<b>Longitude Coordinate</b>	Configures the of the RF Domain's longitude in order to fix its exact geographical location on a map. Use this option to define the geographical area where a common set of device configurations are deployed and managed by this RF Domain policy.
<b>VLAN for Traffic Control</b>	Select the check box to enable a spinner control used for specifying the VLAN (within a range of 1 - 4,094) used for traffic control within this RF Domain.
<b>Controller Managed</b>	Select the check box to enable management of the RF Domain for adopted wireless clients by the controller or service platform. This option is disabled by default.

When a radio fails or is faulty, a Smart RF policy can be used to provide automatic recovery by instructing neighboring Access Points to increase their transmit power to compensate for the coverage loss.

Once correct Access Point placement has been established, Smart-RF can optionally be leveraged for automatic detector radio selection. Smart-RF uses detector radios to monitor RF events and can be used to ensure adequate detector coverage is available.

For an overview of Smart RF and instructions on how to create a Smart RF policy that can be used with a RF Domain, see [Smart RF Policy on page 6-79](#).

- 4 Define the following **SMART RF** parameters for the RF Domain:

<b>SMART RF Policy</b>	Assign an existing Smart RF Policy to the RF Domain, or if none exist create a new one.  Use the Smart RF Policy drop-down menu to navigate to existing Smart RF policies and select the one best suited to the function of the RF Domain. If none exist, select the <i>Create</i> icon and provide the required parameters to define a Smart RF configuration that can be used with the RF Domain. An existing policy can be edited by selecting the policy from the drop-down menu and selecting the <i>Edit</i> icon.
<b>Override Channel List 2.4 GHz</b>	Select an override list of channels Smart RF can use for channel compensations on 2.4 GHz radios.
<b>Override Channel List 5 GHz</b>	Select an override list of channels Smart RF can use for channel compensations on 5 GHz radios.

- 5 Define the following **Smart Scan** values:

<b>Enable Dynamic Channel</b>	Enable this setting to configuration the dynamic channel listing mode for smart scans in the 2.4 and 5 GHz bands. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>2.4 GHz Channels</b>	Set the list of 2.4 GHz mode channels sent in smart scans responses to clients.
<b>5 GHz Channels</b>	Set the list of 5 GHz mode channels sent in smart scans responses to clients.

- 6 Assign an existing **Wireless IPS** (WIPS) policy to the RF Domain, or if none exist create a new one.

Use the **WIPS Policy** drop-down menu to navigate to existing WIPS policies and select the one best suited to the function of the RF Domain. If none exist, select the **Create** icon and provide the required parameters to define a WIPS configuration that can be used with the RF Domain. An existing policy can be edited by selecting the policy from the drop-down menu and selecting the **Edit** icon.

A WIPS policy provides protection against wireless threats and acts as a key layer of security complementing wireless VPNs, encryption and authentication. a WIPS policy uses a dedicated sensor for actively detecting and



locating rogue AP devices. After detection, WIPS uses mitigation techniques to block the devices by manual termination, air lockdown, or port suppression.

For an overview of WIPS and instructions on how to create a WIPS policy that can be used with a RF Domain, see [Configuring a WIPS Policy on page 10-52](#).

- 7 Refer to the **Statistics** field to define the **Update Interval** (from 0, 5 - 300 seconds) used to statistics update interval for this specific RF Domain. A value of zero is permissible to enable *auto mode*. Use auto mode, the update interval is automatically set by the RF Domain manager based on the RF Domain's current load.
- 8 Use the **Licenses** drop-down menu to obtain and leverage feature licenses from RF Domain member devices.
- 9 Select **OK** to save the changes to the Basic Configuration, or select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 9.1.2 RF Domain Sensor Configuration

The *Wireless Intrusion Protection System* (WIPS) protects the network, wireless clients and Access Point radio traffic from attacks and unauthorized access. WIPS provides tools for standards compliance and around-the-clock wireless network security in a distributed environment. WIPS allows administrators to identify and accurately locate attacks, rogue devices and network vulnerabilities in real time and permits both a wired and wireless lockdown of wireless device connections upon acknowledgment of a threat.

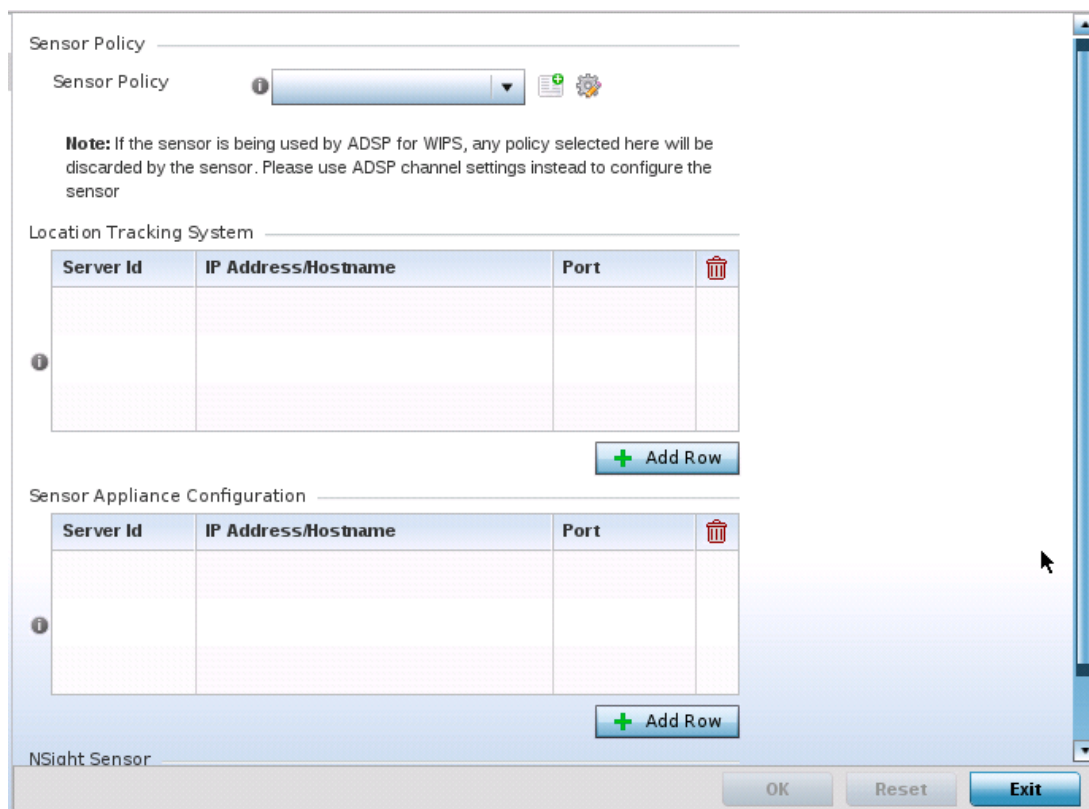
In addition to AirDefense sensors, an Access Point radio can function as a sensor and upload data to an external WIPS server. Unique WIPS server configurations are used by RF Domains to ensure a WIPS server is available to support the unique data protection needs of individual RF Domains.

WIPS is not supported on a WLAN basis, rather sensor functionality is supported on the Access Point radio(s) available to each managed WLAN. When an Access Point radio is functioning as a WIPS sensor, it's able to scan in sensor mode across all legal channels within 2.4 and 5.0 GHz. Sensor support requires an AirDefense WIPS Server on the network. Sensor functionality is not provided by the Access Point alone. The Access Point works in conjunction with a dedicated WIPS server.

The AP7522, AP7532, AP7562, AP8432 and AP8533 model Access Points can also function as L-Sense sensors. L-Sense is a highly scalable indoor locationing platform that gathers location-related analytics, such as visitor trends, peak and off-peak times, dwell time, heat-maps, etc. to enable entrepreneurs deeper visibility at a venue. To enable the location tracking system, the L-Sense server should be up and running and the RF Domain Sensor configuration should point to the L-sense server.

To define a sensor configuration for an RF Domain's group of member devices:

- 1 From the RF Domain screen, either select the **Add** button or highlight an existing policy and select **Edit**. An existing policy can also be modified by selecting it directly from the RF Domain Browser.
- 2 Select the **Sensor** item from within the RF Domain screen.



**Figure 9-4** RF Domain - Sensor screen

- 3 Select the **+ Add Row** button to populate the **Location Tracking System** table with up to one L-Sense server credentials.

<b>Server Id</b>	Use the spinner control to assign a numerical ID for the <i>Location Tracking Sensor</i> (L-Sense) resource. As of now only one (1) L-Sense sever can be configured.
<b>IP Address/Hostname</b>	Provide the numerical (non DNS) IP address or hostname of the L-Sense server used by the RF Domain member devices. A hostname cannot exceed 64 characters or contain an underscore.  When configured, Access Points (supporting L-Sense) post location-related analytics to the L-Sense server.
<b>Port</b>	Use the spinner control to specify the port for the L-Sense server. This is the port on which the L-Sense server is reachable. The default port is 443.

- 4 Select the **+ Add Row** button to populate the **ADSP Appliance Configuration** table with up to three rows for ADSP server credentials:

<b>Server Id</b>	Use the spinner control to assign a numerical ID for up to three WIPS server resources. The server with the lowest defined ID is the first reached by the controller or service platform. The default ID is 1.
<b>IP Address/Hostname</b>	Provide the numerical (non DNS) IP address or hostname of each server used as a WIPS sensor server by RF Domain member devices. A hostname cannot exceed 64 characters or contain an underscore.
<b>Port</b>	Use the spinner control to specify the port of each WIPS sensor server utilized by RF member devices. The default port is 443.

- 5 Select the **Enable NSight Sensor** option, within the **NSight Sensor** field, to enable the sensor module. This option is disabled by default.
- 6 Select **OK** to save the changes to the ADSP appliance sensor configuration, or select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

### 9.1.3 RF Client Name Configuration

The **Client Name Configuration** screen displays clients connected to RF Domain member Access Points adopted by networked controllers or service platforms. Use the screen to associate administrator assigned client names to specific connected client MAC addresses for improved client management.

To define a client name configuration used with RF Domain member devices:

- 1 From the RF Domain screen, either select the **Add** button or highlight an existing policy and select **Edit**. An existing policy can also be modified by selecting it directly from the RF Domain browser.
- 2 Select the **Client Name Configuration** item from within the RF Domain screen.

Mac Address	Name	
11-22-33-11-22-33	lancelot	🗑️
* 00-00-00-00-00-00	<input type="text"/>	🗑️

**+ Add Row**

OK   **Reset**   **Exit**

**Figure 9-5** RF Domain Client Configuration screen

- 3 Either select the **+ Add Row** button to create a new client configuration or highlight an existing configuration and select the **Delete** icon to remove it.
- 4 Enter the client's factory coded MAC address.
- 5 Assign a **Name** to the RF Domain member Access Point's connected client to assist in its easy recognition.
- 6 Select **OK** to save the changes to the configuration, or select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

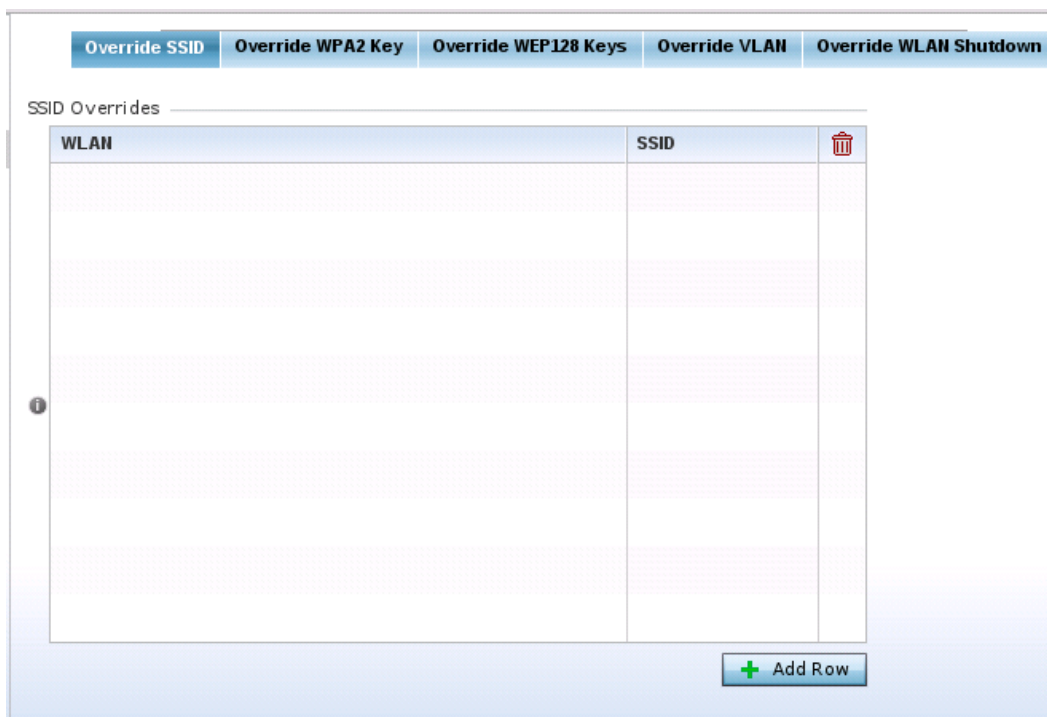
## 9.1.4 RF Domain Overrides

Each WLAN provides associated wireless clients with a *Service Set Identifier* (SSID). This has limitations, because it requires wireless clients associate with different SSIDs to obtain QoS and security policies. However, a WiNG managed RF Domain can have WLANs assigned and advertise a single SSID, but allow users to inherit different QoS or security policies. Use the Override SSID screen to assign WLANs an override SSID as needed for the RF Domain.

Controllers and service platforms allow the mapping of a WLAN to more than one VLAN. When a wireless client associates with a WLAN, it is assigned a VLAN in such a way that users are load balanced across VLANs. The VLAN is assigned from the pool representative of the WLAN. Clients are tracked per VLAN, and assigned to the least used/loaded VLAN. Client VLAN usage is tracked on a per-WLAN basis.

To define an override SSID and override VLAN configuration used with a RF Domain:

- 1 From the RF Domain screen, either select the **Add** button or highlight an existing policy and select **Edit**.  
An existing policy can also be modified by selecting it directly from the RF Domain Browser.
- 2 Select the **Overrides** item from within the RF Domain screen.



**Figure 9-6** RF Domain Override SSID screen

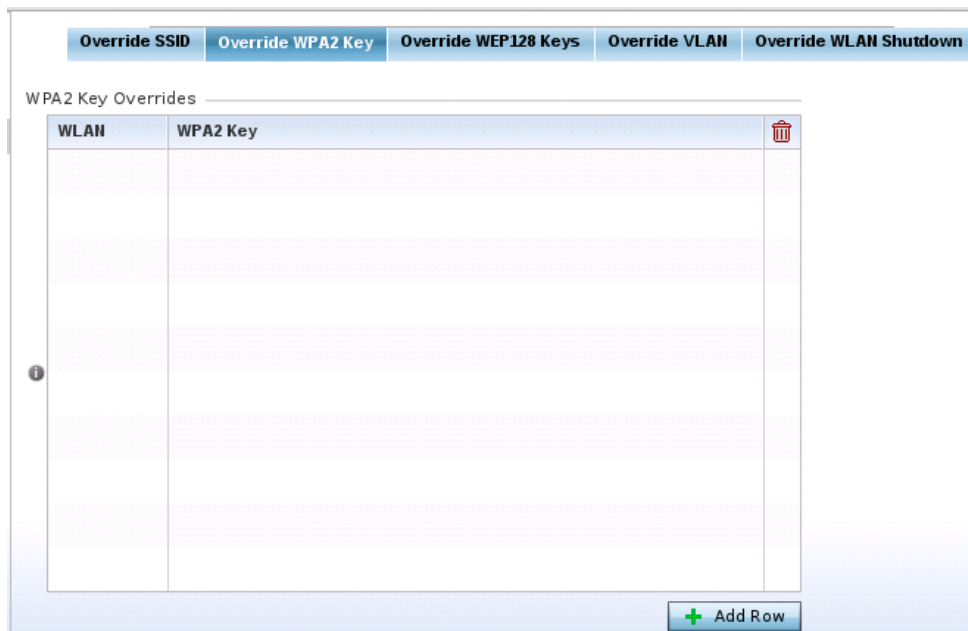
The Overrides screen is partitioned into two tabs, with the **Override SSID** screen displayed by default.

- 3 Either select the **+ Add Row** button to create a new Override SSID configuration. Highlight an existing Sensor Server Configuration and select the Delete icon to remove it from the table.
- 4 Use the **WLAN** drop-down menu to select an existing WLAN to be supplied an override SSID.  
If a WLAN configuration has not been defined, you'll need to select the **Create** button and define at least one complete WLAN configuration. For detailed information on the steps required to create a WLAN, see [Wireless LAN Policy on page 6-2](#).
- 5 Enter the name of the **SSID** to use with this WLAN.

6 Select **OK** to save the changes to the Override SSID configuration, or select **Reset** to Revert to the last saved configuration.

7 Select the **Override WPA2 Key** tab.

The Override WPA2 Key screen enables an administrator to override a WLAN's existing WPA2 PSK at the RF Domain level (not the profile level). WPA2 is a newer 802.11i standard that provides even stronger wireless security than *Wi-Fi Protected Access* (WPA) and WEP.



**Figure 9-7** RF Domain Override WPA2 PSK screen

8 Select the **+ Add Row** button to populate the screen with a row for selecting an existing WLAN to override with a new WPA2 key.

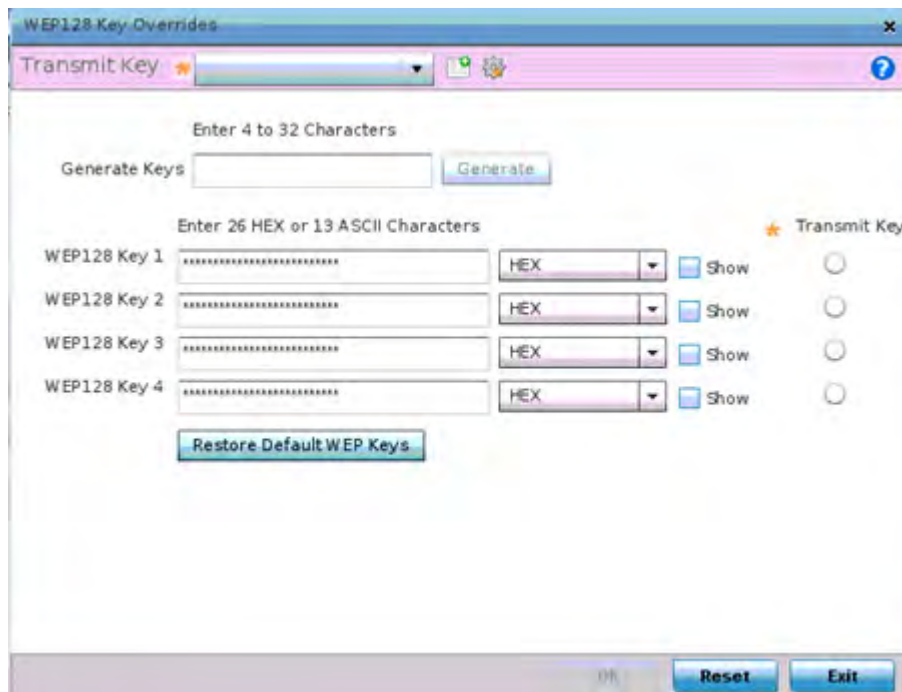
<b>WLAN</b>	Use the drop-down menu to selecting an existing WLAN whose key is to be overridden at the RF Domain level. A new WLAN configuration can be defined by selecting the <i>Create</i> icon, or an existing WLAN configuration can be modified by selecting the <i>Edit</i> icon.
<b>WPA2 Key</b>	Enter either an alphanumeric string of 8 to 64 ASCII characters or 64 HEX characters as the primary string both transmitting and receiving authenticators must share in this new override PSK. The alphanumeric string allows character spaces. The string is converted to a numeric value. This passphrase saves the administrator from entering the 256-bit key each time keys are generated.

9 Select **OK** to save the changes to the Override WPA2 Key configuration, or select **Reset** to Revert to the last saved configuration.

10 Select the **Override WEP128 Keys** tab.

The Override WEP128 Keys screen enables an administrator to override a WLAN's existing WEP128 Keys at the RF Domain level (not the profile level). WEP 128 uses a 104 bit key which is concatenated with a 24-bit *initialization vector* (IV) to form the RC4 traffic key. WEP may be all a small-business user needs for the simple encryption of wireless data on the WLAN. However, networks that require more security are at risk from a WEP flaw. WEP is only recommended if there are client devices incapable of using higher forms of security. The existing 802.11 standard alone offers administrators no effective method to update keys.

The screen displays existing WLAN's whose WEP128 key configuration can be overridden at the RF Domain level. Either select **Add** to create a new WEP128 key configuration, or select an existing WEP128 Key and the **Edit** button to modify the selected key's existing key algorithm. The screen populates with the parameters required to override a WEP 128 configuration for the selected WLAN.



**Figure 9-8** RF Domain Override WEP128 Keys screen

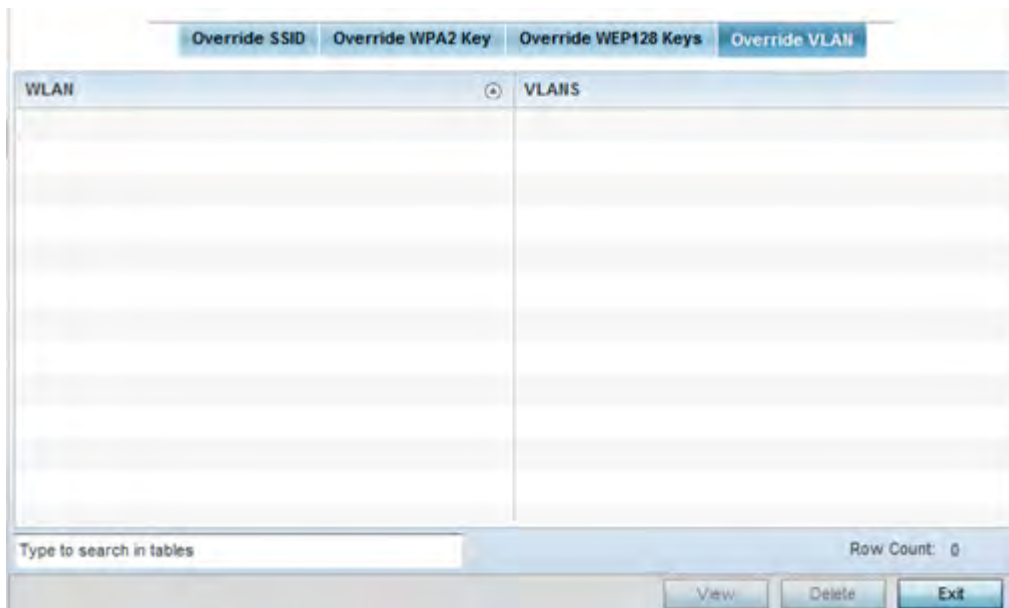
11 Define the following settings for the WEP 128 key override:

<b>Generate Keys</b>	Specify a 4 to 32 character RF Domain override Pass Key and click the <i>Generate</i> button. The pass key can be any alphanumeric string. Wireless devices and their connected clients use the algorithm to convert an ASCII string to the same hexadecimal number. Clients without adapters need to use WEP keys manually configured as hexadecimal numbers.
<b>Keys 1-4</b>	Use the Key #1-4 areas to specify key numbers. For WEP 128 (104-bit key), the keys are 26 hexadecimal characters in length. Select one of these keys for default activation by clicking its radio button. Selecting <i>Show</i> displays a key in exposed plain text.
<b>Restore Default WEP Keys</b>	If you feel it necessary to restore the WEP algorithm back to its default settings, click the <i>Restore Default WEP Keys</i> button. Default WEP 128 keys are as follows: <i>Key 1</i> 101112131415161718191A1B1C <i>Key 2</i> 202122232425262728292A2B2C <i>Key 3</i> 303132333435363738393A3B3C <i>Key 4</i> 404142434445464748494A4B4C

12 Select **OK** to save the changes to the Override WEP128 Key configuration, or select **Reset** to Revert to the last saved configuration.

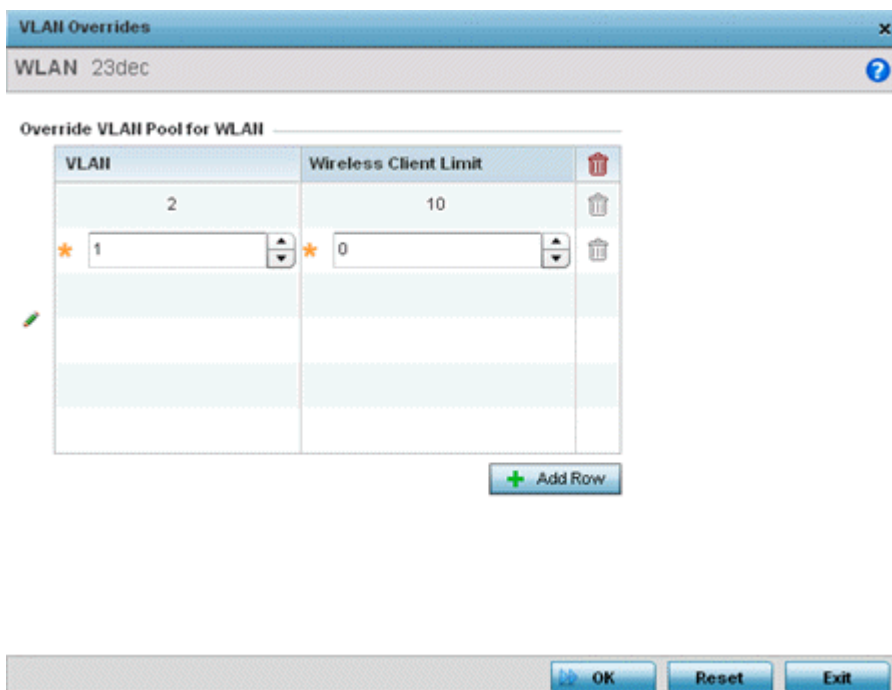
13 Select the **Override VLAN** tab.

The Override VLAN screen lists those WLANs available for override.



**Figure 9-9** RF Domain Override VLAN screen

- 14 Either select **Add** to define a new VLAN override configuration, choose an existing WLAN and select **Edit** to change the override VLAN and limit or select **Delete** to remove a WLAN's override VLAN configuration.

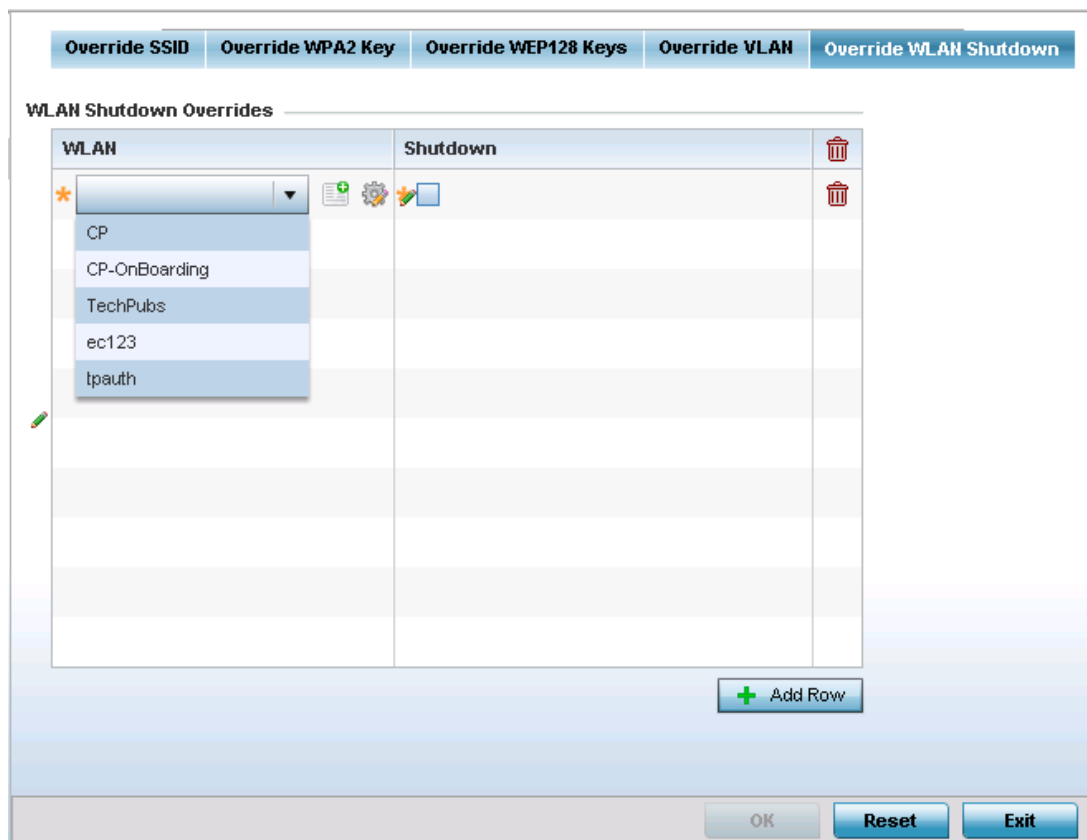


**Figure 9-10** RF Domain Override VLAN Add screen

- 15 Use the **VLAN** spinner control to change the VLANs for an existing WLAN client connection or select the **+ Add Row** button to add additional VLANs for WLAN client connection.
- 16 Use the **Wireless Client Limit** spinner control to set the client user limit for the VLAN. The maximum allowed client limit is 8192 per VLAN. VLANs can be defined from 1 - 4094. The default setting is 0.



- 17 Select **OK** to save the changes to the Override VLAN configuration, or select **Reset** to Revert to the last saved configuration.
- 18 Select the **Override WLAN Shutdown** tab.
- 19 Select the **+ Add Row** button to populate the screen with a row for selecting an existing WLAN to override the WLAN mode of operation.



**Figure 9-11** RF Domain Override Override WLAN Shutdown Add screen

- 20 Provide the following parameters:

<b>WLAN</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select an existing WLAN whose mode of operation is to be overridden at the RF Domain level.
<b>Shutdown</b>	Select to shut down the WLAN operation on all mapped radios. When selected, the RF Domains Access Points, mapped to the selected WLAN, stop beaconing the WLAN's SSID.

- 21 Select **OK** to save the changes to the Override WLAN Shutdown configuration, or select **Reset** to Revert to the last saved configuration.

### 9.1.5 RF Domain Network Alias

With large deployments, the configuration of remote sites utilizes a set of shared attributes, of which a small set of attributes are unique for each location. For such deployments, maintaining separate configuration (WLANs, profiles, policies and ACLs) for each remote site is complex. Migrating any global change to a particular configuration item to all the remote sites is a complex and time consuming operation.

Also, this practice does not scale gracefully for quick growing deployments.

An alias enables an administrator to define a configuration item, such as a hostname, as an alias once and use the defined alias across different configuration items such as multiple ACLs.

Once a configuration item, such as an ACL, is utilized across remote locations, the Alias used in the configuration item (ACL) is modified to meet local deployment requirement. Any other ACL or other configuration items using the modified alias also get modified, simplifying maintenance at the remote deployment.

Aliases have scope depending on where the Alias is defined. Alias are defined with the following scopes:

- *Global aliases* are defined from the **Configuration > Network > Alias** screen. Global aliases are available for use globally across all devices, profiles and RF Domains in the system.
- *Profiles aliases* are defined from the **Configuration > Devices > System Profile > Network > Alias** screen. Profile aliases are available for use to a specific group of wireless controllers or Access Points. Alias values defined in a profile override the alias values defined within global aliases.
- *RF Domain aliases* are defined from the **Configuration > Devices > RF Domain > Alias** screen. RF Domain aliases are available for use for a site as a RF Domain is site specific. RF Domain alias values override alias values defined in a global alias or a profile alias configuration.
- *Device aliases* are defined from the **Configuration > Devices > Device Overrides > Network > Alias** screen. Device aliases are utilized by a singular device only. Device alias values override global, profile or RF Domain alias configurations.

Using an alias, configuration changes made at a remote location override any updates at the management center. For example, if an network alias defines a network range as 192.168.10.0/24 for the entire network, and at a remote deployment location, the local network range is 172.16.10.0/24, the network alias can be overridden at the deployment location to suit the local requirement. For the remote deployment location, the network alias work with the 172.16.10.0/24 network. Existing ACLs using this network alias need not be modified and will work with the local network for the deployment location. This simplifies ACL definition and management while taking care of specific local deployment requirements.

For more information, refer to the following:

- [RF Domain Basic Alias](#)
- [RF Domain Network Group Alias](#)
- [RF Domain Network Service Alias](#)

### 9.1.5.1 RF Domain Basic Alias

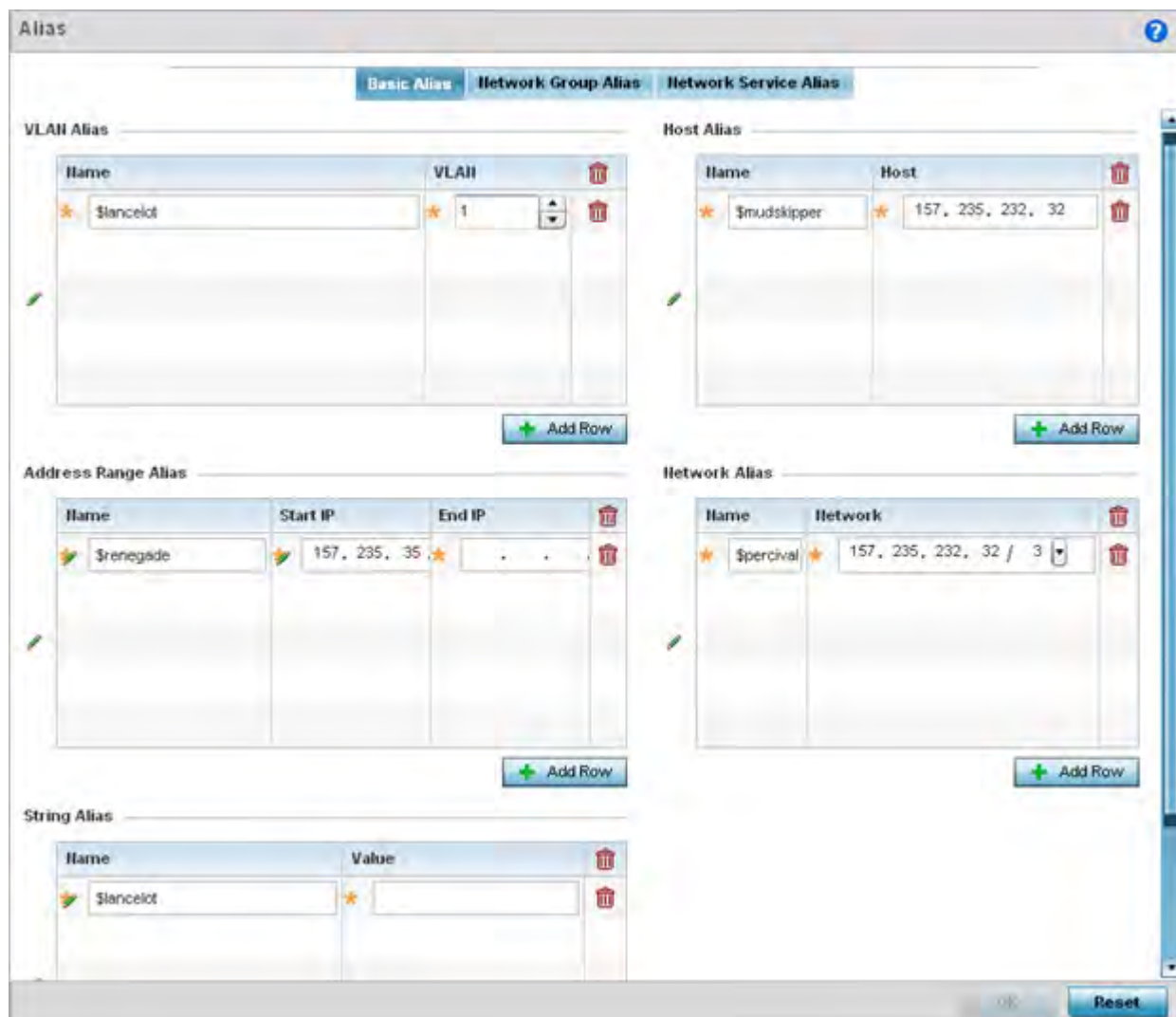
A *basic alias* is a set of configurations consisting of *VLAN*, *Host*, *Network* and *Address Range* alias configurations. A VLAN alias is a configuration for optimal VLAN re-use and management for local and remote deployments. A host alias configuration is for a particular host device's IP address. A network alias configuration is utilized for an IP address on a particular network. An address range alias is a configuration for a range of IP addresses.

To set a network basic alias configuration for a RF Domain:

- 1 Select **Configuration > RF Domains** from the Web UI.  
The **RF Domain** screen displays within the main portion of the Web UI, and the **RF Domain Browser** displays in the lower, left-hand, portion of the Web UI.
- 2 From the RF Domain screen, either select the **Add** button or highlight an existing RF Domain and select **Edit**.  
An existing policy can also be modified by selecting it directly from the RF Domain browser.

- Expand the **Network** menu item and select **Alias**.

The Alias screen displays with the **Basic Alias** tab displayed by default.



**Figure 9-12** RF Domain Network Basic Alias screen

- Select **+ Add Row** to define **VLAN Alias** settings:

Use the **Vlan Alias** field to create unique aliases for VLANs that can be utilized at different deployments. For example, if a VLAN ID is set as 10 for the central network, and the VLAN is set as 26 at a remote location, the VLAN can be overridden at the remote location using an alias. At the remote location, the network is functional with an ID of 26, but utilizes the name defined at the central local network. A new VLAN need not be created specifically at the remote location.

<b>Name</b>	If adding a new <i>VLAN Alias</i> , provide it a distinguishing name up to 32 characters. The alias name always starts with a dollar sign (\$).
<b>Vlan</b>	Use the spinner control to set a numeric VLAN ID from 1 - 4094.

- Select **+ Add Row** to define **Address Range Alias** settings:

Use the **Address Range Alias** field to create aliases for IP address ranges that can be utilized at different deployments. For example, if an ACL defines a pool of network addresses as 192.168.10.10 through 192.168.10.100 for an entire network, and a remote location's network range is 172.16.13.20 through 172.16.13.110,

the remote location's ACL can be overridden using an alias. At the remote location, the ACL works with the 172.16.13.20-110 address range. A new ACL need not be created specifically for the remote deployment location.

<b>Name</b>	If adding a new <i>Address Alias</i> , provide it a distinguishing name up to 32 characters. The alias name always starts with a dollar sign (\$).
<b>Start IP</b>	Set a starting IP address used with a range of addresses utilized with the address range alias.
<b>End IP</b>	Set an ending IP address used with a range of addresses utilized with the address range alias.

6 Select **+ Add Row** to define **String Alias** settings:

Use the **String Alias** field to create aliases for strings that can be utilized at different deployments. For example, if the main domain at a remote location is called loc1.domain.com and at another deployment location it is called loc2.domain.com, the alias can be overridden at the remote location to suit the local (but remote) requirement. At one remote location, the alias functions with the loc1.domain.com domain and at the other with the loc2.domain.com domain.

<b>Name</b>	If adding a new <i>String Alias</i> , provide it a distinguishing name up to 32 characters. The alias name always starts with a dollar sign (\$).
<b>Value</b>	Provide a 255 character maximum string value to use in the alias.

7 Select **+ Add Row** to define **Host Alias** settings:

Use the **Host Alias** field to create aliases for hosts that can be utilized at different deployments. For example, if a central network DNS server is set a static IP address, and a remote location's local DNS server is defined, this host can be overridden at the remote location. At the remote location, the network is functional with a local DNS server, but uses the name set at the central network. A new host need not be created at the remote location. This simplifies creating and managing hosts and allows an administrator to better manage specific local requirements.

<b>Name</b>	If adding a new <i>Host Alias</i> , provide it a distinguishing name up to 32 characters. The alias name always starts with a dollar sign (\$).
<b>Host</b>	Set the numeric IP address set for the host.

8 Select **+ Add Row** to define **Network Alias** settings:

Use the **Network Alias** field to create aliases for IP networks that can be utilized at different deployments. For example, if a central network ACL defines a network as 192.168.10.0/24, and a remote location's network range is 172.16.10.0/24, the ACL can be overridden at the remote location to suit their local (but remote) requirement. At the remote location, the ACL functions with the 172.16.10.0/24 network. A new ACL need not be created specifically for the remote deployment. This simplifies ACL definition and allows an administrator to better manage specific local requirements.

<b>Name</b>	If adding a new <i>Network Alias</i> , provide it a distinguishing name up to 32 characters. The alias name always starts with a dollar sign (\$).
<b>Network</b>	Provide a network address in the form of <i>host/mask</i> .

9 Select **OK** when completed to update the set of basic alias rules. Select **Reset** to revert the screen back to its last saved configuration.

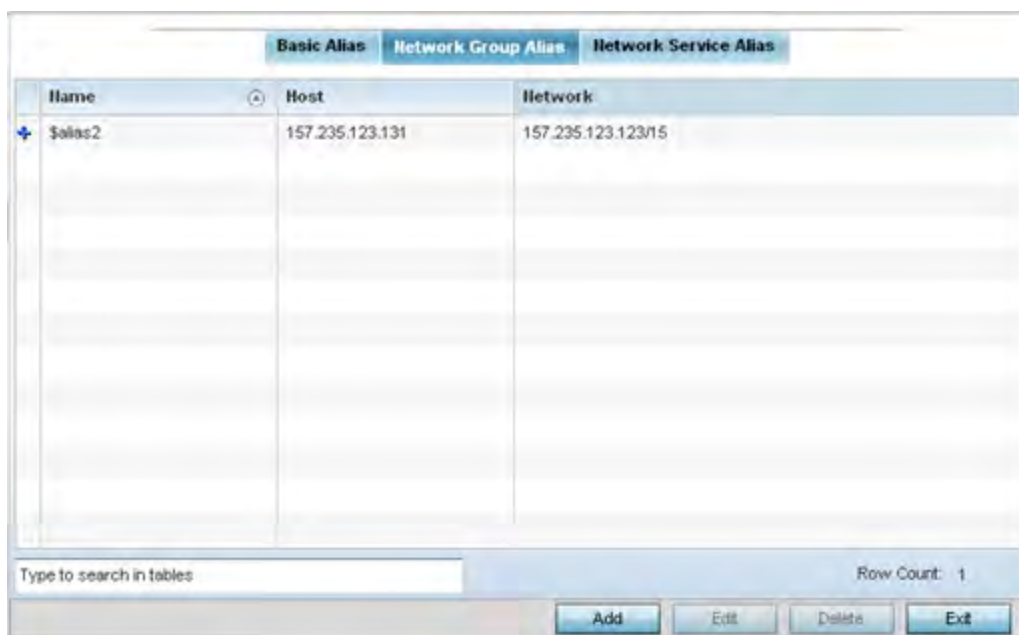
### 9.1.5.2 RF Domain Network Group Alias

A *network group alias* is a set of configurations consisting of host and network configurations. Network configurations are complete networks in the form of 192.168.10.0/24 or an IP address range in the form of 192.168.10.10-192.168.10.20. Host configurations are in the form of a single IP address, 192.168.10.23.

A network group alias can contain multiple definitions for a host, network, and IP address range. A maximum of eight (8) Host entries, eight (8) network entries and eight (8) IP addresses range can be configured inside a network group alias. A maximum of 32 network group alias entries can be created.

To set a network group alias configuration for a RF Domain:

- 1 Select **Configuration > RF Domains** from the Web UI.  
The **RF Domain** screen displays within the main portion of the Web UI, and the **RF Domain Browser** displays in the lower, left-hand, portion of the Web UI.
- 2 From the RF Domain screen, either select the **Add** button or highlight an existing RF Domain and select **Edit**.  
An existing policy can also be modified by selecting it directly from the RF Domain browser.
- 3 Expand the **Network** menu item and select **Alias**.
- 4 Select the **Network Group Alias** tab. The screen displays the attributes of existing network group alias configurations.



**Figure 9-13** RF Domain Network Group Alias screen

<b>Name</b>	Displays the administrator assigned name used with the network group alias.
<b>Host</b>	Displays all the host aliases configured in the listed network group alias. Displays a blank column if no host alias is defined.
<b>Network</b>	Displays all network aliases configured in the listed network group alias. Displays a blank column if no network alias is defined.

- 5 Select **Add** to create a new policy, **Edit** to modify the attributes of an existing policy or **Delete** to remove obsolete policies.

- 6 Select the added row to expand it into configurable parameters for defining the network alias rule.

**Figure 9-14** RF Domain Network Group Alias Add screen

- 7 If adding a new **Network Alias Rule**, provide it a name up to 32 characters. The network group alias name always starts with a dollar sign (\$).
- 8 Define the following network group alias parameters:

<b>Host</b>	Specify the Host IP address for up to eight IP addresses supporting network aliasing. Select the down arrow to add the IP address to the table.
<b>Network</b>	Specify the netmask for up to eight IP addresses supporting network aliasing. Subnets can improve network security and performance by organizing hosts into logical groups. Applying the subnet mask to an IP address separates the address into a host address and an extended network address. Select the down arrow to add the mask to the table.

- 9 Within the **Range** table, use the **+ Add Row** button to specify the **Start IP** address and **End IP** address for the alias range or double-click on an existing an alias range entry to edit it.
- 10 Select **OK** when completed to update the network alias rules. Select **Reset** to revert the screen back to its last saved configuration.

### 9.1.5.3 RF Domain Network Service Alias

A *network service alias* is a set of configurations that consist of protocol and port mappings. Both source and destination ports are configurable. For each protocol, up to 2 source port ranges and up to 2 destination port ranges can be configured. A maximum of 4 protocol entries can be configured per network service alias.

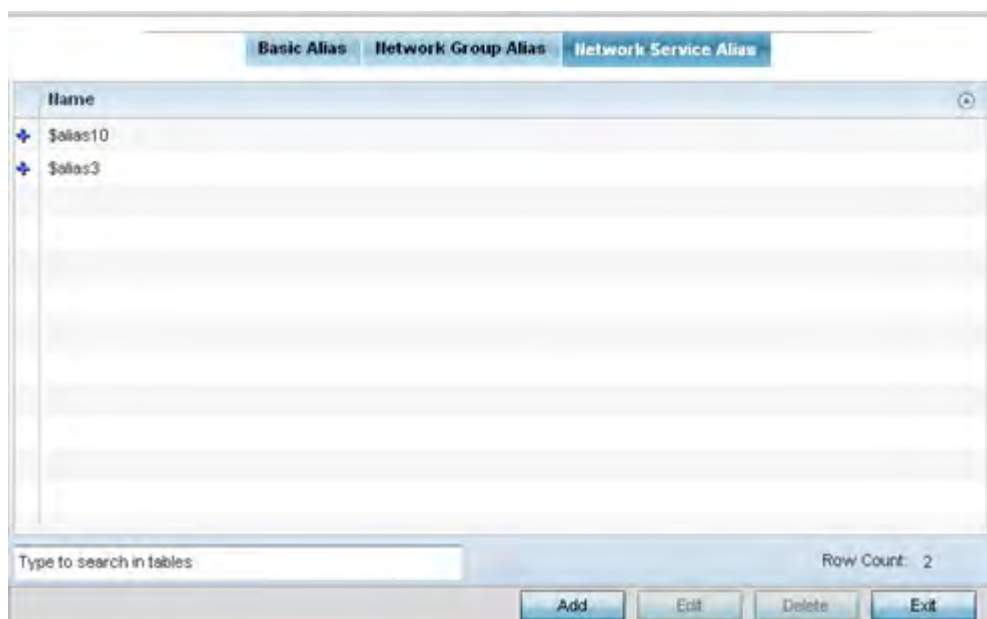
Use a service alias to associate more than one IP address to a network interface, providing multiple connections to a network from a single IP node.

To define a service alias configuration for a RF Domain:

- 1 Select **Configuration > RF Domains** from the Web UI.

The **RF Domain** screen displays within the main portion of the Web UI, and the **RF Domain Browser** displays in the lower, left-hand, portion of the Web UI.

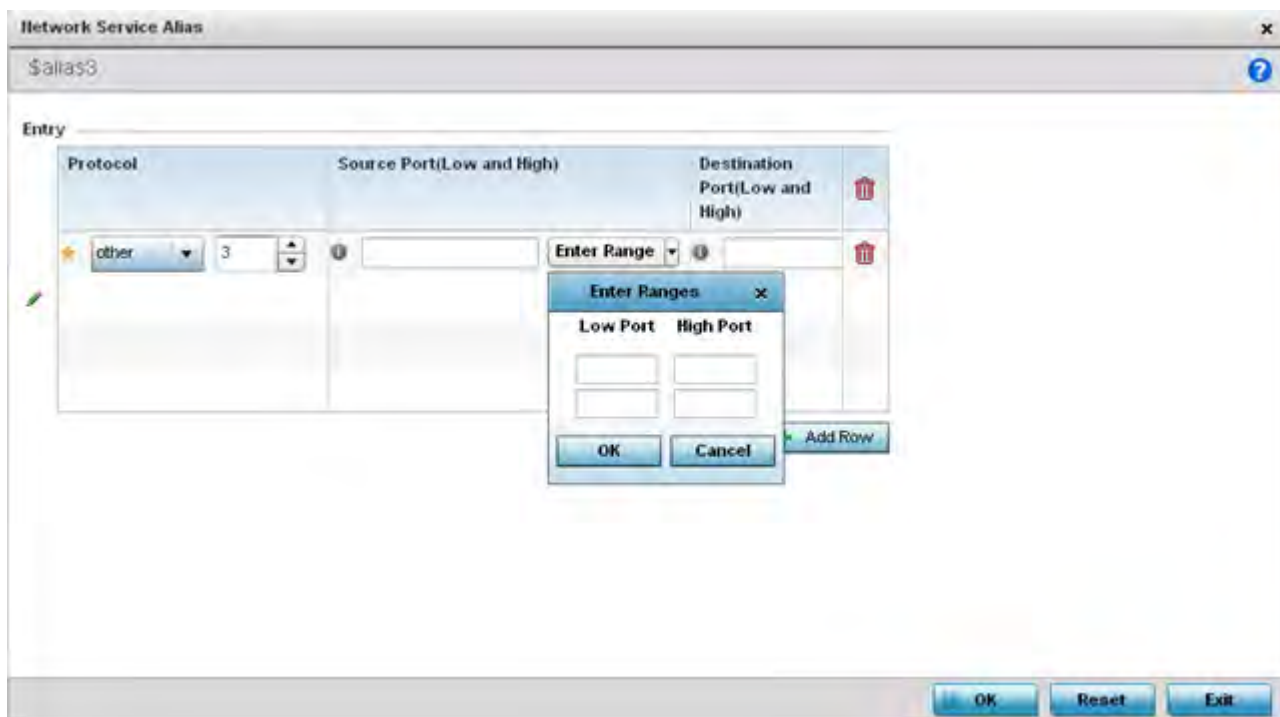
- 2 From the RF Domain screen, either select the **Add** button or highlight an existing RF Domain and select **Edit**. An existing policy can also be modified by selecting it directly from the RF Domain browser.
- 3 Expand the **Network** menu item and select **Alias**.
- 4 Select the **Network Service Alias** tab. The screen displays existing network service alias configurations.



**Figure 9-15** RF Domain Network Service Alias screen

- 5 Select **Add** to create a new policy, **Edit** to modify the attributes of an existing policy or **Delete** to remove obsolete policies.
- 6 Select the added row to expand it into configurable parameters for defining the service alias rule.





**Figure 9-16** RF Domain Network Service Alias Add screen

- 7 If adding a new **Network Service Alias Rule**, provide it a name up to 32 characters. Ensure a \$ precedes the name.
- 8 Select **+ Add Row** and provide the following configuration parameters:

<b>Protocol</b>	Specify the protocol for which the alias has to be created. Use the drop down to select the protocol from <i>eigrp</i> , <i>gre</i> , <i>icmp</i> , <i>igmp</i> , <i>ip</i> , <i>vrrp</i> , <i>igp</i> , <i>ospf</i> , <i>tcp</i> and <i>udp</i> . Select <i>other</i> if the protocol is not listed. When a protocol is selected, its protocol number is automatically selected.
<b>Source Port (Low and High)</b>	This field is only relevant if the protocol is either <i>tcp</i> or <i>udp</i> . Specify the source ports for this protocol entry. A range of ports can be specified. Select the <i>Enter Ranges</i> button next to the field to enter a lower and higher port range value. Up to eight (8) such ranges can be specified.
<b>Destination Port (Low and High)</b>	This field is only relevant if the protocol is either <i>tcp</i> or <i>udp</i> . Specify the destination ports for this protocol entry. A range of ports can be specified. Select the <i>Enter Ranges</i> button next to the field to enter a lower and higher port range value. Up to eight (8) such ranges can be specified.

- 9 Within the **Range** field, use the **+ Add Row** button to specify the **Start IP** address and **End IP** address for the service alias range or double-click on an existing service alias range entry to edit it.
- 10 Select **OK** when completed to update the service alias rules. Select **Reset** to revert the screen back to its last saved configuration.

## 9.1.6 RF Domain Deployment Considerations

Before defining RF Domain policies, refer to the following deployment guidelines to ensure the configurations are optimally effective:

- Controllers or service platforms utilizes a default RF Domain. Access Points are assigned to this default RF Domain as they are discovered. The default RF Domain can be used for single site deployments, where regional, regulatory and RF policies are common between devices.
- User defined RF Domains must be manually assigned to controllers or service platforms, but can be manually or automatically assigned to Access Points.
- A Rogue AP detection configuration is a central component of an RF Domain policy, as it provides the RF Domain policy with the means to filter potentially threatening devices from operating with devices approved within the managed network.
- WIPS is not supported on a WLAN basis, rather sensor functionality is supported on the radio(s) available to each WLAN.
- When planning sensor coverage, a minimum of 1 detector radio is recommended per 4 Access Points. To ensure effective placement, LANPlanner can be used to provide predictive planning services and visualization to ensure adequate radio coverage is provided based on site application and device requirements. LANPlanner provides visualization tools ensuring adequate radio coverage for client radios and sensors. A physical site survey should also be performed to verify client radio coverage, before a final deployment.
- Both default and user defined RF Domains contain policies and configuration parameters. Changes made to policies or configuration parameters are automatically inherited by all the devices assigned to the RF Domain.

# 10 Security

When protecting wireless traffic to and from a wireless controller or service platform, the administrator should not lose sight of the security solution in its entirety, since the chain is as weak as its weakest link. A WiNG managed network provides seamless data protection and user validation to protect and secure data at each vulnerable point in the network. WiNG managed wireless devices support a Layer 2 wired/wireless firewall and *Wireless Intrusion Protection System* (WIPS) capabilities at the WLAN, while additionally strengthened with a premium multi-vendor overlay security solution from Air Defense with 24x7 dedicated protection. This security is offered at the most granular level, with role, location and device categorization based network access control available to users based on identity as well as the security posture of the client device. For more information, see:

- [Wireless Firewall](#)
- [Configuring IP Firewall Rules](#)
- [Wireless Client Roles](#)
- [Device Fingerprinting](#)
- [Intrusion Prevention](#)
- [EX3500 Time Range](#)

## 10.1 Wireless Firewall

---

A firewall is a mechanism enforcing network access control, and is considered a first line of defense in protecting proprietary information within the network. The means by which this is accomplished varies, but in principle, a firewall can be thought of as mechanisms both blocking and permitting data traffic within the network. Firewalls implement uniquely defined access control policies, so if you don't have an idea of what kind of access to allow or deny, a firewall is of little value, and in fact could provide a false sense of network security.

With WiNG managed wireless controllers and Access Points, Firewalls are configured to protect against unauthenticated logins from outside the network. This helps prevent hackers from accessing managed wireless clients. Well designed Firewalls block traffic from outside the network, but permit authorized users to communicate freely with outside the network.

Firewalls can be implemented in both hardware and software, or a combination of both. All messages entering or leaving the wireless controller or Access Point pass through the firewall, which examines each message and blocks those not meeting the security criteria (rules) defined.

Firewall rules define the traffic permitted or denied within the network. Rules are processed by a firewall supported device from first to last. When a rule matches the network traffic a controller or service platform is processing, the firewall uses that rule's action to determine whether traffic is allowed or denied.

Rules comprise conditions and actions. A condition describes a traffic stream of packets. Define constraints on the source and destination device, the service (for example, protocols and ports), and the incoming interface. An action describes what should occur to packets matching the conditions set. For example, if the packet stream meets all conditions, traffic is permitted, authenticated and sent to the destination device.

Additionally, MAC rule based firewall filtering can be deployed to apply firewall policies to traffic being bridged by centrally managed radios. MAC filtering can be employed to permit or restrict traffic exchanged between hosts, hosts residing on separate WLANs or hosts forwarding traffic to wired devices.

For more information, refer to the following:

- [Configuring a Firewall Policy](#)
- [Configuring MAC Firewall Rules](#)
- [Firewall Deployment Considerations](#)

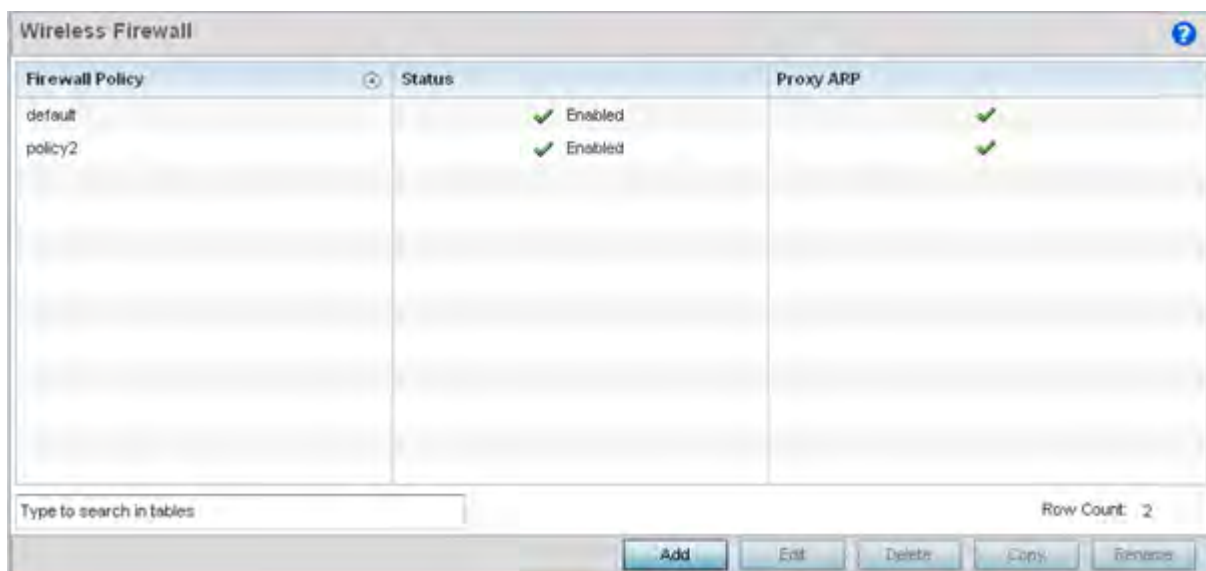
## 10.1.1 Configuring a Firewall Policy

### ▶ [Wireless Firewall](#)

To configure a firewall on the wireless controller or service platform:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Security > Wireless Firewall > Firewall Policy** to display existing firewall policies.

The **Wireless Firewall** screen lists existing firewall policies. An existing policy can be selected and applied. The user has the option of displaying the configurations of each policy, or referring to the **Wireless Firewall Browser** and selecting individual policies for review.



Firewall Policy	Status	Proxy ARP
default	✓ Enabled	✓
policy2	✓ Enabled	✓

**Figure 10-1** *Wireless Firewall Policy screen*

- 2 Refer to the following configuration data for existing wireless firewall policies:

<b>Firewall Policy</b>	Displays the name assigned to the policy when created. The name cannot be modified as part of the edit process.
<b>Status</b>	Displays a green check mark if the policy has been enabled. A red "X" designates the policy as disabled.
<b>Proxy ARP</b>	Displays a green check mark if Proxy ARP routing has been enabled. A red "X" designates Proxy ARP as disabled.

- 3 Select **Add** to create a new Wireless Firewall policy, **Edit** to modify the attributes of an existing policy or **Delete** to remove obsolete policies from the list of those available.

For information on adding and editing Wireless Firewall policies, see [Adding and Editing Wireless Firewall Policies on page 10-3](#).

### 10.1.1.1 Adding and Editing Wireless Firewall Policies

#### ▶ *Configuring a Firewall Policy*

To add or edit a firewall policy:

- 1 Select **Configuration** > **Security** > **Wireless Firewall** > **Firewall Policy** to display existing firewall policies.
- 2 Select **Add** to create a new Wireless Firewall policy. Select an existing policy and click **Edit** to modify the attributes of that policy.

The **Denial of Services** tab displays by default.

- 3 When adding a new policy, first enter a name for the Firewall Policy. The name must not exceed 64 characters. Once a name is specified, click **OK** to enable the other parameters within the screen.

The Wireless Firewall Policy configuration is divided into the following tabs:

- *Firewall Policy Denial of Service*
- *Firewall Policy Storm Control*
- *Firewall Policy Advanced Settings*

#### 10.1.1.1.1 Firewall Policy Denial of Service

##### ▶ *Adding and Editing Wireless Firewall Policies*

A *denial of service* (DoS) attack is an attempt to make a computer or network resource unavailable to its intended users. Although the means to carry out a DoS attack will vary, it generally consists of a concerted effort of one or more persons attempting to prevent a device, site or service from functioning temporarily or indefinitely.

Most DoS attacks involve saturating the target device with external communications requests so it cannot respond to legitimate traffic or respond so slowly the device becomes unavailable in respect to its defined data rate. DoS attacks are implemented by either forcing targeted devices to reset or consuming the device's resources so it can no longer provide service.

To define a denial of service configuration for a Firewall policy:

- 1 Select the **Denial of Service** tab from the **Firewall Policy** configuration page.



**Figure 10-2** Wireless Firewall Add/Edit Denial of Service screen

- 2 The **Settings** window contains a list of all of the *Denial of Service* (DoS) attacks that the wireless controller's firewall has filters for. Each DoS filter contains the following four items:

<b>Event</b>	The <i>Event</i> column lists the name of each DoS attack.
<b>Enable</b>	Checking <i>Enable</i> box sets the Firewall Policy to filter the associated DoS attack based on the selection in the <i>Action</i> column.
<b>Action</b>	<p>If a Denial of Service filter is enabled, chose an action from the drop-down menu to determine how the Firewall Policy treats the associated DoS attack.</p> <p><i>Log and Drop</i> - An entry for the associated DoS attack is added to the log and then the packets are dropped.</p> <p><i>Log Only</i> - An entry for the associated DoS attack is added to the log. No further action is taken.</p> <p><i>Drop Only</i> - The DoS packets is dropped. No further action is taken.</p>
<b>Log Level</b>	To enable logging to the system log, check the box in the <i>Log Level</i> column. Then select a standard <i>Syslog</i> level from the Log Level drop-down menu.

## Denial of Service Event Attacks Table

3 Refer to the following for a summary of each Denial of Service attack the firewall can filter.

<b>Ascend</b>	4 The Ascend DoS attacks are a series of attacks that target known vulnerabilities in various versions of Ascend routers.
<b>Broadcast/Multicast ICMP</b>	Broadcast or Multicast ICMP DoS attacks are a series of attacks that take advantage of ICMP behavior in response to echo replies. These usually involve spoofing the source address of the target and sending ICMP broadcast or multicast echo requests to the rest of the network and in the process flooding the target machine with replies.
<b>Chargen</b>	The <i>Chargen</i> attack establishes a Telnet connection to port 19 and attempts to use the character generator service to create a string of characters which is then directed to the DNS service on port 53 to disrupt DNS services.
<b>Fraggle</b>	The Fraggle DoS attack uses a list of broadcast addresses to send spoofed UDP packets to each broadcast address' echo port (port 7). Each of those addresses that have port 7 open will respond to the request generating a lot of traffic on the network. For those that do not have port 7 open they will send an unreachable message back to the originator, further clogging the network with more traffic.
<b>FTP Bounce</b>	The FTP Bounce DoS attack uses a vulnerability in the FTP "PORT" command as a way to scan ports on a target machine by using another machine in the middle.
<b>Invalid Protocol</b>	Attackers may use vulnerability in the endpoint implementation by sending invalid protocol fields, or may misuse the misinterpretation of endpoint software. This can lead to inadvertent leakage of sensitive network topology information, call hijacking, or a DoS attack.
<b>IP Spoof</b>	IP Spoof is a category of DoS attack that sends IP packets with forged source addresses. This can hide the identity of the attacker.
<b>LAND</b>	The LAND DoS attack sends spoofed packets containing the SYN flag to the target destination using the target port and IP address as both the source and destination. This will either crash the target system or result in high resource utilization slowing down all other processes.
<b>Option Route</b>	Enables the IP Option Route denial of service check in the firewall.
<b>Router Advertisement</b>	In this attack, the attacker uses ICMP to redirect the network router function to some other host. If that host can not provide router services, a DoS of network communications occurs as routing stops. This can also be modified to single out a specific system, so that only that system is subject to attack (because only that system sees the 'false' router). By providing router services from a compromised host, the attacker can also place themselves in a <i>man-in-the-middle</i> situation and take control of any open channel at will (as mentioned earlier, this is often used with TCP packet forgery and spoofing to intercept and change open TELNET sessions).



<b>Router Solicit</b>	<p>The ICMP Router Solicitation scan is used to actively find routers on a network. Of course, a hacker could set up a protocol analyzer to detect routers as they broadcast routing information on the network. In some instances, however, routers may not send updates. For example, if the local network does not have other routers, the router may be configured to not send routing information packets onto the local network.</p> <p>ICMP offers a method for router discovery. Clients send ICMP router solicitation multicasts onto the network, and routers must respond (as defined in RFC 1122).</p> <p>By sending ICMP router solicitation packets (ICMP type 9) on the network and listening for ICMP router discovery replies (ICMP type 10), hackers can build a list of all of the routers that exist on a network segment. Hackers often use this scan to locate routers that do not reply to ICMP echo requests.</p>
<b>Smurf</b>	<p>The Smurf DoS Attack sends ICMP echo requests to a list of broadcast addresses in a row, and then repeats the requests, thus flooding the network.</p>
<b>Snork</b>	<p>The Snork DoS attack uses UDP packet broadcasts to consume network and system resources.</p>
<b>TCP Bad Sequence</b>	<p>Enables a TCP Bad Sequence denial of service check in the firewall.</p>
<b>TCP FIN Scan</b>	<p>Hackers use the TCP FIN scan to identify listening TCP port numbers based on how the target device reacts to a transaction close request for a TCP port (even though no connection may exist before these close requests are made). This type of scan can get through basic firewalls and boundary routers that filter on incoming TCP packets with the <i>Finish</i> (FIN) and ACK flag combination. The TCP packets used in this scan include only the TCP FIN flag setting.</p> <p>If the target device's TCP port is closed, the target device sends a TCP RST packet in reply. If the target device's TCP port is open, the target device discards the FIN and sends no reply.</p>

<b>TCP Intercept</b>	<p>A SYN-flooding attack occurs when a hacker floods a server with a barrage of requests for connection.</p> <p>Because these messages have unreachable return addresses, the connections cannot be established. The resulting volume of unresolved open connections eventually overwhelms the server and can cause it to deny service to valid requests, thereby preventing legitimate users from connecting to a Web site, accessing email, using FTP service, and so on.</p> <p>The TCP intercept feature helps prevent SYN-flooding attacks by intercepting and validating TCP connection requests. In intercept mode, the TCP intercept software intercepts TCP <i>synchronization</i> (SYN) packets from clients to servers that match an extended access list. The software establishes a connection with the client on behalf of the destination server, and if successful, establishes the connection with the server on behalf of the client and knits the two half-connections together transparently. Thus, connection attempts from unreachable hosts will never reach the server. The software continues to intercept and forward packets throughout the duration of the connection. The number of SYNs per second and the number of concurrent connections proxied depends on the platform, memory, processor, and other factors. In the case of illegitimate requests, the software's aggressive timeouts on half-open connections and its thresholds on TCP connection requests protect destination servers while still allowing valid requests.</p> <p>When establishing a security policy using TCP intercept, you can choose to intercept all requests or only those coming from specific networks or destined for specific servers. You can also configure the connection rate and threshold of outstanding connections. Optionally operate TCP intercept in watch mode, as opposed to intercept mode. In watch mode, the software passively watches the connection requests flowing through the router. If a connection fails to get established in a configurable interval, the software intervenes and terminates the connection attempt.</p>
<b>TCP IP TTL Zero</b>	<p>The TCP IP TTL Zero DoS attack sends spoofed multicast packets onto the network which have a <i>Time To Live</i> (TTL) of 0. This causes packets to loop back to the spoofed originating machine, and can cause the network to overload.</p>
<b>TCP Null Scan</b>	<p>Hackers use the TCP NULL scan to identify listening TCP ports. This scan also uses a series of strangely configured TCP packets, which contain a sequence number of 0 and no flags. Again, this type of scan can get through some firewalls and boundary routers that filter incoming TCP packets with standard flag settings.</p> <p>If the target device's TCP port is closed, the target device sends a TCP RST packet in reply. If the target device's TCP port is open, the target discards the TCP NULL scan, sending no reply.</p>
<b>TCP Post SYN</b>	<p>A remote attacker may be attempting to avoid detection by sending a SYN frame with a different sequence number than the original SYN. This can cause an <i>Intrusion Detection System</i> (IDS) to become unsynchronized with the data in a connection. Subsequent frames sent during the connection are ignored by the IDS.</p>

<b>TCP Packet Sequence</b>	An attempt to predict the sequence number used to identify packets in a TCP connection, which can be used to counterfeit packets. The attacker hopes to correctly guess the sequence number used by the sending host. If successful, they can send counterfeit packets to the receiving host which will seem to originate from the sending host, even though the counterfeit packets may originate from some third host controlled by the attacker.
<b>TCP XMAS Scan</b>	The TCP XMAS Scan floods the target system with TCP packets including the FIN, URG, and PUSH flags. This is used to determine details about the target system and can crash a system.
<b>TCP Header Fragment</b>	Enables the TCP Header Fragment denial of service check in the firewall.
<b>Twinge</b>	The Twinge DoS attack sends ICMP packets and cycles through using all ICMP types and codes. This can crash some Windows systems.
<b>UDP Short Header</b>	Enables the UDP Short Header denial of service check in the firewall.
<b>WINNUKE</b>	The WINNUKE DoS attack sends a large amount of data to UDP port 137 to crash the NETBIOS service on windows and can also result on high CPU utilization on the target machine.
<b>Hop Limit Zero</b>	Hop limits within IPv6 packets is set to 0 preventing hops as needed.
<b>Multicast ICMPv6</b>	ICMPv6 packets contain multicast L2 DMACs.
<b>TCP Intercept Mobility</b>	Detect IPv6 TCP packet with mobility option <i>home address option</i> (HAO) or <i>route header</i> (RO) type one set and do not generate syn cookies for such packets.

- 5 Events can be individually enabled or collectively enabled/disabled using the **Enable All Events** and **Disable All Events** buttons.
- 6 Select **OK** to update the Denial of Service settings. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

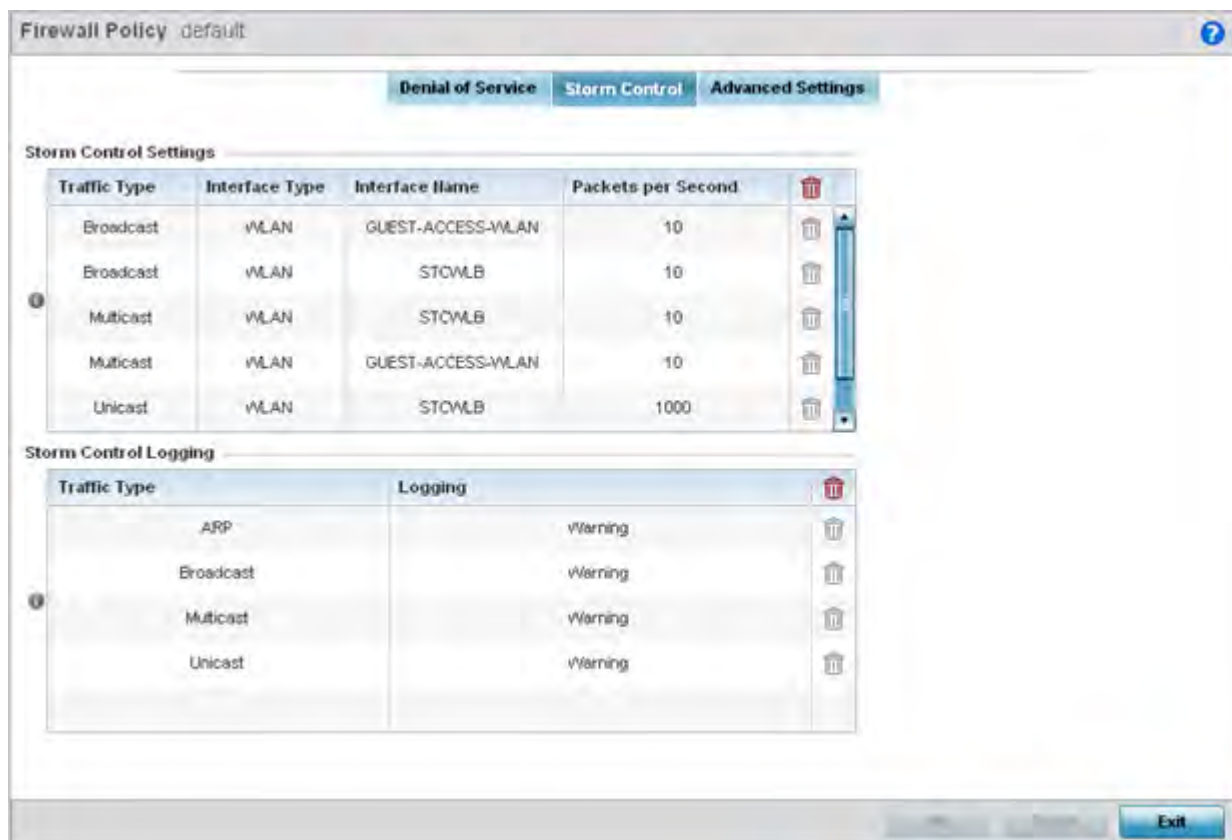
### 10.1.1.1.2 Firewall Policy Storm Control

#### ► *Adding and Editing Wireless Firewall Policies*

The firewall maintains a facility to control packet storms. Storms are packet bombardments that exceed the high threshold value configured for an interface. During a storm, packets are throttled until the rate falls below the configured rate, severely impacting performance for the RF Domain manager interface. Thresholds are configured in terms of packets per second.

To define a storm control configuration for a Firewall policy:

- 1 Select the **Storm Control** tab from the **Firewall Policy** configuration page.



**Figure 10-3** Wireless Firewall Add/Edit Storm Control screen

- 2 Refer to the **Storm Control Settings** field to set the following:

<b>Traffic Type</b>	Use the drop-down menu to define the traffic type for which the Storm Control configuration applies. Options include <i>ARP</i> , <i>Broadcast</i> , <i>Multicast</i> and <i>Unicast</i> .
<b>Interface Type</b>	Use the drop-down menu to define the interface for which the Storm Control configuration is applied. Only the specified interface uses the defined filtering criteria. Options include <i>Ethernet</i> , <i>WLAN</i> and <i>Port Channel</i> .
<b>Interface Name</b>	Use the drop-down menu to refine the interface selection to a specific WLAN or physical port. This helps with threshold configuration for potentially impacted interfaces.
<b>Packets per Second</b>	Select the check box to activate the spinner control used for specifying the packets per second threshold for activating the Storm Control mechanism.

- 3 Select **+ Add Row** as needed to add additional Storm Control configurations for other traffic types or interfaces. Select the **Delete** icon as required to remove selected rows.
- 4 Refer to the **Storm Control Logging** field to define how storm events are logged.

<b>Traffic Type</b>	Use the drop-down menu to define the traffic type for which the Storm Control logging configuration applies. Options include <i>ARP</i> , <i>Broadcast</i> , <i>Multicast</i> and <i>Unicast</i> .
---------------------	--

<b>Logging</b>	Select the check box to activate the spinner control used for specifying the standard log level used if a Storm Control attack is detected. The default log level is Warning.
----------------	---

- 5 Select **+ Add Row** as needed to add additional Storm Control log entries for other interfaces. Select the **Delete** icon as required to remove selected rows.
- 6 Select **OK** to update the Storm Control settings. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

### 10.1.1.1.3 Firewall Policy Advanced Settings

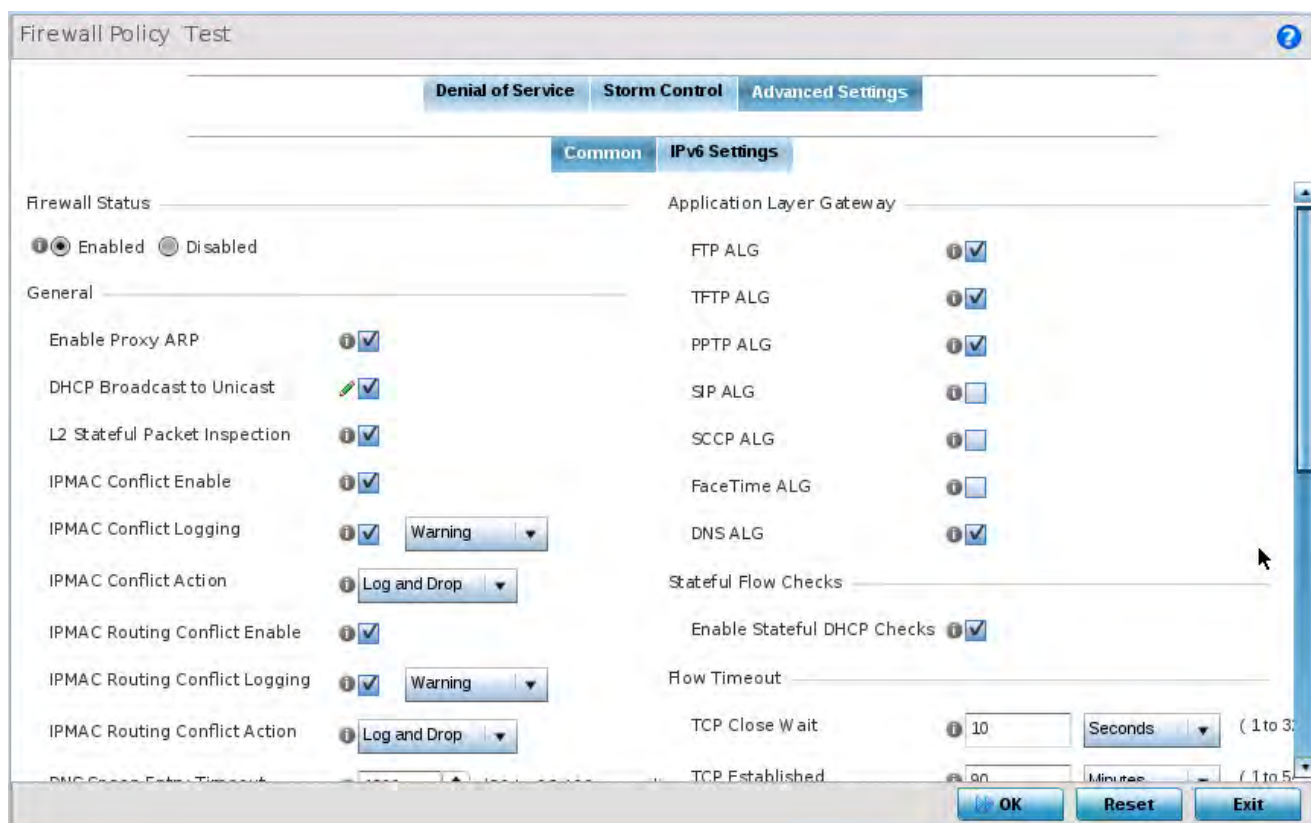
#### ► *Adding and Editing Wireless Firewall Policies*

To define a firewall policy Advanced Configuration:

- 1 Select the **Advanced Settings** tab from the **Firewall Policy** configuration page.

The Advanced Settings screen displays **Common** and **IPv6 Settings** tabs with the Common displayed by default. Use these screens to define common IPv4 settings and settings unique to an IPv6 firewall.

IPv6 hosts can configure themselves automatically when connected to an IPv6 network using the *neighbor discovery* (ND) protocol via ICMPv6 router discovery messages. These hosts require firewall packet protection unique to IPv6 traffic, as IPv6 addresses are composed of eight groups of four hexadecimal digits separated by colons. When first connected to a network, a host sends a link-local router solicitation multicast request for its configuration parameters; routers respond to such a request with a router advertisement packet that contains Internet Layer configuration parameters.



**Figure 10-4** *Wireless Firewall Add/Edit Advanced Common Settings screen*

- 2 Refer to the **Firewall Status** radio buttons to define the firewall as either *Enabled* or *Disabled*. The firewall is enabled by default.

If disabling the firewall, a confirmation prompt displays stating NAT, wireless hotspot, proxy ARP, deny-static-wireless-client and deny-wireless-client sending not permitted traffic excessively will be disabled.

- 3 Refer to the **General** field to enable or disable the following firewall configuration parameters:

<b>Enable Proxy ARP</b>	Select this check box to allow the Firewall Policy to use Proxy ARP responses for this policy on behalf of another device. Proxy ARP allows the firewall to handle ARP routing requests for devices behind the firewall. This feature is enabled by default.
<b>DHCP Broadcast to Unicast</b>	Select this check box to enable the conversion of broadcast DHCP offers to unicast. Converting DHCP broadcast traffic to unicast traffic can help reduce network traffic loads. This feature is disabled by default.
<b>L2 Stateful Packet Inspection</b>	Select the check box to enable stateful packet inspection for RF Domain manager routed interfaces within the Layer 2 firewall. This feature is disabled by default.
<b>IPMAC Conflict Enable</b>	When multiple devices on the network have the same IP or MAC address this can create routing issues for traffic being passed through the firewall. To avoid these issues, enable Conflict Detection to enable IP and MAC conflict detection. This feature is disabled by default.
<b>IPMAC Conflict Logging</b>	Select this option to enable logging for IP and MAC address conflict detection. This feature is disabled by default.
<b>IPMAC Conflict Action</b>	Use the drop-down menu to set the action taken when an attack is detected. Options include <i>Log Only</i> , <i>Drop Only</i> or <i>Log and Drop</i> . The default setting is Log and Drop.
<b>IPMAC Routing Conflict Enable</b>	Select this option to enable IPMAC Routing Conflict detection. This is also known as a Hole-196 attack in the network. This feature helps to detect if the client is sending routed packets to the correct router-mac-address.
<b>IPMAC Routing Conflict Logging</b>	Select enable logging for IPMAC Routing Conflict detection. This feature is disabled by default.
<b>IPMAC Routing Conflict Action</b>	Use the drop-down menu to set the action taken when an attack is detected. Options include <i>Log Only</i> , <i>Drop Only</i> or <i>Log and Drop</i> . The default setting is Log and Drop.
<b>DNS Snoop Entry Timeout</b>	Select this option and set a timeout, in seconds, for DNS Snoop Entry. DNS Snoop Entry stores information such as Client to IP Address and Client to Default Gateway(s) and uses this information to detect if the client is sending routed packets to a wrong MAC address.
<b>IP TCP Adjust MSS</b>	Select this option and adjust the value for the <i>maximum segment size</i> (MSS) for TCP segments on the router. Set a value between 472 bytes and 1,460 bytes to adjust the MSS segment size. The default value is 472 bytes.
<b>TCP MSS Clamping</b>	Select this option to enable TCP MSS Clamping. TCP MSS Clamping allows for the configuration of the maximum segment size of packets at a global level.
<b>Max Fragments/Datagram</b>	Set a value for the maximum number of fragments (between 2 and 8,129) allowed in a datagram before it is dropped. The default value is 140 fragments.
<b>Max Defragmentations/Host</b>	Set a value for the maximum number of defragmentations, between 1 and 16,384 allowed per host before it is dropped. The default value is 8.



<b>Min Length Required</b>	Select this option and set a minimum length, between 8 bytes and 1,500 bytes, to enforce a minimum packet size before being subject to fragment based attack prevention.
<b>Virtual Defragmentation</b>	Select this option to enable IPv4 and IPv6 virtual defragmentation to help prevent fragment based attacks, such as tiny fragments or large number of fragments.
<b>Virtual Defragmentation Timeout</b>	Set a virtual defragmentation timeout from 1- 60 seconds applicable to both IPv4 and IPv6 packets.

- 4 Refer to the **Firewall Enhanced Logging** field to set the following parameters:

<b>Log Dropped ICMP Packets</b>	Use the drop-down menu to define how dropped ICMP packets are logged. Logging can be rate limited for one log instance every 20 seconds. Options include <i>Rate Limited</i> , <i>All</i> or <i>None</i> . The default setting is <i>None</i> .
<b>Log Dropped Malformed Packets</b>	Use the drop-down menu to define how dropped malformed packets are logged. Logging can be rate limited for one log instance every 20 seconds. Options include <i>Rate Limited</i> , <i>All</i> or <i>None</i> . The default setting is <i>None</i> .
<b>Enable Verbose Logging</b>	Check this box to enable verbose logging mode for the firewall.

- 5 The firewall policy allows traffic filtering at the application layer using the **Application Layer Gateway** feature. The Application Layer Gateway provides filters for the following common protocols

<b>FTP ALG</b>	Select this option to allow FTP traffic through the firewall using its default ports. This feature is enabled by default.
<b>TFTP ALG</b>	Select this option to allow TFTP traffic through the firewall using its default ports. This feature is enabled by default.
<b>PPTP ALG</b>	Select this option to allow PPTP traffic through the firewall using its default ports. The <i>Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol</i> (PPTP) is a network protocol that enables the secure transfer of data from a remote client to an enterprise server by creating a VPN across TCP/IP-based data networks. PPTP encapsulates PPP packets into IP datagrams for transmission over the Internet or other public TCP/IP-based networks. This feature is enabled by default.
<b>SIP ALG</b>	Select this option to allow SIP traffic through the firewall using its default ports. This feature is enabled by default.
<b>SCCP ALG</b>	Select this option to allow SCCP traffic through the firewall using its default ports. This feature is enabled by default.
<b>Facetime ALG</b>	Select this option to allow FaceTime traffic through the firewall using its default ports. This feature is enabled by default.
<b>DNS ALG</b>	Enable this option to allow DNS traffic through the firewall using its default ports. This feature is enabled by default.

- 6 Select the **Enable Stateful DHCP Checks** check box to enable the stateful checks of DHCP packet traffic through the firewall. The default setting is enabled. When enabled, all DHCP traffic flows are inspected.
- 7 Define **Flow Timeout** intervals for the following flow types impacting the Firewall:

<b>TCP Close Wait</b>	Define a flow timeout value in either <i>Seconds</i> (1 - 32,400), <i>Minutes</i> (1 - 540) or <i>Hours</i> (1 - 9). The default setting is 10 seconds.
-----------------------	---



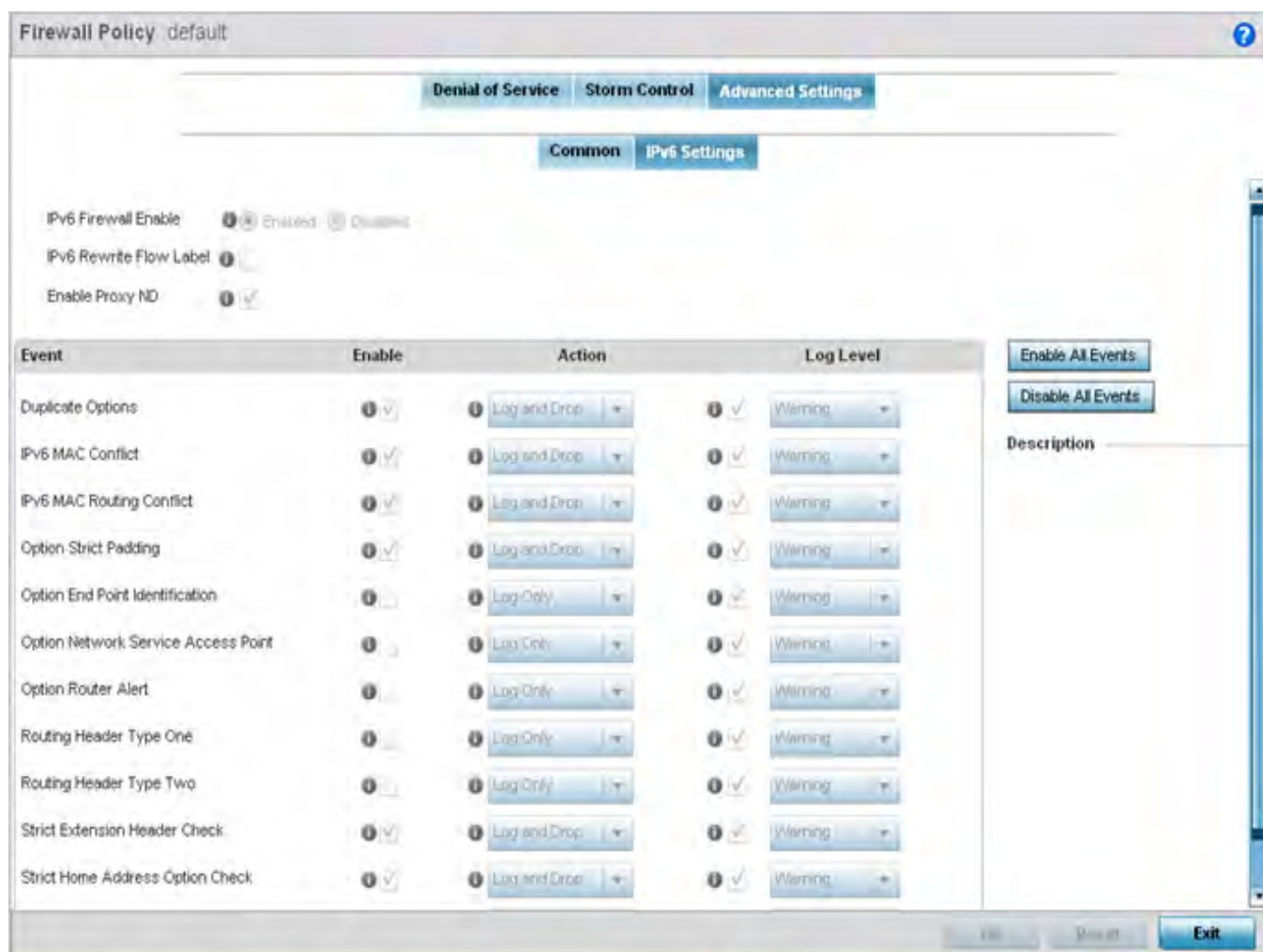
<b>TCP Established</b>	Define a flow timeout value in either <i>Seconds</i> (1 - 32,400), <i>Minutes</i> (1 - 540) or <i>Hours</i> (1 - 9). The default setting is 90 minutes.
<b>TCP Reset</b>	Define a flow timeout value in either <i>Seconds</i> (1 - 32,400), <i>Minutes</i> (1 - 540) or <i>Hours</i> (1 - 9). The default setting is 10 seconds.
<b>TCP Setup</b>	Define a flow timeout value in either <i>Seconds</i> (1 - 32,400), <i>Minutes</i> (1 - 540) or <i>Hours</i> (1 - 9). The default setting is 10 seconds.
<b>Stateless TCP Flow</b>	Define a flow timeout value in either <i>Seconds</i> (1 - 32,400), <i>Minutes</i> (1 - 540) or <i>Hours</i> (1 - 9). The default setting is 90 seconds.
<b>Stateless FIN/RESET Flow</b>	Define a flow timeout value in either <i>Seconds</i> (1 - 32,400), <i>Minutes</i> (1 - 540) or <i>Hours</i> (1 - 9). The default setting is 10 seconds.
<b>ICMP</b>	Define a flow timeout value in either <i>Seconds</i> (1 - 32,400), <i>Minutes</i> (1 - 540) or <i>Hours</i> (1 - 9). The default setting is 30 seconds.
<b>UDP</b>	Define a flow timeout value in either <i>Seconds</i> (1 - 32,400), <i>Minutes</i> (1 - 540) or <i>Hours</i> (1 - 9). The default setting is 30 seconds.
<b>Any Other Flow</b>	Define a flow timeout value in either <i>Seconds</i> (1 - 32,400), <i>Minutes</i> (1 - 540) or <i>Hours</i> (1 - 9). The default setting is 30 seconds.

8 Refer to the **TCP Protocol Checks** field to set the following parameters:

<b>Check TCP states where a SYN packet tears down the flow</b>	Select the check box to allow a SYN packet to delete an old flow in TCP_FIN_FIN_STATE and TCP_CLOSED_STATE and create a new flow. The default setting is enabled.
<b>Check unnecessary resends of TCP packets</b>	Select the check box to enable the checking of unnecessary resends of TCP packets. The default setting is enabled.
<b>Check Sequence Number in ICMP Unreachable error packets</b>	Select the check box to enable sequence number checks in ICMP unreachable error packets when an established TCP flow is aborted. The default setting is enabled.
<b>Check Acknowledgment Number in RST packets</b>	Select the check box to enable the checking of the acknowledgment number in RST packets which aborts a TCP flow in the SYN state. The default setting is enabled.
<b>Check Sequence Number in RST packets</b>	Select the check box to check the sequence number in RST packets which abort an established TCP flow. The default setting is enabled.

9 Select **OK** to update the firewall policy's advanced common settings. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

10 Select the **IPv6 Settings** tab.



**Figure 10-5** Wireless Firewall Add/Edit Advanced IPv6 Settings screen

- 11 Refer to the **IPv6 Firewall Enable** option to provide firewall support to IPv6 packet streams. This setting is enabled by default. Disabling IPv6 firewall support also disables proxy neighbor discovery. IPv6 hosts can configure themselves automatically when connected to an IPv6 network using the *neighbor discovery* (ND) protocol via ICMPv6 router discovery messages. These hosts require firewall packet protection unique to IPv6 traffic, as IPv6 addresses are composed uniquely of eight groups of four hexadecimal digits separated by colons.
- 12 Select **IPv6 Rewrite Flow Label** to provide flow label rewrites for each IPv6 packet. A flow is a sequence of packets from a particular source to a particular (unicast or multicast) destination. The flow label helps keep packet streams from looking like one massive flow. Flow label rewrites are disabled by default and must be manually enabled. Flow label re-writes enable the re-classification of packets belonging to a specific flow. The flow label does nothing to eliminate the need for packet filtering. This setting is disabled by default.
- 13 Select **Enable Proxy ND** to generate neighbor discovery responses on behalf of another controller, service platform or Access Point managed device. When enabled, any IPv6 packet received on an interface is parsed to see whether it is known to be a neighbor solicitation. This setting is enabled by default.

- 14 Use the **Event** table to enable individual IPv6 unique events. IPv6 events can be individually enabled or collectively enabled/disabled using the **Enable All Events** and **Disable All Events** buttons. The **Description** area displays a brief description of the selected event.

<b>Event</b>	The <i>Event</i> column lists the name of each IPv6 specific event subject to logging.
<b>Enable</b>	Checking <i>Enable</i> sets the firewall policy to filter the associated IPv6 event based on the selection in the <i>Action</i> column.
<b>Action</b>	If a filter is enabled, choose an action from the drop-down menu to determine how the firewall treats the associated IPv6 event.  <i>Log and Drop</i> - An entry for the associated IPv6 event is added to the log and then the packets are dropped.  <i>Log Only</i> - An entry for the associated IPv6 event is added to the log. No further action is taken.  <i>Drop Only</i> - The packet is dropped. No further action is taken.
<b>Log Level</b>	To enable logging to the system log, check the box in the <i>Log Level</i> column. Then select a standard <i>Syslog</i> level from the Log Level drop-down menu.

- 15 Select **OK** to update the firewall policy's advanced IPv6 settings. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 10.1.2 Configuring MAC Firewall Rules

### ► *Wireless Firewall*

Use MAC based firewalls like *Access Control Lists* (ACLs) to filter/mark packets based on the IP from which they arrive, as opposed to filtering packets on Layer 2 ports.

Optionally filter Layer 2 traffic on a physical Layer 2 interface using MAC addresses. A MAC firewall rule uses *source* and *destination* MAC addresses for matching operations, where the result is a typical allow, deny or mark designation to packet traffic.



**NOTE:** Once defined, a set of MAC firewall rules must be applied to an interface to be a functional filtering tool.

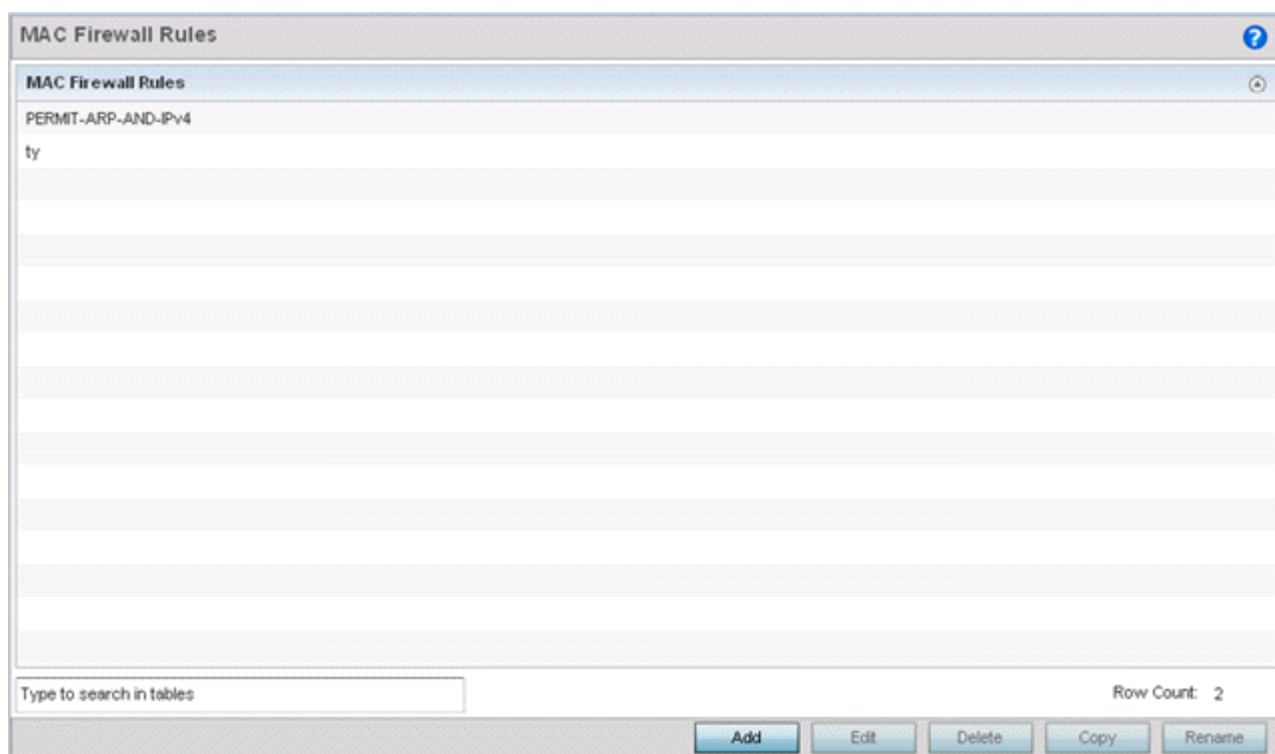
---



---

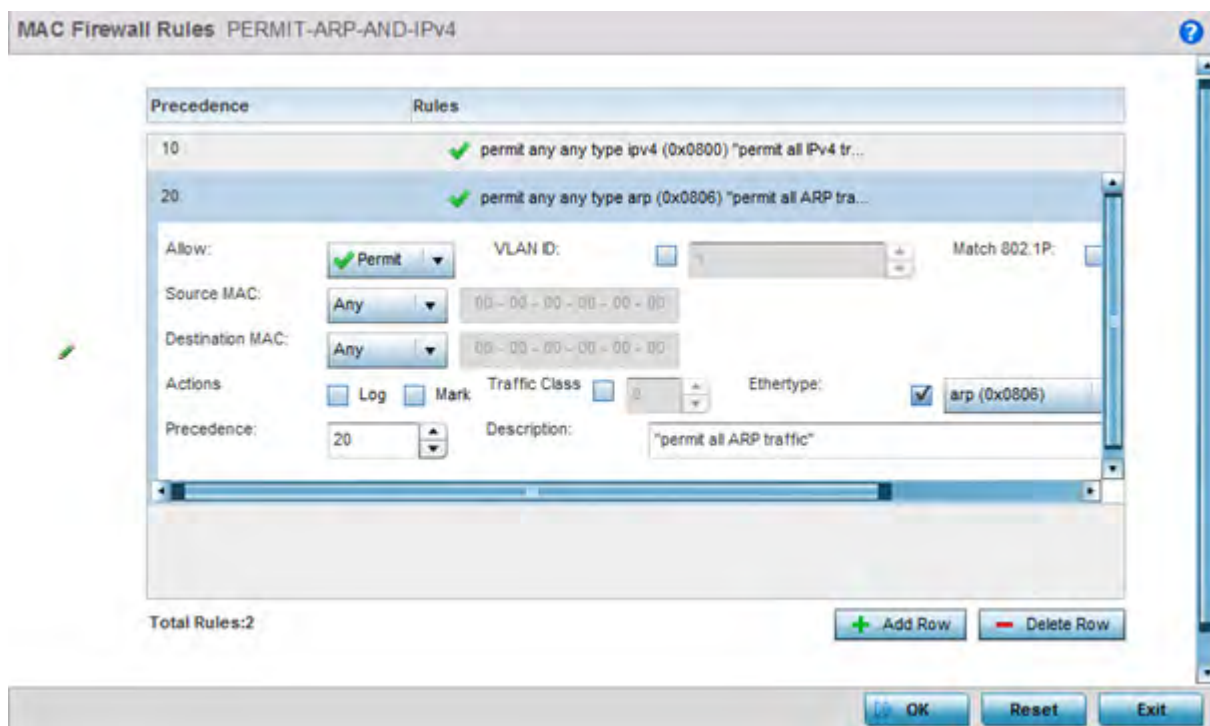
To add or edit a MAC based Firewall Rule policy:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Security > Wireless Firewall > MAC Firewall Rules** to display existing IP Firewall Rule policies.



**Figure 10-6** *MAC Firewall Rules screen*

- 2 Select **+ Add Row** to create a new MAC Firewall Rule. Select an existing policy and click **Edit** to modify the attributes of that rule's configuration.
- 3 Select the added row to expand it into configurable parameters for defining the MAC based firewall rule.



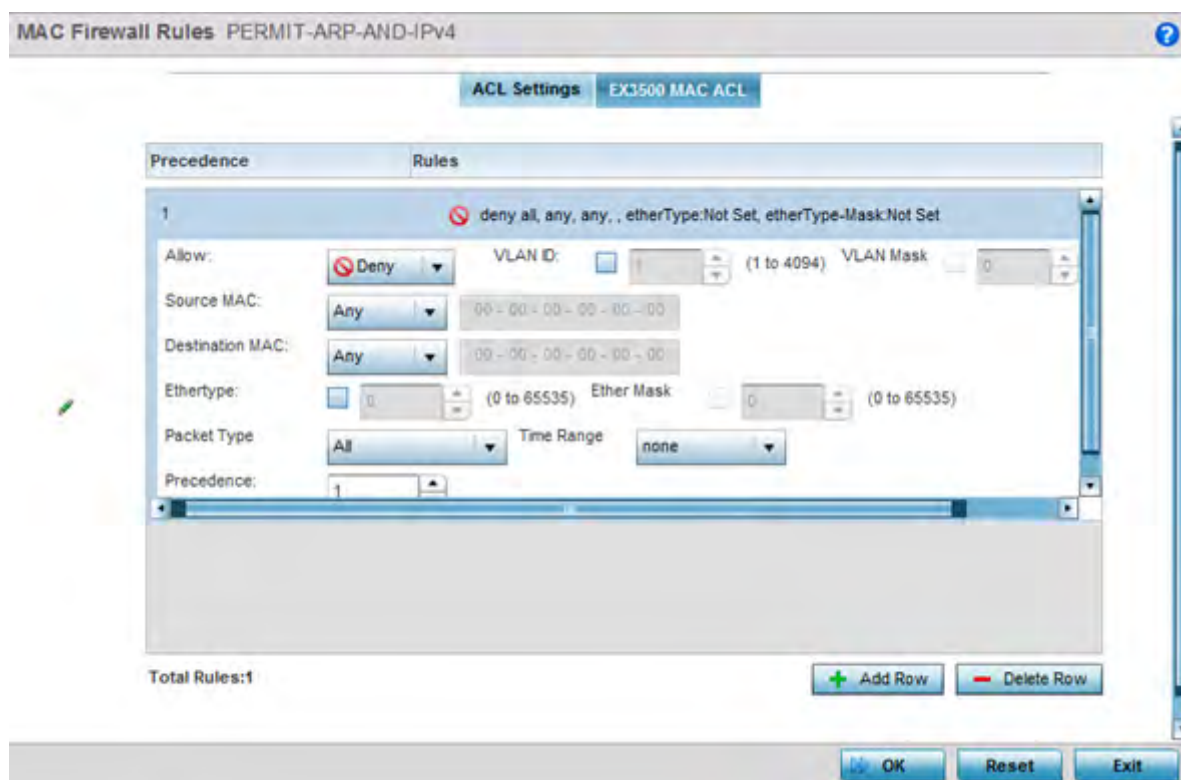
**Figure 10-7** MAC Firewall Rules Add/Edit screen

- 4 If adding a new **MAC Firewall Rule**, provide a name up to 32 characters to help describe its filtering configuration.
- 5 Select a rule to modify it. Set the following parameters for the MAC firewall rule:

<b>Allow</b>	<p>Every MAC firewall rule is made up of matching criteria rules. The action defines what to do with the packet if it matches the specified criteria. The following actions are supported:</p> <p><i>Deny</i> - Instructs the firewall to prevent a packet from proceeding to its destination when filter conditions are met.</p> <p><i>Permit</i> - Instructs the firewall to allow a packet to proceed to its destination when filter conditions are met.</p>
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Enter a VLAN ID representative of the shared SSID each user employs to interoperate within the network (once authenticated by the local RADIUS server). The VLAN ID can be between 1 and 4094.
<b>Match 802.1P</b>	Configures IP DSCP to 802.1p priority mapping for untagged frames. Use the spinner control to define a setting between 0 - 7.
<b>Source and Destination MAC</b>	Enter both <i>Source</i> and <i>Destination</i> MAC addresses. The source IP address and destination MAC address are used as basic matching criteria. Provide a subnet mask if using a mask.

<b>Action</b>	The following actions are supported: <i>Log</i> - Events are logged for archive and analysis. <i>Mark</i> - Modifies certain fields inside the packet and then permits them. Therefore, mark is an action with an implicit permit. - VLAN 802.1p priority. - DSCP bits in the IP header. - TOS bits in the IP header. <i>Mark, Log</i> - Conducts both mark and log functions.
<b>Traffic Class</b>	Select this option to enable a spinner control for traffic class prioritization. Devices that originate a packet must identify a class or priority for packets. Devices use the traffic class field in the MAC header to set this priority.
<b>Ethertype</b>	Use the drop-down menu to specify an EtherType of either <i>ipv6</i> , <i>arp</i> , <i>wisp</i> , or <i>monitor 8021q</i> . An EtherType is a two-octet field within an Ethernet frame. It is used to indicate which protocol is encapsulated in the payload of an Ethernet frame.
<b>Precedence</b>	Use the spinner control to specify a precedence for this MAC firewall rule between 1 - 1500. Rules with lower precedence are always applied first to packets.
<b>Description</b>	Provide a description (up to 64 characters) for the rule to help differentiate the it from others with similar configurations.

- 6 Select **+ Add Row** as needed to add additional MAC firewall Rule configurations. Select the **- Delete Row** icon as required to remove selected MAC firewall Rules.
- 7 Select EX3500 **MAC ACL** tab to define MAC firewall rules specific to the EX3500 switch. Select the added row to expand it into configurable parameters for defining the MAC based firewall rule for this model switch.



**Figure 10-8** EX3500 MAC ACL Add/Edit screen

- 8 Select a rule to modify it. Define the following parameters for the MAC firewall rule:

<b>Allow</b>	Every EX3500 MAC ACL firewall rule is made up of matching criteria rules. The action defines what to do with the packet if it matches the specified criteria. The following actions are supported:  <i>Deny</i> - Instructs the firewall to prevent a packet from proceeding to its destination.  <i>Permit</i> - Instructs the firewall to allow a packet to proceed to its destination.
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Enter a VLAN ID representative of the shared SSID each user employs to interoperate within the network (once authenticated by the local RADIUS server). The VLAN ID can be between 1 and 4094.
<b>VLAN Mask</b>	Enter a VLAN ID bit mask value.
<b>Source and Destination MAC</b>	Enter both <i>Source</i> and <i>Destination</i> MAC addresses. The source MAC address and destination MAC address are used as basic matching criteria. Provide a subnet mask if using a mask.
<b>Ethertype</b>	Use the spinner control to specify an Ethertype. An EtherType is a two-octet field within an Ethernet frame. It is used to indicate which protocol is encapsulated in the payload of an Ethernet frame. Select a value in the range 0 - 65535. This field is enabled by default. The default value is 1.
<b>Ethertype Mask</b>	Use the spinner control to specify the Ethertype Mask. Select a value in the range 0 - 65535. This field is enabled by default. The default value is 1.
<b>Packet Type</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the packet type. Packet type can be one of <i>all</i> , <i>tagged-eth2</i> or <i>untagged-eth2</i>



<b>Time Range</b>	Use this field to select a time range when this ACL will be enabled. For more information, see <a href="#">EX3500 Time Range on page 10-64</a> .
<b>Precedence</b>	Use the spinner control to specify a precedence for this MAC firewall rule between 1 - 1500. Rules with lower precedence are always applied first to packets.

- 9 Select **OK** when completed to update the MAC firewall Rules. Select **Reset** to revert the screen to its last saved configuration.

## 10.1.3 Firewall Deployment Considerations

### ► *Configuring a Firewall Policy*

Before defining a firewall configuration, refer to the following deployment guidelines to ensure the configuration is optimally effective:

- Firewalls implement access control policies, so if you don't have an idea of what kind of access to allow or deny, a firewall is of little value.
- It's important to recognize the firewall's configuration is a mechanism for enforcing a network access policy.
- A role based firewall requires an advanced security license to apply inbound and outbound firewall policies to users and devices
- Firewalls cannot protect against tunneling over application protocols to poorly secured wireless clients.
- Firewalls should be deployed on WLANs implementing weak encryption to minimize access to trusted networks and hosts in the event the WLAN is compromised.
- Firewalls should be enabled when providing managed Hotspot guest access. Firewall policies should be applied to Hotspot enabled WLANs to prevent guest user traffic from being routed to trusted networks and hosts.

## 10.2 Configuring IP Firewall Rules

### ► *Wireless Firewall*

IP based firewalls function like *Access Control Lists (ACLs)* to filter/mark packets, as opposed to filtering packets on layer 2 ports. IP firewalls implement uniquely defined access control policies, so if you don't have an idea of what kind of access to *allow* or *deny*, a firewall is of little value, and could provide a false sense of network security.

IP based firewall rules are specific to source and destination IP addresses and the unique *rules* and *precedence* orders assigned. Both IP and non-IP traffic on the same Layer 2 interface can be filtered by applying an IP ACL. Firewall rules are processed by a firewall supported device from first to last. When a rule matches the network traffic a controller or service platform is processing, the firewall uses that rule's action to determine whether traffic is allowed or denied.



**NOTE:** Once defined, a set of IP Firewall rules must be applied to an interface to be a functional filtering tool.

There are separate policy creation mechanisms for IPv4 and IPv6 traffic. With either IPv4 or IPv6, create access rules for traffic entering a controller, service platform or Access Point interface, because if you are going to deny specific types of packets, it's recommended you do it before the controller, service platform or Access Point spends time processing them, since access rules are processed before other types of firewall rules.

IPv6 addresses are composed of eight groups of four hexadecimal digits separated by colons.

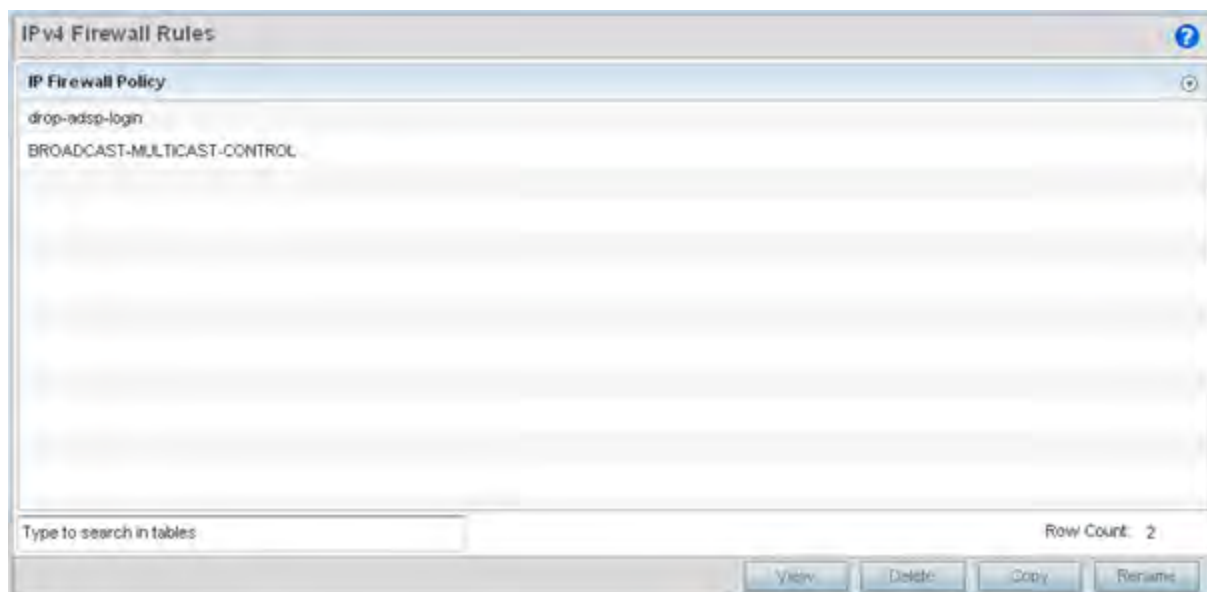
For more information, see:

- [Setting an IPv4 or IPv6 Firewall Policy](#)
- [Setting an IP SNMP ACL Policy](#)
- [Network Group Alias](#)
- [Network Service Alias](#)
- [EX3500 ACL Standard](#)
- [EX3500 ACL Extended](#)

## 10.2.1 Setting an IPv4 or IPv6 Firewall Policy

Before defining a firewall configuration, refer to the following deployment guidelines to ensure the configuration is optimally effective:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Security > IP Firewall**.
- 2 Expand the **IP Firewall** menu item and select either the **IPv4 ACL** or **IPv6 ACL** menu options.  
Either the **IPv4 Firewall Rules** or the **IPv6 Firewall Rules** screens display the existing polices defined thus far.



**Figure 10-9** IP Firewall Rules screen

- 3 Select **Add** to create a new IPv4 or IPv6 firewall rule. Select an existing policy and click **Edit** to modify the attributes of that policy's configuration.
- 4 Select the added row to expand it into configurable parameters for defining the IPv4 or IPv6 based firewall policy.

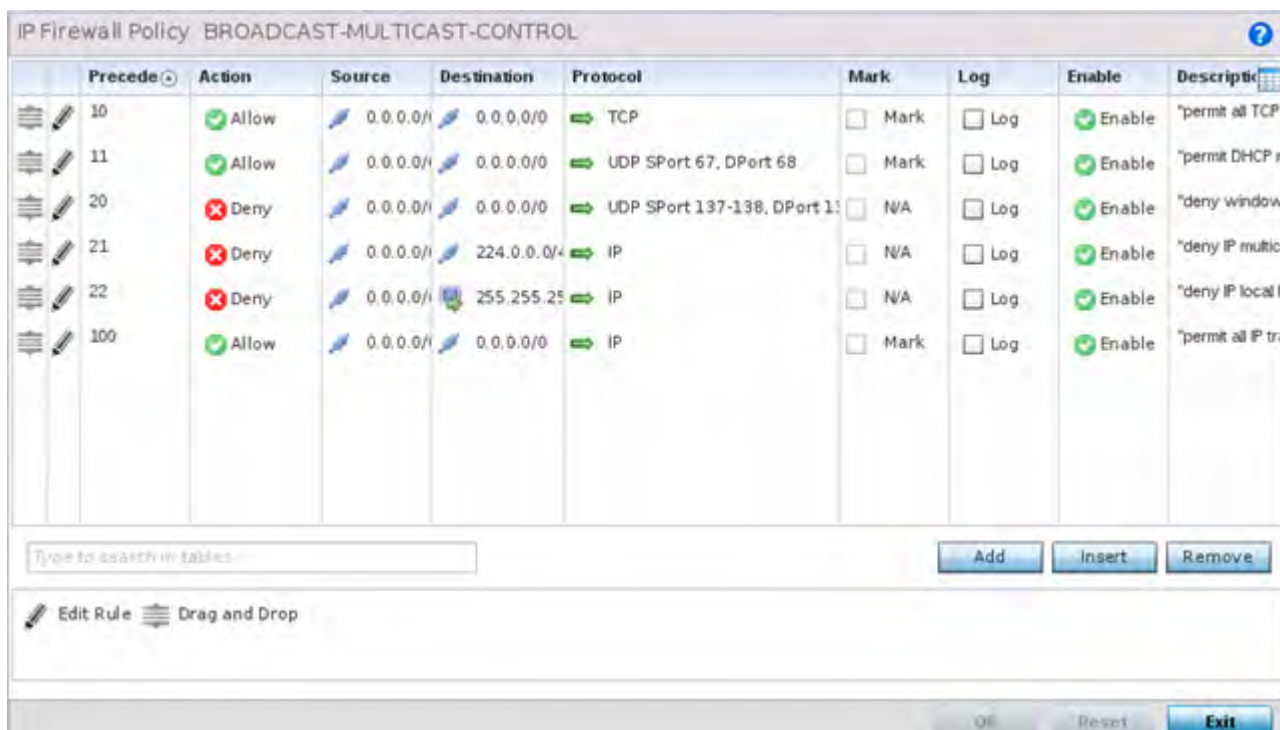


Figure 10-10 IP v4 Firewall Rules Add screen

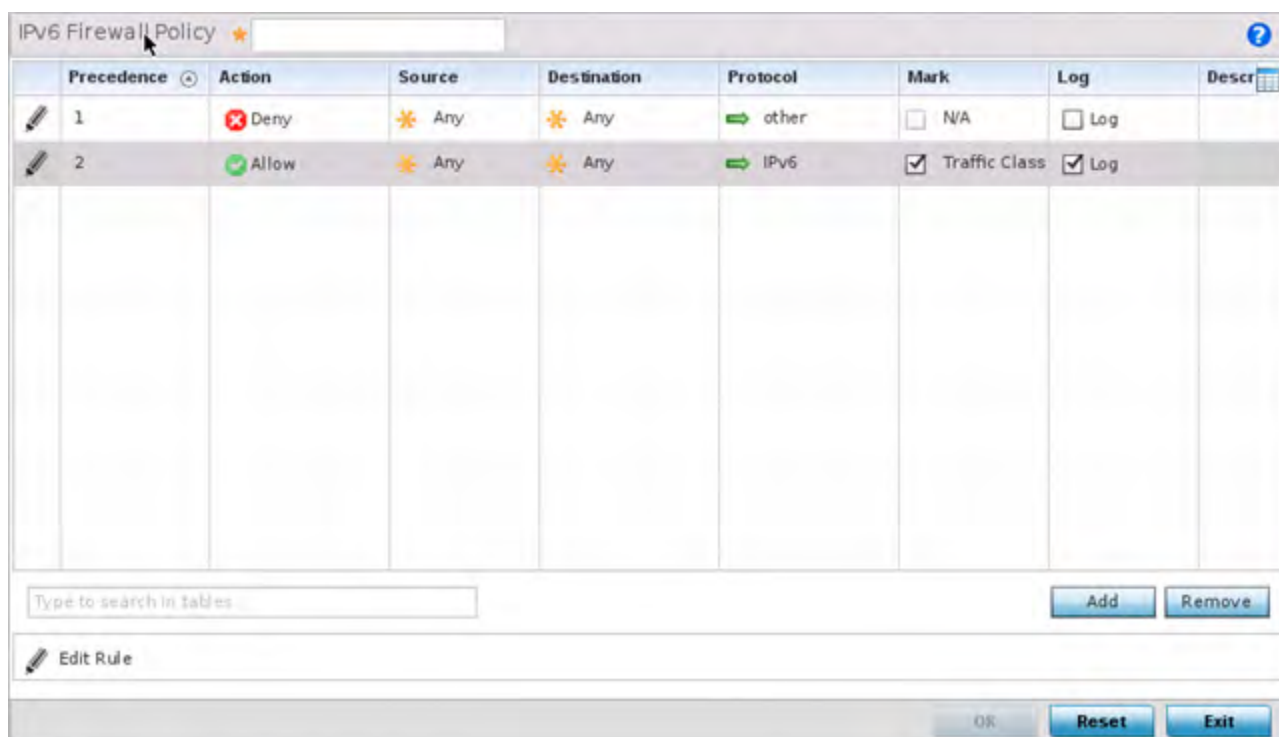


Figure 10-11 IP v6 Firewall Rules Add screen

IP firewall configurations can either be modified as a collective group of variables or selected and updated individually as their filtering attributes require a more refined update.

- Select the **Edit Rule** icon to the left of a particular IP firewall rule configuration to update its parameters collectively.

**Figure 10-12** IP Firewall Rules Add Criteria screen

b. Click the icon within the **Description** column (top right-hand side of the screen) and select IP filter values as needed to add criteria into the configuration of the IP ACL.

**Figure 10-13** IP Firewall Rules Add Criteria screen



**NOTE:** Only those selected IP ACL filter attributes display. Each value can have its current setting adjusted by selecting that IP ACL's column to display a pop-up to adjust that one value.

5 Define the following IP firewall rule settings as required:

<b>Precedence</b>	Specify or modify a precedence for this IP policy between 1-5000. Rules with lower precedence are always applied to packets first. If modifying a precedence to apply a higher integer, it will move down the table to reflect its lower priority.
<b>Action</b>	Every IP Firewall rule is made up of matching criteria rules. The action defines the packet's disposition if it matches the specified criteria. The following actions are supported: <i>Deny</i> - Instructs the Firewall to restrict a packet from proceeding to its destination. <i>Permit</i> - Instructs the Firewall to allow a packet to proceed to its destination.
<b>Source</b>	Select the source IP address used as basic matching criteria for this IP ACL rule.

<b>Destination</b>	Determine whether filtered packet destinations for this IP firewall rule do not require any classification ( <i>any</i> ), are designated as a set of configurations consisting of protocol and port mappings (an <i>alias</i> ), set as a numeric IP address ( <i>host</i> ) or defined as <i>network</i> IP and mask. Selecting alias requires a destination network group alias be available or created.
<b>Protocol</b>	Set a service alias as a set of configurations consisting of protocol and port mappings. Both source and destination ports are configurable. Set an alphanumeric service alias (beginning with a \$) and include the protocol as relevant.
<b>Mark</b>	Select an IP Firewall rule's <i>Mark</i> checkbox to enable or disable event marking and set the rule's 8021p or dscp level (from 0 - 7).
<b>Log</b>	Select an IP Firewall rule's <i>Log</i> checkbox to enable or disable event logging for this rule's usage.
<b>Enable</b>	This option displays for IPv4 based firewalls only. Select an IPv4 firewall rule's <i>Enable</i> or <i>Disable</i> icon to determine this rule's inclusion with the IP firewall policy.
<b>Description</b>	Lists the administrator assigned description applied to the IP ACL rule. Select a description within the table to modify its character string as filtering changes warrant. Select the icon within the Description table header to launch a <i>Select Columns</i> screen used to add or remove IP ACL criteria from the table.

- 6 Select **Add** to add additional IP Firewall Rule configurations. Select **Remove** to remove selected IP Firewall Rules as they become obsolete for filtering network access permissions.
- 7 Select **OK** when completed to update the IP Firewall rules. Select **Reset** to revert the screen back to its last saved configuration.

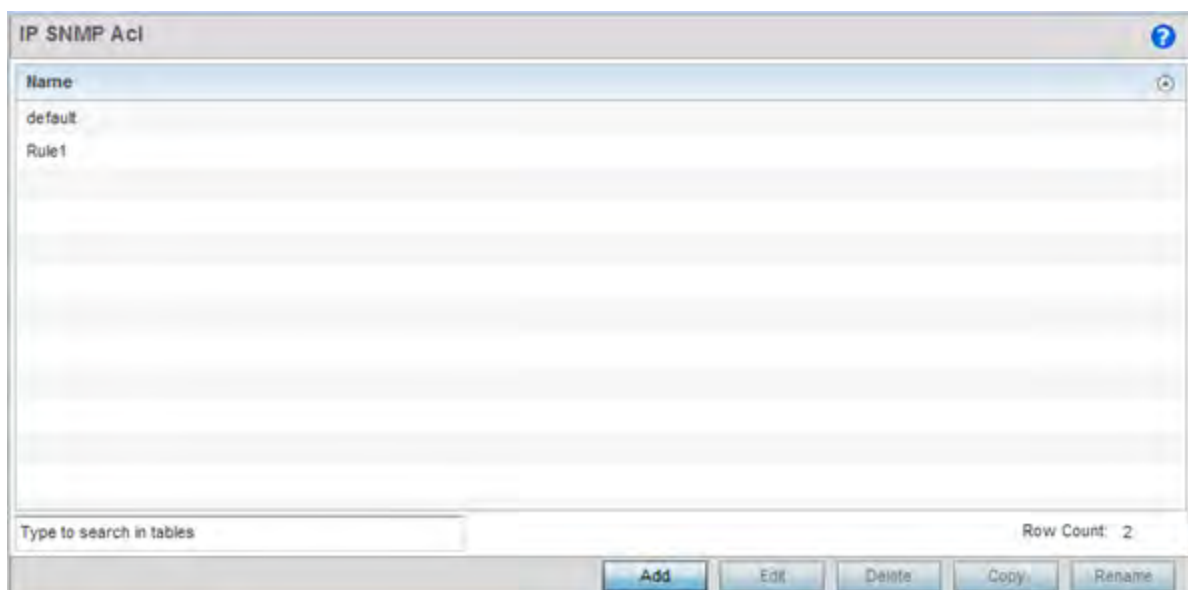
## 10.2.2 Setting an IP SNMP ACL Policy

SNMP performs network management functions using a data structure called a *Management Information Base* (MIB). SNMP is widely implemented but not very secure, since it uses only text community strings for accessing controller or service platform configuration files.

Use SNMP ACLs to help reduce SNMP's vulnerabilities, as SNMP traffic can be exploited to produce a *denial of service* (DoS).

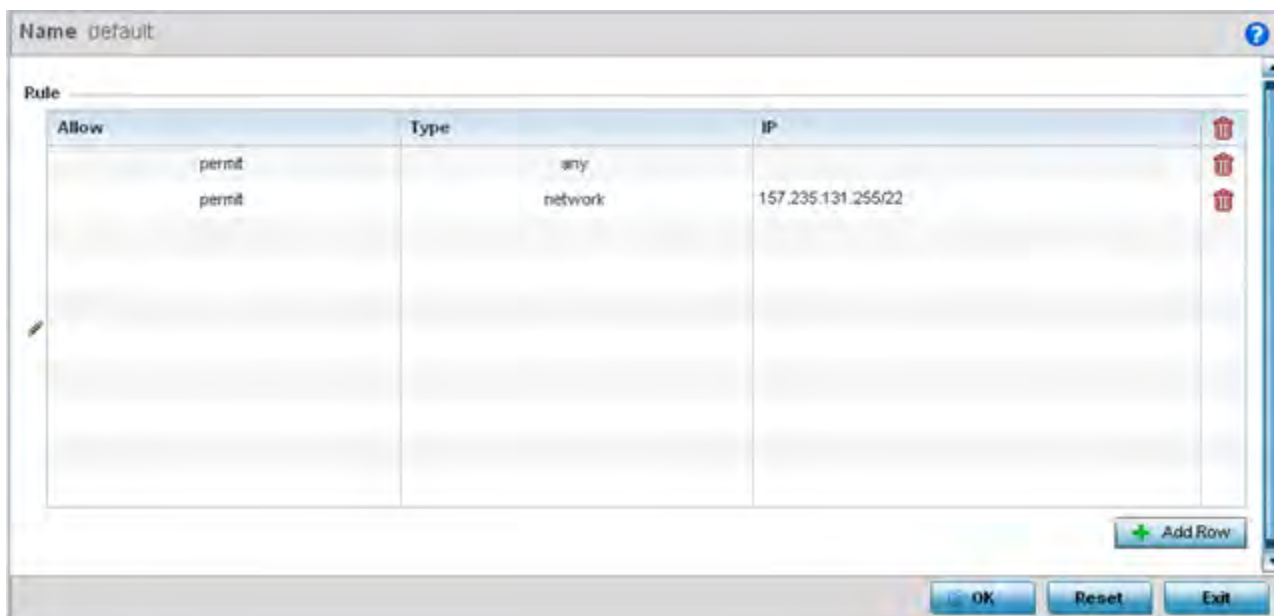
To create an IP SNMP ACL:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Security > IP Firewall**.
- 2 Expand the **IP Firewall** menu item and select **IP SNMP ACL**.



**Figure 10-14** IP Firewall Rules screen

- 3 Select **Add** to create a new SNMP firewall rule. Select an existing policy and click **Edit** to modify the attributes of that policy's configuration. Existing policies can be removed by highlighting them and selecting **Delete**.



**Figure 10-15** IP SNMP ACL Add screen

- 4 Provide a new IP SNMP ACL a **Name** up to 32 characters in length to help distinguish this ACL from others with similar rules.
- 5 Select **+ Add Row** to launch a sub screen where the ACL's permit/deny and network type rules can be applied.

<b>Allow</b>	Select this option to allow the SNMP MIB object traffic. The default setting is to permit SNMP traffic.
<b>Type</b>	Define whether the permit or deny ACL rule applied to the ACL is specific to a <i>Host</i> IP address, a <i>Network</i> address and subnet mask or is applied to <i>Any</i> . The default setting is Network.

- 6 Select **Add** to add additional IP Firewall Rule configurations. Select **Remove** to remove selected IP Firewall Rules as they become obsolete for filtering network access permissions.
- 7 Select **OK** when completed to update the IP Firewall rules. Select **Reset** to revert the screen back to its last saved configuration.

## 10.2.3 Network Group Alias

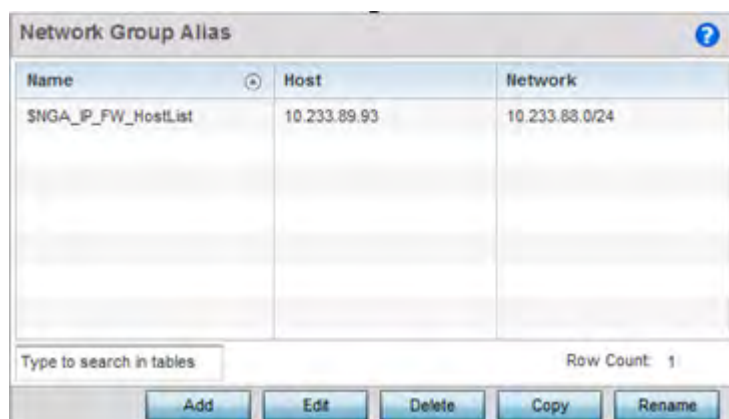
### ► *Configuring IP Firewall Rules*

A *network group alias* is a set of configurations consisting of host and network configurations. Network configurations are complete networks in the form of 192.168.10.0/24 or an IP address range in the form of 192.168.10.10-192.168.10.20. Host configurations are in the form of a single IP address, 192.168.10.23.

A network group alias can contain multiple definitions for a host, network, and IP address range. A maximum of eight (8) Host entries, eight (8) network entries and eight (8) IP addresses range entries can be configured inside a network group alias. A maximum of 32 network group alias entries can be created.

To set a network group alias configuration for an IP Firewall:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Security > IP Firewall > Network Group Alias** from the Web UI.
- 2 Select the **Add** button, or highlight an existing Network Group Alias and select **Edit**.



**Figure 10-16** IP Firewall Network Group Alias screen

<b>Name</b>	Displays the administrator assigned name associated with the network group alias.
<b>Host</b>	Displays all the host aliases in the listed network group alias. Displays a blank column if no host alias is defined.
<b>Network</b>	Displays all network aliases in the listed network group alias. Displays a blank column if no network alias is defined.

- 3 Select **Add** to create a new policy, **Edit** to modify the attributes of an existing policy or **Delete** to remove obsolete policies. Use **Copy** to create a copy of the selected policy and modify it for further use. Use **Rename** to rename the selected policy.
- 4 Either use the **Add** button to create a new Network Group Alias or select an existing policy and click **Edit** to edit it.



**Figure 10-17** Network Group Alias Add screen

If adding a new **Network Alias Rule**, provide it a name up to 32 characters. The network group alias name always starts with a dollar sign (\$).

5 Define the following network group alias parameters:

<b>Host</b>	Specify the Host IP address for up to eight IP addresses supporting network aliasing. Select the down arrow to add the IP address to the table.
<b>Network</b>	Specify the netmask for up to eight IP addresses supporting network aliasing. Subnets can improve network security and performance by organizing hosts into logical groups. Applying the subnet mask to an IP address separates the address into a host address and an extended network address. Select the down arrow to add the mask to the table.

6 Within the **Range** table, use the **+ Add Row** button to specify the **Start IP** address and **End IP** address for the alias range or double-click on an existing an alias range entry to edit it.

7 Select **OK** when completed to update the network alias rules. Select **Reset** to revert the screen back to its last saved configuration.

## 10.2.4 Network Service Alias

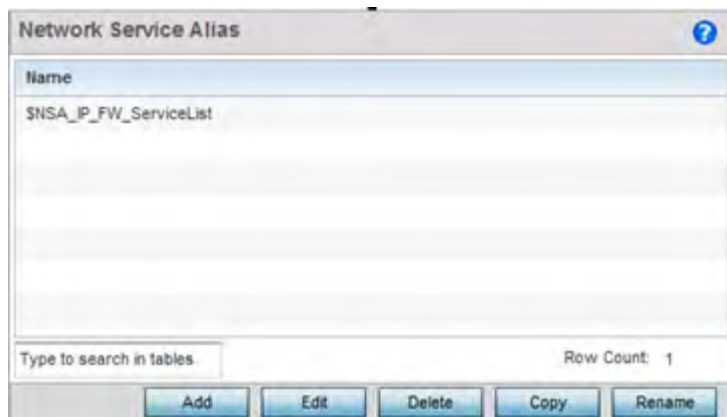
### ► Configuring IP Firewall Rules

A *Network Service Alias* is a set of configurations that consist of protocol and port mappings. Both source and destination ports are configurable. For each protocol, up to 2 source port ranges and up to 2 destination port ranges can be configured. A maximum of 4 protocol entries can be configured per network service alias.

Use a service alias to associate more than one IP address to a network interface, providing multiple connections to a network from a single IP node.

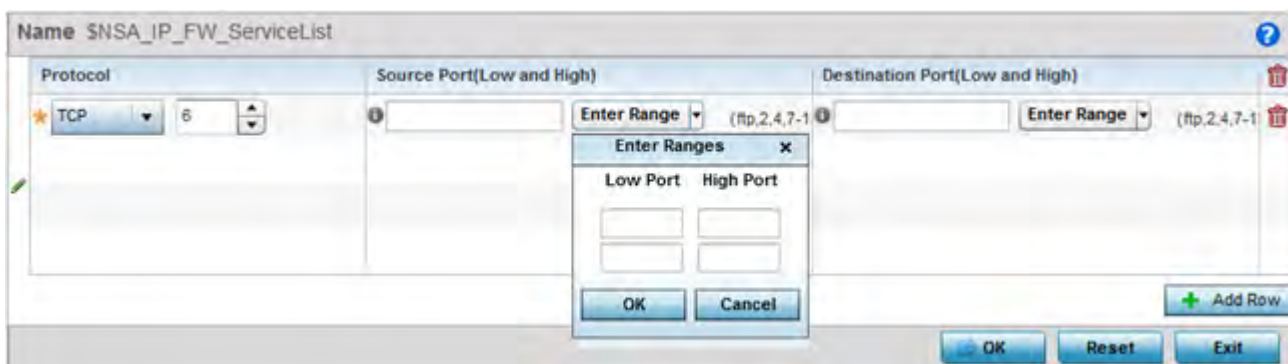
To define a service alias configuration for an IP Firewall:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Security > IP Firewall > Network Service Alias** from the Web UI.  
The *Network Service Alias* screen displays within the main portion of the Web UI.
- 2 From the *Network Service Alias* screen, either select the **Add** button or highlight an existing alias and select **Edit**.



**Figure 10-18** IP Firewall Network Service Alias screen

- 3 Select **Add** to create a new policy, **Edit** to modify the attributes of an existing policy or **Delete** to remove obsolete policies. Use **Copy** to create a copy of the selected policy and modify it for further use. Use **Rename** to rename the selected policy.
- 4 Either use the **Add** button to create an new Network Service Alias or select an existing alias and **Edit** to modify it.



**Figure 10-19** IP Firewall Network Service Alias Add screen

If adding a new **Network Service Alias** name, provide it a name up to 32 characters. Ensure a \$ precedes the name.

- 5 Select **+ Add Row** and provide the following configuration parameters:

<b>Protocol</b>	Specify the protocol for which the alias is created. Use the drop down to select the protocol from <i>igrp</i> , <i>gre</i> , <i>icmp</i> , <i>igmp</i> , <i>ip</i> , <i>vrrp</i> , <i>igp</i> , <i>ospf</i> , <i>tcp</i> and <i>udp</i> . Select <i>other</i> if the protocol is not listed. When a protocol is selected, its protocol number is automatically selected.
-----------------	---

<b>Source Port (Low and High)</b>	This field is only relevant if the protocol is either <i>tcp</i> or <i>udp</i> . Specify the source ports for this protocol entry. A range of ports can be specified. Select the <i>Enter Ranges</i> button next to the field to enter a lower and higher port range value. Up to eight (8) ranges can be specified.
<b>Destination Port (Low and High)</b>	This field is only relevant if the protocol is either <i>tcp</i> or <i>udp</i> . Specify the destination ports for this protocol entry. A range of ports can be specified. Select the <i>Enter Ranges</i> button next to the field to enter a lower and higher port range value. Up to eight (8) such ranges can be specified.

- 6 Within the **Range** field, use the **+ Add Row** button to specify the **Start IP** address and **End IP** address for the service alias range or double-click on an existing service alias range entry to edit it.
- 7 Select **OK** when completed to update the service alias rules. Select **Reset** to revert the screen back to its last saved configuration.

## 10.2.5 EX3500 ACL Standard

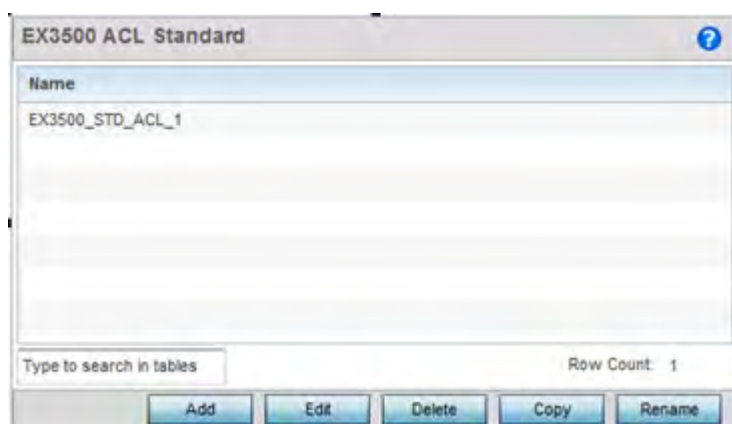
### ► *Configuring IP Firewall Rules*

A Standard ACL for EX3500 is a policy-based ACL that either prevents or allows specific clients from using the device.

An ACL affords a system administrator the ability to grant or restrict client access by specifying that traffic from a specific host or a specific network to either be denied or permitted.

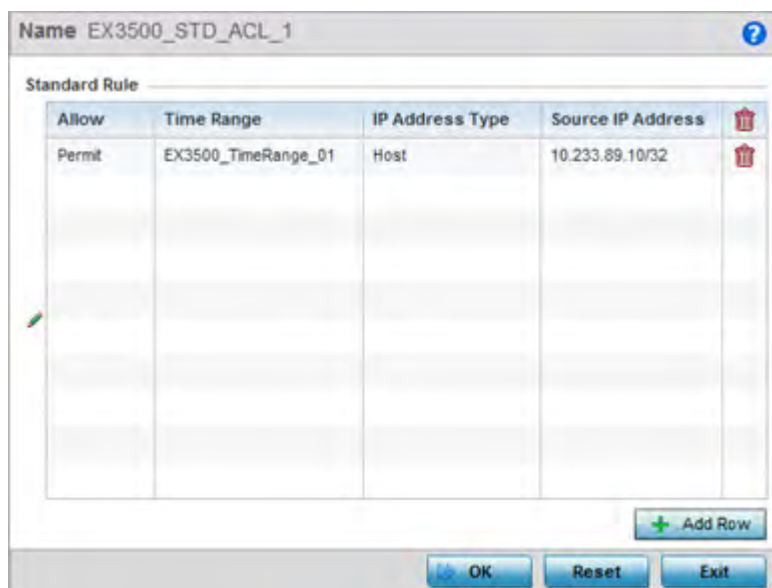
To define a standard ACL for EX3500:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Security > IP Firewall > EX3500 ACL Standard** from the Web UI.  
The EX3500 *ACL Standard* screen displays within the main portion of the Web UI.



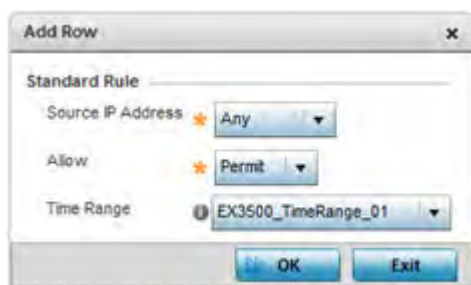
**Figure 10-20** EX3500 ACL Standard screen

- 2 Select **Add** to create a new ACL, **Edit** to modify the attributes of an existing ACL or **Delete** to remove obsolete ACLs. Use **Copy** to create a copy of the selected ACL and modify it for further use. Use **Rename** to rename the selected ACL.
- 3 Either use the **Add** button to create an new EX3500 Standard ACL or select an existing ACL and click **Edit** to edit it. The following screen displays.



**Figure 10-21** EX3500 ACL Standard - Add/Edit screen

- 4 If adding a new **EX3500 ACL Standard**, provide it a name up to 32 characters.
- 5 To add a new standard rule, click **Add Row**.



**Figure 10-22** EX3500 ACL Standard - Add Standard Rule screen

- 6 Provide the following details:

<b>Source IP Address</b>	Use this drop-down menu to provide the source information. Source IP address can be one of <i>Any</i> , <i>Host</i> or <i>Network</i> . When selecting <i>Host</i> provide the IP address of the host device. When selecting <i>Network</i> , provide the IP address of the network along with the mask.
<b>Allow</b>	Use this drop-down menu to indicate the action to be performed. Select from <i>Permit</i> or <i>Deny</i> .
<b>Time Range</b>	From the drop-down menu select the pre-configured time range to use for this ACL. Select <i>None</i> to indicate no preference. For more information on time ranges, see <a href="#">EX3500 Time Range on page 10-64</a> .

- 7 Select **OK** when completed to update the EX3500 Standard ACL. Select **Reset** to revert the screen back to its last saved configuration.

## 10.2.6 EX3500 ACL Extended

### ► *Configuring IP Firewall Rules*

An extended ACL is comprised of *access control entries* (ACEs). Each ACE specifies a *source* and *destination* for matching and filtering traffic to the EX3500 switch.

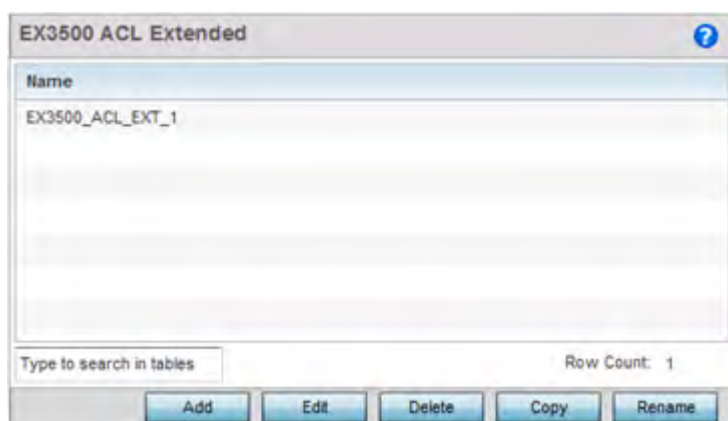
An ACL affords a system administrator the ability to grant or restrict client access by specifying that traffic from a specific host or a specific network to either be denied or permitted.

IP based firewalls function like *Access Control Lists* (ACLs) to filter/mark packets, as opposed to filtering packets on layer 2 ports. IP firewalls implement uniquely defined access control policies, so if you do not have an idea of what kind of access to *allow* or *deny*, a firewall is of little value, and could provide a false sense of network security.

IP based firewall rules are specific to source and destination IP addresses and the unique *rules* and *precedence* orders assigned. Both IP and non-IP traffic on the same Layer 2 interface can be filtered by applying an IP ACL. Firewall rules are processed by a firewall supported device from first to last. When a rule matches the network traffic a controller or service platform is processing, the firewall uses that rule's action to determine whether traffic is allowed or denied.

To configure an extended ACL on EX3500:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Security > IP Firewall > EX3500 ACL Extended** from the Web UI.



**Figure 10-23** EX3500 ACL Extended screen

- 2 Select **Add** to create a new ACL, **Edit** to modify the attributes of an existing ACL or **Delete** to remove obsolete ACLs. Use **Copy** to create a copy of the selected ACL and modify it for further use. Use **Rename** to rename the selected ACL.
- 3 Either use the **Add** button to create an new EX3500 Extended ACL or select an existing ACL and click **Edit** to edit it. The following screen displays.

Precedence	Source	Destination	Action	Time Range	Protocol	DSCP	IP Header P
1	Any	Any	Allow		other	Not Set	Not Set

**Figure 10-24** EX3500 ACL Extended - Add/Edit screen

EX3500 extended ACL configurations can either be modified as a collective group of variables or selected and updated individually if their filtering attributes require a more refined update.

- a Select the **Edit Rule** icon to the left of a particular IP firewall rule configuration to update its parameters collectively.

**Figure 10-25** EX3500 ACL Extended - Add Criteria screen

- b Click the icon located at the top right-hand side of the screen and select the values as needed to add/hide criteria to the configuration of the extended ACL.

**Figure 10-26** EX3500 ACL Extended - Select Fields screen

4 Define the following Extended ACL rule settings as required:

<b>Precedence</b>	Specify or modify a precedence for this ACL between 1-128. Rules with lower precedence are always applied to packets first. If modifying a precedence to apply a higher integer, it will move down the table to reflect its lower priority.
<b>Action</b>	Every ACL rule is made up of matching criteria rules. The action defines the action to be performed if it matches the specified criteria. The following actions are supported:  <i>Deny</i> - Instructs the Firewall to restrict a packet from proceeding to its destination.  <i>Permit</i> - Instructs the Firewall to allow a packet to proceed to its destination.
<b>Source</b>	Use this drop-down menu to provide the source information. Source IP address can be one of Any, Host or Network. When selecting Host provide the IP address of the host device. When selecting Network, provide the IP address of the network along with the mask.
<b>Destination</b>	Use this drop-down menu to provide the destination information. Destination IP address can be one of <i>Any</i> , <i>Host</i> or <i>Network</i> . When selecting <i>Host</i> provide the IP address of the host device. When selecting <i>Network</i> , provide the IP address of the network along with the mask.
<b>Protocol</b>	Set a service alias as a set of configurations consisting of protocol and port mappings. Both source and destination ports are configurable. Depending on the selected protocol, other fields might become visible and can be configured.
<b>Time Range</b>	Use the drop-down menu to configure a time range when this ACL is applicable. For more information on configuring Time Ranges, see <a href="#">EX3500 Time Range</a> .
<b>DSCP</b>	<i>Differentiated Services Code Point</i> is a mechanism that specifies a simple mechanism for classifying and manage network traffic and provide a QoS mechanism. Use the spinner to select a value in the range 0-63. Use this value to classify and mark packets that match the criteria specified in this extended ACL rule.  Either <i>DSCP</i> or <i>IP Header Precedence</i> can be configured. Both these fields cannot be configured together.
<b>IP Header Precedence</b>	Use this field to set the precedence value in the IP Header. Use the spinner to select a value in the range 0-7. Use this value to classify and mark packets that match the criteria specified in this extended ACL rule.  Either <i>DSCP</i> or <i>IP Header Precedence</i> can be configured. Both these fields cannot be configured together.

5 Select **OK** when completed to update the EX3500 Extended ACL. Select **Reset** to revert the screen back to its last saved configuration.

## 10.3 Wireless Client Roles

Define wireless client roles to filter clients from based on matching policies. Matching policies (much like ACLs) are sequential collections of permit and deny conditions that apply to packets received from connected clients. When a packet is received from a client, the controller or service platform compares the fields in the packet against



applied matching policy rules to verify the packet has the required permissions to be forwarded, based on the criteria specified. If a packet does not meet any of the criteria specified, the packet is dropped.

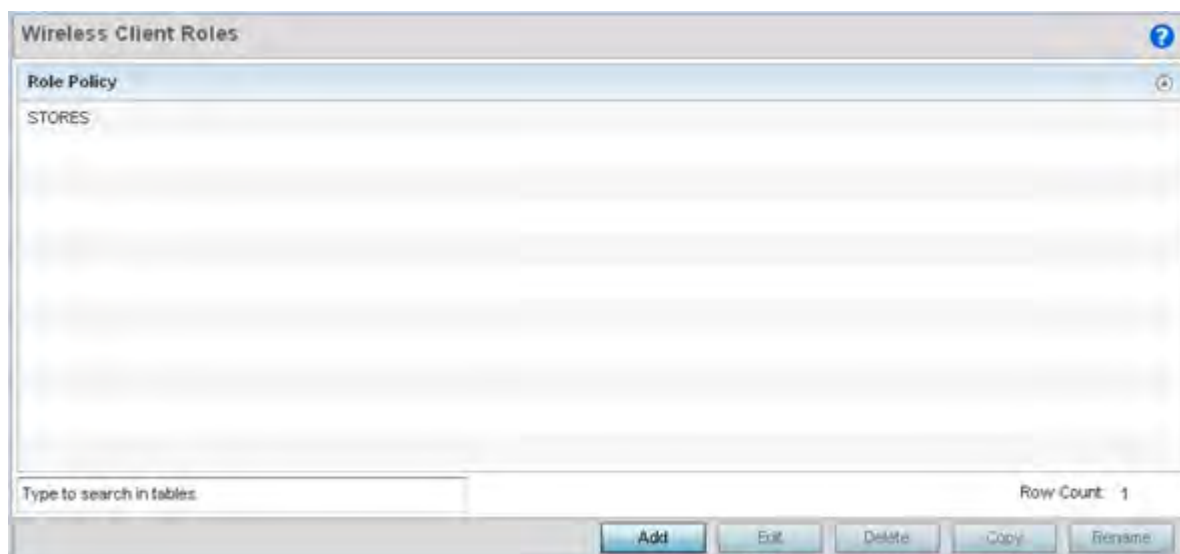
Additionally, wireless client connections are also managed by granting or restricting access by specifying a range of IP or MAC addresses to include or exclude from connectivity. These MAC or IP access control mechanisms are configured as Firewall Rules to further refine client filter and matching criteria.

### 10.3.1 Configuring a Client's Role Policy

#### ► *Wireless Client Roles*

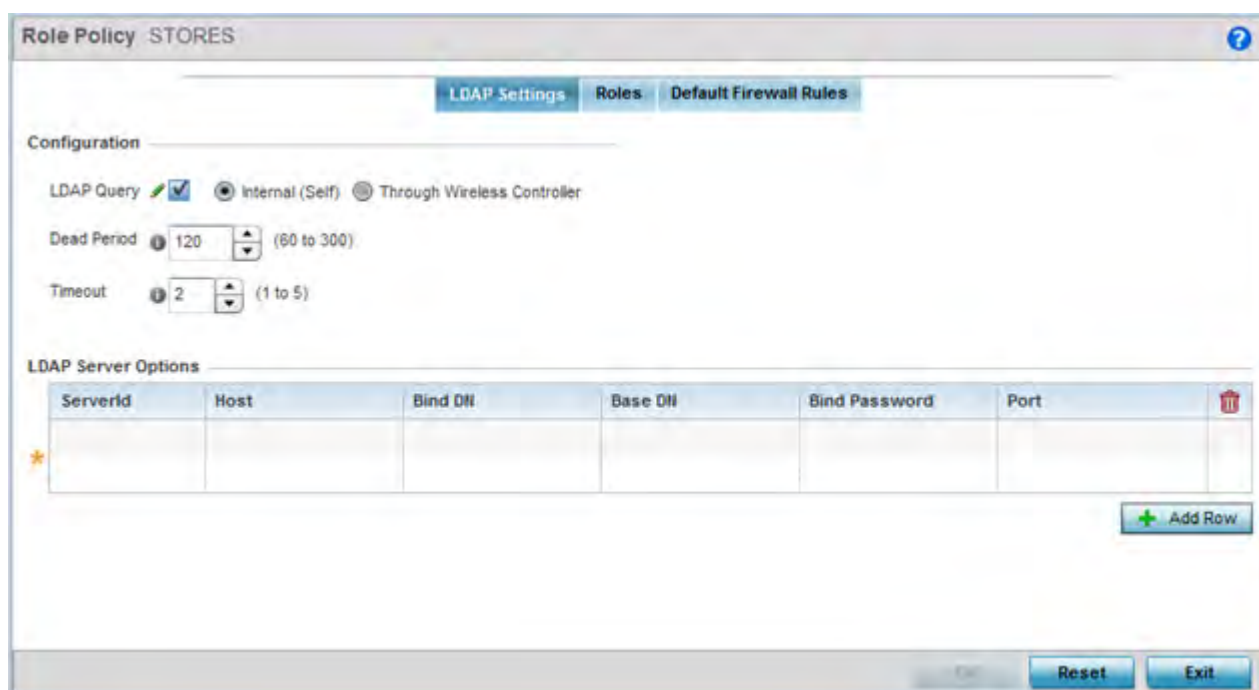
To configure a wireless client's role policy and matching criteria:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Security > Wireless Client Roles**. The **Wireless Client Roles** screen displays the name of those client role policies created thus far.
- 2 Select **Add** to create a new Wireless Client Role policy, **Edit** to modify an existing policy or **Delete** to remove a policy.



**Figure 10-27** *Wireless IPS screen*

The **LDAP Settings** tab displays by default.



**Figure 10-28** Wireless Client LDAP Settings screen

- 3 In the **Configuration** section define the following LDAP server parameters:

<b>LDAP Query</b>	If LDAP attributes are enabled for the selected wireless client role policy, select an LDAP query mode of either <i>Internal (Self)</i> or <i>Through Wireless Controller</i> . Select <i>Internal (Self)</i> to use local LDAP server resources configured in the LDAP Server Options.
<b>Dead Period</b>	When using an external LDAP server, select the Dead Period between 60 and 300 seconds. The Dead Period is the timeout value before the system will attempt to rebind with the LDAP server.
<b>Timeout</b>	When using an external LDAP server, select a Timeout value to specify how long of a delay between request and responses before LDAP bind and queries will be timed out.

- 4 In the **LDAP Server Options** section use the **+ Add Row** button to add an LDAP server to the list or double-click on an existing LDAP server entry to edit it. When adding or editing the LDAP server options define the following parameters:

<b>ServerId</b>	When adding or editing an LDAP server entry, enter the LDAP server ID as either 1 or 2.
<b>Host</b>	When adding or editing an LDAP server entry, enter the LDAP server's fully qualified domain name or IP address in the Host field
<b>Bind DN</b>	When adding or editing an LDAP server entry, enter the LDAP server's bind distinguished name in the Bind DN field.
<b>Base DN</b>	When adding or editing an LDAP server entry, enter the LDAP server's base distinguished name in the Base DN field.
<b>Bind Password</b>	When adding or editing an LDAP server entry, enter the password for bind. Click the Show button to display the password.

<b>Port</b>	When adding or editing an LDAP server entry, enter the LDAP server port number. To select from a list of frequently used services and their corresponding port numbers, use the drop-down menu and select a service.
-------------	--

- 5 Click on the **Roles** tab. If no policies have been created, a default wireless client role policy can be applied. The Roles screen lists existing policies. Any of these existing policies can be selected and edited or a new role can be added.

Role Name	Precedence
ROLE1	1
ROLE2	2
ROLE3	3
ROLE4	4
ROLE5	5
ROLE6	6

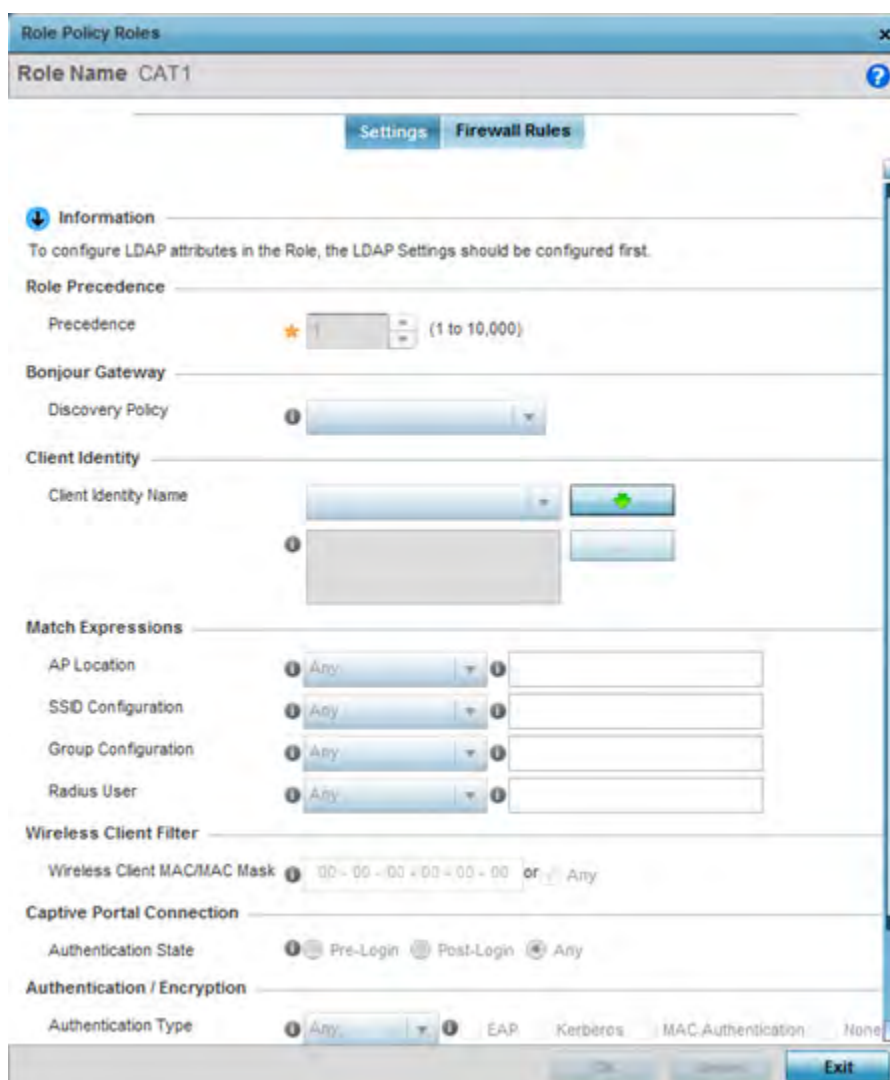
**Figure 10-29** *Wireless Client Roles screen*

- 6 Refer to the following configuration data for existing roles:

<b>Role Name</b>	Displays the name assigned to the client role policy when it was initially created.
<b>Precedence</b>	Displays the precedence number associated with each role. Precedence numbers determine the order a role is applied. Roles with lower numbers are applied before those with higher numbers. Precedence numbers are assigned when a role is created or modified, and two or more roles can share the same precedence.

- 7 Select **Add** to create a new wireless client role policy, **Edit** to modify the attributes of a selected policy or **Delete** to remove obsolete policies from the list of those available.

The Role Policy Roles screen displays with the **Settings** tab displayed by default.



**Figure 10-30** Wireless Client Roles screen - Settings tab

- 8 If creating a new role, assign it a **Role Name** to help differentiate it from others that may have a similar configuration. The role policy name cannot exceed 64 characters. The name cannot be modified as part of the edit process.
- 9 Within the **Role Precedence** field, use the spinner control to set a numerical precedence value between 1 - 10,000. Precedence determines the order a role is applied. Roles with lower numbers are applied before those with higher numbers. While there's no default precedence for a role, two or more roles can share the same precedence.
- 10 Use the **Discovery Policy** drop-down menu to specify the **Bonjour Gateway**.  
Bonjour provides a method to discover services on a *local area network* (LAN). Bonjour allows users to set up a network without any configuration. Services such as printers, scanners and file-sharing servers can be found using Bonjour. Bonjour only works within a single broadcast domain. However, with a special DNS configuration, it can be extended to find services across broadcast domains.
- 11 Within the **Client Identity** field, define the client type (Android etc.) used as matching criteria within the client role policy. Create new client identity types or edit existing ones as required.

- 12 Refer to the **Match Expressions** field to create filter rules based on AP locations, SSIDs and RADIUS group memberships.

<b>AP Location</b>	<p>Use the drop-down menu to specify the location of an Access Point matched in a RF Domain or the Access Point's resident configuration. Select one of the following filter options:</p> <p><i>Exact</i> - The role is only applied to Access Points with the exact location string specified in the role.</p> <p><i>Contains</i> - The role is only applied to Access Points whose location contains the location string specified in the role.</p> <p><i>Does Not Contain</i> - The role is only applied to Access Points whose location does not contain the location string specified in the role.</p> <p><i>Any</i> - The role is applied to any Access Point location. This is the default setting.</p>
<b>SSID Configuration</b>	<p>Use the drop-down menu to define a wireless client filter option based on how the SSID is specified in a WLAN. Select one of the following options:</p> <p><i>Exact</i> - The role is only applied when the exact SSID string specified in the role.</p> <p><i>Contains</i> - The role is only applied when the SSID contains the string specified in the role.</p> <p><i>Does Not Contain</i> - The role is applied when the SSID does not contain the string specified in the role.</p> <p><i>Any</i> - The role is applied to any SSID Location. This is the default setting.</p>
<b>Group Configuration</b>	<p>Use the drop-down menu to define a wireless client filter option based on how the RADIUS group name matches the provided expression. Select one of the following options:</p> <p><i>Exact</i> - The role is only applied when the exact Radius Group Name string is specified in the role.</p> <p><i>Contains</i> - The role is applied when the Radius Group Name contains the string specified in the role.</p> <p><i>Does Not Contain</i> - The role is applied when the Radius Group Name does not contain the string specified in the role</p> <p><i>Any</i> - The role is applied to any RADIUS group name. This is the default setting.</p>
<b>Radius User</b>	<p>Use the drop-down menu to define a filter option based on how the RADIUS user name (1-255 characters in length) matches the provided expression. Select one of the following options:</p> <p><i>Exact</i> - The role is only applied when the exact Radius user string is specified in the role.</p> <p><i>Starts With</i> - The role is applied when the Radius user starts with the string specified in the role.</p> <p><i>Contains</i> - The role is applied when the Radius user contains the string specified in the role.</p> <p><i>Does Not Contain</i> - The role is applied when the Radius user does not contain the string specified in the role.</p> <p><i>Any</i> - The role is applied to any RADIUS user name. This is the default setting.</p>

- 13 Use the **Wireless Client Filter** parameter to define a wireless client MAC address filter that is applied to each role. Select the **Any** radio button to use any MAC address. The default is **Any**.

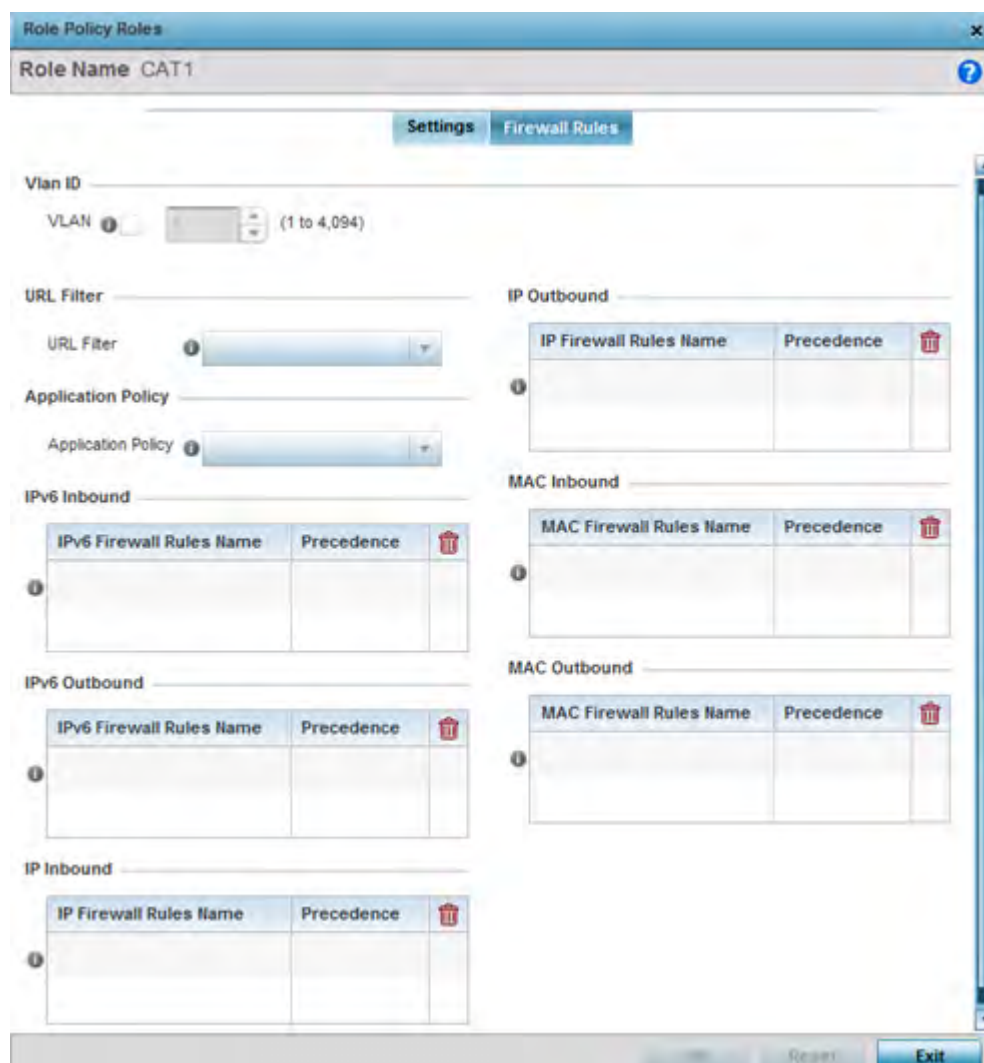
- 14 Refer to the **Captive Portal Connection** parameter to define when wireless clients are authenticated when making a captive portal authentication request.
- Secure guest access is referred to as *captive portal*. A captive portal is guest access policy for providing temporary and restrictive access to the wireless network. Existing captive portal policies can be applied to a WLAN to provide secure guest access.
- 15 Select the **Pre-Login** check box to conduct captive portal client authentication before the client is logged. Select **Post-Login** to have the client share authentication credentials after it has logged into the network. Select **Any** (the default setting) makes no distinction on whether authentication is conducted before or after the client has logged in.
- 16 Use the **Authentication / Encryption** field to set the authentication and encryption filters applied to this wireless client role. The options for both authentication and encryption are:
- *Equals* - The role is only applied when the authentication and encryption type matches the exact method(s) specified by the radio button selections.
  - *Not Equals* - The role is only applied when the authentication and encryption type does not match the exact method(s) specified by the radio button selections.
  - *Any* - The role is applied to any type. This is the default setting for both authentication and encryption.
- 17 Use the **+** (plus sign) to the left of the **LDAP Attributes** label to expand it. Set the following **LDAP Attributes** for the role policy:

The following filter criteria applies to each LDAP attribute:

- *Exact* - The role is only applied when the exact string is specified in the role.
- *Contains* - The role is applied when the LDAP attribute contains the string specified in the role.
- *Does Not Contain* - The role is applied when the LDAP attribute does not contain the string specified in the role.
- *Any* - The role is applied to any LDAP attribute. This is the default setting.

<b>City</b>	Enter a 2-31 character name of the city filtered in the role.
<b>Company</b>	Enter a 2-31 character name of the organizational company filtered in the role.
<b>Country</b>	Enter a 2-31 character name of the country (co) filtered in the role.
<b>Department</b>	Enter a 2-31 character name of the organizational department filtered in the role.
<b>Email</b>	Enter a 2-31 character description of the Email address filtered in the role.
<b>Employee id</b>	Enter a 2-31 character name of the employee ID filtered in the role.
<b>State</b>	Enter a 2-31 character name of the state filtered in the role.
<b>Title</b>	Enter a 2-31 character name of the job or organizational title filtered in the role.
<b>Member Of</b>	Provide a 64 character maximum description of the group membership in the role.

- 18 Select **OK** to update the Settings screen. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.
- 19 Select the **Firewall Rules** tab to set default Firewall rules for *Inbound* and *Outbound* IP and MAC Firewall rules.



**Figure 10-31** Wireless Client Roles screen - Firewall Rules tab

A *firewall* is a mechanism enforcing access control, and is considered a first line of defense in protecting proprietary information within the network. The means by which this is accomplished varies, but in principle, a firewall can be thought of as mechanisms both *blocking* and *permitting* data traffic based on inbound and outbound IP and MAC rules.

IP based firewall rules are specific to source and destination IP addresses and the unique rules and precedence orders assigned. Both IP and non-IP traffic on the same Layer 2 interface can be filtered by applying both an IP ACL and a MAC.

Additionally, administrators can filter Layer 2 traffic on a physical Layer 2 interface using MAC addresses. A MAC firewall rule uses source and destination MAC addresses for matching operations, where the result is a typical allow, deny or mark designation to packet traffic.

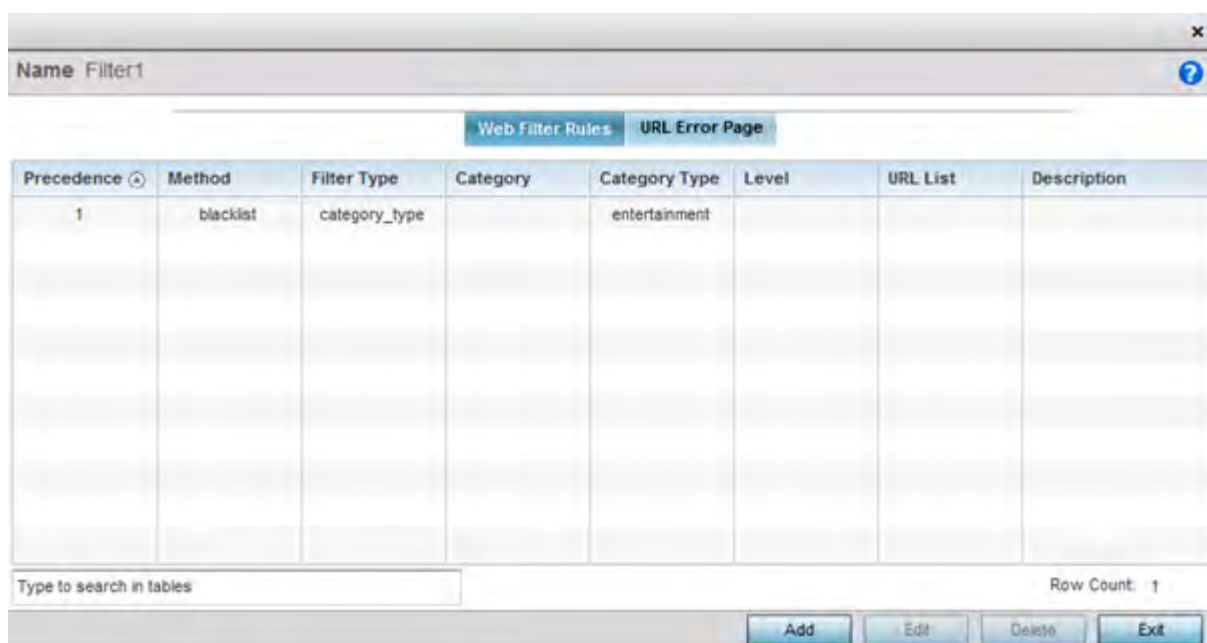
- 20 Set the **Vlan ID** (from 1 - 4094) for the virtual LAN used by clients matching the IP or MAC inbound and outbound rules of this policy.
- 21 Use the drop-down to select the appropriate **Application Policy** to use with this firewall rule. An application policy defines the rules or actions executed on recognized HTTP (Facebook), enterprise (Webex) and peer-to-peer (gaming) applications or application-categories.



22 Select the **URL Filter** used as the content filter for the Firewall Rule. If a policy requires creation, select the **Create** icon. If an existing policy requires modification, select the **Edit** icon button and update this existing policy as needed.

A URL filter is comprised of several filter rules. To construct a filter rule, either *whitelist* or *blacklist* a filter level, category type, category or a custom category. A whitelist bans all sites except the categories and lists defined in the whitelist. The blacklist allows all sites except the categories and lists defined in the blacklist.

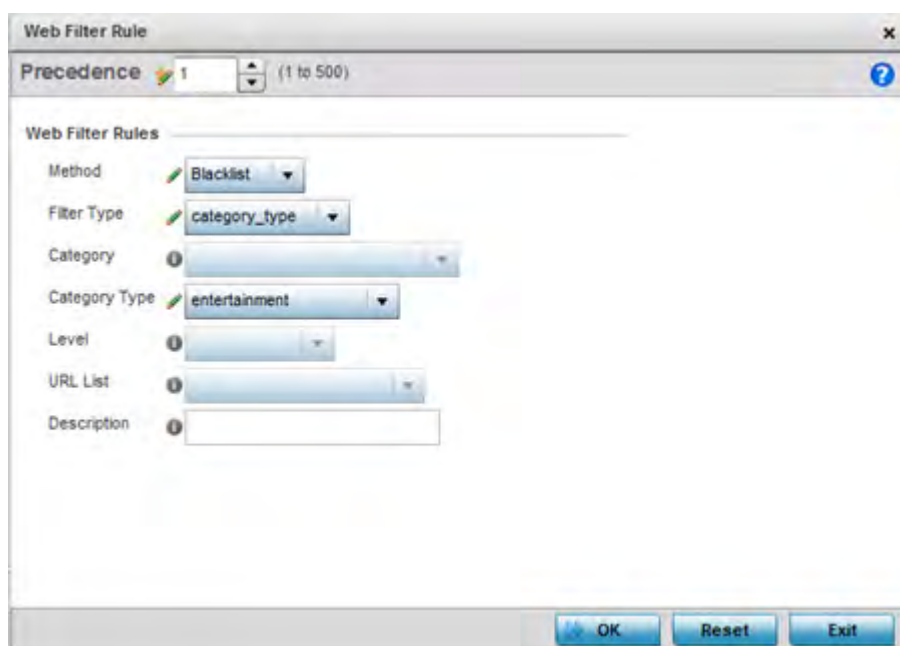
23 Enter a 32 character maximum **Name** for the URL filter and select **Continue**.



**Figure 10-32** Wireless Client Roles screen - Web Filter Rules tab

24 Select **Add** to create a new Web filter rule configuration, or select an exiting configuration then **Edit** to modify the attributes of an existing Web filter rule.

For more information on Web filters, see [Web Filtering on page 7-67](#).



**Figure 10-33** Wireless Client Roles screen - Add/Edit Web Filter Rules

25 Define the following filter rule settings:

<b>Precedence</b>	Set a precedence (priority) from 1 - 500 for the filter rule's utilization versus other filter rules. 1 is the highest priority and 500 the lowest.
<b>Method</b>	Select either <i>whitelist</i> or <i>Blacklist</i> to specify whether the rule is for inclusion or exclusion. A whitelist bans all sites except the categories and URL lists defined in the whitelist. The blacklist allows all sites except the categories and URL lists defined in the blacklist.
<b>Filter Type</b>	If the <i>Filter Type</i> is set to <i>category</i> , use the drop down menu to select from a list of predefined categories to align with the whitelist or blacklist <i>Method</i> designation and the precedence assigned.
<b>Category</b>	A category is a pre-defined URL list available in the WiNG software. If <i>category</i> is selected as the <i>Filter Type</i> , the <i>Category</i> drop-down menu becomes enabled for the selection of an existing URL type or whitelist or blacklist. Categories are based on an external database, and cannot be modified or removed. Custom categories can be created with the <i>URL List</i> and added to the database.
<b>Category Type</b>	When <i>category_type</i> is selected as the Filter Type, select an existing category type (adult-content, security-risk etc.) and either blacklist or whitelist the URLs in that category type. There are 12 category types available.
<b>Level</b>	<i>Basic</i> , <i>Low</i> , <i>Medium</i> , <i>medium-high</i> and <i>High</i> filter levels are available. Each level is pre-configured to use a set of category types. The user cannot change the categories in the category types used for these pre-configured filter-level settings, and add/modify/remove the category types mapped to the filter-level setting.
<b>URL List</b>	URL lists are customized categories included in the custom filter-level setting. URL lists enable an administrator to blacklist or whitelist URLs in addition to the built-in categories.

<b>Description</b>	Enter a 80 character maximum description for this Web filter rule to help differentiate it from others with similar category include or exclude rule configurations.
--------------------	--

26 Select **OK** to save the changes to the Web Filter Rule. Select **Exit** to close the screen without saving the updates.

27 Select the **URL Error Page** tab to define the configuration and layout of a URL error page launched when a Web filter rule is invoked and an error page needs to be displayed to a user instead of they're expected Web page.

**Figure 10-34** Wireless Client Roles screen - Web Filter Rules URL Error Page

28 Set the following **URL Error Page** display properties:

<b>Name</b>	Provide a 32 character maximum name for the title of the blocking page. The name should help convey that this page is launched to prevent the client's requested page from displaying.
<b>Description</b>	Provide a 80 character maximum description of the page to help differentiate it from other pages with similar page restriction properties.
<b>Page Path</b>	Set the path to the page sent back to the client browser explaining the reason for blocking the client's requested URL. It can be generated internally at the time the page is sent, or be a URL to an <i>External</i> Web server if the administrator chooses to utilize a customized page. The default setting is Internal, requiring the administrator to define the page configuration within the fields in the <i>Internal Page Configuration</i> portion of the screen.

<b>External Page URL</b>	If <i>External</i> is selected as the Page Path, provide a 511 character maximum External Page URL used as the Web link designation of the externally hosted blocking page.
<b>Internal Page Title</b>	Either enter a 255 character maximum title for the URL blocking page or use the existing default text ( <i>This URL may have been filtered</i> ).
<b>Internal Page Header</b>	Either enter a 255 character maximum header for the top of the URL blocking page or use the existing default text ( <i>The requested URL could not be retrieved</i> ).
<b>Internal Page Content</b>	Enter a 255 character maximum set of text used as the main body (middle portion) of the blocking page. Optionally use the default message ( <i>The site you have attempted to reach may be considered inappropriate for access</i> ).
<b>Internal Page Footer</b>	Either enter a 255 character maximum footer for the bottom of the URL blocking page or use the existing default text ( <i>If you have any questions contact your IT department</i> ).
<b>Internal Page Org Name</b>	Enter a 255 character maximum organizational name responsible for the URL blocking page. The default organizational name ( <i>Your Organizational Name</i> ) is not very practical, and is just a guideline for customization.
<b>Internal Page Org Structure</b>	Enter a 255 character maximum organizational signature responsible for the URL blocking page. The default organizational signature ( <i>Your Organizational Name, All Rights Reserved</i> ) is not very practical, and is just a guideline for customization.
<b>Internal Page Logo 1</b>	Provide the location and filename of a small graphic image displayed in the blocking page.
<b>Internal Page Logo 2</b>	Provide the location and filename of a main graphic image displayed in the blocking page.

29 Specify an **IP Inbound** or **IP Outbound** firewall rule by selecting a rule from the drop-down menu and use the spinner control to assign the rule Precedence. Rules with lower precedence are always applied first to packets. If no IP Inbound or Outbound rules exist meeting the required firewall filtering criteria, select the **Create** button to set the inbound or outbound rule criteria. Select the **+ Add Row** button or **Delete** icon as needed to add or remove IP firewall rules. Define the following parameters to create a new Inbound or Outbound IP firewall rule. For more information, refer to [Configuring IP Firewall Rules on page 10-20](#).

Precedence	Action	Source	Destination	Protocol	Mark	Log	Enable	Description
10	Allow	0.0.0.0/0	0.0.0.0/0	TCP	<input type="checkbox"/> Mark	<input type="checkbox"/> Log	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	*permit all TCP
11	Allow	0.0.0.0/0	0.0.0.0/0	UDP SPort 67, DPort 68	<input type="checkbox"/> Mark	<input type="checkbox"/> Log	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	*permit DHCP r
20	Deny	0.0.0.0/0	0.0.0.0/0	UDP SPort 137-138, DPort 135-136	<input type="checkbox"/> N/A	<input type="checkbox"/> Log	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	*deny window
21	Deny	0.0.0.0/0	224.0.0.0/4	IP	<input type="checkbox"/> N/A	<input type="checkbox"/> Log	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	*deny IP multic
22	Deny	0.0.0.0/0	255.255.255.255	IP	<input type="checkbox"/> N/A	<input type="checkbox"/> Log	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	*deny IP local I
100	Allow	0.0.0.0/0	0.0.0.0/0	IP	<input type="checkbox"/> Mark	<input type="checkbox"/> Log	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	*permit all IP tra

**Figure 10-35** Wireless Client Roles screen - IP Firewall Policy screen

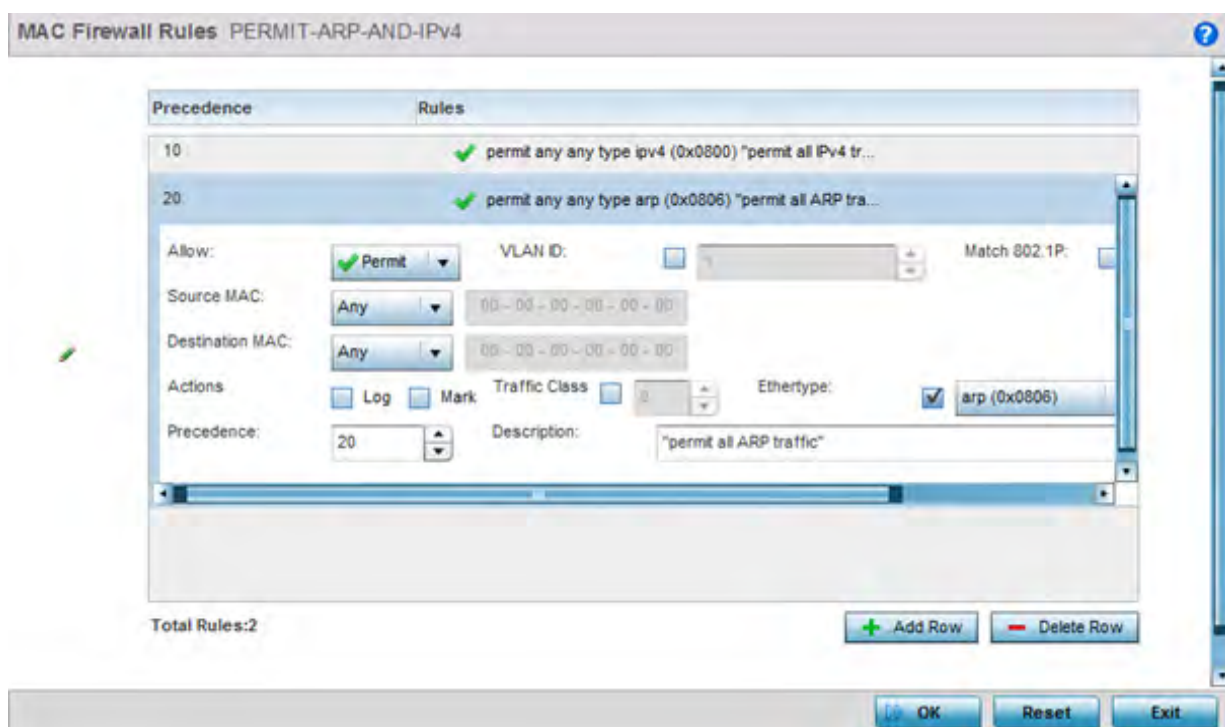
<b>Precedence</b>	Specify or modify a precedence for this IP policy between 1-5000. Rules with lower precedence are always applied to packets first. If modifying a precedence to a higher integer, it will move down the table to reflect its lower priority.
<b>Action</b>	Every IP Firewall rule is made up of matching criteria rules. The action defines the packet's disposition if it matches the specified criteria. The following actions are supported:  <i>Deny</i> - Instructs the Firewall to restrict a packet from proceeding to its destination.  <i>Permit</i> - Instructs the Firewall to allow a packet to proceed to its destination.
<b>Source</b>	Select the source IP address used as basic matching criteria for this IP ACL rule.
<b>Destination</b>	Determine whether filtered packet destinations for this IP firewall rule do not require any classification ( <i>any</i> ), are designated as a set of configurations consisting of protocol and port mappings (an <i>alias</i> ), set as a numeric IP address ( <i>host</i> ) or defined as <i>network</i> IP and mask. Selecting alias requires a destination network group alias be available or created.
<b>Protocol</b>	Set a service alias as a set of configurations consisting of protocol and port mappings. Both source and destination ports are configurable. Set an alphanumeric service alias (beginning with a \$) and include the protocol as relevant.
<b>Mark</b>	Select an IP Firewall rule's <i>Mark</i> checkbox to enable or disable event marking and set the rule's 8021p or dscp level (from 0 - 7).
<b>Log</b>	Select an IP Firewall rule's <i>Log</i> checkbox to enable or disable event logging for this rule's usage.

<b>Enable</b>	Select an IP Firewall rule's <i>Enable</i> or <i>Disable</i> icon to determine this rule's inclusion with the IP firewall policy.
<b>Description</b>	Lists the administrator assigned description applied to the IP ACL rule. Select a description within the table to modify its character string as filtering changes warrant. Select the icon within the Description table header to launch a <i>Select Columns</i> screen used to add or remove IP ACL criteria from the table.

30 Select **OK** to save the updates to the Inbound or Outbound IP Firewall rule. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

31 If required, select existing Inbound and Outbound MAC Firewall Rules using the drop-down menu. If no rules exist, select **Create** to display a screen where Inbound or Outbound Firewall rules can be created.

32 Define the following parameters required to create an **Inbound** or **Outbound MAC Firewall** rule:



**Figure 10-36** MAC Firewall Rules - ACL Settings screen

<b>MAC Firewall Rules</b>	If creating a new MAC Firewall rule, assign it a name (up to 64 characters) to help differentiate it from others that may have similar configurations.
<b>Allow</b>	Every MAC Firewall rule is made up of matching criteria rules. The action defines what to do with the packet if it matches the specified criteria. The following actions are supported:  <i>Deny</i> - Instructs the Firewall to prohibit a packet from proceeding to its destination when filter conditions are met.  <i>Permit</i> - Instructs the Firewall to allow a packet to proceed to its destination when filter conditions are met.
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Enter a VLAN ID representative of the shared SSID each user employs to interoperate within the network (once authenticated by the local RADIUS server). The VLAN ID can be between 1 and 4094.

<b>Match 802.1P</b>	Configures IP DSCP to 802.1p priority mapping for untagged frames. Use the spinner control to define a setting between 0-7.
<b>Source / Destination MAC</b>	Enter both <i>Source</i> and <i>Destination</i> MAC addresses as basic matching criteria.
<b>Action</b>	The following actions are supported: <i>Log</i> - Logs the event when this rule is applied to a wireless clients association attempt. <i>Mark</i> - Modifies certain fields inside the packet and then permits them. Therefore, mark is an action with an implicit permit. - VLAN 802.1p priority. - DSCP bits in the header. - <i>TOS bits in the header.</i> <i>Mark, Log</i> – Applies both log and mark actions.
<b>Traffic Class</b>	Select this option to enable a spinner control for traffic class prioritization. Devices that originate a packet must identify a class or priority for packets. Devices use the traffic class field in the MAC header to set this priority.
<b>Ethertype</b>	Use the drop-down menu to specify an EtherType. An EtherType is a two-octet field within an Ethernet frame. It's used to indicate which protocol is encapsulated in the payload of an Ethernet frame.
<b>Precedence</b>	Use the spinner control to specify a precedence for this MAC policy between 1-1500. Rules with lower precedence are always applied first to packets. More than one rule can share the same precedence value.
<b>Description</b>	Provide a description for the rule to differentiate the IP Firewall Rule from others with similar configurations. This should be more descriptive than simply re-applying the name of the rule.

33 Select **OK** to save the updates to the MAC Firewall rule. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 10.4 Device Fingerprinting

With an increase in *Bring Your Own Device* (BYOD) corporate networks, there's a parallel increase in the number of possible attack scenarios within the network. BYOD devices are inherently unsafe, as the organization's security mechanisms do not extend to these personal devices deployed in the corporate wireless network. Organizations can protect their network by limiting how and what these BYODs can access on and through the corporate network.

Device fingerprinting assists administrators by controlling how BYOD devices access a corporate wireless domain.

Device fingerprinting uses DHCP options sent by the client in request or discover packets to derive a unique signature specific to device class. For example, Apple devices have a different signature from Android devices. The signature is used to classify the devices and assign permissions and restrictions on each device class.

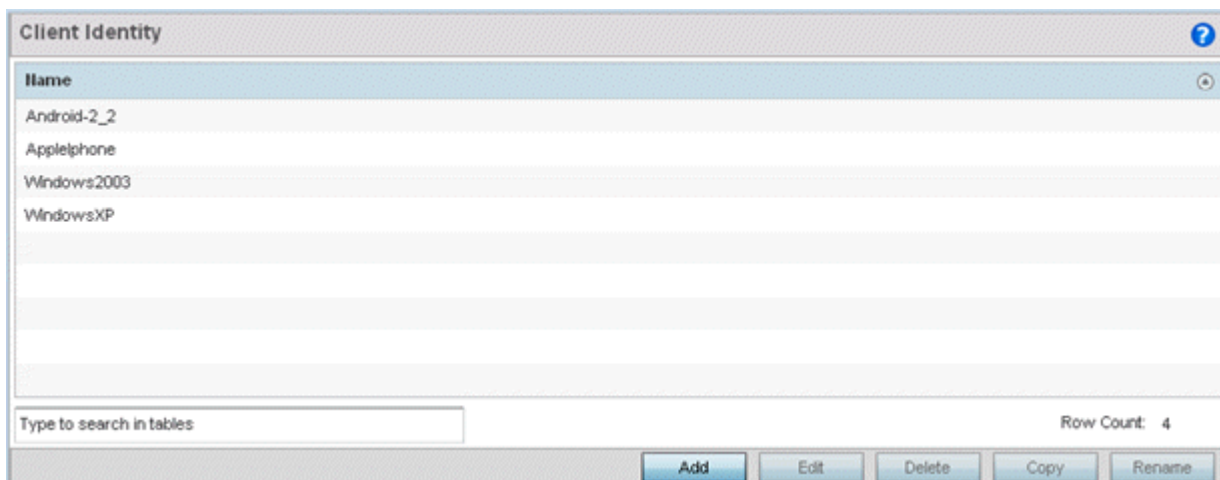


**NOTE:** Ensure DHCP is enabled on the WLAN on which device fingerprinting is to be enabled.



To define a device fingerprinting configuration on controllers, service platforms and Access Points:

- 1 Select **Configuration**.
- 2 Select **Security**
- 3 Select **Device Fingerprinting**. The **Client Identity** screen displays by default populated with existing client identity configurations.

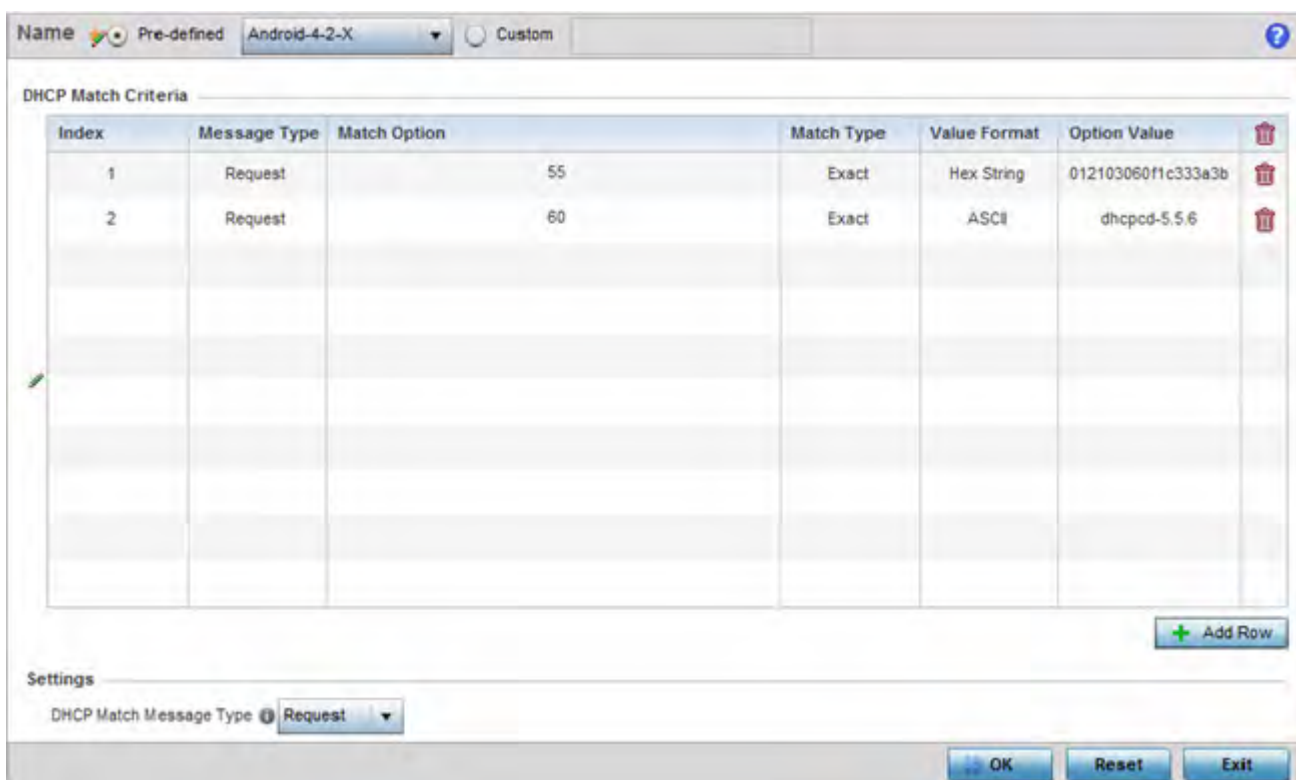


**Figure 10-37** Security - Device Fingerprinting - Client Identity screen

- 4 Select **Add** to create a new client identity policy, **Edit** to modify a selected policy or **Delete** to remove obsolete policies from the list of those available. Select **Rename** to change the name of an existing client identity policy or **Copy** a policy to a different location.

Client identity policies use *signatures* to identify and group clients. Signatures are sets of attributes unique to the device model and manufacturer. Once identified, signatures classify and assign network access permissions collectively without having to administer multiple devices individually.

- 5 If adding a new client identity configuration, define a 32 character maximum name and select the **OK** button at the bottom of the screen to enable the remainder of the screen's editable parameters.
- 6 Select the **+ Add Row** button to add a new signature in the client identity.



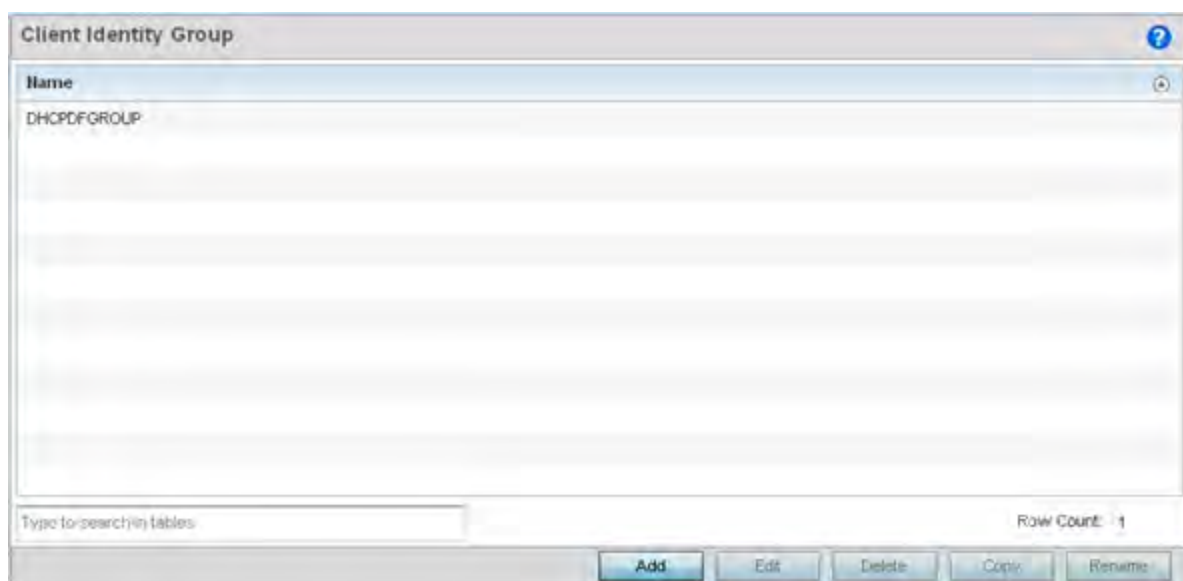
**Figure 10-38** Security - Device Fingerprinting - Client Signature

- 7 Optionally select **Pre-defined** and choose from a list of pre-defined client identities. Once selected, the **DHCP Match Criteria** field is populated with fingerprints for the selected client identity.
- 8 To create a custom identity configuration, select **Custom** and provide a name in the adjacent field. Select the **OK** button at the bottom of the screen.
- 9 Provide the following information for each device signature configuration:

<b>Index</b>	Use the spinner control to assign an index (numeric identifier) for this signature. A maximum of 16 signatures can be created.
<b>Message Type</b>	Use the drop-down menu to designate the DHCP message type matched for signatures. <i>Request</i> – Looks for a signature in DHCP request messages. This is the default value. <i>Discover</i> – Looks for a signature in DHCP discover messages.
<b>Match Option</b>	Options are passed in DHCP discover and request messages as <i>Option Code</i> , <i>Option Type</i> , and <i>Option Value</i> sets. When Option Codes is selected, the Option Code passed in the DHCP discover/request is extracted and a fingerprint is derived. The derived fingerprint is used to identify the device. <i>Option</i> – Indicates a specific DHCP Option is used to identify a device. When selected, a text box is enabled to input the DHCP Option used for fingerprinting. <i>Option Codes</i> – Indicates the Option Code passed in the DHCP request and discover message is used for matching.

<b>Match Type</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select how signatures are matched. Available options include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Exact</i> – The complete signature string matches the string specified in the Option Value field.</li> <li>• <i>Starts-with</i> – The signature is checked if it starts with the string specified in the Option Value field.</li> <li>• <i>Contains</i> – The signature is checked if it contains the string specified in the Option Value field.</li> </ul>
<b>Value Format</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the character format of the value being checked. The value can be either <i>ASCII</i> or <i>Hexadecimal</i> .
<b>Option Value</b>	Use this text box to set the 64 character maximum DHCP option value to match.

- 10 Use the **DHCP Match Message Type** drop-down menu (from the **Settings** field at the bottom of the screen) to specify the DHCP message type configured option values are matched against. The following options are available:
- *Discover* - Looks for a signature in DHCP discover messages.
  - *Request* - Looks for a signature in DHCP request messages. This is the default value.
  - *Any* - The fingerprint is checked with either the DHCP request or the DHCP discover message.
  - *All* - The fingerprint is checked with both the DHCP request and the DHCP discover message.
- 11 Select **OK** to save the changes. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.
- 12 Expand the **Device Fingerprinting** menu item on the left-hand side of the screen and select **Client Identity Group**.



**Figure 10-39** Security - Device Fingerprinting - Client Identity Group

An *identity group* is a collection of client identity variables. Each client identity in the group is set a value indicating its priority when device fingerprinting.

Device fingerprinting relies on specific information sent by a client when acquiring an IP address and configuration information from a DHCP server. Device fingerprinting uses the DHCP options sent by the wireless client in DHCP request or discover packets to derive a signature specific to a device class. For

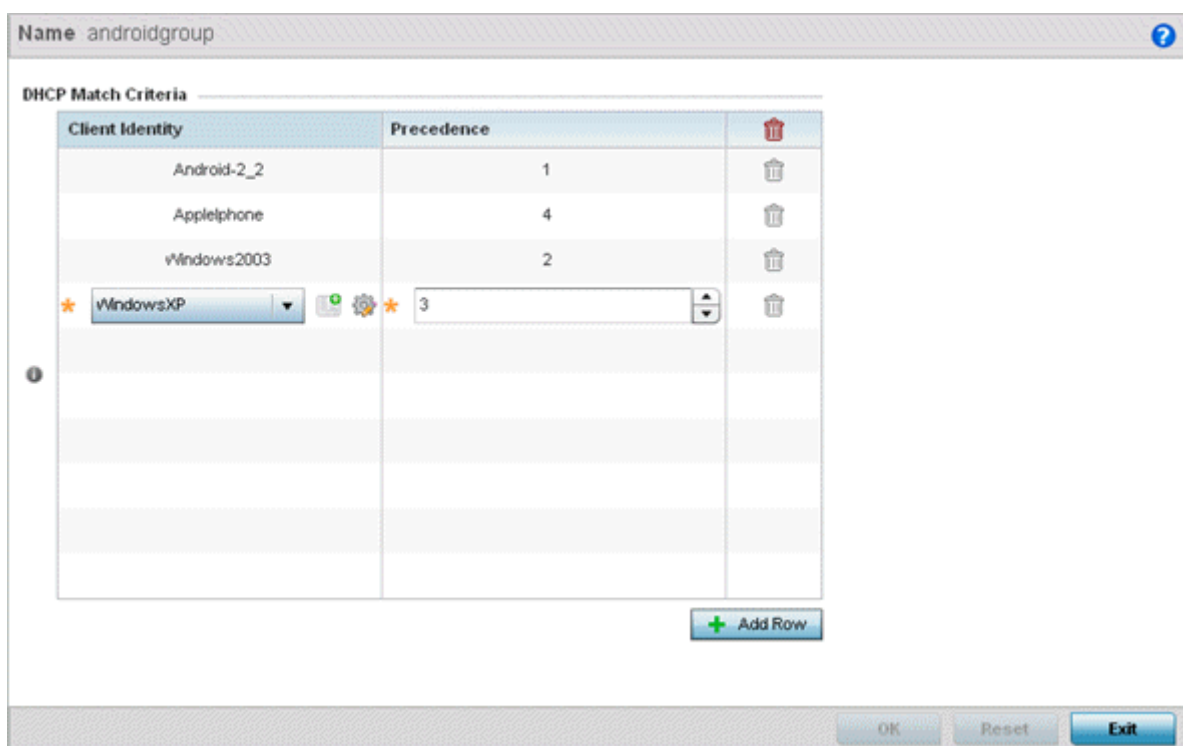
example, Apple devices have a different signature from Android devices. The signature is used to classify the devices and assign permissions and restrictions on each class.

- 13 Select **Add** to create a new policy, **Edit** to modify the attributes of an existing policy or **Delete** to remove obsolete policies from the list of those available. Select **Rename** to change the name of an existing policy or **Copy** a policy to a different location.

Client identity group policies configure the signatures used to identify clients and use the signatures to classify and assign network access permissions.

- 14 If adding a new client identity group, provide a 32 character maximum name and select the **OK** button at the bottom of the screen.

- 15 Select the **+ Add Row** button to populate the screen Client Identity and Precedence parameters.



**Figure 10-40** Security - Device Fingerprinting - Client Identity Group - New Client Identity Group

- 16 Select the **Client Identity** policy to include in this group from the drop-down menu.
- 17 Use the **Precedence** spinner control to set the sequence (or priority) each listed client identity is checked or matched. Lower integers are assigned the highest priority.
- 18 Click **OK** to save the changes. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 10.5 Intrusion Prevention

*Wireless Intrusion Protection Systems* (WIPS) provides continuous protection against wireless threats and acts as an additional layer of security complementing wireless VPNs and encryption and authentication policies. WIPS is supported through the use of dedicated sensor devices designed to actively detect and locate unauthorized AP devices. After detection, they use mitigation techniques to block the devices by manual termination or air lockdown.

Unauthorized APs are untrusted Access Points connected to a LAN that accept client associations. They can be deployed for illegal wireless access to a corporate network, implanted with malicious intent by an attacker, or could just be misconfigured Access Points that do not adhere to corporate policies. An attacker can install an unauthorized AP with the same ESSID as the authorized WLAN, causing a nearby client to associate to it. The unauthorized AP can then steal user credentials from the client, launch a man-in-the-middle attack or take control of wireless clients to launch denial-of-service attacks.

WiNG managed wireless controllers and Access Points support unauthorized AP detection, location and containment natively. A WIPS server can alternatively be deployed (in conjunction with the wireless controller) as a dedicated solution within a separate enclosure. When used within a wireless controller managed network and its associated Access Point radios, a WIPS deployment provides the following enterprise class security management features and functionality:

- *Threat Detection* - Threat detection is central to a wireless security solution. Threat detection must be robust enough to correctly detect threats and swiftly help protect the wireless controller managed wireless network.
- *Rogue Detection and Segregation* - A WIPS supported wireless controller distinguishes itself by both identifying and categorizing nearby Access Points. WIPS identifies threatening versus non-threatening Access Points by segregating Access Points attached to the network (unauthorized APs) from those not attached to the network (neighboring Access Points). The correct classification of potential threats is critical in order for administrators to act promptly against rogues and not invest in a manual search of neighboring Access Points to isolate the few attached to the network.
- *Locationing* - Administrators can define the location of wireless clients as they move throughout a site. This allows for the removal of potential rogues through the identification and removal of their connected Access Points.
- *WEP Cloaking* - WEP Cloaking protects organizations using the *Wired Equivalent Privacy* (WEP) security standard to protect networks from common attempts used to crack encryption keys. There are several freeware WEP cracking tools available and 23 known attacks against the original 802.11 encryption standard; even 128-bit WEP keys take only minutes to crack. WEP Cloaking module enables organizations to operate WEP encrypted networks securely and to preserve their existing investment in mobile devices.

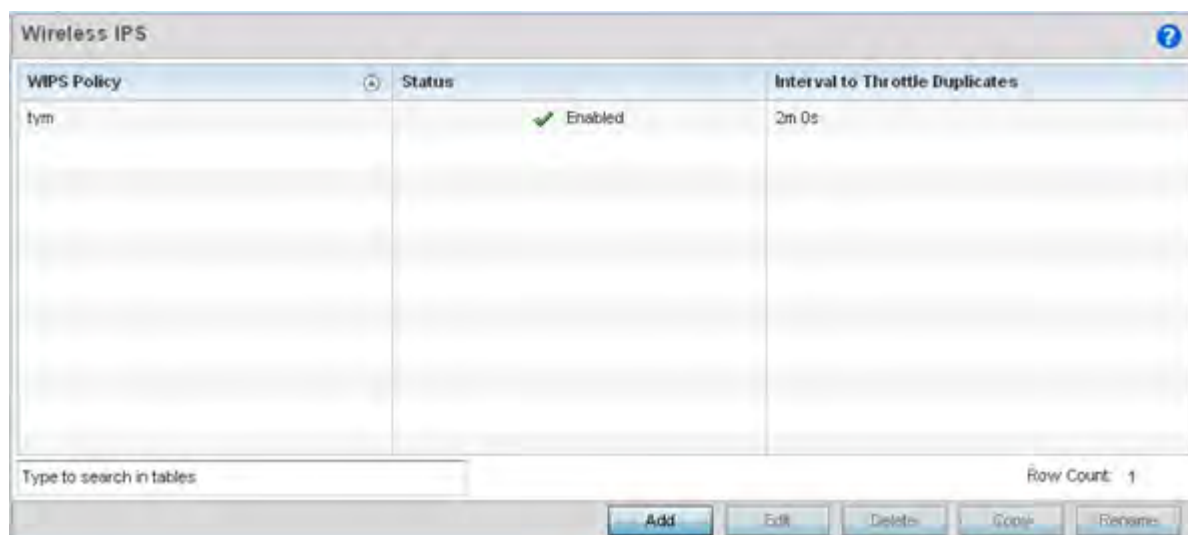
## 10.5.1 Configuring a WIPS Policy

### ► *Intrusion Prevention*

To configure a WIPS policy:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Security > Intrusion Prevention**.
- 2 Expand the Intrusion Prevention option within the **Configuration > Security** menu to display the *WIPS Policy* and *Device Categorization* items available.

The Wireless IPS screen displays by default. The Wireless IPS screen lists existing WIPS policies if any are configured. Any of these existing WIPS policies can be selected and applied.



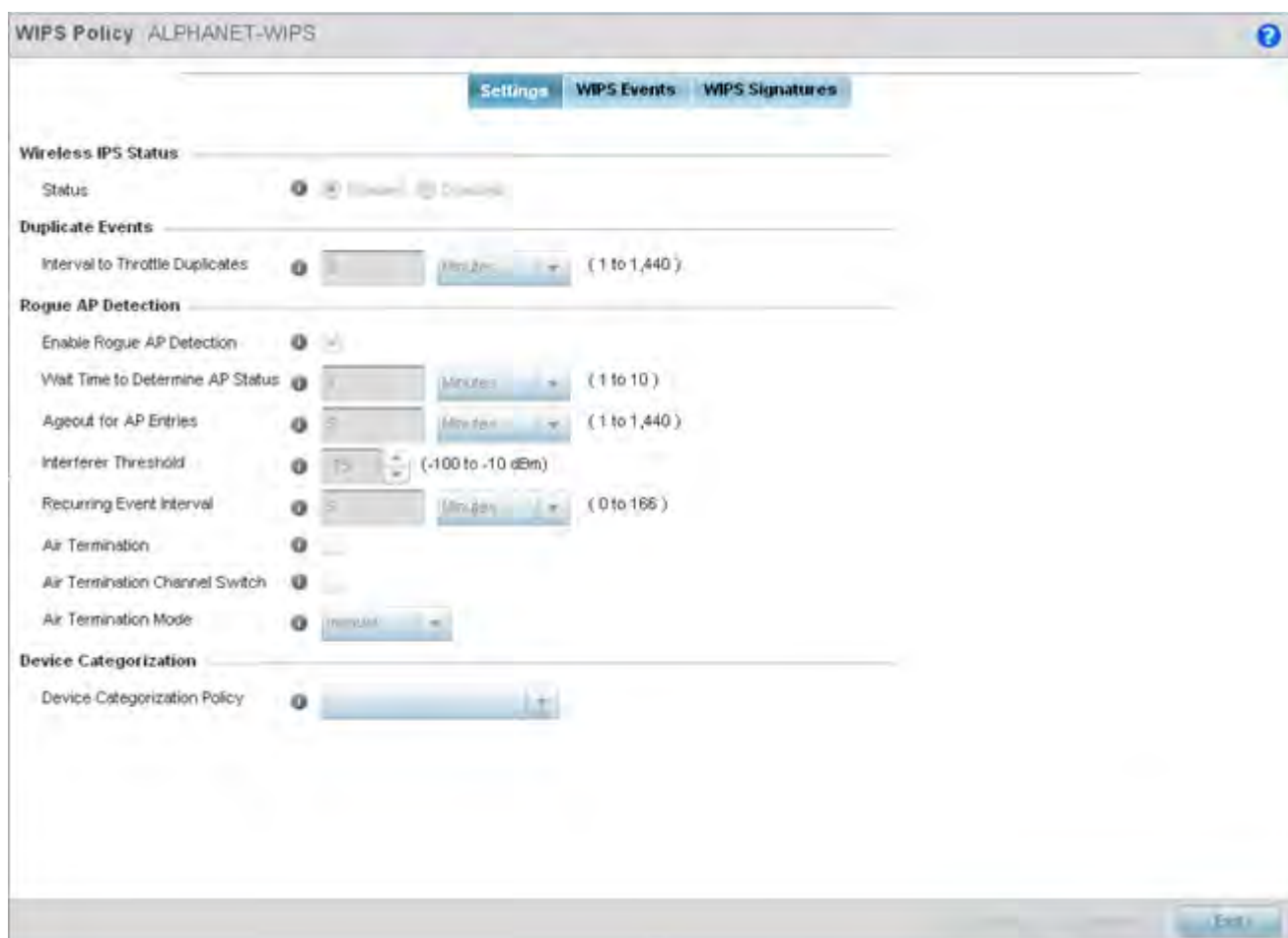
**Figure 10-41** *Wireless IPS screen*

- 3 Refer to the following for existing WIPS policies:

<b>WIPS Policy</b>	Displays the name assigned to the WIPS policy when it was initially created. The name cannot be modified as part of the edit process.
<b>Status</b>	Displays a green checkmark if the listed WIPS policy is enabled and ready for use with a profile. A red "X" designated the listed WIPS policy as disabled.
<b>Interval to Throttle Duplicates</b>	Displays the duration when event duplicates (redundant events) are <i>not</i> stored in event history.

- 4 Select **Add** to create a new WIPS policy, **Edit** to modify the attributes of a selected policy or **Delete** to remove obsolete policies from the list of those available. Select **Rename** to change the name of an existing policy or **Copy** a policy to a different location.

If adding or editing an existing WIPS policy, the WIPS Policy screen displays with the **Settings** tab displayed by default.



**Figure 10-42** WIPS Policy screen - Settings tab

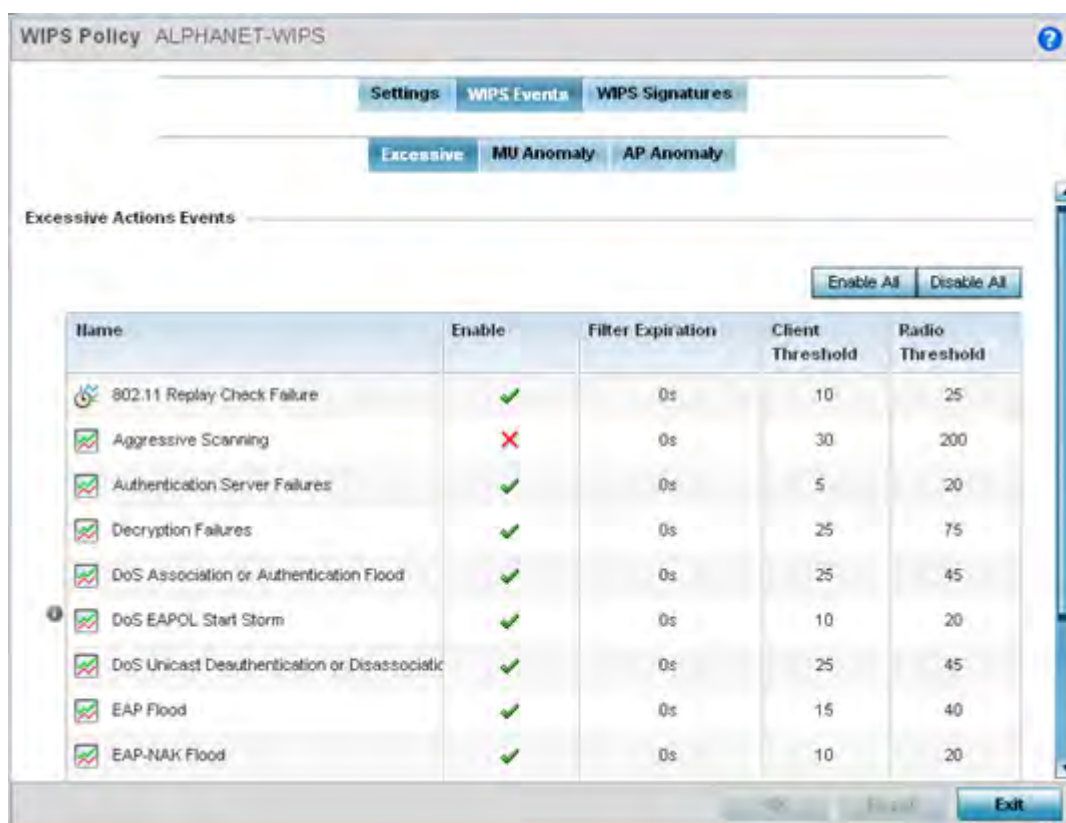
- 5 If creating a new **WIPS Policy**, assign it name to help differentiate it from others that may have a similar configuration. The policy name cannot exceed 64 characters. The name cannot be modified as part of the edit process.
- 6 Within the **Wireless IPS Status** field, select either the *Enabled* or *Disabled* radio button to either activate or deactivate the WIPS policy. The default setting is enabled.
- 7 Enter the **Interval to Throttle Packets** in either *Seconds* (1 - 86,400), *Minutes* (1 - 1,400), *Hours* (1 - 24) or *Days* (1). This interval represents the duration event duplicates are *not* stored in history. The default setting is 2 minutes.
- 8 Refer to the **Rogue AP Detection** field to define the following detection settings for this WIPS policy:

<b>Enable Rogue AP Detection</b>	Select the checkbox to enable the detection of unauthorized (unsanctioned) devices from this WIPS policy. The default setting is disabled.
<b>Wait Time to Determine AP Status</b>	Define a wait time in either <i>Seconds</i> (10 - 600) or <i>Minutes</i> (1 - 10) before a detected AP is interpreted as a rogue (unsanctioned) device, and potentially removed. The default interval is 1 minute.
<b>Ageout for AP Entries</b>	Set the interval the WIPS policy uses to ageout rogue devices. Set the policy in either <i>Seconds</i> (30 - 86,400), <i>Minutes</i> (1- 1,440), <i>Hours</i> (1 - 24) or <i>Days</i> (1). The default setting is 5 minutes.



<b>Interferer Threshold</b>	Specify a RSSI threshold (from -100 to -10 dBm) after which a detected Access Point is classified as an interferer (rogue device).
<b>Recurring Event Interval</b>	Set an interval that, when exceeded, duplicates a rogue AP event if the rogue devices is still active (detected) in the network. The default setting is 5 minutes.
<b>Air Termination</b>	Select this option to enable the termination of detected rogue AP devices. Air termination lets you terminate the connection between your wireless LAN and any Access Point or client associated with it. If the device is an Access Point, all clients dis-associated with the Access Point. If the device is a client, its connection with the Access Point is terminated. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Air Termination Channel Switch</b>	Select this option to allow neighboring Access Points to switch channels for rogue AP termination. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Air Termination Mode</b>	If termination is enabled, use the drop-down menu to specify the termination mode used on detected rogue devices. The default setting is manual.

- 9 Use the **Device Categorization Policy** drop-down menu to select a policy describing whether a device is filtered as sanctioned, a client or Access Point and the MAC and SSID addresses used as filtering mechanisms. If a policy requires creation, select the **Create** button. If an existing policy requires modification, select the **Edit** button and update the Device Categorization Policy as needed.
- 10 Select **OK** to update the settings. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.
- 11 Select the **WIPS Events** tab to enable events, filters and threshold values for this WIPS policy. The **Excessive** tab displays by default.



**Figure 10-43** WIPS Events screen - Excessive tab

The Excessive tab lists a series of events that can impact the performance of the network. An administrator can enable or disable the filtering of each listed event and set the thresholds required for the generation of the event notification and filtering action.

An Excessive Action Event is an event where an action is performed repetitively and continuously. DoS attacks come under this category. Use the *Excessive Action Events* table to select and configure the action taken when events are triggered.

AP events can be globally enabled and disabled as required using the **Enable All** and **Disable All** buttons on the top-right-hand, side of the screen.

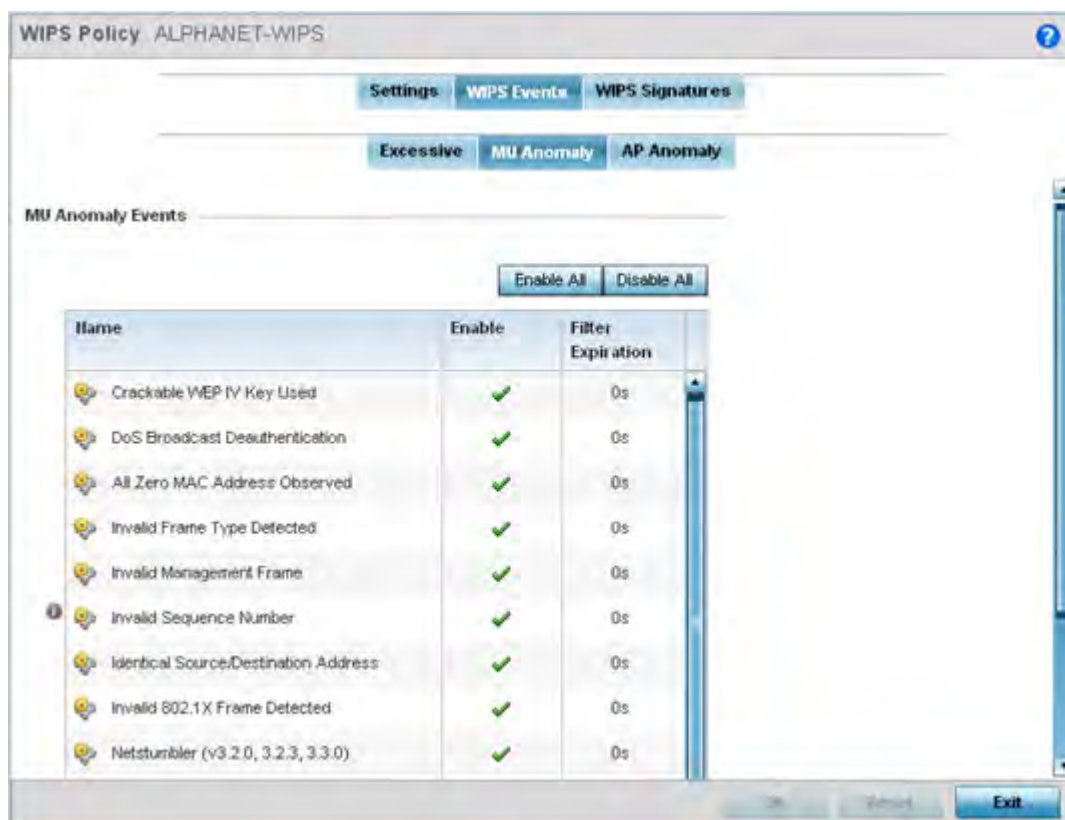
12 Set the configurations of the following **Excessive Action Events**:

<b>Name</b>	Displays the name of the excessive action event representing a potential threat to the network. This column lists the event being tracked against the defined thresholds set for interpreting the event as excessive or permitted.
<b>Enable</b>	Displays whether tracking is enabled for each Excessive Action Event. Use the drop-down menu to enable/disable events as required. A green checkmark defines the event as enabled for tracking against its threshold values. A red "X" defines the event as disabled and not tracked by the WIPS policy. Each event is disabled by default. Events can be globally enabled and disabled as required using the <i>Enable All</i> and <i>Disable All</i> buttons on the top-right-hand, side of the screen.

<b>Filter Expiration</b>	Set the duration the anomaly causing client is filtered. This creates a special ACL entry and frames coming from the client are silently dropped. The default setting is 0 seconds.  This value is applicable across the RF Domain. If a station is detected performing an attack and is filtered by one of the APs, the information is passed to the domain controller or service platform. The domain controller or service platform then propagates this information to all APs in the RF Domain.
<b>Client Threshold</b>	Set the client threshold after which the filter is triggered and an event generated.
<b>Radio Threshold</b>	Set the radio threshold after which an event is recorded to the events history.

13 Select **OK** to save the updates to the excessive actions configuration used by the WIPS policy. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

14 Select the **MU Anomaly** tab:



**Figure 10-44** WIPS Events screen - MU Anomaly tab

MU anomaly events are suspicious events by wireless clients that can compromise the security and stability of the network. Use this MU anomaly screen to configure the intervals clients can be filtered upon the generation of each defined event.

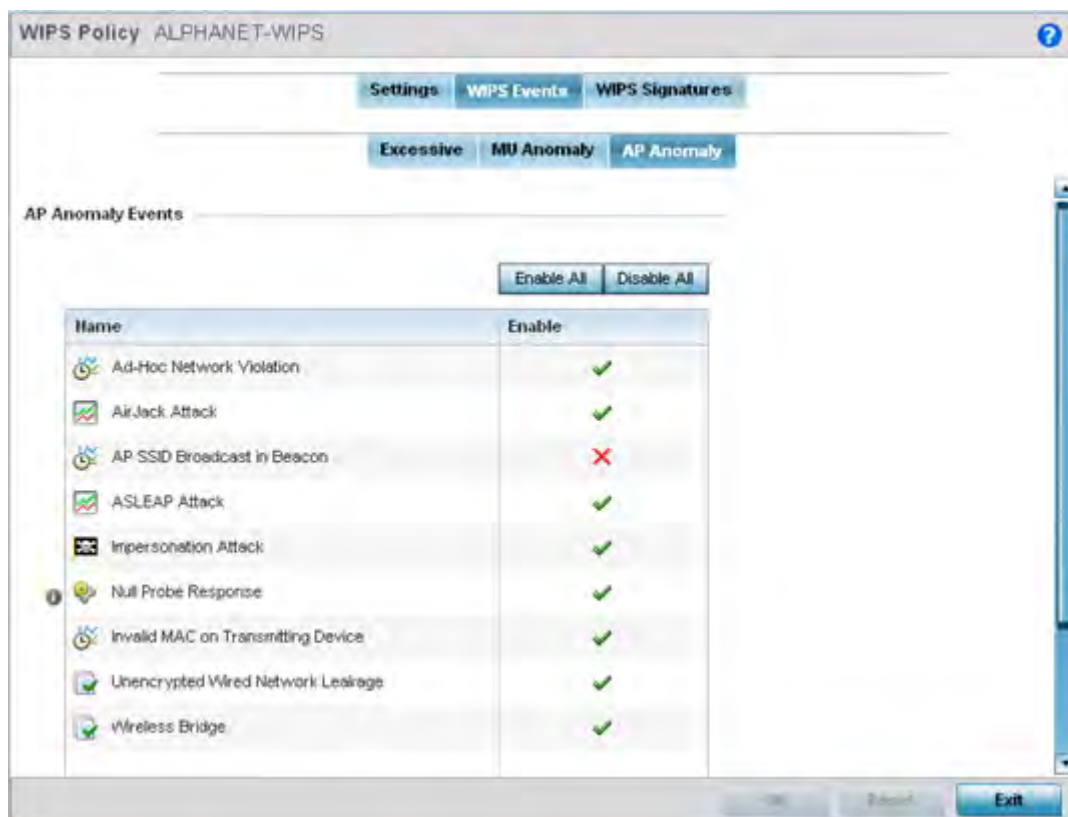
MU events can be globally enabled and disabled as required using the **Enable All** and **Disable All** buttons on the top-right-hand, side of the screen.

15 Set the configurations of the following **MU Anomaly Events** configurations:

<b>Name</b>	Displays the name of the MU anomaly event representing a potential threat to the network. This column lists the event being tracked against the defined thresholds set for interpreting the event as excessive or permitted.
<b>Enable</b>	Displays whether tracking is enabled for each event. Use the drop-down menu to enable/disable events as required. A green checkmark defines the event as enabled for tracking against its threshold values. A red "X" defines the event as disabled and not tracked by the WIPS policy. Each event is disabled by default. MU events can be globally enabled and disabled as required using the <i>Enable All</i> and <i>Disable All</i> buttons on the top-right-hand, side of the screen.
<b>Filter Expiration</b>	Set the duration the anomaly causing client is filtered. This creates a special ACL entry and frames coming from the client are silently dropped. The default setting is 0 seconds. For each violation, define a time to filter value in seconds which determines how long received packets are ignored from an attacking device once a violation has been triggered. Ignoring frames from an attacking device minimizes the effectiveness of the attack and the impact to the site until permanent mitigation can be performed.

16 Select **OK** to save the updates to the MU anomaly configuration used by the WIPS policy. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

17 Select the **AP Anomaly** tab.



**Figure 10-45** WIPS Events screen - AP Anomaly tab

AP anomaly events are suspicious frames sent by a neighboring APs. Use this screen to determine whether an event is enabled for tracking.

AP events can be globally enabled and disabled as required using the **Enable All** and **Disable All** buttons on the top-right-hand, side of the screen.

18 Set the following **AP Anomaly Events** parameters:

<b>Name</b>	Displays the name of the AP anomaly event representing a potential threat to the network. This column lists the event being tracked against the defined thresholds set for interpreting the event as excessive or permitted.
<b>Enable</b>	Displays whether tracking is enabled for each AP anomaly event. Use the drop-down menu to enable/disable events as required. A green checkmark defines the event as enabled for tracking against its threshold values. A red "X" defines the event as disabled and not tracked by the WIPS policy. Each event is disabled by default. AP events can be globally enabled and disabled as required using the <i>Enable All</i> and <i>Disable All</i> buttons on the top-right-hand, side of the screen.

19 Select **OK** to save the updates to the AP anomaly configuration used by the WIPS policy. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

20 Select the **WIPS Signatures** tab.

A WIPS signature is the set or parameters, or pattern, used by WIPS to identify and categorize particular sets of attack behaviors in order to classify them

Name	Signature	BSSID MAC	Source MAC	Destination MAC	Frame Type to Match	Match on SSID
signature 1	✓	Not Set	Not Set	Not Set	All	Not Set
signature 2	✓	Not Set	Not Set	Not Set	Association	Not Set

**Figure 10-46** WIPS Signatures screen

21 The **WIPS Signatures** screen displays the following read-only data:

<b>Name</b>	Lists the name (in the top left-hand corner) assigned to each signature when it was created. A signature name cannot be modified as part of the edit process.
<b>Signature</b>	Displays whether the signature is enabled. A green checkmark defines the signature as enabled. A red "X" defines the signature as disabled. Each signature is disabled by default.
<b>BSSID MAC</b>	Displays each BSS ID MAC address used for matching purposes and potential device exclusion.

<b>Source MAC</b>	Displays each source MAC address of the packet examined for matching purposes and potential device exclusion.
<b>Destination MAC</b>	Displays each destination MAC address of the packet examined for matching purposes and potential device exclusion.
<b>Frame Type to Match</b>	Lists the frame types specified for matching with the WIPS signature.
<b>Match on SSID</b>	Lists each SSID used for matching purposes.

22 Select **Add** to create a new WIPS signature, **Edit** to modify the attributes of a selected WIPS signature or **Delete** to remove obsolete signatures from the list of those available.

**Figure 10-47** WIPS Signatures Configuration screen

23 If adding a new WIPS signature, define a **Name** to distinguish it from others with similar configurations. The name cannot exceed 64 characters.

24 Set the following network address information for a new or modified WIPS Signature:

<b>Enable Signature</b>	Select the check box to enable the WIPS signature for use with the profile. The default signature is enabled.
<b>BSSID MAC</b>	Define a BSS ID MAC address used for matching and filtering with the signature.
<b>Source MAC</b>	Define a source MAC address for packets examined for matching, filtering and potential device exclusion using the signature.
<b>Destination MAC</b>	Set a destination MAC address for the packet examined for matching, filtering and potential device exclusion with the signature.
<b>Frame Type to Match</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select a frame type for matching and filtering with the WIPS signature.

<b>Match on SSID</b>	Set the SSID used for matching and filtering with the signature. Ensure it's specified properly or the SSID won't be properly filtered.
<b>SSID Length</b>	Set the character length of the SSID used for matching and filtering with this signature. The maximum length is 32 characters.

25 Refer to **Thresholds** field to set signature threshold limitations used as filtering criteria.

<b>Wireless Client Threshold</b>	Specify the threshold limit per client that, when exceeded, signals the event. The configurable range is from 1 - 65,535.
<b>Radio Threshold</b>	Specify the threshold limit per radio that, when exceeded, signals the event. The configurable range is from 1 - 65,535.

26 Set a **Filter Expiration** (from 1 - 86,400 seconds) that specifies the duration a client is excluded from RF Domain manager radio association when responsible for triggering a WIPS event.

27 Refer to the **Payload** table to set a numerical index pattern and offset for the WIPS signature. Select **+ Add Row** and provide an **Index**, **Pattern** and **Offset** variable for the payload.

28 Select **OK** to save the updates to the WIPS Signature configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 10.5.2 Configuring a WIPS Device Categorization Policy

### ▶ *Intrusion Prevention*

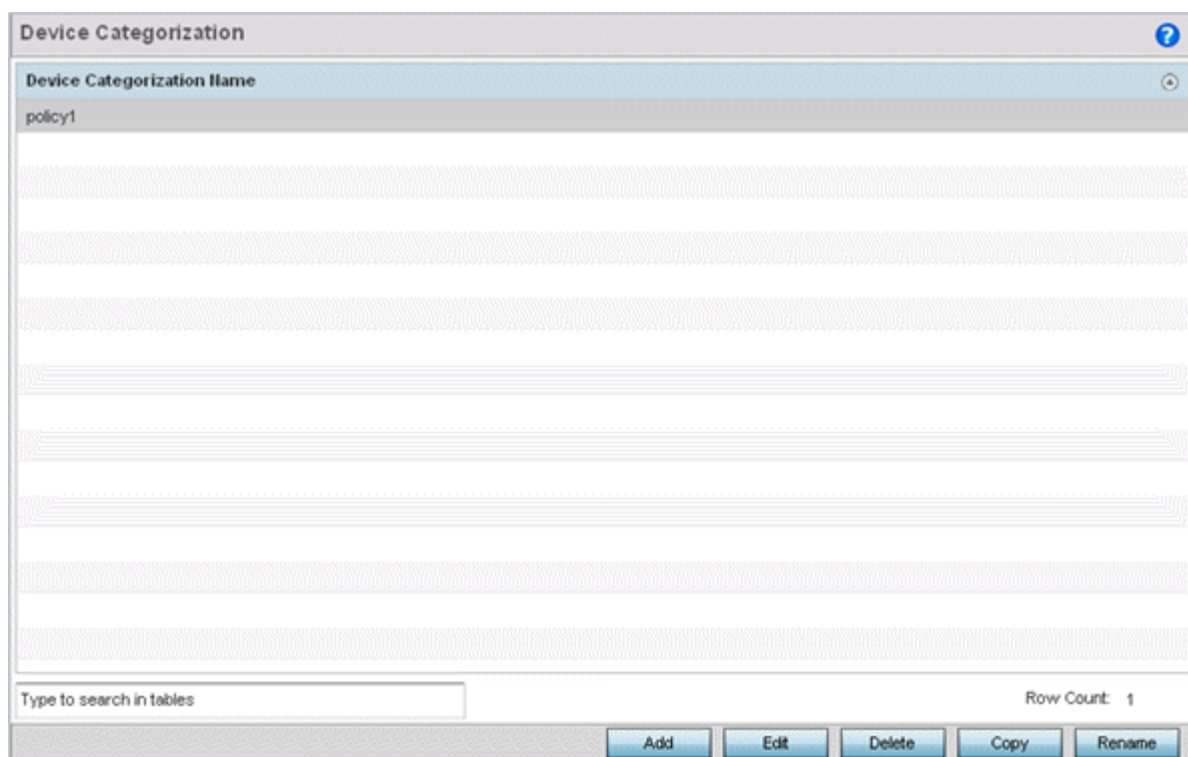
Having devices properly classified can help suppress unnecessary unsanctioned AP alarms and allow an administrator to focus on the alarms and devices actually behaving in a suspicious manner. An intruder with a device erroneously authorized could potentially perform activities that harm your organization while appearing to be legitimate. WIPS enables devices to be categorized as Access Points, then defined as *sanctioned* or *unsanctioned* within the network.

Sanctioned Access Points are generally known to you and conform with your organization's security policies. Unsanctioned devices have been detected as interoperating within the managed network, but are not approved. These devices should be filtered to avoid jeopardizing data.

To categorize Access Points as sanctioned or unsanctioned:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Security > Intrusion Prevention**.
- 2 Expand the Intrusion Prevention option within the Configuration > Security menu and select **Device Categorization**.

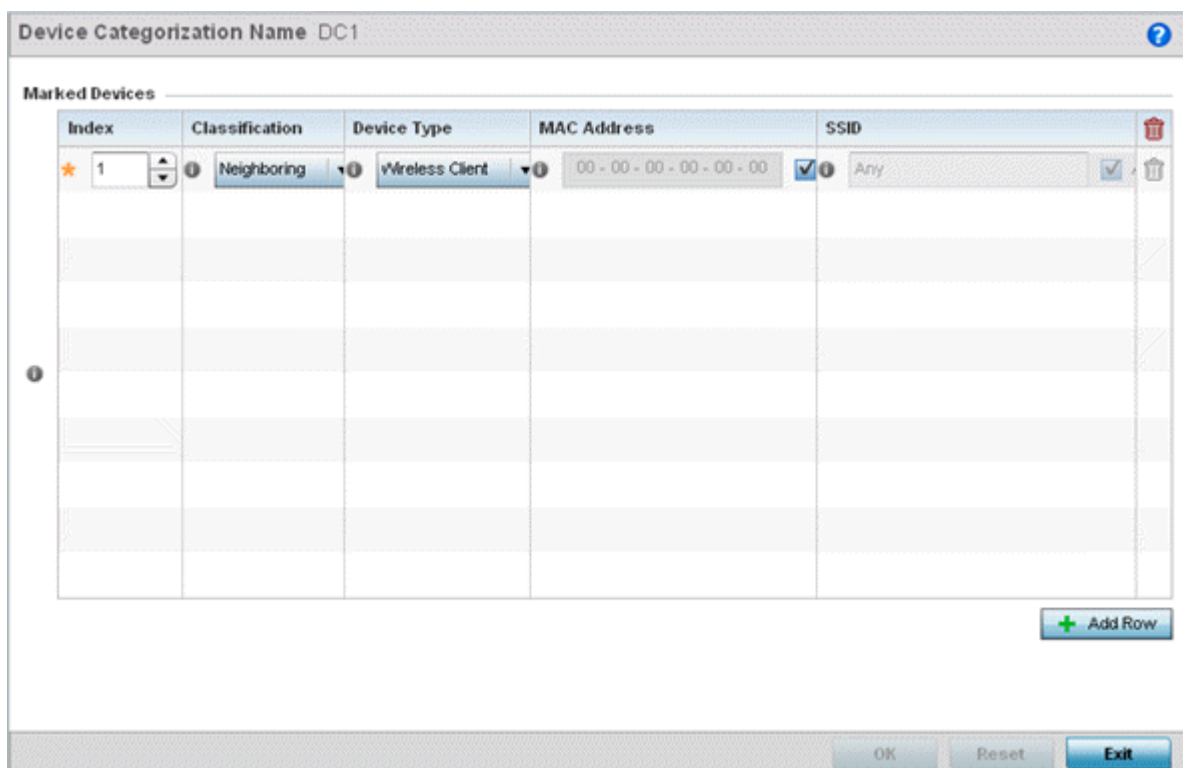




**Figure 10-48** WIPS Device Categorization screen

The **Device Categorization** screen lists those device authorization policies defined thus far.

- 3 Select **Add** to create a new policy, **Edit** to modify the attributes of a selected existing policy or **Delete** to remove obsolete policies from those available. Select **Rename** to change the name of a policy or **Copy** a policy to a different location.



**Figure 10-49** WIPS Device Categorization Configuration screen

- 4 If creating a new Device Categorization policy, provide it a **Name** (up to 64 characters) to distinguish this policy from others with similar configurations. Select **OK** to save the name and enable the remaining parameters on the screen.
- 5 Select **+ Add Row** to populate the **Marked Devices** field with parameters for adding an Access Point's MAC address, SSID, Access Point designation and network authorization. Select the red (-) **Delete Row** icon as needed to remove an individual table entry.
- 6 Define the following parameters to add a device to a list of devices categorized as sanctioned or unsanctioned for network operation:

<b>Index</b>	Use the spinner controls to set the numerical <i>Index</i> number for each Device Categorization Name.
<b>Classification</b>	Use the drop-down menu to designate the target device as either sanctioned ( <i>True</i> ) or unsanctioned ( <i>False</i> ). The default setting is <i>False</i> , categorizing this device as unsanctioned. Thus, each added device requires authorization. A green checkmark designates the device as sanctioned, while a red "X" defines the device as unsanctioned.
<b>Device Type</b>	Use the drop-down menu to designate the target device as either an Access Point ( <i>True</i> ) or other ( <i>False</i> ). The default setting is <i>False</i> , categorizing this device as other than an Access Point. A green checkmark designates the device as an Access Point, while a red "X" defines the categorized device as other than an Access Point.
<b>MAC Address</b>	Enter the factory coded MAC address of the target device. This address is hard coded by the device manufacturer and cannot be modified. The MAC address will be defined as sanctioned or unsanctioned as part of the device categorization process.

<b>SSID</b>	Enter the SSID of the target device requiring categorization. The SSID cannot exceed 32 characters.
-------------	---

7 Select **OK** to save the updates to the **Marked Devices** List. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

### 10.5.3 Intrusion Detection Deployment Considerations

Before configuring WIPS support on the wireless controller, refer to the following deployment guidelines to ensure the configuration is optimally effective:

- WIPS is best utilized when deployed in conjunction with a corporate or enterprise wireless security policy. Since an organization's security goals vary, the security policy should document site specific concerns. The WIPS system can then be modified to support and enforce these additional security policies
- WIPS reporting tools can minimize dedicated administration time. Vulnerability and activity reports should automatically run and be distributed to the appropriate administrators. These reports should highlight areas to be investigated and minimize the need for network monitoring.
- It's important to keep your WIPS system Firmware and Software up to date. A quarterly system audit can ensure firmware and software versions are current.
- Only a trained wireless network administrator can determine the criteria used to authorize or ignore devices. You may want to consider your organization's overall security policy and your tolerance for risk versus users' need for network access. Some questions that may be useful in deciding how to classify a device are:
  - Does the device conform to any vendor requirements you have?
  - What is the signal strength of the device? Is it likely the device is outside your physical radio coverage area?
  - Is the detected Access Point properly configured according to your organization's security policies?
- Controller or service platform visibility to all deployed VLANs is recommended. If an external L3 device has been deployed for routing services, each VLAN should be 802.1Q tagged to the controller or service platform to allow the detection any unsanctioned APs physically connected to the network.
- Trusted and known Access Points should be added to an sanctioned AP list. This will minimize the number of unsanctioned AP alarms received.

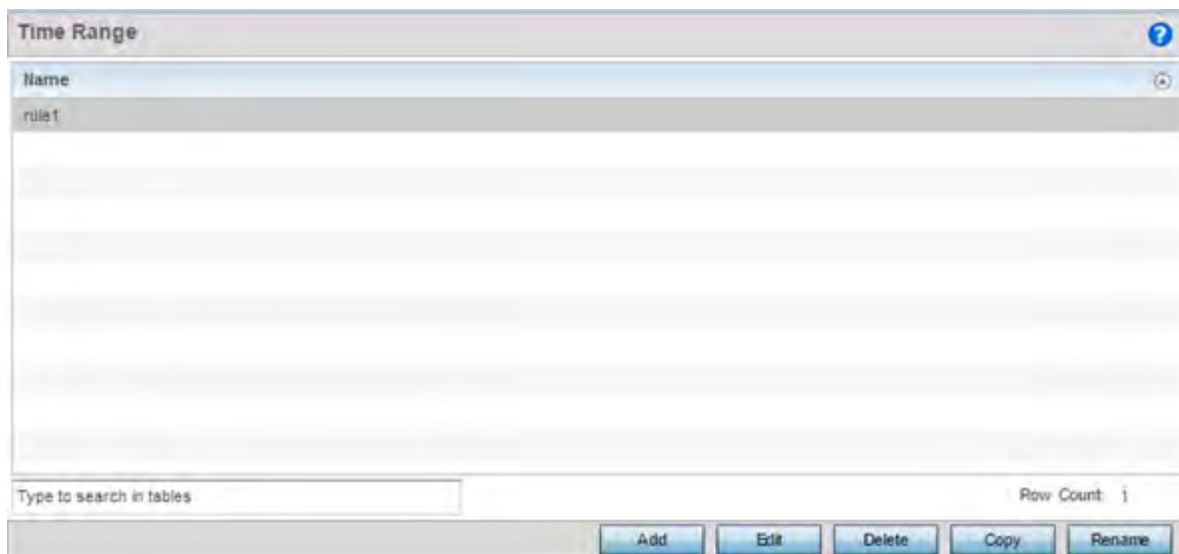
## 10.6 EX3500 Time Range

An **EX3500 Time Range** is a set of configurations consisting of *periodic* and *absolute* time ranges. Periodic time ranges can be configured to reoccur daily, weekly, weekends and on specific weekdays, such as Sunday. Absolute time ranges can be configured for a range of days during a particular period. Absolute time ranges do not reoccur.

The EX3500 time ranges are used when configuring EX3500 MAC ACL firewall rules. For more information, see [Configuring MAC Firewall Rules on page 10-15](#).

To set an EX3500 switch periodic or absolute time ranges:

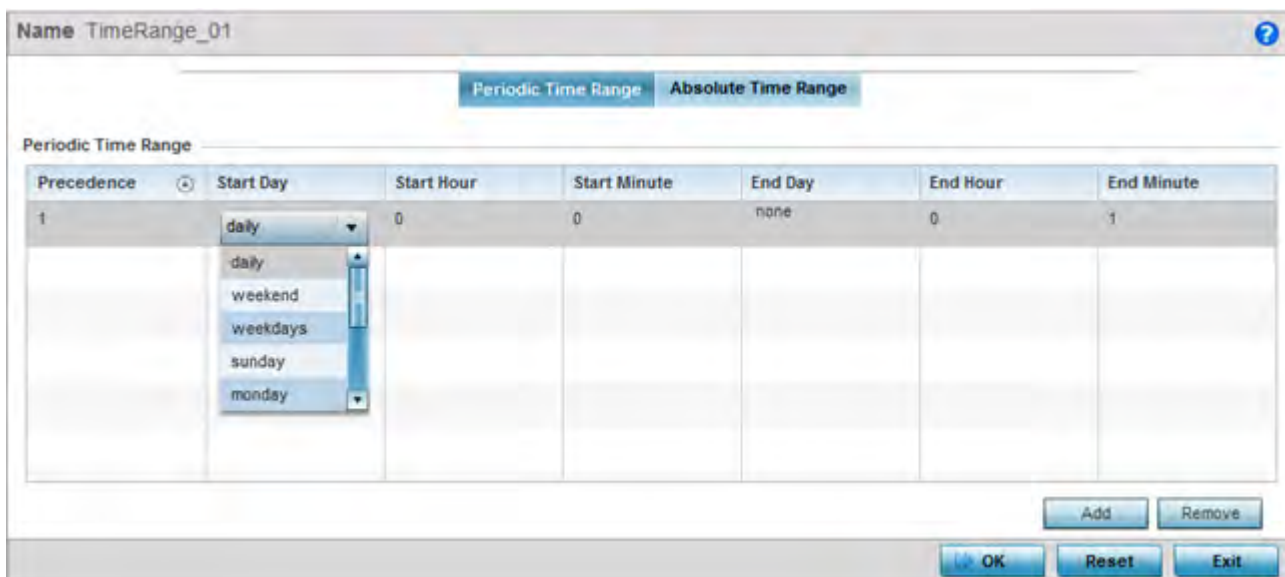
- 1 Select **Configuration > Security > EX3500 Time Ranges**.



**Figure 10-50** EX3500 Time Range screen

The Time Range screen displays within the main portion of the Web UI.

- 2 Select **Add** to create a new policy. **Edit** to modify the attributes of an existing time range or **Delete** to remove obsolete time ranges. Use **Copy** to create a copy of the selected time range and modify it for further use. Use **Rename** to rename the selected time range.
- 3 Either use the **Add** button to create an new EX3500 Time Range or select an existing range and click **Edit** to modify it.



**Figure 10-51** EX3500 Time Range - Periodic Time Range screen

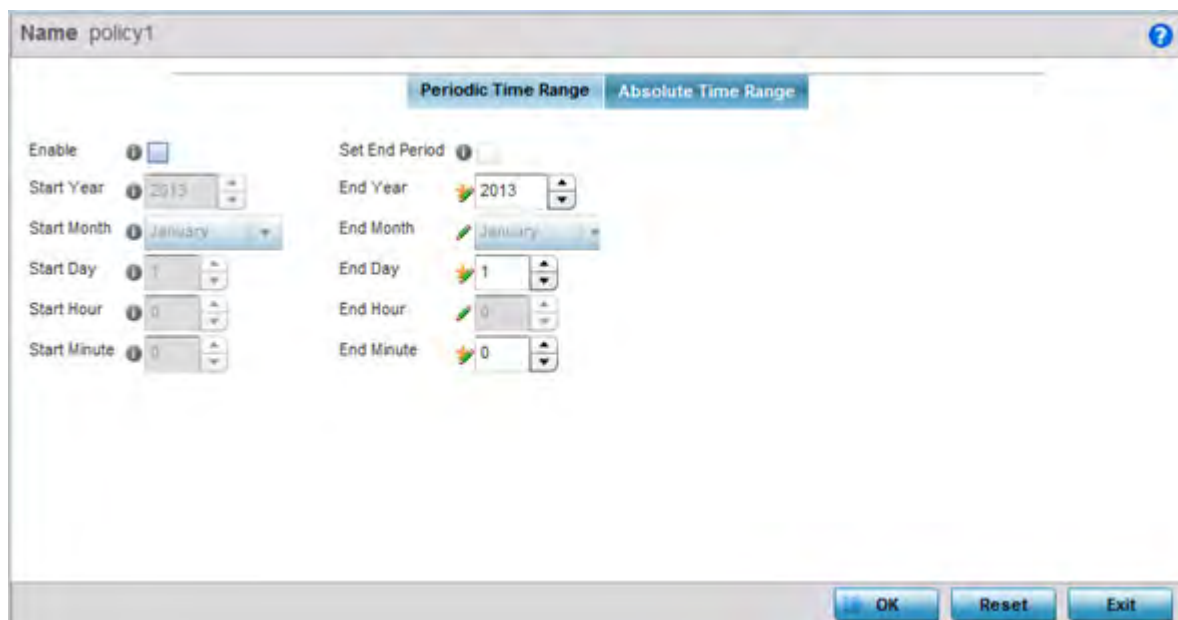
The **Periodic Time Range** tab displays by default.

- 4 If adding a new EX3500 Time Range, provide it a name up to 32 characters.

- 5 Select **Add** to provide the following parameters:

<b>Precedence</b>	Specify or modify a precedence value for this periodic time range policy. Rules with lower precedence are always applied first. If modifying a precedence to apply a higher integer, it moves down the table to reflect its lower priority.  Select a precedence value in the range 1-7.
<b>Start Day</b>	Specify the periodic time range's start day. Day value can be one of <i>daily</i> , <i>weekend</i> , <i>weekdays</i> , <i>sunday</i> , <i>monday</i> , <i>tuesday</i> , <i>wednesday</i> , <i>thursday</i> , <i>friday</i> or <i>saturday</i> . Specify a start day from one of the above values.
<b>Start Hour</b>	Specify the periodic time range's start hour. Hours are specified in 24 hour format. Use the spinner to select the appropriate hour.
<b>Start Minute</b>	Specify the periodic time range's start minute. Use the spinner to select the appropriate minute.
<b>End Day</b>	Specify the periodic time range's end day. End day is the day when the time period ends. The options available for this field changes depending on the choice made in the <i>Start Day</i> field.
<b>End Hour</b>	Specify the periodic time range's end hour. Hours are specified in 24 hour format. In most cases, this value cannot be lower than the value specified in the <i>Start Hour</i> field. Use the spinner to select the correct end hour value.
<b>End Minute</b>	Specify the periodic time range's end minute. In most cases, this value cannot be lower than the value specified in the <i>Start Minute</i> field. Use the spinner to select the correct end.

- 6 Select **OK** to save the updates. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.
- 7 Select the **Absolute Time Range** to configure a time range that is absolute and occurs only once.



**Figure 10-52** EX3500 Time Range - Absolute Time Range screen

- 8 Select **Enable** to enable this feature. Absolute time range can only be configured when Enabled.

9 Configure the following parameters:

<b>Start Year</b>	Specify the absolute time range's start year. Use the spinner control to select the year. Select a year in the range 2013-2037.
<b>Start Month</b>	Specify the absolute time range's start month. Use the drop-down menu to select the month.
<b>Start Day</b>	Specify the absolute time range's start day. Day value can be one of <i>daily</i> , <i>weekend</i> , <i>weekdays</i> , <i>sunday</i> , <i>monday</i> , <i>tuesday</i> , <i>wednesday</i> , <i>thursday</i> , <i>friday</i> or <i>saturday</i> . Specify a start day from one of the above values.
<b>Start Hour</b>	Specify the absolute time range's start hour. Hours are specified in 24 hour format. Use the spinner to select the appropriate hour.
<b>Start Minute</b>	Specify the absolute time range's start minute. Use the spinner to select the appropriate minute.
<b>End Period</b>	Select the option to set specific end periods for each of the <i>Year</i> , <i>Month</i> , <i>Day</i> , <i>Hour</i> and <i>Minute</i> values available for start time definitions.
<b>End Year</b>	Specify the absolute time range's end year. Use the spinner control to select the year. Select a year in the range 2013-2037. End year cannot be earlier than the value specified in the <i>Start Year</i> field.
<b>End Month</b>	Specify the absolute time range's end month. Use the drop-down menu to select the month.
<b>End Day</b>	Specify the absolute time range's end day. End day is the day when the time period ends. The options available for this field changes depending on the choice made in the <i>Start Day</i> field.
<b>End Hour</b>	Specify the absolute time range's end hour. Hours are specified in 24 hour format. In most cases, this value cannot be lower than the value specified in the <i>Start Hour</i> field. Use the spinner to select the correct end hour value.
<b>End Minute</b>	Specify the absolute time range's end minute. In most cases, this value cannot be lower than the value specified in the <i>Start Minute</i> field. Use the spinner to select the correct end.

10 Select **OK** when completed to update the EX3500 Time Range. Select **Reset** to revert back to its last saved configuration.

# 11 Services

Controllers and service platforms natively support services to provide guest user access to the network, lease DHCP IP addresses to requesting clients and provide RADIUS client authentication.

For more information, refer to the following:

- [Configuring Captive Portal Policies](#)
- [Setting the Guest Management Configuration](#)
- [Setting the DHCP Configuration](#)
- [Setting the Bonjour Gateway Configuration](#)
- [DHCPv6 Server Policy](#)
- [Setting the RADIUS Configuration](#)
- [URL Lists](#)

## 11.1 Configuring Captive Portal Policies

---

### ► [Services](#)

A *captive portal* is an access policy for providing guests temporary and restrictive access to the controller or service platform managed network.

A captive portal policy provides secure authenticated controller or service platform access using a standard Web browser. Captive portals provides authenticated access by capturing and re-directing a wireless user's Web browser session to a captive portal login page where the user must enter valid credentials to access to the network. Once logged into the captive portal, additional *Terms and Agreement*, *Welcome*, *Fail* and *No Service* pages provide the administrator with a number of options on captive portal screen flow and user appearance.

Captive portal authentication is used primarily for guest or visitor access, but is increasingly used to provide authenticated access to private network resources when 802.1X EAP is not a viable option. Captive portal authentication does not provide end-user data encryption, but it can be used with static WEP, WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK encryption.

Authentication for captive portal access requests is performed using a *username* and *password* pair, authenticated by an integrated RADIUS server. Authentication for private network access is conducted either locally on the requesting wireless client, or centrally at a datacenter.

Captive portal uses a Web provisioning tool to create guest user accounts directly on the controller or service platform. The connection medium defined for the Web connection is either *HTTP* or *HTTPS*. Both HTTP and HTTPS use a request and response procedure clients follow to disseminate information to and from requesting wireless clients.

Refer to the following sections for configuring Captive Portal Policy parameters:

- [Configuring a Captive Portal Policy](#)
- [Creating DNS Whitelists](#)
- [Captive Portal Deployment Considerations](#)



## 11.1.1 Configuring a Captive Portal Policy

### ► *Configuring Captive Portal Policies*

To configure a guest access captive portal policy:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Services**.

The upper, left-hand, side of the user interface displays a **Services** menu pane where Captive Portal, DHCP and RADIUS configuration options can be selected.

- 2 Select **Captive Portals**.

The Captive Portal screen displays the configurations of existing policies. New policies can be created, existing policies can be modified or existing policies deleted.

Captive Portal Policy	Captive Portal Server Host	Captive Portal IPv6 Server	Captive Portal Server Mode	Hosting VLAN Interface	Connection Mode	Simultaneous Access	Web Page Source	AAA Policy
ALPHANET-1	guestaccess.motc	Not Set	Centralized Contr	0	HTTP	Not Set	Advanced	
ALPHANET-1	guestaccess.zabr	Not Set	Centralized Contr	0	HTTP	Not Set	Advanced	ONBOARD-AAA
ALPHANET-1	guestaccess.zabr	Not Set	Internal (Self)	0	HTTP	Not Set	Advanced	ONBOARD-AAA
ALPHANET-1	guestaccess.motc	Not Set	Centralized Contr	0	HTTP	Not Set	External	WaveSpot

Type to search in tables Row Count: 4

View Delete Copy Rename

**Figure 11-1** *Captive Portal Policy screen*

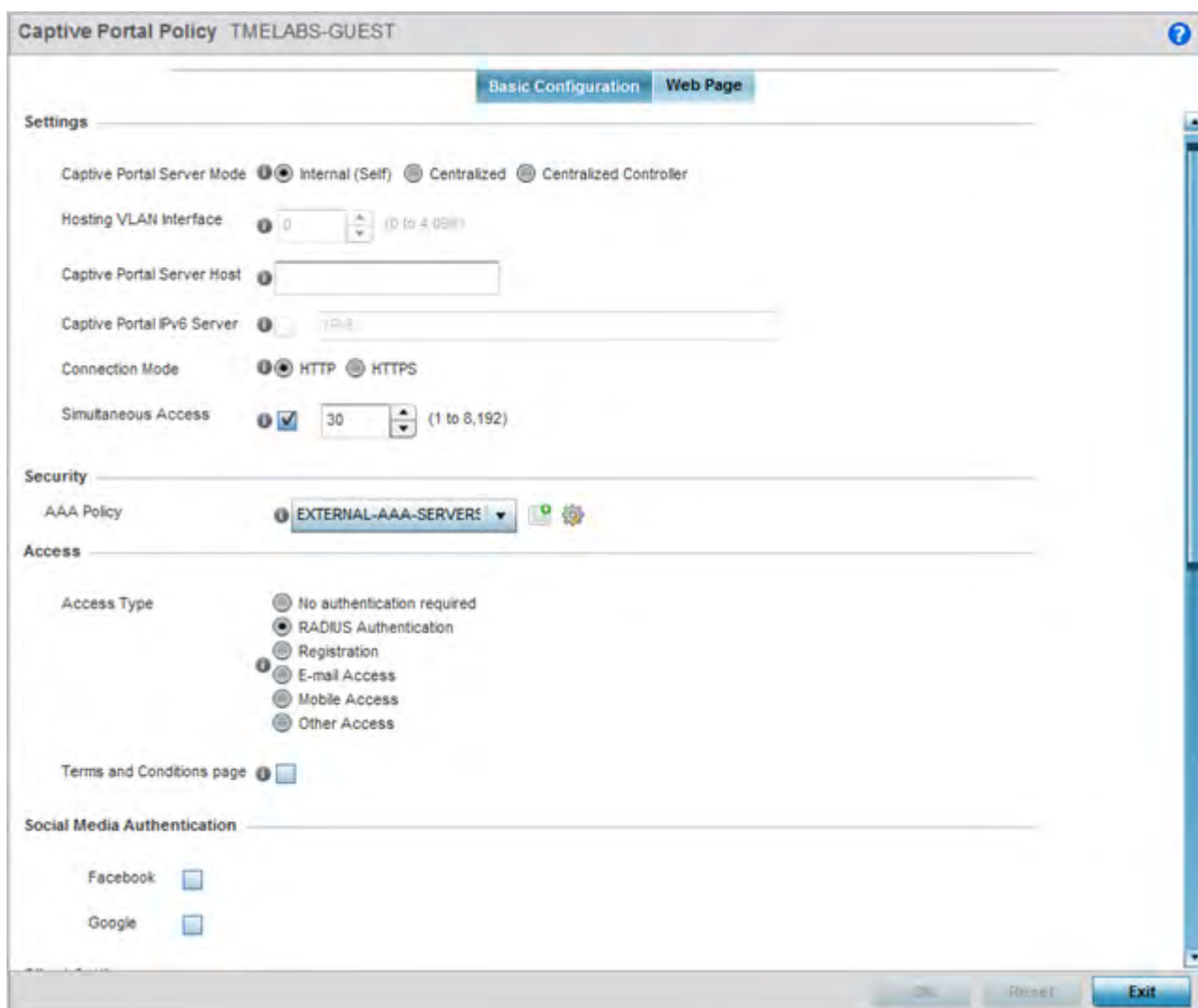
- 3 Refer to the following captive portal policy parameters to determine whether a new policy requires creation, or an existing policy requires edit or deletion:

<b>Captive Portal Policy</b>	Displays the name assigned to the captive portal policy when initially created. A policy name cannot be modified as part of the edit process.
<b>Captive Portal Server Host</b>	Lists the IP address (non DNS hostname) of the external (fixed) server validating user permissions for the listed captive portal policy. This item remains empty if the captive portal is hosted locally.
<b>Captive Portal IPv6 Server</b>	Lists the IPv6 formatted IP address (non DNS hostname) of the external (fixed) IPv6 server validating user permissions for the listed captive portal policy. This item remains empty if the captive portal is hosted locally. IPv6 addresses are composed of eight groups of four hexadecimal digits separated by colons.
<b>Captive Portal Server Mode</b>	Lists each policy's hosting mode as either <i>Internal (Self)</i> or <i>External (Fixed)</i> . If the mode is Internal (Self), the controller or service platform is maintaining the captive portal locally, while External (Fixed) means the captive portal is being hosted on an external server resource.
<b>Hosting VLAN Interface</b>	Lists the VLAN (from 0 - 4,096) a client utilizes for controller or service platform interoperability when the Captive Portal Server Mode is set to Centralized Controller.

<b>Connection Mode</b>	Lists each policy's connection mode as either <i>HTTP</i> or <i>HTTPS</i> . Both HTTP and HTTPS use the same <i>Uniform Resource Identifier</i> (URI), so requesting clients can be identified. However, the use of HTTPS is recommended, as it affords transmissions some measure of data protection HTTP cannot provide.
<b>Simultaneous Access</b>	Displays the number of users permitted at one time for each listed policy. A captive portal can support from 1-8192 users simultaneously.
<b>Web Page Source</b>	Displays whether the captive portal HTML pages are maintained <i>Internally</i> , <i>Externally</i> (on an external system you define) or are <i>Advanced</i> pages maintained and customized by the network administrator. Internal is the default setting.
<b>AAA Policy</b>	Lists each AAA policy used to authorize captive portal access requests. When a captive portal policy is created or modified, a AAA policy must be defined and applied to effectively authorize, authenticate and account user requests for captive portal access.

- 4 Select **Add** to create a new captive portal policy, **Edit** to modify an existing policy or **Delete** to remove an existing captive portal policy. Select **Rename** to change the name of an existing policy or **Copy** a policy to a different location.

A **Basic Configuration** screen displays by default. Define the policy's security, access and whitelist basic configuration before actual HTML pages can be defined for guest user access requests.



**Figure 11-2** Captive Portal Policy Basic Configuration screen

5 Define the following **Settings** for the captive portal policy:

<b>Captive Portal Policy</b>	If creating a new policy, assign a name representative of its access permissions, location or intended wireless client user base. If editing an existing captive portal policy, the policy name cannot be modified. The name cannot exceed 32 characters.
<b>Captive Portal Server Mode</b>	Set the mode as either <i>Internal (Self)</i> , <i>Centralized</i> or <i>Centralized Controller</i> . Select the <i>Internal (Self)</i> radio button to maintain the captive portal configuration (Web pages) internally. Select the <i>Centralized</i> radio button if the captive portal is supported on an external server. Select the <i>Centralized Controller</i> radio button if the captive portal is supported on a centralized controller or service platform. The default value is <i>Internal (Self)</i> .
<b>Hosting VLAN Interface</b>	When using the <i>Centralized Controller</i> server mode, specify the VLAN, between 0 and 4096 for client communication. Select 0 to use the default client VLAN. 0 is the default setting.
<b>Captive Portal Server Host</b>	Set a numeric IP address (or DNS hostname) for the server validating guest user permissions for the captive portal policy. This option is only available if hosting the captive portal on an <i>External (Fixed)</i> server resource.

<b>Captive Portal IPv6 Server</b>	If using Centralized server mode, select this option to define an IPv6 formatted address of the controller, service platform or Access Point resource hosting the captive portal.
<b>Connection Mode</b>	Select either <i>HTTP</i> or <i>HTTPS</i> to define the connection medium to the Web server. The use of HTTPS is recommended, as it affords some additional data protection HTTP cannot provide. The default value however is HTTP.
<b>Simultaneous Access</b>	Select the checkbox and use the spinner control to set from 1-8192 users (client MAC addresses) allowed simultaneous access to the captive portal and its resources.

- 6 Use the **AAA Policy** drop-down menu to select the *Authentication*, *Authorization* and *Accounting* (AAA) policy used to validate user credentials and provide captive portal access to the network.
- If no AAA policies exist, one must be created by selecting the **Create** icon, or an existing AAA policy can be selected and modified by selecting it from the drop-down menu and selecting the **Edit** icon.
- 7 Set the following **Access** parameters to define access, RADIUS lookup information and whether the Login pages contain agreement terms that must be accepted before access is granted to controller or service platform resources using the captive portal:

<b>Access Type</b>	Select the authentication scheme applied to clients requesting captive portal guest access to the WiNG network. Within the WiNG UI there's 6 options. The WiNG CLI uses 5 options. User interface options include: <i>No authentication required</i> - Requesting clients are redirected to the captive portal Welcome page without authentication. <i>RADIUS Authentication</i> - A requesting client's user credentials require authentication before access to the captive portal is permitted. This is the default setting. <i>Registration</i> - A requesting client's user credentials require authentication through social media credential exchange. <i>Email Access</i> - Clients use E-mail username and passwords for authenticating their captive portal session. Optionally set whether E-mail access requests are RADIUS validated. <i>Mobile Access</i> - Mobile clients use their device's access permissions for authenticating their captive portal session. Optionally set whether mobile access requests are RADIUS validated. <i>Other Access</i> - Requesting guest clients use a different means of captive portal session access (aside from E-mail or mobile device permissions). Optionally set whether these other access requests are RADIUS validated.
<b>Lookup Information</b>	When either <i>E-mail Access</i> , <i>Mobile Access</i> or <i>Other Access</i> is selected as the access type, provide a 1-32 character lookup information string used as a customized authentication mechanism. Optionally select <i>Validate with RADIUS</i> to invoke a RADIUS lookup and syslog event log entry during captive portal user credential exchanges.
<b>Terms and Conditions page</b>	Select this option to include terms that must be adhered to for clients requesting captive portal access. These terms are included in the Terms and Conditions page when <i>No authentication required</i> is selected as the access type, otherwise the terms appear in the Login page. The default setting is disabled.

- 8 Set the following **Social Media Authentication** parameters to utilize a requesting client's social media profile for captive portal registration:

<b>Facebook</b>	If selected, the requesting client's guest user Facebook social media profile (collected from the social media server) is registered on the device. Captive portal authentication then becomes a fallback mechanism to enforce guest registration through social authentication. This option is disabled by default.
<b>Google</b>	If selected, the requesting client's guest user Google social media profile (collected from the social media server) is registered on the device. Captive portal authentication then becomes a fallback mechanism to enforce guest registration through social authentication. This option is disabled by default.

- 9 Refer to the **Bypass** field to enable or disable **Bypass Captive Portal Detection** capabilities. If enabled, captive portal detection requests are bypassed. This feature is disabled by default.
- 10 Set the following **Client Settings** to define client VLAN assignments, and the duration clients are allowed captive portal access and when they're timed out due to inactivity:

<b>Radius VLAN Assignment</b>	Select this option to enable client VLAN assignments using the RADIUS server. If, as part of the authentication process, the RADIUS server returns a client's VLAN-ID in a RADIUS access-accept packet, and this feature is enabled, all client traffic is forwarded on the post authentication VLAN. If disabled, the RADIUS server's VLAN assignment is ignored and the VLAN configuration defined within the WLAN configuration is used instead. This feature is disabled by default.
<b>Post Authentication VLAN</b>	When this option is selected, a specific VLAN is assigned to the client upon successful authentication. The available range is from 1 - 4,096.
<b>Client Access Time</b>	Use the spinner control to define the duration wireless clients are allowed access to using the captive portal policy when there is no session time value defined for the RADIUS response. Set an interval from 10 - 10,800 minutes. The default interval is 1,440 minutes.
<b>Inactivity Timeout</b>	Use the drop-down menu to specify an interval in either <i>Minutes</i> (1 - 1,440) or <i>Seconds</i> (60 - 86,400) that, when exceeded, times out the session. The default is 10 minutes.

- 11 Define the following **Loyalty App** settings to allow administrators to detect and report a captive portal client's usage of a selected (preferred) loyalty application:

<b>Enable</b>	Select this option to report a captive portal client's loyalty application presence and store this information in the captive portal's user database. The client's loyalty application detection occurs on the Access Point to which the client is associated and allows a retail administrator to assess whether a captive portal client is using specific retail (loyalty) applications in their captive portal. This setting is enabled by default.
<b>App Name</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select an existing application to track for loyalty utilization by captive portal clients. This enables an administrator to assess whether patrons are accessing an application as expected in specific retail environments. To create an application if none exists suiting the specific reporting needs of captive portal clients, see <a href="#">Application on page 7-58</a> .

- 12 Use the **DNS Whitelist** parameter to create a set of allowed destination IP addresses. These allowed DNS destination IP addresses are called a *Whitelist*.

To effectively host captive portal pages on an external Web server, the IP address of the destination Web server(s) should be in the Whitelist.

- 13 Refer to the drop-down menu of existing DNS White List entries to select a policy to be applied to this captive portal policy. If no DNS Whitelist entries exist, select the **Create** or **Edit** icons and follow the sub-steps below:
  - a. If creating a new Whitelist, assign it a name up to 32 characters. Use the + Add Row button to populate the Whitelist with Host and IP Index values.

**Figure 11-3** Captive Portal Whitelist screen

- b. Provide a numerical *IP address* or *Hostname* within the **DNS Entry** parameter for each destination IP address or host included in the Whitelist. Hostnames cannot contain an underscore.
  - c. Use the **Match Suffix** parameter to match any hostname or domain name as a suffix. The default setting is disabled.
  - d. If necessary, select the radio button of an existing Whitelist entry and select the **Delete** icon to remove the entry from the Whitelist.
- 14 Set the following **Accounting** parameters to define how accounting is conducted for clients entering and exiting the captive portal. Accounting is the method of collecting and sending security server information for billing, auditing and reporting user data; such as captive portal start and stop times, executed commands (such as PPP), number of packets and number of bytes. Accounting enables wireless network administrators to track captive portal services users are consuming.

<b>Enable RADIUS Accounting</b>	Select this option to use an external RADIUS resource for AAA accounting. When selected, a AAA Policy field displays. This setting is disabled by default.
---------------------------------	--

<b>Enable Syslog Accounting</b>	Select this option to log information about the use of remote access services by users using an external syslog resource. This information is of great assistance in partitioning local versus remote users. Remote user information can be archived to an external location for periodic network and user administration. This feature is disabled by default.
<b>Syslog Host</b>	When syslog accounting is enabled, use the drop-down menu to determine whether an <i>IP address</i> or <i>Hostname</i> is used as a syslog host. The IP address or hostname of an external server resource is required to route captive portal syslog events to that destination external resource destination. A hostname cannot contain an underscore.
<b>Syslog Port</b>	When syslog accounting is enabled, define the numerical syslog port the used to route traffic with the external syslog server. The default port is 514.

- 15 Set the following **Data Limit** parameters values to define a data limit for clients accessing the network using the restrictions of a captive portal:

<b>Limit</b>	Select this option to enable data limits for captive portal clients. Specify the maximum amount of data, in MegaBytes, allowed for each captive portal client. When a user reaches this threshold, from 1 and 102,400 MegaBytes, it triggers the specified action.
<b>Action</b>	When a captive portal client reaches its data usage limit, a specified log action is executed. Available actions are <i>Log Only</i> and <i>log-and-disconnect</i> . When Log Only is selected, an entry is added to the log file any time a captive portal client exceeds the data limit. When log-and-disconnect is selected, an entry is added to the log file when the data limit is exceeded and the client is disconnected from the captive portal.

- 16 Set the **Logout FQDN** as the FQDN address to logout of the captive portal session from the client (for example, *logout.guest.com*).
- 17 Set the following **Localization** settings to add a URL to trigger a one-time redirect on demand. The defined URL is triggered from a mobile application to derive location information from the wireless network so an application can be localized to a particular store or region.

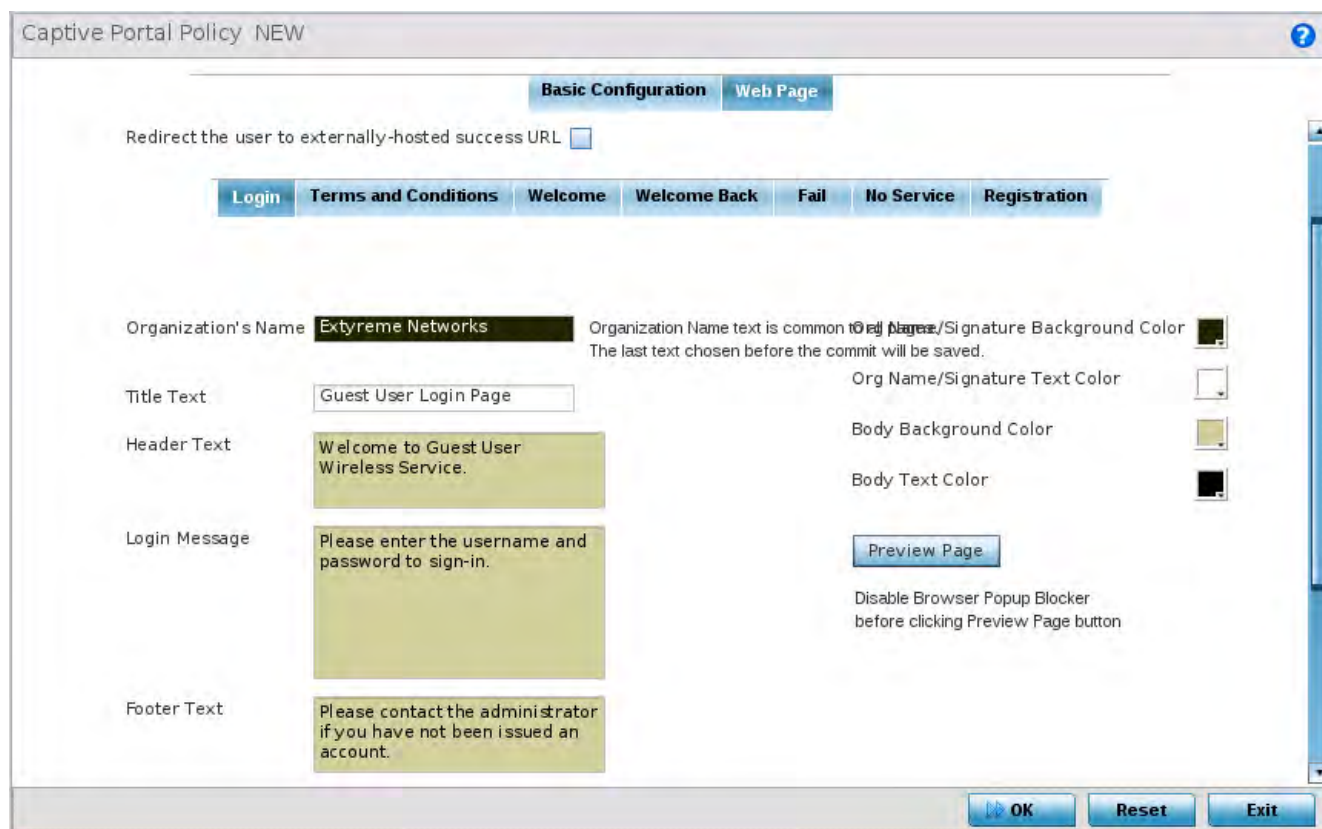
<b>FQDN</b>	Provide the FQDN address (for example, <i>local.guestaccess.com</i> ) used to obtain localization parameters for a client.
<b>Response</b>	Enter a 512 character maximum response message directed back to the client for localization HTTP requests.

- 18 Refer to the **Destination Ports for Redirection** parameter (within the **Redirection Ports** field), and enter destination ports (separated by commas, or using a dash for a range) for consideration when re-directing client connections. Standard ports 80 and 443 are always considered for client connections regardless of what's entered by the administrator.

- 19 Select the **Web Page** tab to create locally or externally hosted HTML pages.

The **Login** page displays by default.





**Figure 11-4** Captive Portal Policy Internal Web Page screen

The *Login* screen prompts the user for a username and password to access the captive portal and proceed to either the *Terms and Conditions* page (if used) or the *Welcome* page. The *Terms and Conditions* page provides conditions that must be agreed to before captive portal access is permitted. The *Welcome* page asserts a user has logged in successfully and can access the captive portal. The *Welcome Back* oage greets returning users. The *Fail* page asserts authentication attempt has failed, the user is not allowed to access the Internet (using this captive portal) and must provide the correct login information again to access the Internet. The *No Service* page asserts the captive portal service is temporarily unavailable due to technical reasons. Once the services become available, the captive portal user is automatically connected back to the services available through the captive portal.

20 Select the location where the captive portal *Login*, *Terms and Conditions*, *Welcome*, *Fail*, *No Service* and *Registration* Web pages are hosted. Available sources include *Internal*, *External* and *Advanced*. If *Internal* is selected, provide the information for each of the screens. If *Advanced* is selected, follow the on-screen instructions to upload custom Web pages. If *Externally hosted* is selected, provide the URLs for each of the necessary pages in the fields below.

21 Provide the following information for the **Login**, **Terms and Conditions**, **Welcome**, **Welcome Back**, **Fail**, **No Service** and **Registration** tabs:

<b>Organization Name</b>	Set any organizational specific name or identifier which clients see during login. The Organization Name setting is only available for the Login page.
<b>Title Text</b>	Set the title text displayed on the pages when wireless clients access captive portal pages. The text should be in the form of a page title describing the respective function of each page and should be unique to each function.

<b>Header Text</b>	Provide header text unique to the function of each page.
<b>Login Message</b>	Specify a message containing unique instructions or information for the users who access the Login, Terms and Condition, Welcome, Fail, No Service or Registration pages. In the case of the Terms and Agreement page, the message can be the conditions requiring agreement before captive portal access is permitted.
<b>Footer Text</b>	Provide a footer message displayed on the bottom of each page. The footer text should be any concluding message unique to each page before accessing the next page in the succession of hotspot Web pages.
<b>Main Logo URL</b>	The Main Logo URL is the URL for the main logo image displayed on the screens. Use the <i>Browse</i> button to navigate to the location of the target file. Optionally select the <i>Use as banner</i> option to designate the selected main logo as the page's banner as well. The banner option is disabled by default.
<b>Small Logo URL</b>	The Small Logo URL is the URL for a small logo image displayed on the screens. Use the <i>Browse</i> button to navigate to the location of the target file.
<b>Signature</b>	Provide the copyright and legal signature associated with the usage of the captive portal and the usage of the organization name provided. The Signature setting is only available for the Login page.

22 Refer to the right-hand side of each screen to define how the **Org Name Signature Background Color**, **Org Name. Signature Text Color**, **Body Background Color** and **Body Text Color** display for current screen.

Select the box to the right of each of these four items to launch a color palette where screen colors can be selected uniquely. Select **Preview Page** to review your color selections before committing the updates to captive portal screens. Each of the *Login*, *Terms and Conditions*, *Welcome*, *Fail*, *No Service* and *Registration* screens can have their background and signature colors set uniquely.



**Figure 11-5** Captive Portal Page Color Palette screen

23 When setting the properties of the **Registration** screen, refer to the bottom portion of the screen to define email, country, gender, mobile, zip, street and name filters used as additional authentication criteria. Guest users are redirected to the registration portal on association to the captive portal SSID. Users are displayed an internal (or) externally hosted registration page where the guest user must complete the registration process if not previously registered.

These fields are customizable to meet the needs of retailers providing guest access. The captive portal sends a message to the user (on the phone number or Email address provided at registration) containing an access code. The user inputs the access code and the captive portal verifies the code before returning the Welcome page and providing access. This allows a retailer to verify the phone number or Email address is correct and can be traced back to a specific individual.

Registration Page Fields

Name	Type	Enabled	Mandatory	Label	Placeholder	
gender	dropdown-menu	✓	✗	Age Range	Age Range	✗
country	dropdown-menu	✓	✗	City	Enter City	✗
email	e-address	✓	✓	Email	you@domain.com	✗
mobile	number	✓	✗	Mobile	Mobile Number with	✗
name	text	✓	✗	Full Name	Enter First Name, L	✗

+ Add Row

**Figure 11-6** Registration screen customizable filters

- 24 Select **OK** to save the changes made within any of the Internal Page screens. Selecting **Reset** reverts the settings back to the last saved configuration.
- 25 Select **Advanced** to use a custom-developed directory full of Web page content can be copied in and out of the controller or service platform. Please use the *File Transfers* sub-menu in the *Operations* page to transfer files to the appropriate devices serving up the Web pages.

Captive Portal Policy CP7

Basic Configuration | Web Page

Web Page Source:  Internal  Advanced  Externally Hosted

A custom-developed directory full of web page content can be copied in and out of the Controller. Please use the "File Transfers" sub-menu in the "Operations" page to transfer files onto the appropriate devices on your network that will be serving up the web pages.

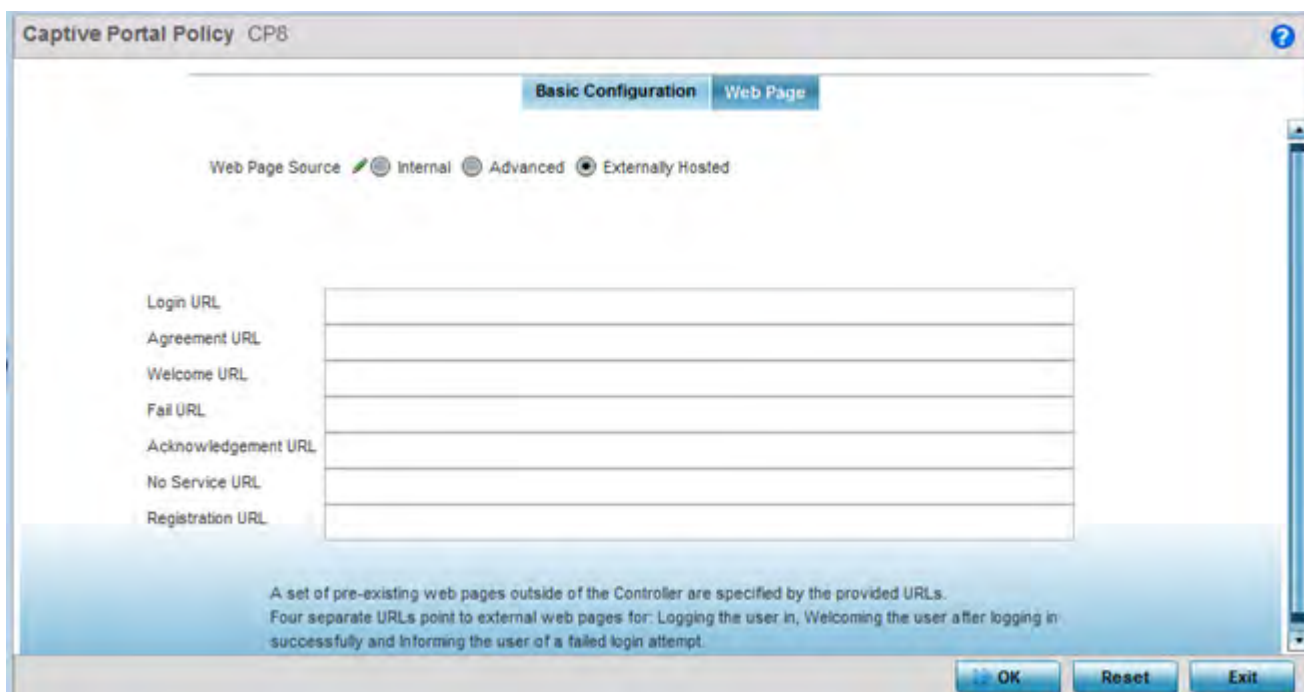
If automatic distribution is enabled, the access points shall request for the Web Pages from the controller during adoption. If controller has a different set of Web Pages than the existing ones on the APs, the controller shall distribute the Web Pages uploaded on it to the APs.

Web Page Auto Upload

Redirect the user to externally hosted URL

OK Reset Exit

- 26 Select the **Externally Hosted** radio button if hosting the captive portal on an external server resource. Select **Web Page Auto Upload** to automatically launch the advanced pages for requesting clients upon association. This setting is disabled by default.
- Select **Redirect the user to externally hosted URL** to use an externally hosted server resource and its login permissions for logging into the advanced page. This setting is disabled by default.



**Figure 11-7** Captive Portal Policy Externally Hosted Web Page screen

<b>Login URL</b>	Define the complete URL for the location of the Login screen. The Login screen prompts the user for a <i>username</i> and <i>password</i> to access either the Terms and Conditions or Welcome page.
<b>Agreement URL</b>	Define the complete URL for the location of the Terms and Conditions page. The Terms and Conditions page provides conditions that must be agreed to before wireless client access is provided.
<b>Welcome URL</b>	Define the complete URL for the location of the Welcome page. The Welcome page asserts the user has logged in successfully and can access network resources via the captive portal.
<b>Fail URL</b>	Define the complete URL for the location of the Fail page. The Fail page asserts authentication attempt has failed, and the client cannot access the captive portal. The client needs to provide correct login information to regain access.
<b>Acknowledgement URL</b>	Define the complete URL to the location of the Acknowledgement page. The Acknowledgement URL is needed by returning users whose MAC addresses has been validated previously, but must accept the conditions of the captive portal again.
<b>No Service URL</b>	Define the complete URL to the location of the No URL page. The No Service URL is needed by users encountering difficulties connecting to the external resource used to host the captive portal pages.
<b>Registration URL</b>	Define the complete URL to the location of the Registration page. The Registration URL is supported by NX9500, NX9600 and NX75XX service platform models as an adopting controller verifying (registering) user information before client access is provided to captive portal managed Internet resources.

27 Select **OK** when completed to update the captive portal's advanced configuration. Select **Reset** to revert the screen back to its last saved configuration.

## 11.1.2 Creating DNS Whitelists

### ► *Configuring Captive Portal Policies*

A DNS whitelist is used in conjunction with a captive portal to provide access services to wireless clients. Use the whitelist to create a set of allowed destination IP addresses within the captive portal. To effectively host hotspot pages on an external Web server, the IP address of the destination Web server(s) should be in the whitelist.

To define the whitelist:

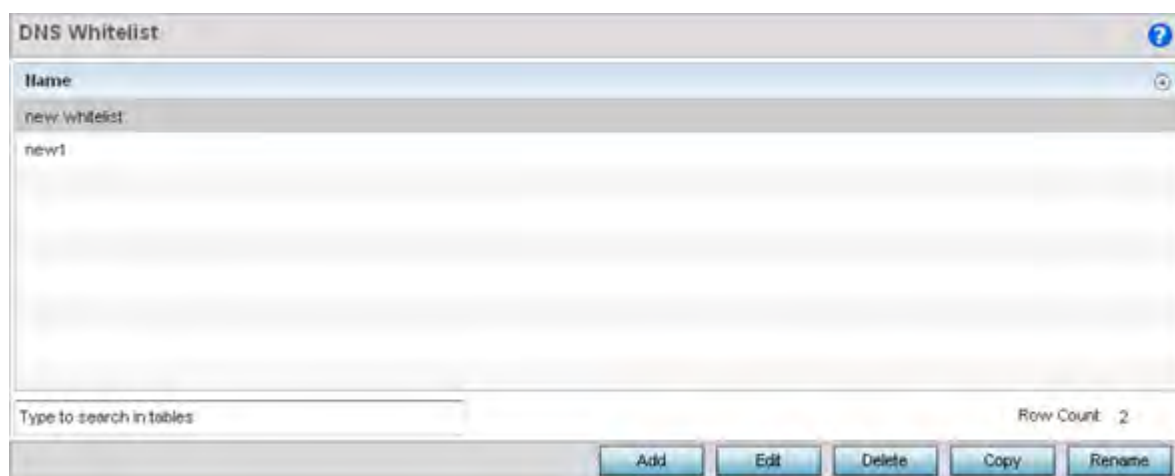
- 1 Select **Configuration > Services**.

The upper, left-hand, side of the user interface displays a **Services** menu pane where Captive Portal, DHCP and RADIUS configuration options can be selected.

- 2 Select **Captive Portals**.

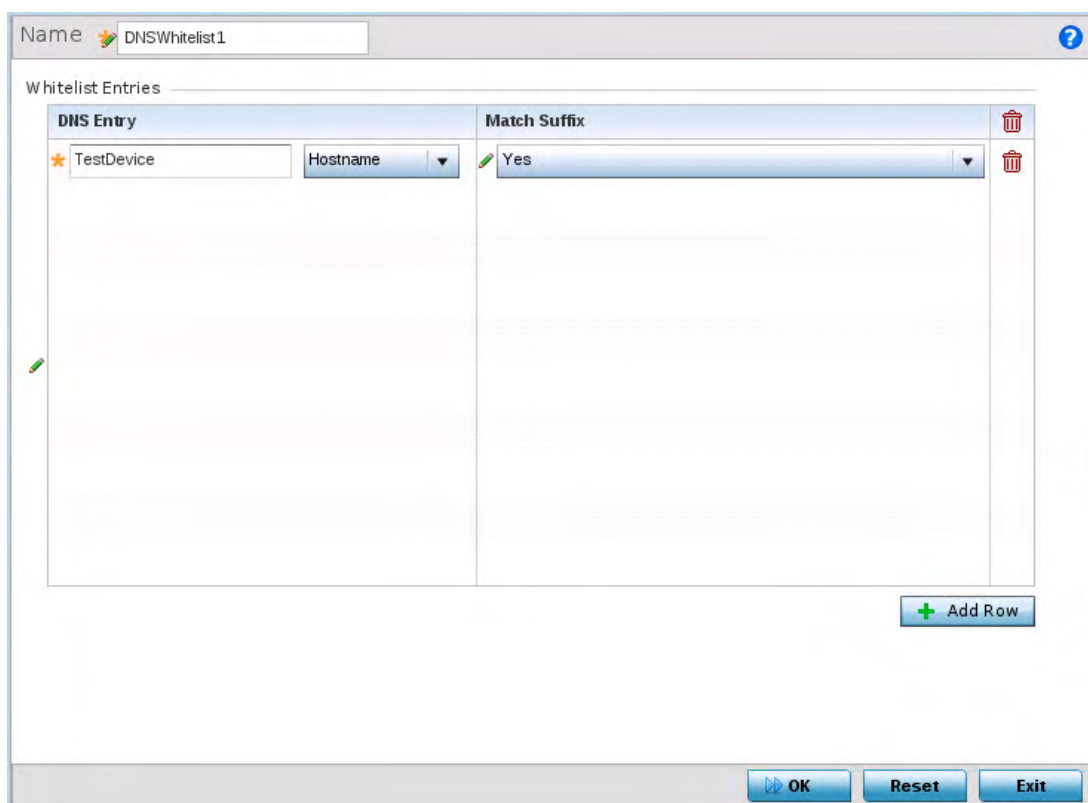
The Captive Portal screen displays the configurations of existing policies. New policies can be created, existing policies can be modified or existing policies deleted.

- 3 Select **DNS Whitelist**



**Figure 11-8** Captive Portal DNS Whitelist screen

- 4 Review the names of existing whitelists and click **Add** to create a new whitelist entry or select an existing whitelist and click **Edit** to modify it.
- 5 Use the **DNS Whitelist** parameter to create a set of allowed destination IP addresses.  
To effectively host pages on an external Web server, the IP address of the destination Web server(s) should be in the whitelist.
- 6 Refer to the drop-down menu of existing whitelist entries to select a policy to be applied to this captive portal policy. If no entries exist, select the **Create** or **Edit** icons and follow the sub-steps below:
  - a. If creating a new Whitelist, assign it a name up to 32 characters. Select the **+ Add Row** button to populate the Whitelist with Host and IP Index values.



**Figure 11-9** Captive Portal Whitelist screen

- b. Provide a *Hostname* or numeric *IPv4 Address* or *IPv6 Address* within the **DNS Entry** parameter for each destination IP address or host included in the Whitelist. IPv6 formatted addresses are composed of eight groups of four hexadecimal digits separated by colons.
- c. Use the **Match Suffix** parameter to match any hostname or domain name as a suffix. The default setting is disabled.
- d. If necessary, select the radio button of an existing Whitelist entry and select the - **Delete** icon to remove the entry from the Whitelist.

### 11.1.3 Captive Portal Deployment Considerations

#### ► *Configuring Captive Portal Policies*

Before defining a captive portal configuration, refer to the following deployment guidelines to ensure the configuration is optimally effective:

- The architecture should consider the number of wireless clients allowed and the services provided. Each topology has benefits and disadvantages which should be taken into consideration to meet each deployment's requirements.
- Captive portal authentication uses secure HTTPS to protect user credentials, but doesn't typically provide encryption for user data once they have been authenticated. For private access applications, WPA2 (with a strong passphrase) should be enabled to provide strong encryption.
- Guest user traffic should be assigned a dedicated VLAN, separate from other internal networks.
- Guest access configurations should include firewall policies to ensure logical separation is provided between guest and internal networks so internal networks and hosts are not reachable from guest devices.



- Guest access services should be defined in a manner whereby end-user traffic doesn't cause network congestion.
- A valid certificate should be issued and installed on all devices providing captive portal access to the WLAN and wireless network. The certificate should be issued from a public certificate authority ensuring guests can access the captive portal without browser errors.

## 11.2 Setting the Guest Management Configuration

---

### ► Services

Establish a guest management configuration to redirect guest users to a registration portal upon association to the captive portal SSID. The guest users are redirected to an internally (or) externally hosted registration page (registration.html) where the guest user can complete the registration process if not previously registered. The internal captive portal adds a new *registration* page that's customizable based on business requirement.

A guest management policy is for configuration of E-mail host and SMS gateway related commands along with the credentials required for sending passcode to guest via email and SMS. Configure up to 32 different guest management policies. Each guest management policy allows an administrator to configure the SMS gateway, SMS message body, E-mail SMTP server, E-mail subject contents and E-mail message body. At any point of time, there can be only one guest management policy active per device.

Guest registration is supported on NX90000 series service platforms as an adopting controller with up to 2 million user identity entries. Guest registration is supported on NX75000 series service platforms as an adopting controller with up to 1 million user identity entries. Guest management and registration is not supported on all other WiNG supported platforms.



**NOTE:** An option to backup the guest registration configuration is not available in the user interface. To backup the guest user database, a `guest-database-backup` command must be invoked using the CLI. For more information, refer to the *WiNG CLI Reference Guide* available from [www.extremenetworks.com/support](http://www.extremenetworks.com/support).

Refer to the following sections for configuring Guest Management parameters:

- *Email*
- *SMS*
- *SMS SMTP*
- *DB Export*

To set the guest management configuration:



- 1 Select **Configuration > Services > Guest Management**.

Name	Email Enable	SMS Enable	SMS SMTP Enable	DB Export Enable
Guest_Access_Profile_Main	✓	✗	✗	✓

Type to search in tables Row Count: 1

**Figure 11-10** *Guest Management screen*

- 2 Review the following (at a high level) to determine if a new guest management requires creation, an existing guest management configuration requires modification or requires deletion:

<b>Name</b>	Lists the name(s) of up to 32 guest user policies created on the service platform for registering guest user credentials.
<b>Email Enable</b>	A green check mark defines Email as enabled for guest management, a red X defines Email as disabled. Guest users can register themselves with their E-mail credentials as a primary key for authentication; captive portal system provides the pass code for their registration and the guest users needs to use the registered email/mobile/member id and the received pass code for further login to the captive portal.
<b>SMS Enable</b>	A green check mark defines SMS as enabled for guest management, a red X defines SMS as disabled.SMS enables guest users to registers themselves with their E-mail or mobile device ID as the primary key for authentication. The captive portal provides the passcode for registration, and the guest users utilizes use their registered E-mail or mobile device ID and received passcode for login to the captive portal.
<b>SMS SMTP Enable</b>	A green check mark defines SMS SMTP as enabled for guest management, a red X defines SMS SMTP as disabled. Optionally configure an E-mail host server (for example: <i>smtp.gmail.com</i> ) along with sender related credentials and the recipient gateway E-mail address to which the message is E-mailed. The gateway server converts the E-mail into SMS and sends the message to guest users's mobile device.
<b>DB Export Enable</b>	A green check mark indicates that exporting the guest user database is enabled for this device. When enabled, the list of guest users on the captive portal can be periodically exported to an external server.

- 3 Select **Add** to create a new guest management configuration, choose an existing configuration and select the **Edit** button to modify its properties or choose an existing guest management and select **Delete** to remove it from those available. Select **Rename** to change the name of an existing guest management configuration or **Copy** a configuration to a different location. Select **Replace** to replace an existing **Guest Management** policy with a new policy.

## 11.2.1 Email

### ▶ *Setting the Guest Management Configuration*

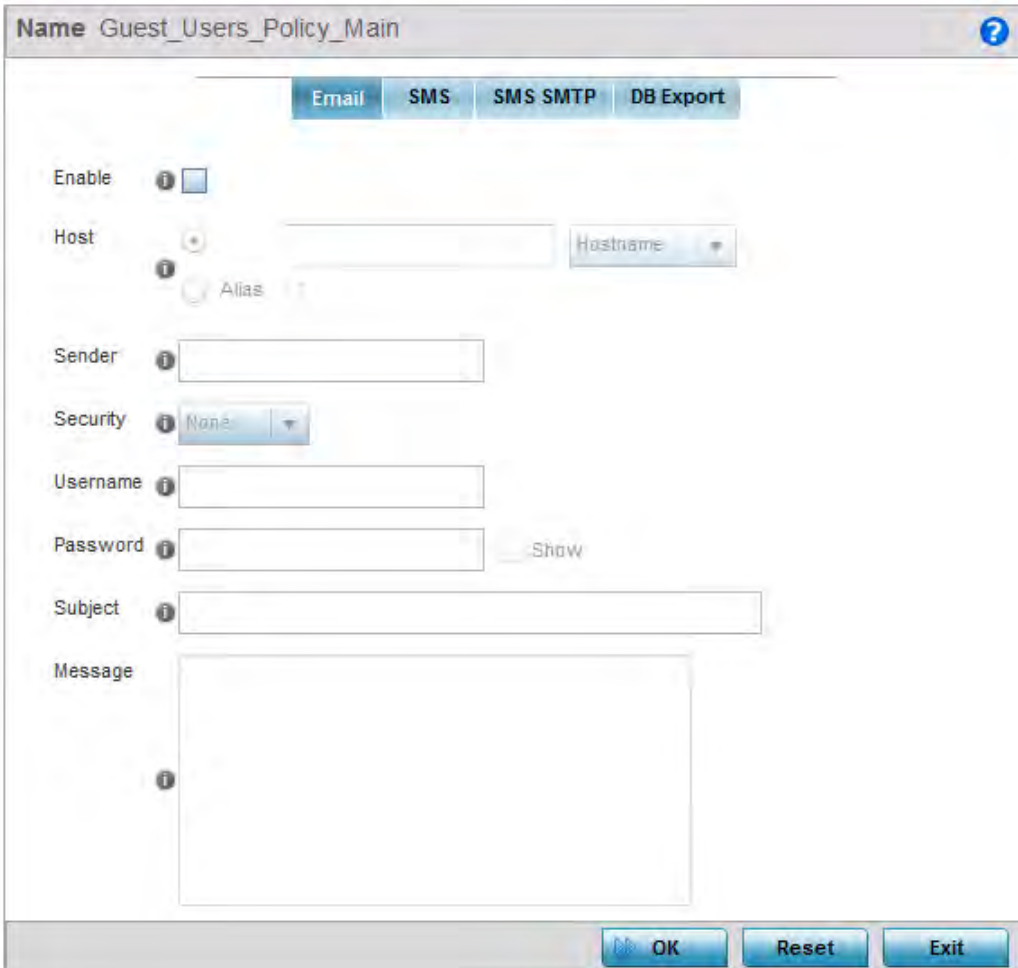
Guest users can register themselves with their E-mail credentials as a primary key for authentication; captive portal system provides the pass code for their registration and the guest users needs to use the registered email/mobile/member id and the received pass code for further login to the captive portal.

To define a guest management configuration using E-mail as the primary key for authentication:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Services > Guest Management**.

Review existing guest management configurations to determine whether new E-mail configuration requires creation or an existing guest user configuration requires modification or deletion.

- 2 Select the **Email** tab.



The screenshot shows a configuration window titled "Name Guest\_Users\_Policy\_Main". At the top, there are four tabs: "Email" (selected), "SMS", "SMS SMTP", and "DB Export". The "Email" tab contains the following fields and controls:

- Enable:** A checkbox that is currently unchecked.
- Host:** A text input field with a "Hostname" dropdown menu to its right. Below it is a radio button labeled "Alias".
- Sender:** A text input field.
- Security:** A dropdown menu currently set to "None".
- Username:** A text input field.
- Password:** A text input field with a "Show" button to its right.
- Subject:** A text input field.
- Message:** A large text area for entering the email message content.

At the bottom of the window, there are three buttons: "OK", "Reset", and "Exit".

**Figure 11-11** *Guest Management screen - Email tab*

- 3 Set the following E-mail guest user network address and message content information required for notifying a guest with a passcode using E-mail:

<b>Enable</b>	Enable this option so guest users can register themselves with their E-mail credentials as a primary key for authentication; captive portal system provides the pass code for their registration and the guest users needs to use the registered E-mail/mobile/member id and the received pass code for further login to the captive portal. This setting is disabled by default and must be enabled to define the required settings.
<b>Host</b>	Define a hostname or IPv4 formatted IP address of the SMTP server resource used for guest management E-mail traffic, guest user credential validation and passcode reception. Optionally create an alias to define the host once and use the alias across different configuration items.
<b>Sender</b>	Provide a 100 character maximum sender name for the guest user receiving the passcode required for registering their guest E-mail credentials.
<b>Security</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select <i>ssl</i> or <i>starttls</i> as the E-mail host server user authentication validation scheme for this particular username and password combination. Optionally select <i>None</i> to apply to no additional user authentication beyond the required username and password combination.
<b>Username</b>	Provide a unique 100 character maximum username unique to this guest management configuration. This username will require its own password and must be correctly provided to receive the required passcode for registering guest E-mail credentials.
<b>Password</b>	Define a 63 character maximum password that must be correctly provided with the unique username to receive the required passcode for registering guest E-mail credentials.
<b>Subject</b>	Enter the 100 character maximum E-mail subject for the E-mail message sent to the guest user along with the required passcode. You can use the tag 'GM_NAME' in the subject which is replaced by the guest user's name.
<b>Message</b>	Create the 1024 character maximum message content for the E-mail sent to the guest user along with the passcode. You can use the following tags in the message body. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• GM_NAME - indicates the guest user's name in the message. This tag is replaced by the guest user's name when the E-mail is created.</li> <li>• GM_PASSCODE - indicates the password assigned to the user. The tag is replaced by the actual password when the E-mail is created.</li> <li>• CR-NL - indicates a line break. When used, the word next to this tag starts on a new line when the E-mail is created.</li> </ul>

- 4 Select **OK** to save the updates to the guest management E-Mail configuration. Select **Reset** to revert the screen back to its last saved configuration.

## 11.2.2 SMS

SMS enables guest users to registers themselves with their E-mail or mobile device ID as the primary key for authentication. The captive portal provides the passcode for registration, and the guest users utilizes use their registered E-mail or mobile device ID and received passcode for login to the captive portal.



**NOTE:** When utilizing SMS, the WLAN's authentication type should be *None* and the registration type should be enabled as user registration. Captive portal authentication must always enforce guest registration.

SMS is similar to MAC address based self registration, but in addition a captive portal sends a SMS message to the user on the mobile phone number provided at registration containing an access code. The user then inputs the access code on the user screen. The captive portal verifies the code, returns the *Welcome* page and provides access. This allows the administrator to verify the phone number provided and can be traced back to a specific individual should the need arise.

The default gateway used with SMS is *Clickatell*. A passcode can be sent with SMS to the guest user directly using Clickatell, or the passcode can be sent via E-mail to the SMS Clickatell gateway server, and Clickatell sends the passcode SMS to the guest user.

To define a guest management configuration using SMS:

1 Select **Configuration > Services > Guest Management**.

Review existing guest management configurations to determine whether new configuration requires creation or an existing guest user configuration requires modification or deletion.

2 Select the **SMS** tab.

**Figure 11-12** Guest Management screen - SMS tab

3 Set the following **SMS** guest user network and message content information required for notifying a guest with a passcode:

<b>Enable</b>	Select this option to enable guest users to registers themselves with their E-mail or mobile device ID as the primary key for authentication. This setting is disabled by default and must be enabled to define the required settings.
<b>Host</b>	By default, <i>clickatell</i> is the only host SMS gateway server resource. Upon receiving the passcode E-mail, the SMS gateway sends the actual notification passcode SMS to the guest user.

<b>Username</b>	Provide a unique 32 character maximum username unique to this SMS guest management configuration. This username will require its own password and must be correctly provided to receive the required passcode for registering guest user credentials with SMS.
<b>Password</b>	Define a 63 character maximum password that must be correctly provided with the unique username to receive the required passcode for registering guest user credentials with SMS.
<b>API Id</b>	Set a 32 character maximum API Id for the configuration of the clickatell api_id (http/smtp api_id).
<b>User Agent</b>	Select the user agent for configuring the clickatell SMS gateway server and its related credentials for sending the passcode to guests.
<b>Source Number</b>	Set a 32 character maximum source-address from the number associated with clickatell. It can be a large integer or short code. The source number is only applicable to certain countries (like the United States).
<b>Message</b>	Create the 1024 character maximum message content for the SMS based request sent to the guest user along with the passcode.

- 4 Select **OK** to save the updates to the guest management SMS configuration. Select **Reset** to revert the screen back to its last saved configuration.

### 11.2.3 SMS SMTP

Optionally configure an E-mail host server (for example: *smtp.gmail.com*) along with sender related credentials and the recipient gateway E-mail address to which the message is E-mailed. The gateway server converts the E-mail into SMS and sends the message to guest users's mobile device.

When sending an E-mail, the E-mail client interacts with a SMTP server to handle the content transmission. The SMTP server on the host may have conversations with other SMTP servers to deliver the Email.

To define a guest management configuration using SMS SMTP:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Services > Guest Management**.  
Review existing guest management configurations to determine whether new configuration requires creation or an existing guest user configuration requires modification or deletion.
- 2 Select the **SMS SMTP** tab.

**Figure 11-13** Guest Management screen - SMS SMTP tab

- 3 Set the following **SMS SMTP** guest user network and message content information required for notifying a guest with a passcode:

<b>Enable</b>	Enable this setting to configure an E-mail host server (for example: smtp.gmail.com) along with sender related credentials and the recipient gateway E-mail address to which the message is E-mailed. This setting is disabled by default and must be enabled to define the required settings.
<b>Host</b>	Define a hostname or IPv4 formatted IP address of the SMS gateway server resource used for guest management E-mail traffic, guest user credential validation and passcode reception. Consider providing the host as an alias. An alias enables an administrator to define a configuration item, such as a hostname, as an alias once and use the alias across different configuration items.
<b>Sender</b>	Provide a 100 character maximum sender name for the guest user receiving the passcode required for registering their guest E-mail credentials using SMTP.
<b>Security</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select <i>ssl</i> or <i>starttls</i> as the SMTP server user authentication validation scheme for this particular username and password combination. Optionally select <i>None</i> to apply to no additional user authentication beyond the required username and password combination. The default value is <i>ssl</i> .

<b>Username</b>	Provide a unique 64 character maximum username unique to this SMTP guest management configuration. This username requires its own password and must be correctly provided to receive the required passcode for registering guest user credentials.
<b>Password</b>	Define a 64 character maximum password that must be correctly provided with the unique username to receive the required passcode for registering guest user credentials with SMTP.
<b>Email of Recipient</b>	Enter a 64 character maximum E-mail address for the recipient of guest management E-mail traffic.
<b>Subject</b>	Enter a 100 character maximum E-mail subject for the E-mail message sent to the guest user along with the required passcode.
<b>Message</b>	Enter a 1024 character maximum E-mail message per the message format required by the gateway server. The <i>sms-over-smtp</i> message format is the required format from <i>clickatell</i> while sending E-mail to the SMS gateway server.

Select **OK** to save the updates to the guest management SMS SMTP configuration. Select **Reset** to revert the screen back to its last saved configuration.

## 11.2.4 DB Export

### ▶ *Setting the Guest Management Configuration*

Optionally configure the guest user database export parameters. The guest user database can be periodically exported to an external server for backup and analysis.

To define the database export parameters:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Services > Guest Management**.  
Review existing guest management configurations to determine whether new configuration requires creation or an existing guest user configuration requires modification or deletion.
- 2 Select the **DB Export** tab.



**Figure 11-14** Guest Management screen - DB Export tab

3 Set the following **DB Export** parameters:

<b>Enable</b>	Enable this setting to configure the guest user database to an external server for backup and analysis. This setting is disabled by default and must be enabled to define the required settings.
<b>Start Time</b>	Define the start time when the first database backup occurs. The first run of the guest user database backup is always the current day. Use the spinner controls to set the start hour and minute. Use the AM/PM options to configure the exact hour. The default value is 12:00 AM.
<b>Frequency</b>	Define the backup frequency. This is the time interval between two consecutive backups. Use the spinner control to set the value between 1 hour and 168 hours. The default frequency is 4 hours.
<b>Format</b>	Guest user database can be exported in the following formats: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• CSV</li> <li>• JSON</li> </ul> Select the appropriate export format. The default export format is CSV.
<b>Last Visit Time</b>	Use this field to filter or restrict the amount of data that is exported. Use the spinner to set a value in the range 1 - 168 hours. When set, any data that is older than the set period - from when the database is being backed up - is not exported. The default value is 4 hours.
<b>URL Directory</b>	Use the field to provide the URL to which the guest user database is exported. Select the <i>Advanced</i> link to expose fields for setting the remote server's URL.

<b>Protocol</b>	Select the protocol used for exporting the guest user database. Available options include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>tftp</i></li> <li>• <i>ftp</i></li> <li>• <i>sftp</i></li> <li>• <i>http</i></li> <li>• <i>cf</i></li> <li>• <i>usb1-4</i></li> </ul>
<b>Port</b>	Use the spinner control to set the port. This option is not valid for <i>cf</i> and <i>usb1-4</i> .
<b>Host</b>	Provide the hostname string or numeric IP address of the server to export the guest user database to. Hostnames cannot include an underscore character. This option is not valid for <i>cf</i> and <i>usb1-4</i> .  Select <i>IPv4 Address</i> to use an IPv4 formatted address as the host. Select <i>IPv6 Address</i> to use an IPv6 formatted address as the host. IPV6 provides enhanced identification and location information for computers on networks routing traffic across the Internet. IPV6 addresses are composed of eight groups of four hexadecimal digits separated by colons.
<b>Path/File</b>	Specify the path on the remote server where the guest user database file is copied to. Enter the complete relative path to the file on the remote server.

- 4 Select **OK** to save the updates to the guest management DB Export configuration. Select **Reset** to revert the screen back to its last saved configuration.

## 11.3 Setting the DHCP Configuration

### ► Services

*Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol* (DHCP) allows hosts on an IP network to request and be assigned IP addresses and discover information about the network where they reside. Each subnet can be configured with its own address pool. Whenever a DHCP client requests an IP address, the DHCP server assigns an IP address from that subnet's address pool. When the onboard DHCP server allocates an address for a DHCP client, the client is assigned a lease, which expires after a pre-determined interval. Before a lease expires, wireless clients (to which leases are assigned) are expected to renew them to continue to use the addresses. Once the lease expires, the client is no longer permitted to use the leased IP address. The DHCP server ensures all IP addresses are unique, and no IP address is assigned to a second client while the first client's assignment is valid (its lease has not yet expired). Therefore, IP address management is conducted by the internal DHCP server, not by an administrator.

The internal DHCP server groups wireless clients based on defined user-class options. Clients with a defined set of user class values are segregated by class. A DHCP server can associate multiple classes to each pool. Each class in a pool is assigned an exclusive range of IP addresses. DHCP clients are compared against classes. If the client matches one of the classes assigned to the pool, it receives an IP address from the range assigned to the class. If the client doesn't match any of the classes in the pool, it receives an IP address from a default pool range (if defined). Multiple IP addresses for a single VLAN allow the configuration of multiple IP addresses, each belonging to different subnet. Class configuration allows a DHCP client to obtain an address from the first pool to which the class is assigned.

Numerous DHCP network address credentials can have an *alias* applied. An alias enables an administrator to define a configuration item (such as a IP address or domain name) once, and then use this single alias across different configurable values. For example, if a central network DNS server is set a static IP address, and a remote location's

local DNS server is defined, this host can be overridden at the remote location. At the remote location, the network is functional with a local DNS server, but uses the name set at the central network. A new host need not be created at the remote location. This simplifies creating and managing hosts and allows an administrator to better manage specific local requirements. An alias name always starts with a dollar sign (\$) and should not exceed 32 characters. An alias that's applied to a DHCP configuration can be either a *Global*, *Profile*, *RF Domain* or *Device* alias. For more information on aliases and their application, see [Setting a Profile's Alias Configuration on page 8-155](#).



**NOTE:** DHCP server updates are only implemented when the controller or service platform is restarted.

Refer to the following sections for more information on configuring DHCP parameters:

- [Defining DHCP Pools](#)
- [Defining DHCP Server Global Settings](#)
- [DHCP Class Policy Configuration](#)
- [DHCP Deployment Considerations](#)

To access and review the local DHCP server configuration:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Services > DHCP Server Policy**.

The **DHCP Server** screen displays. Clients with a defined set of user class values are segregated by class. A DHCP server can associate multiple classes to each pool. Each class in a pool is assigned an exclusive range of IP addresses. DHCP clients are then compared against classes.

DHCP Server Policy	Ignore BOOTP Requests	Ping Timeout
addresspool	X	1s

Type to search in tables Row Count: 1

Add Edit Delete Copy Rename

**Figure 11-15** DHCP Server Policy screen

- 2 Review the following DHCP server configurations (at a high level) to determine whether a new server policy requires creation, an existing policy requires modification or an existing policy requires deletion:

<b>DHCP Server Policy</b>	Lists the name assigned to each DHCP server policy when it was initially created. The name assigned to a DHCP server policy cannot be modified as part of the policy edit process. However, obsolete policies can be deleted as needed.
---------------------------	---

<b>Ignore BOOTP Requests</b>	A green checkmark within this column means this policy has been set to ignore BOOTP requests. A red "X" defines the policy as accepting BOOTP requests. BOOTP (boot protocol) requests boot remote systems within the controller or service platform managed network. BOOTP messages are encapsulated inside UDP messages and are forwarded by the controller or service platform. This parameter can be changed within the DHCP server <i>Global Settings</i> screen.
<b>Ping Timeout</b>	Lists the interval (from 1 -10 seconds) for a DHCP server ping timeout. The timeout is used to intermittently ping and discover whether a client requested IP address is already in use. This parameter can be changed within the DHCP Server <i>Global Settings</i> screen.

- 3 Select **Add** to create a new DHCP server policy, choose an existing policy and select the **Edit** button to modify the policy's properties or choose an existing policy and select **Delete** to remove the policy from those available. Adding or Editing a DHCP server policy displays the **DHCP Server Policy** screen by default. Select **Rename** to change the name of an existing policy or **Copy** a policy to a different location.

### 11.3.1 Defining DHCP Pools

#### ▶ *Setting the DHCP Configuration*

DHCP services are available for specific IP interfaces. A pool (or range) of IP network addresses and DHCP options can be created for each IP interface defined. This range of addresses can be made available to DHCP enabled wireless devices on either a permanent or leased basis. DHCP options are provided to each DHCP client with a DHCP response and provide DHCP clients information required to access network resources (default gateway, domain name, DNS server and WINS server configuration). An option exists to identify the vendor and functionality of a DHCP client. The information is a variable-length string of characters (or octets) with a meaning specified by the vendor of the DHCP client.

To define the parameters of a DHCP pool:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Services > DHCP Server Policy**. The DHCP Server screen displays the DHCP Pool tab by default.

DHCP Pool	Subnet	Domain Name	Boot File	Lease Time
vlan1	192.168.1.0/24			1d 0h 0m 0s
vlan174	172.168.11.0/24			1d 0h 0m 0s
vlan4	172.168.7.0/24			1d 0h 0m 0s

**Figure 11-16** DHCP Server Policy screen - DHCP Pool tab

- 2 Review the following DHCP pool configurations to determine if an existing pool can be used as is, a new one requires creation or edit, or a pool requires deletion:

<b>DHCP Pool</b>	Displays the name assigned to the network pool when created. The DHCP pool name represents the group of IP addresses used to assign to DHCP clients upon request. The name assigned cannot be modified as part of the edit process. However, if the network pool configuration is obsolete it can be deleted.
<b>Subnet</b>	Displays the network address or alias used by clients requesting DHCP resources.
<b>Domain Name</b>	Displays the domain name or alias used with this network pool. <i>Domain Name Services</i> (DNS) convert human readable host names into IP addresses. Host names are not case sensitive and can contain alphabetic or numeric letters or a hyphen. A <i>fully qualified domain name</i> (FQDN) consists of a host name plus a domain name. For example, <i>computername.domain.com</i> .
<b>Boot File</b>	Boot files ( <i>Boot Protocol</i> ) are used to boot remote systems over the network. BOOTP messages are encapsulated inside UDP messages, so requests and replies can be forwarded. Each DHCP network pool can use a different file as needed.
<b>Lease Time</b>	If a lease time has been defined for a listed network pool, it displays in an interval from 1 - 31,622,399 seconds. DHCP leases provide addresses for defined times to various clients. If a client does not use the leased address for the defined time, that IP address can be re-assigned to another DHCP client.

- 3 Select **Add** to create a new DHCP pool, **Edit** to modify an existing pool's properties or **Delete** to remove a pool from amongst those available.

**Figure 11-17** DHCP Pools screen - Basic Settings tab

If adding or editing a DHCP pool, the DHCP Pool screen displays the **Basic Settings** tab by default. Define the required parameters for the *Basic Settings*, *Static Bindings* and *Advanced* tabs to complete the creation of the DHCP pool.

- 4 Set the following **General** parameters, or aliases, from within the **Basic Settings** tab. An alias enables an administrator to define a configuration item (such as a IP address or domain name) once, and then use this single alias across different configurable values.

DHCP Pool	
	If adding a new pool, a name is required. The pool is the range of IP addresses defined for DHCP assignment or lease. The name assigned cannot be modified as part of the edit process. However, if the network pool configuration is obsolete it can be deleted. The name cannot exceed 32 characters.

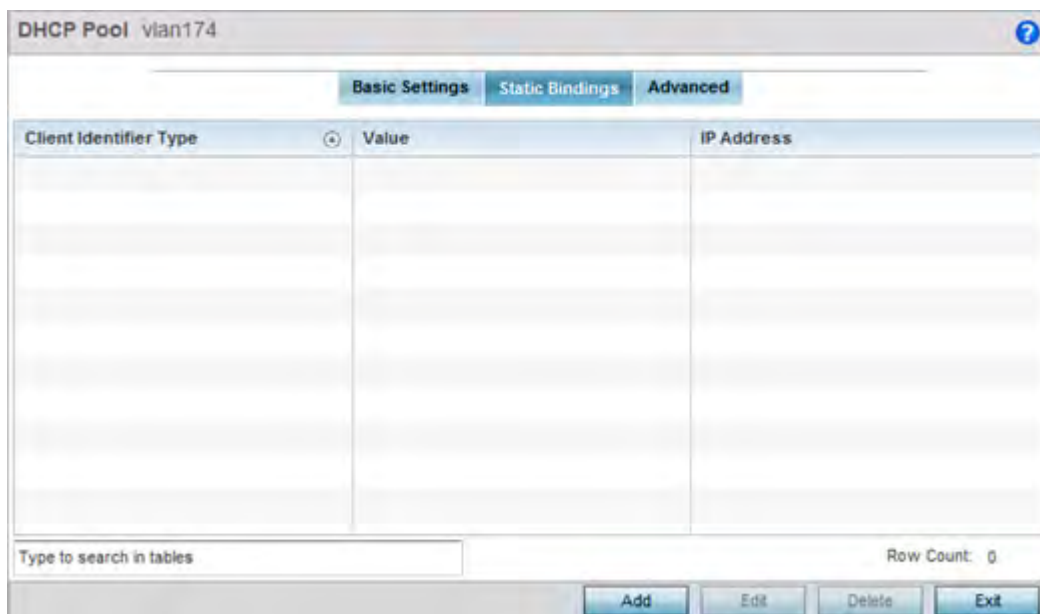
<b>Subnet</b>	Define the <i>IP address/Subnet Mask</i> or IP alias used for DHCP discovery and requests between the local DHCP server and clients. The IP address and subnet mask (or its alias) is required to match the addresses of the layer 3 interface for the addresses to be supported through that interface. If setting a subnet IP alias, ensure it begins with a dollar sign (\$) and does not exceed 32 characters. A numeric IP address is the default setting, not an alias.
<b>Domain Name</b>	Provide the domain name or domain alias used with this pool. Domain names are not case sensitive and can contain alphabetic or numeric letters or a hyphen. A <i>fully qualified domain name</i> (FQDN) consists of a host name plus a domain name. For example, <i>computername.domain.com</i> . If setting a domain name alias, ensure it begins with a dollar sign (\$) and does not exceed 32 characters. An actual domain name is the default setting, not an alias.
<b>DNS Servers</b>	Define one (or a group) of <i>Domain Name Servers</i> (DNS) to translate domain names to IP addresses. An alias can alternatively be applied for a DNS server IP address. Up to 8 IP addresses can be supported. If setting a DNS IP alias, ensure it begins with a dollar sign (\$) and does not exceed 32 characters. An actual DNS IP address is the default setting, not an alias.
<b>Lease Time</b>	DHCP leases provide addresses for defined times to various clients. If a client does not use the leased address within the defined time, that IP address can be re-assigned to another DHCP supported client. Select this option to assign a lease in either <i>Seconds</i> (1 - 31,622,399), <i>Minutes</i> (1 - 527,040), <i>Hours</i> (1 - 8,784) or <i>Days</i> (1 - 366). The default setting is enabled, with a lease time of 1 day.
<b>Default Routers</b>	After a DHCP client has booted, the client begins sending packets to its default router. Set the IP address or IP alias for one or more routers used to map host names into IP addresses for clients. Up to 8 default router IP addresses are supported. If setting a default router IP alias, ensure it begins with a dollar sign (\$) and does not exceed 32 characters. An actual router IP address is the default setting, not an alias.

- 5 Use the **IP Address Ranges** field define the range of included (starting and ending IP addresses) addresses for this particular pool.
  - a. Select the **+ Add Row** button at the bottom of the IP addresses field to add a new range. Select the radio button of an existing IP address range and select the **Delete** icon to remove it from the list of those available.
  - b. Enter a viable range of IP addresses in the **IP Start** and **IP End** columns. This is the range of addresses available for assignment to requesting clients.
  - c. Select the **Create** icon or **Edit** icon within the **Class Policy** column to display the **DHCP Server Policy** screen if a class policy is not available from the drop-down menu.
- 6 Refer to the **Excluded IP Address Range** field and select the **+Add Row** button. Add ranges of IP address to exclude from lease to requesting clients. Having ranges of unavailable addresses is a good practice to ensure IP address resources are in reserve. Select the **Delete** icon as needed to remove an excluded address range.
- 7 Select **OK** to save the updates to the DHCP Pool Basic Settings tab. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.
- 8 Select the **Static Bindings** tab from within the DHCP Pools screen.

A binding is a collection of configuration parameters, including an IP address, associated with, or *bound to*, a DHCP client. Bindings are managed by DHCP servers. DHCP bindings automatically map a device MAC address to an IP address using a pool of DHCP supplied addresses. Static bindings assign IP addresses without creating



numerous host pools with manual bindings. Static host bindings use a text file the DHCP server reads. It eliminates the need for a lengthy configuration file and reduces the space required to maintain address pools.



**Figure 11-18** DHCP Pools screen - Static Bindings tab

- 9 Review the following to determine if a static binding can be used as is, a new binding requires creation or edit, or if a binding requires deletion:

<b>Client Identifier Type</b>	Lists whether the reporting client is using a <i>hardware address</i> or <i>client identifier</i> as its identifier type within requests to the DHCP server.
<b>Value</b>	Lists the hardware address or client identifier assigned to the client when added or last modified.
<b>IP Address</b>	Displays the IP address of the client on this interface that's currently using the pool name listed.

- 10 Select **Add** to create a new static binding configuration, **Edit** to modify an existing static binding configuration or **Delete** to remove a static binding from amongst those available.

**Figure 11-19** *Static Bindings Add screen*

- 11 Set the following **General** parameters or aliases to complete the creation of the static binding configuration. An alias enables an administrator to define a configuration item (such as a IP address or domain name) once, and then use this single alias across different configurable values.

<b>IP Address</b>	Set an IP address of the client using this host pool for DHCP resources. The IP option is selected by default. Optionally select <i>Alias</i> to provide an IP alias beginning with a dollar sign (\$) and not exceeding 32 characters.
<b>Domain Name</b>	Provide a domain name of the current interface. Domain names aren't case sensitive and can contain alphabetic or numeric letters or a hyphen. A <i>fully qualified domain name</i> (FQDN) consists of a host name plus a domain name. For example, <i>computername.domain.com</i> . The Name option is selected by default. Optionally select <i>Alias</i> to provide a domain name alias beginning with a dollar sign (\$) and not exceeding 32 characters.

<b>Boot File</b>	Enter the name of the boot file used with this pool. Boot files (Boot Protocol) can be used to boot remote systems over the network. BOOTP messages are encapsulated inside UDP messages so requests and replies can be forwarded. Each DHCP network pool can use a different file as needed. The IP option is selected by default. Optionally select <i>Alias</i> to provide a boot file IP alias beginning with a dollar sign (\$) and not exceeding 32 characters.
<b>BOOTP Next Server</b>	Provide the numerical IP address or alias of the server providing BOOTP resources. BOOTP (boot protocol) requests boot remote systems within the controller or service platform managed network. BOOTP messages are encapsulated inside UDP messages and are forwarded by the controller or service platform. The IP option is selected by default. Optionally select <i>Alias</i> to provide a next BOOTP server IP alias beginning with a dollar sign (\$) and not exceeding 32 characters.
<b>Client Name</b>	Provide the name of the client requesting DHCP Server support.
<b>Enable Unicast</b>	Unicast packets are sent from one location to another location (there's just one sender, and one receiver). Select this option to forward unicast messages to just a single device within this network pool. This settings is disabled by default.

12 Define the following **NetBIOS** parameters to complete the creation of the static binding configuration:

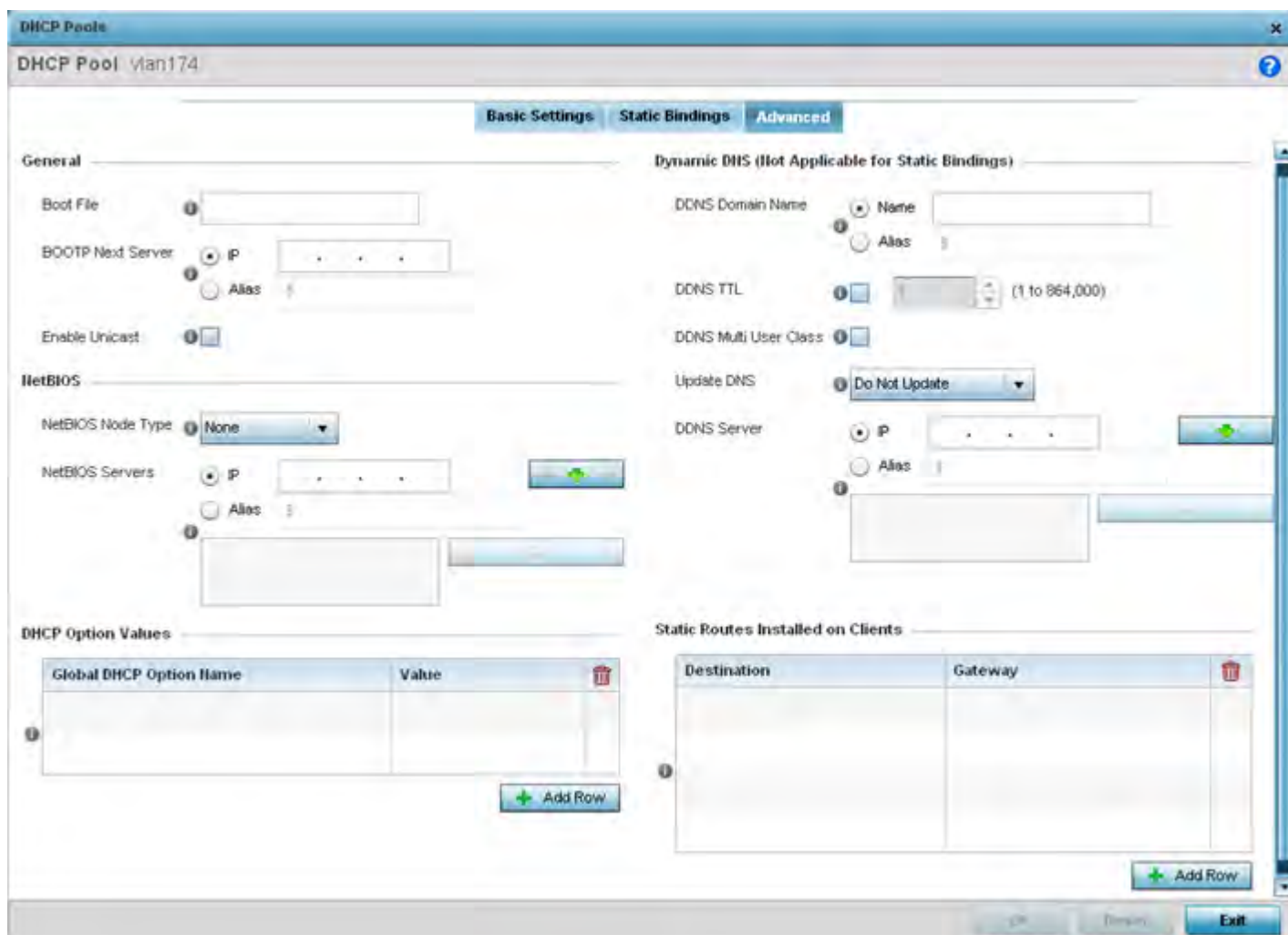
<b>NetBIOS Node Type</b>	Set the NetBios Node Type used with this particular pool. The following options are available: <i>Broadcast</i> - Uses broadcasting to query nodes on the network for the owner of a NetBIOS name. <i>Peer-to-Peer</i> - Uses directed calls to communicate with a known NetBIOS name server (such as a WINS server), for the IP address of a NetBIOS machine. <i>Mixed</i> - A mixed node using broadcasted queries to find a node, and failing that, queries a known p-node name server for the address. <i>Hybrid</i> - A combination of two or more nodes. <i>Undefined</i> - No node type is applied.
<b>NetBIOS Servers</b>	Specify a numerical IP address of a single or group of NetBIOS WINS servers available to requesting clients. A maximum of 8 server IP addresses can be assigned. The IP option is selected by default. Optionally select <i>Alias</i> to provide a NetBIOS server IP alias beginning with a dollar sign (\$) and not exceeding 32 characters.

13 Refer to the **Static Routes Installed on Clients** field to set **Destination IP** and **Gateway** addresses enabling the assignment of static IP addresses without creating numerous host pools with manual bindings. This eliminates the need for a long configuration file and reduces the space required in NVRAM to maintain address pools. Select the **+ Add Row** button to add individual destinations. Select the **Delete** icon to remove it from the list of those available.

14 Refer to the **DHCP Option Values** table to set Global DHCP options. A set of global DHCP options applies to all clients, whereas a set of subnet options applies only to the clients on a specified subnet. If you configure the same option in more than one set of options, the precedence of the option type decides which the DHCP server supports a client.

- a. Select the **+ Add Row** button to add individual options. Assign each a **Global DHCP Option Name** to help differentiate it from others with similar configurations. Select the radio button of an existing option and select the **- Delete** button to remove it from the list of those available.

- b. Assign a **Value** to each option with codes from 1 - 254. A vendor-specific option definition only applies to the vendor class for which it is defined.
- 15 Within the **Network** field, define one or group of **DNS Servers** and **Default Routers** to translate domain names to IP addresses. Up to 8 IP addresses can be provided. The IP option is selected by default for both DNS Servers and Default Routers. Optionally select *Alias* to provide an IP alias beginning with a dollar sign (\$) and not exceeding 32 characters.
- 16 Select **OK** when completed to update the static bindings configuration. Select **Reset** to revert the screen back to its last saved configuration.
- 17 Select the **Advanced** tab to define additional NetBIOS and Dynamic DNS parameters.



**Figure 11-20** DHCP Pools screen - Advanced tab

- 18 The addition or edit of the DHCP pool's advanced settings requires the following **General** parameters be set:

<b>Boot File</b>	Enter the name of the boot file used with this pool. Boot files (Boot Protocol) can be used to boot remote systems over the network. BOOTP messages are encapsulated inside UDP messages so requests and replies can be forwarded. Each pool can use a different file as needed.
------------------	--

<b>BOOTP Next Server</b>	Provide the numerical IP address or alias of the server providing BOOTP resources. BOOTP (boot protocol) requests boot remote systems within the controller or service platform managed network. BOOTP messages are encapsulated inside UDP messages and are forwarded by the controller or service platform. The IP option is selected by default. Optionally select <i>Alias</i> to provide a next BOOTP server IP alias beginning with a dollar sign (\$) and not exceeding 32 characters.
<b>Enable Unicast</b>	Unicast packets are sent from one location to another location (there's just one sender, and one receiver). Select this option to forward unicast messages to just a single device within the network pool. This setting is disabled by default.

19 Set the following **NetBIOS** parameters for the network pool:

<b>NetBIOS Node Type</b>	Set the NetBIOS Node Type used with this pool. The following types are available: <i>Broadcast</i> - Uses broadcasting to query nodes on the network for the owner of a NetBIOS name. <i>Peer-to-Peer</i> - Uses directed calls to communicate with a known NetBIOS name server, such as a WINS server, for the IP address of a NetBIOS machine. <i>Mixed</i> - Mixed uses broadcasted queries to find a node, and failing that, queries a known p-node name server for the address. <i>Hybrid</i> - Is a combination of two or more nodes. <i>Undefined</i> - No NetBIOS Node Type is used.
<b>NetBIOS Servers</b>	Specify a numerical IP address of a single or group of NetBIOS WINS servers. A maximum of 8 server IP addresses can be assigned. The IP option is selected by default. Optionally select <i>Alias</i> to provide a NetBIOS server IP alias beginning with a dollar sign (\$) and not exceeding 32 characters.

20 Refer to the **DHCP Option Values** table to set global DHCP options applicable to all clients, whereas a set of subnet options applies to just the clients on a specified subnet.

- Select the **+ Add Row** button to add individual options. Assign each a **Global DHCP Option Name** to help differentiate it from others with similar configurations. Select the radio button of an existing option and select **Delete** to remove it from the list.
- Assign a **Value** to each option from 1 - 254. A vendor-specific option definition only applies to the vendor class for which it's defined.

21 Define the following set of **Dynamic DNS (Not Applicable for Static Bindings)** parameters used with the network pool configuration. Using DDNS controllers and service platforms can instruct a DNS server to change, in real time (ad-hoc) the active DNS configuration of its configured hostnames, addresses or other information stored in DNS.

<b>DDNS Domain Name</b>	Enter a domain name for DDNS updates representing the forward zone in the DNS server. For example, <i>test.net</i> . The <i>Name</i> option is selected by default. Optionally select <i>Alias</i> to provide a DDNS domain name alias beginning with a dollar sign (\$) and not exceeding 32 characters.
<b>DDNS TTL</b>	Select this option to set a TTL (Time to Live) to specify the validity of DDNS records. The maximum value configurable is 864000 seconds.
<b>DDNS Multi User Class</b>	Select the check box to associate the user class option names with a multiple user class. This allows the user class to transmit multiple option values to DHCP servers supporting multiple user class options.

<b>Update DNS</b>	Set if DNS is updated from a client or a server. Select either <i>Do Not Update</i> , <i>Update from Server</i> or <i>Update from Client</i> . The default setting is Do Not Update, implying that no DNS updates occur at all.
<b>DDNS Server</b>	Specify a numerical IP address of one or two DDNS servers. <i>Dynamic DNS</i> (DDNS) prompts a computer or network to obtain a new IP address lease and dynamically associate a hostname with that address, without having to manually enter the change every time. Since there are situations where an IP address can change, it helps to have a way of automatically updating hostnames that point to the new address every time. The IP option is selected by default. Optionally select <i>Alias</i> to provide a DDNS server IP alias beginning with a dollar sign (\$) and not exceeding 32 characters.

22 Click the **+ Add Row** button and enter a **Destination** and **Gateway** IP Address to add **Static Routes Installed on Clients**.

23 Select **OK** to save the updates to the DHCP pool's Advanced settings. Select **Reset** to revert the screen back to its last saved configuration.

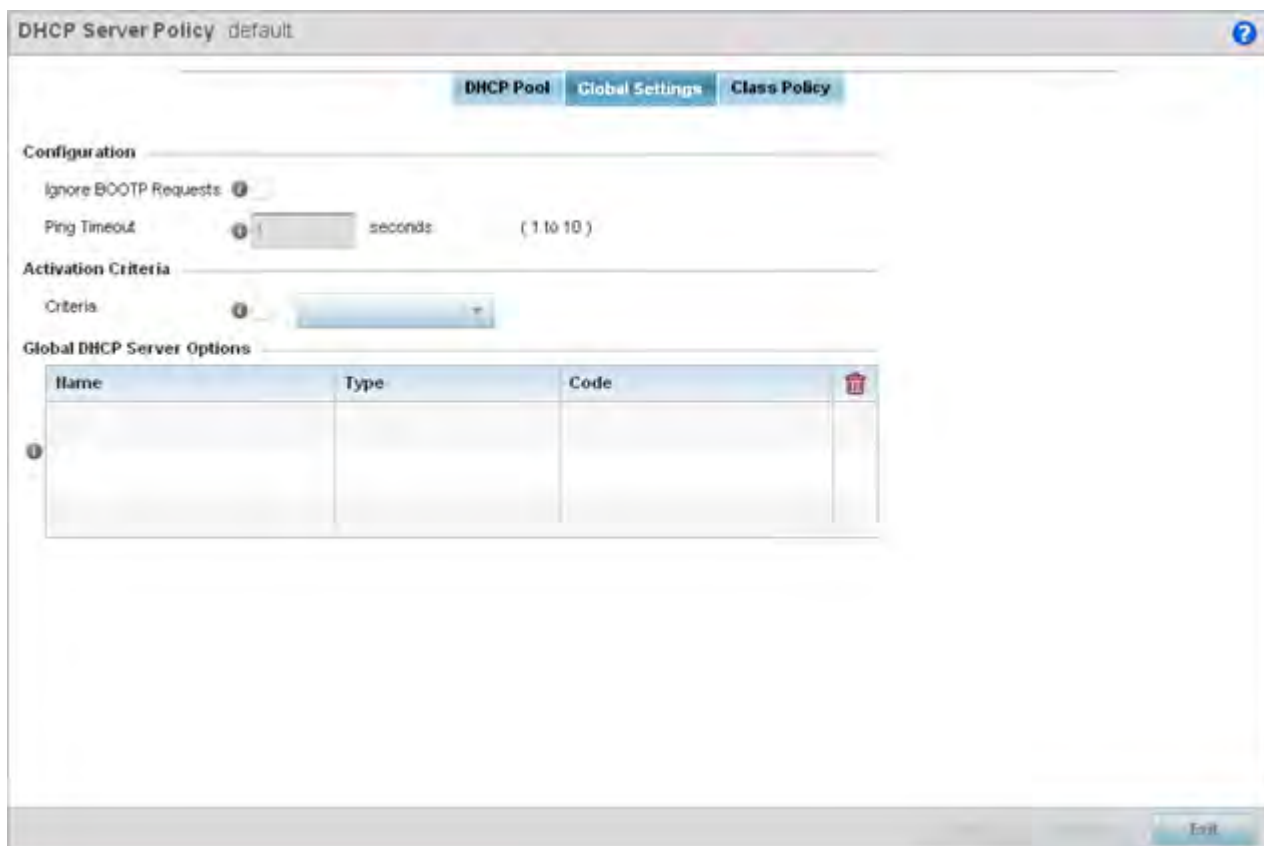
### 11.3.2 Defining DHCP Server Global Settings

#### ► *Setting the DHCP Configuration*

Set a DHCP server global configuration by defining whether BOOTP requests are ignored and DHCP global server options.

To define DHCP server global settings:

- 1 Select **DHCP Server Policy** from within Services menu pane. **Add** or **Edit** an existing policy.
- 2 Select the **Global Settings** tab.



**Figure 11-21** DHCP Server Policy screen - Global Settings tab

- 3 Set the following parameters within the **Configuration** field:

<b>Ignore BOOTP Requests</b>	Select the checkbox to ignore BOOTP requests. BOOTP (boot protocol) requests boot remote systems within the network. BOOTP messages are encapsulated inside UDP messages and forwarded. This feature is disabled by default, so unless selected, BOOTP requests are forwarded.
<b>Ping Timeout</b>	Set an interval (from 1 -10 seconds) for the DHCP server ping timeout. The timeout is the intermittent ping and discover interval to discern whether a client requested IP address is already used.

- 4 Set the following **Activation Criteria** for the DHCP server policy:

<b>Criteria</b>	Select the <i>Criteria</i> option to invoke a drop-down menu to determine when the DHCP daemon is invoked. Options include <i>vrrp-master</i> , <i>cluster-master</i> , and <i>rf-domain-manager</i> . A VRRP master responds to ARP requests, forwards packets with a destination link MAC layer address equal to the virtual router MAC layer address, rejects packets addressed to the IP associated with the virtual router and accepts packets addressed to the IP associated with the virtual router. The solitary cluster master is the cluster member elected, using a priority assignment scheme, to provide management configuration and Smart RF data to other cluster members. Cluster requests go through the elected master before dissemination to other cluster members. The RF Domain manager is the elected member of the RF Domain capable of storing and provisioning configuration and firmware images for other members of the RF Domain.
-----------------	---



- 5 Refer to the **Global DHCP Server Options** field.
  - a. Use the **+ Add Row** button at the bottom of the field to add a new global DHCP server option. Select the radio button of an existing global DHCP server option and select the **Delete** icon to remove it from the list of those available.
  - b. Use the **Type** drop-down menu to specify whether the DHCP option is being defined as a numerical IP address or ASCII or Hex string. Highlight an entry from within the Global Options screen and click the **Remove** button to delete the name and value.
- 6 Select **OK** to save the updates to the DHCP server global settings. Select **Reset** to revert the screen back to its last saved configuration.

### 11.3.3 DHCP Class Policy Configuration

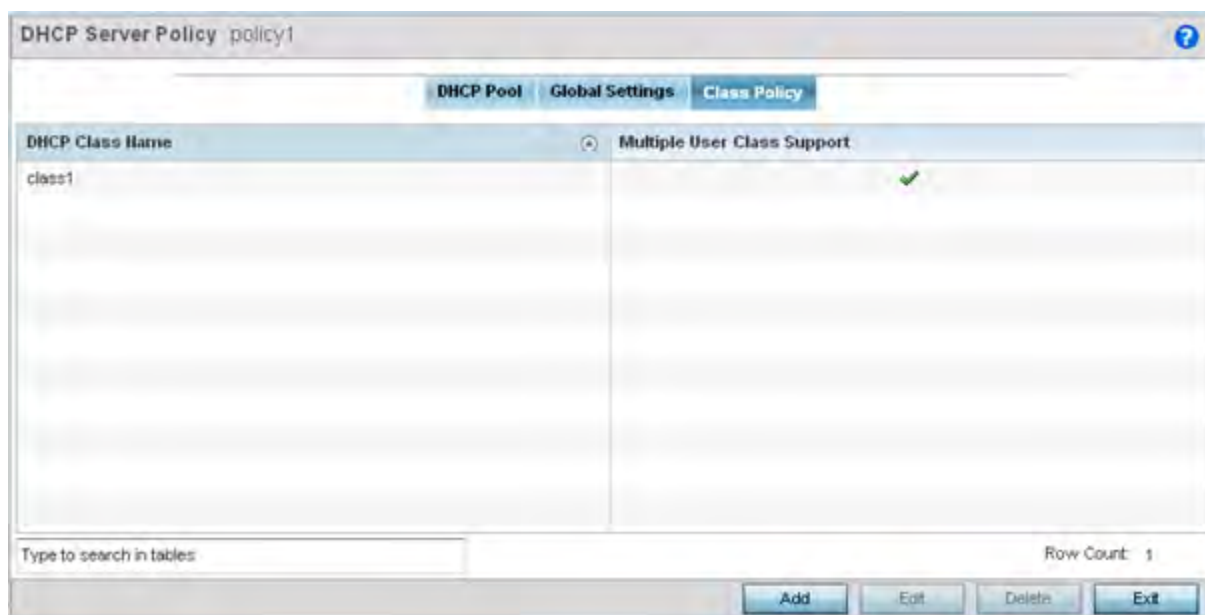
#### ▶ *Setting the DHCP Configuration*

The local DHCP server assigns IP addresses to DHCP enabled wireless clients based on user class option names. Clients with a defined set of user class option names are identified by their user class name. The DHCP server can assign IP addresses from as many IP address ranges as defined by the administrator. The DHCP user class associates a particular range of IP addresses to a device in such a way that all devices of that type are assigned IP addresses from the defined range.

Refer to the **DHCP Class Policy** screen to review existing DHCP class names and their current multiple user class designations. Multiple user class options enable a user class to transmit option values to DHCP servers supporting multiple user class options. Either add a new class policy, edit the configuration of an existing policy or permanently delete a policy as required.

To review DHCP class policies:

- 1 Select **DHCP Server Policy** from within Services menu pane. **Add** or **Edit** an existing policy.
- 2 Select the **Class Policy** tab.



**Figure 11-22** DHCP Server Policy screen - Class Policy tab

- 3 Refer to the following to determine whether a new class policy requires creation, an existing class policy requires edit or an existing policy requires deletion:

<b>DHCP Class Name</b>	Displays client names grouped by the class name assigned when the class policy was created.
<b>Multiple User Class Support</b>	A green check mark in this column defines multiple user class support as enabled from the listed DHCP class name. A red "X" defines multiple user class support as disabled. Multiple user class support can be <i>enabled/disabled</i> for existing class names by editing the class name's configuration.

- 4 Select **Add** to create a new DHCP class policy, **Edit** to update an existing policy or **Delete** to remove an existing policy.

The screenshot shows a configuration window for a DHCP class. The title bar reads 'DHCP Class' with a close button. Below the title bar, the 'DHCP Class Name' is set to 'class 3'. The main area is titled 'Settings' and contains a 'User Class' section. This section includes a table with the following data:

Option	Value
Option 1	101
Option 2	
Option 3	
Option 4	
Option 5	
Option 6	
Option 7	
Option 8	

Below the table, there is a 'Multiple User Class Support' checkbox, which is currently unchecked. At the bottom of the window, there are three buttons: 'OK', 'Reset', and 'Exit'.

**Figure 11-23** DHCP Class Name Add screen

- 5 If adding a new **DHCP Class Name**, assign a name representative of the device class supported. The DHCP user class name should not exceed 32 characters.
- 6 Select a row within the **Value** column to enter a 32 character maximum value string.
- 7 Select the **Multiple User Class** check box to enable multiple option values for the user class. This allows the user class to transmit multiple option values to DHCP servers supporting multiple user class options.
- 8 Select **OK** to save the updates to this DHCP class policy. Select **Reset** to revert the screen back to its last saved configuration.

### 11.3.4 DHCP Deployment Considerations

#### ► *Setting the DHCP Configuration*

Before defining an internal DHCP server configuration, refer to the following deployment guidelines to ensure the configuration is optimally effective:

- DHCP option 189 is required when AP650 Access Points are deployed over a layer 3 network and require layer 3 adoption. DHCP services are not required for AP650 Access Points connected to a VLAN that's local to the controller or service platform.
- DHCP's lack of an authentication mechanism means a DHCP server cannot check if a client or user is authorized to use a given user class. This introduces a vulnerability when using user class options. For example, if a user class is used to assign a special parameter (for example, a database server), there is no way to authenticate a client and it's impossible to check if a client is authorized to use this parameter.
- Ensure traffic can pass on UDP ports 67 and 68 for clients receiving DHCP information.

## 11.4 Setting the Bonjour Gateway Configuration

---

### ► *Services*

Bonjour is Apple's zero-configuration networking (Zeroconf) implementation. Zeroconf is a group of technologies that include service discovery, address assignment and hostname resolution. Bonjour locates the devices (printers, computers etc.) and services these computers provide over a local network.

Bonjour provides a method to discover services on a *local area network* (LAN). Bonjour allows users to set up a network without any configuration. Services such as printers, scanners and file-sharing servers can be found using Bonjour. Bonjour only works within a single broadcast domain. However, with a special DNS configuration, it can be extended to find services across broadcast domains.



**NOTE:** Up to eight (8) Bonjour discovery policies can be configured.

---

---

The following options can be configured:

- [Configuring a Bonjour Discovery Policy](#)
- [Configuring a Bonjour Forwarding Policy](#)

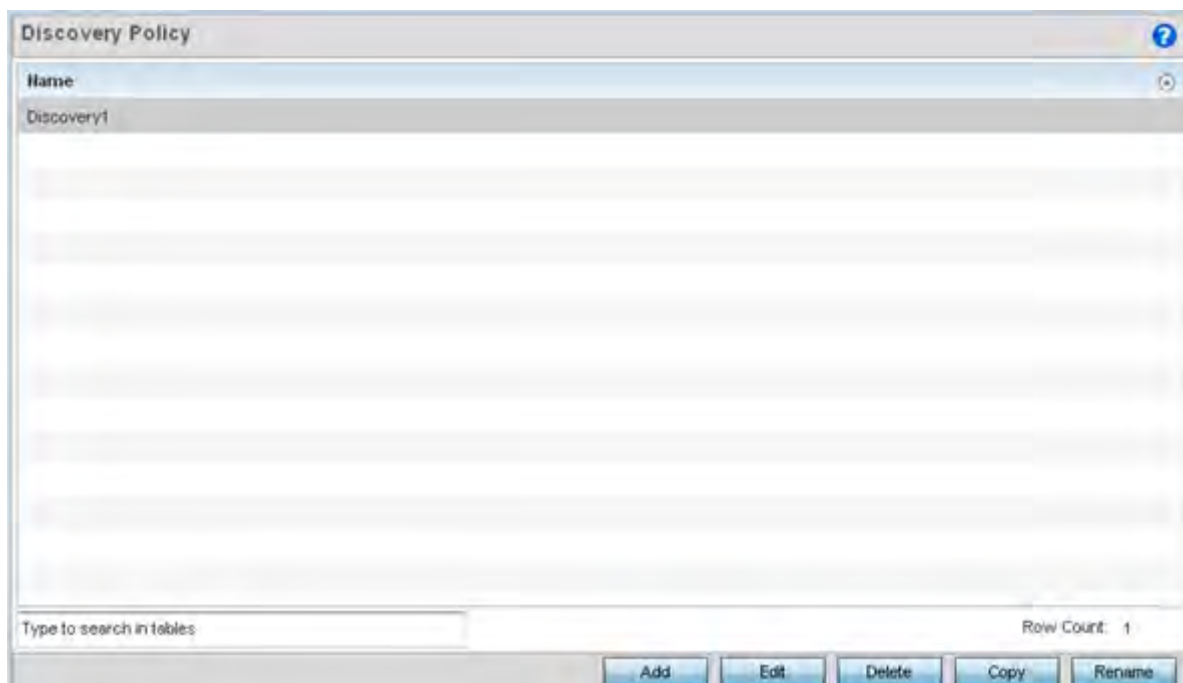
### 11.4.1 Configuring a Bonjour Discovery Policy

#### ► *Setting the Bonjour Gateway Configuration*

The Bonjour discovery policy configures how Bonjour services are located. It configures the VLANs on which these services can be found.

To display Bonjour discovery policy information:

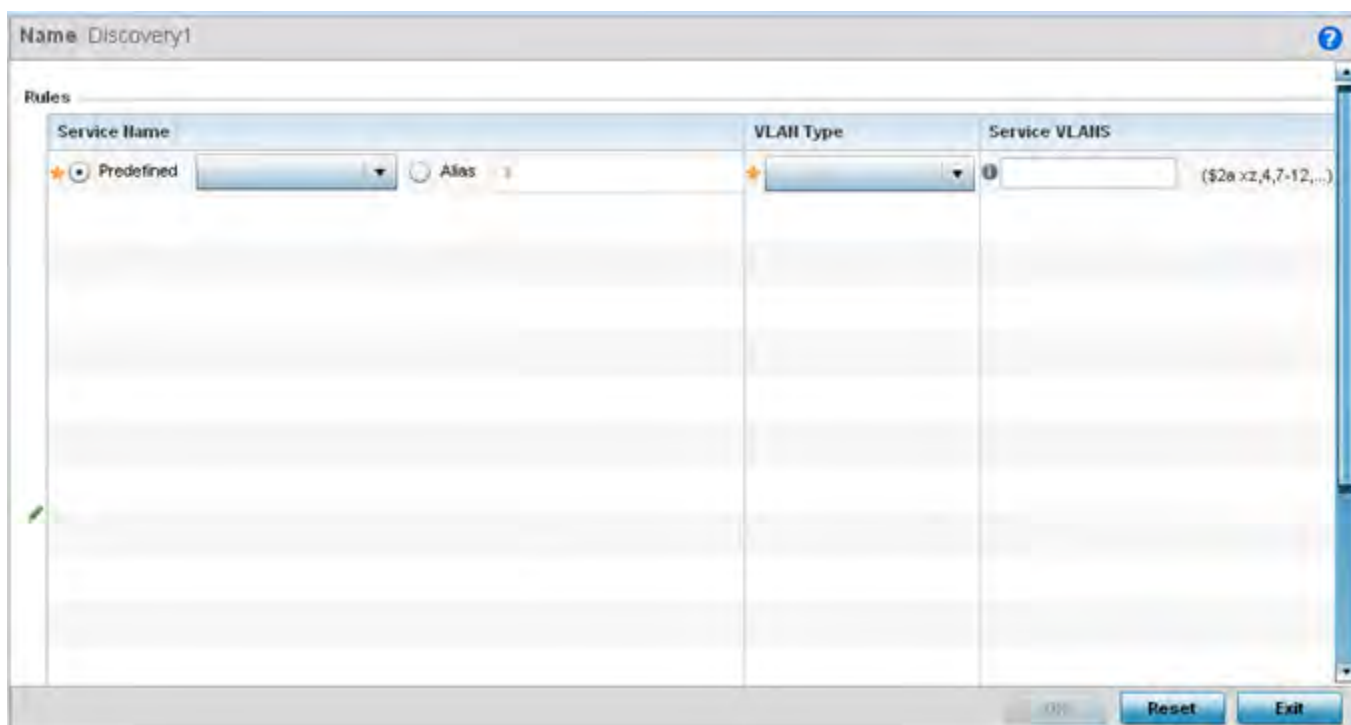
- 1 Select **Configuration**.
- 2 Select **Services**.
- 3 Select **Bonjour Gateway** to expand its submenu.
- 4 Select **Discovery Policy**.



**Figure 11-24** Bonjour - Discovery Policy screen

The **Discovery Policy** screen displays the name of the configured Bonjour discovery policies.

- 5 Select an existing policy and select **Edit** to modify its configuration or select **Add** to create a new configuration. Optionally **Rename** a policy or **Copy** a policy to a different location.



**Figure 11-25** Bonjour - Discovery Policy - Add/Edit Policy screen

- 6 Select the **+ Add Row** button to add a rule configuration. These are the services discoverable by the Bonjour gateway.

7 Set the following discovery attributes for the discovery policy configuration:

<b>Service Name</b>	Define the service that can be discovered by the Bonjour gateway. <i>Predefined</i> – Use the drop-down menu to select from a list of predefined Apple services ( <i>Scanner, Printer, HomeSharing</i> etc.). <i>Alias</i> – Use an existing alias to define a service not available in the predefined list.
<b>VLAN Type</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the VLAN type. <i>Local</i> – Indicates the VLAN(s) defined in <i>Service VLAN</i> field uses a local bridging mode. <i>tunneled</i> – Indicates the VLAN(s) defined in <i>Service VLAN</i> field are shared tunnel VLANs.
<b>Service VLANs</b>	Provide a VLAN or a list of VLANs on which the selected service is discoverable.
<b>Instance Name</b>	Optionally, specify the selected Bonjour service's instance name. When specified, the Bonjour service discovery queries contain the instance name of the service to be discovered. You can either directly specify the string value to be used as a match criteria, or use a string alias (for example, \$BONJOUR-STRING) to identify the string to match. If using a string alias, ensure that it is existing and configured. For information on configuring a string alias, see <a href="#">Network Basic Alias on page 7-48</a> .  This option is useful especially in large distributed, enterprise networks. Use it to create different instances of a Bonjour service for the different organizations or departments (VLANs) within your network. Creating instances allows you to advertise specific service instances for a specific set of VLANs, instead of advertising top-level Bonjour Services to various allocated VLAN(s).

8 Select **OK** to save the updates to this Bonjour Discovery Policy. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 11.4.2 Configuring a Bonjour Forwarding Policy

### ► [Setting the Bonjour Gateway Configuration](#)

A Bonjour forwarding policy enables the discovery of services on VLANs not visible to the device running the Bonjour Gateway. Bonjour forwarding enables the forwarding of Bonjour advertisements across VLANs to enable the Bonjour gateway to build a list of services and VLANs where services are available.



**NOTE:** Only one (1) Bonjour forwarding policy is configurable.



**NOTE:** There must be Layer 2 connectivity between devices for forwarding to work.

---

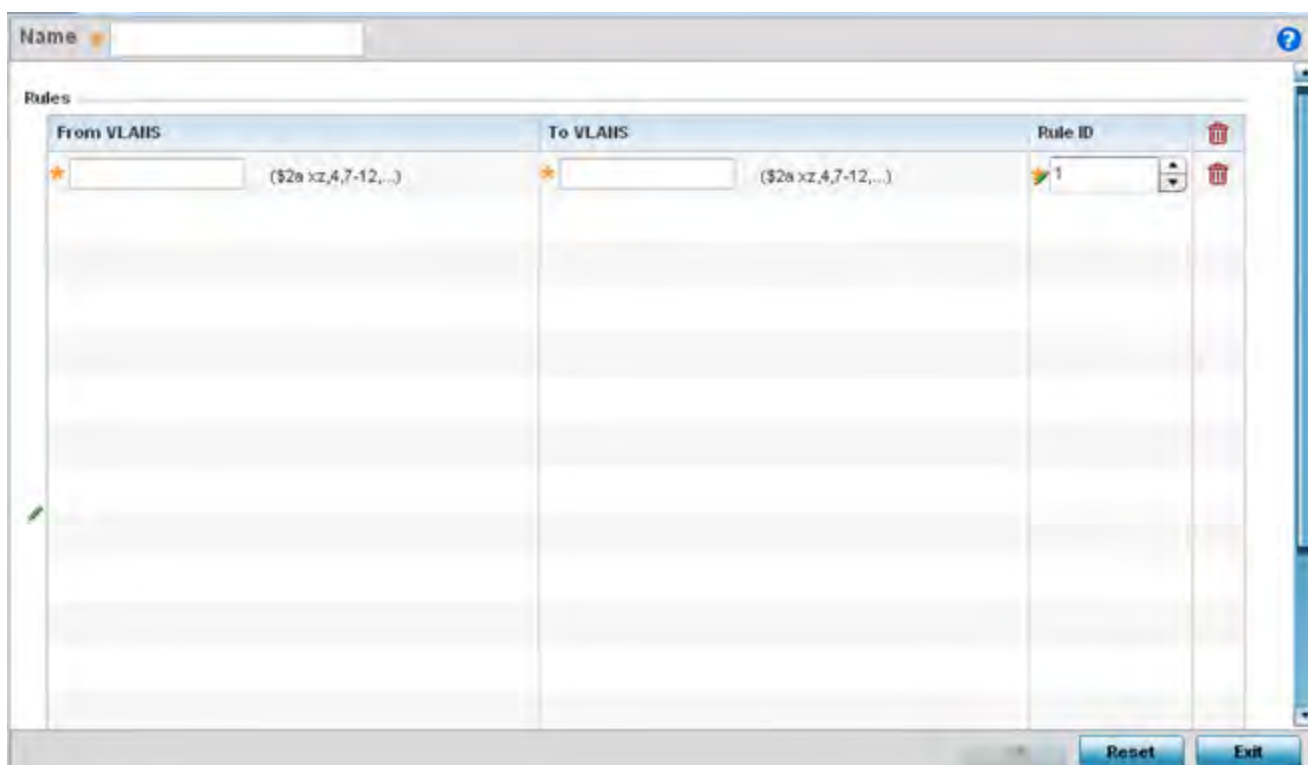


---

To display Bonjour forwarding policy information:

- 1 Select **Configuration**.
- 2 Select **Services**.
- 3 Select **Bonjour Gateway** to expand its submenu.





**Figure 11-27** Bonjour Gateway - Forwarding Policy - Add screen

- 6 Select the **+ Add Row** button to add a forwarding rule to the Bonjour Forwarding Policy. Advertisements from VLANs that contain services are forwarded to VLANs containing clients.

<b>From VLANs</b>	<i>From VLANs</i> are virtual interfaces where the Apple services are available. Enter a VLAN ID or a range of VLANs. Aliases can also be used.
<b>To VLANs</b>	<i>To VLANs</i> are virtual interfaces where clients for the services are available. Enter a VLAN ID or a range of VLANs. Aliases can also be used.
<b>Rule ID</b>	Use the spinner to set a unique rule ID (from 1 - 16) for this rule. This acts as numerical differentiator from other indexes.

- 7 Select **OK** to save the updates to this Bonjour Gateway Forwarding policy. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 11.5 DHCPv6 Server Policy

### ► Services

DHCPv6 is a networking protocol for configuring IPv6 hosts with IP addresses, IP prefixes or other configuration attributes required on an IPv6 network.

DHCPv6 servers pass IPv6 network addresses to IPv6 clients. The DHCPv6 address assignment feature manages non-duplicate addresses in the correct prefix based on the network where the host is connected. Assigned addresses can be from one or multiple pools. Additional options, such as the default domain and DNS name-server



address, can be passed back to the client. Address pools can be assigned for use on a specific interface or on multiple interfaces, or the server can automatically find the appropriate pool.



**NOTE:** DHCPv6 server updates are only implemented when the controller, service platform or service platform is restarted.

Refer to the following for more information on configuring the DHCPv6 Server Policy parameters:

- [Defining DHCPv6 Options](#)
- [DHCPv6 Pool Configuration](#)

To access and review the local DHCPv6 server configuration:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Services > DHCPv6 Server Policy**.

The **DHCPv6 Server Policy** screen displays.

DHCPv6 Server Policy Name	Restrict Vendor Options	Server Preference
pool1	✓	1

**Figure 11-28** DHCPv6 Server Policy screen

- 2 Review the following DHCPv6 server configurations (at a high level) to determine whether a new server policy requires creation, an existing policy requires modification or an existing policy requires deletion:

<b>DHCPv6 Server Policy Name</b>	Lists the name assigned to each DHCPv6 server policy when it was initially created. The name assigned to a DHCPv6 server policy cannot be modified as part of the policy edit process. However, obsolete policies can be deleted, copied (archived) or renamed as needed.
<b>Restrict Vendor Options</b>	A green checkmark within this column means this policy has been set to restrict vendor DHCP options. A red "X" defines the policy as accepting all DHCP vendor options. Vendor specific DHCPv6 options are only applicable to the vendor class defined.
<b>Server Preference</b>	Lists the server preference (from 0 - 255) specified for each DHCPv6 server policy. The default value is 0.

- 3 Select **Add** to create a new DHCPv6 server policy, choose an existing policy and select the **Edit** button to modify the policy's properties or choose an existing policy and select **Delete** to remove the policy from those available. Adding or Editing a DHCP server policy displays the **DHCPv6 Server Policy Name** screen by default. Optionally **Rename** or **Copy** a policy to a different location.

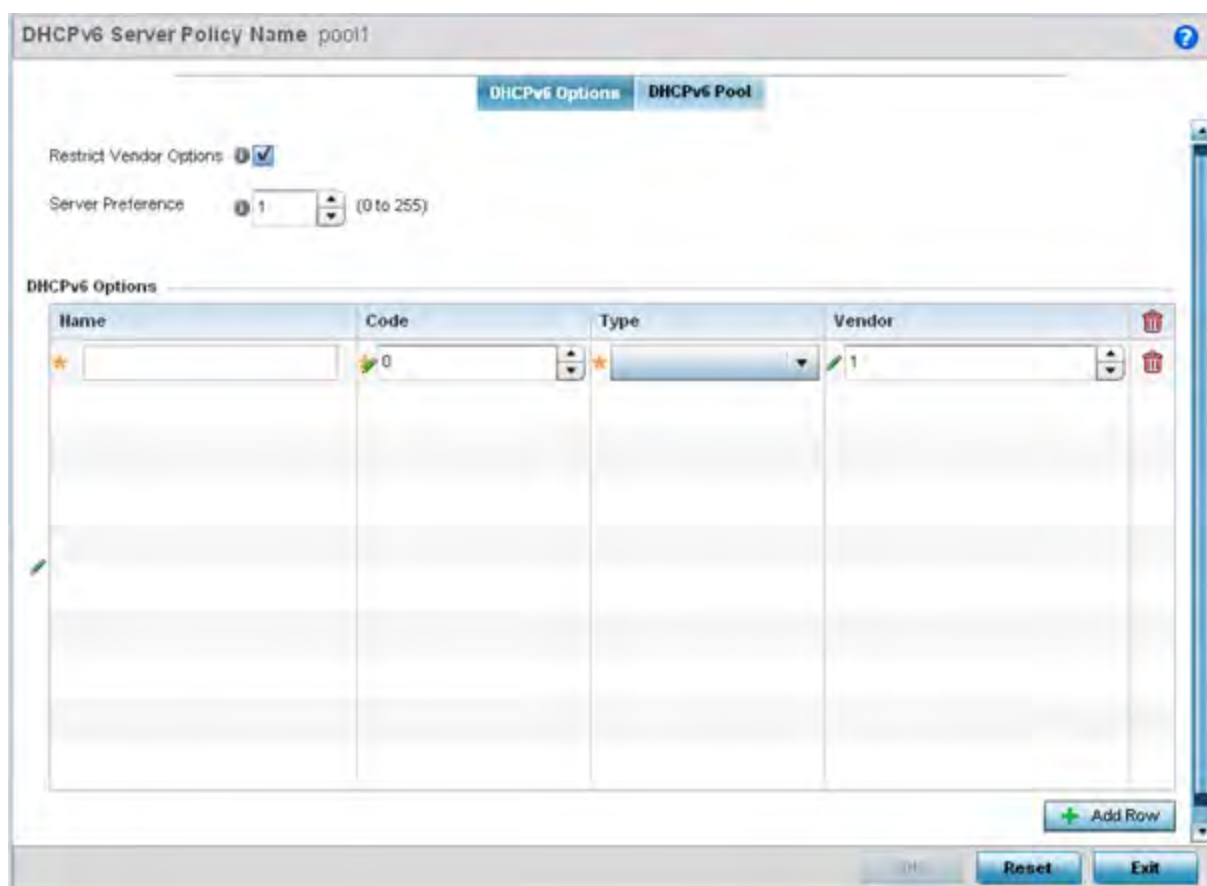
## 11.5.1 Defining DHCPv6 Options

### ▶ DHCPv6 Server Policy

DHCPv6 services are available for specific IP interfaces. A pool (or range) of IPv6 network addresses and DHCPv6 options can be created for each IPv6 interface defined. This range of addresses can be made available to DHCPv6 enabled devices on either a permanent or leased basis. DHCPv6 options are provided to each client with a DHCPv6 response and provide DHCPv6 clients information required to access network resources (default gateway, domain name, DNS server and WINS server configuration). An option exists to identify the vendor and functionality of a DHCPv6 client. The information is a variable-length string of characters (or octets) with a meaning specified by the vendor of the DHCPv6 client.

To set DHCPv6 options:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Services > DHCPv6 Server Policy**.
- 2 Select **Add** to create a new policy or **Edit** to modify the policy's properties of a selected DHCPv6 server policy. Select **+ Add Row** to populate the screen with editable rows for DHCPv6 option configuration.



**Figure 11-29** DHCP v6Server Policy - DHCPv6 Options tab

- 3 Select **Restrict Vendor Options** to restrict the use of vendor specific DHCPv6 options. This limits the use of vendor specific DHCP options in this specific DHCPv6 policy.
- 4 Use the spinner control to select a DHCPv6 **Server Preference** from 0 - 255. The default value is 0.

- 5 Set the following **DHCPv6 Option** configuration parameters:

<b>Name</b>	Enter a name to associate with the new DHCP option. This name should describe the new option's function.
<b>Code</b>	Use the spinner control to specify a DHCP option code (from 0 - 254) for the option. Only one code for each DHCPv6 option of the same value can be used in each DHCPv6 server policy.
<b>Type</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the DHCP option type for the new option. The option can be either <i>ASCII</i> , which sends an ASCII compliant string to the client, <i>ipv6</i> which sends an IPv6 compatible address to the client or <i>Hex String</i> which sends a hexadecimal string to the client.
<b>Vendor</b>	Use the spinner control to specify the numeric Vendor ID for the new option. Each vendor should have a unique vendor ID used by the DHCPv6 server to issue vendor specific DHCP options.

- 6 Select **OK** to save the updates to the DHCPv6 options. Select **Reset** to revert the screen back to its last saved configuration.

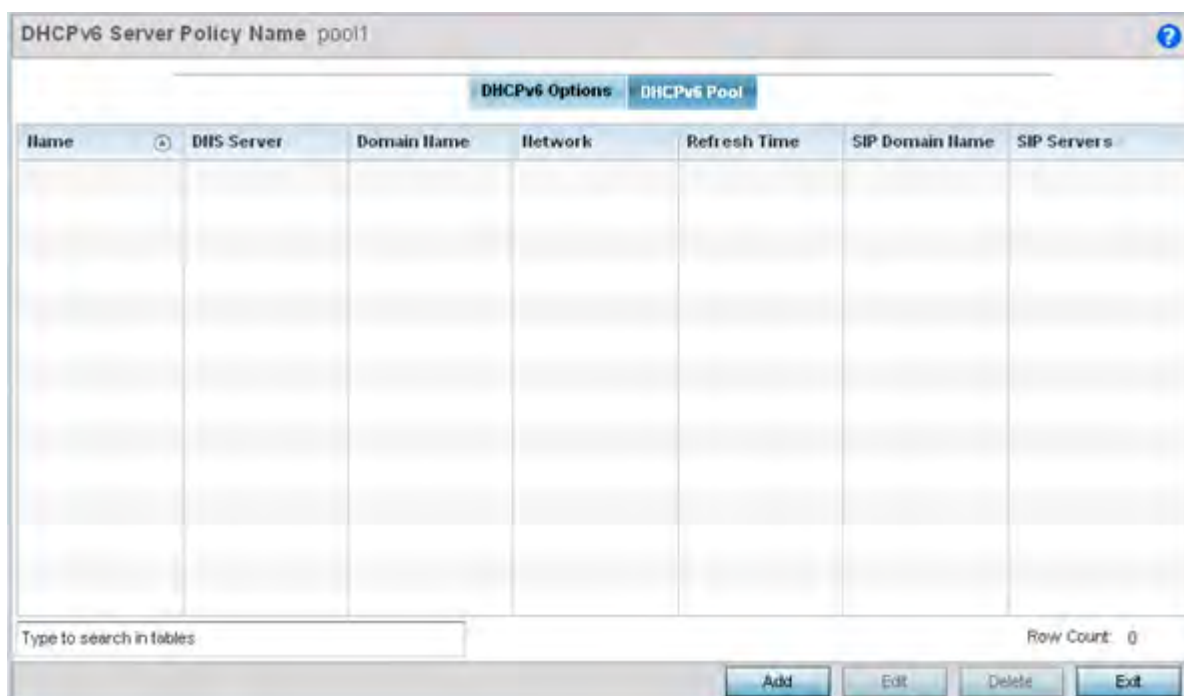
## 11.5.2 DHCPv6 Pool Configuration

### ► *DHCPv6 Server Policy*

A DHCPv6 pool includes information about available configuration parameters and policies controlling the assignment of the parameters to requesting clients from the pool.

To create a DHCPv6 pool configuration:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Services > DHCPv6 Server Policy**. The **DHCPv6 Options** tab displays by default.
- 2 Select **Add** to create a new policy or **Edit** to modify the policy's properties of a selected DHCPv6 server policy. Select **+ Add Row** to populate the screen with editable rows for DHCPv6 option configuration.
- 3 Select the **DHCPv6 Pool** tab.



**Figure 11-30** DHCP Server Policy - DHCPv6 Pool tab

- 4 Set the following parameters within the **Configuration** field:

<b>Name</b>	Lists the administrator assigned name of the IPv6 pool resource from which IPv6 formatted addresses can be issued to DHCPv6 client requests. IPv6 addresses are composed of eight groups of four hexadecimal digits separated by colons.
<b>DNS Server</b>	Displays the address of the DNS server resource utilized with the DHCPv6 pool.
<b>Domain Name</b>	Displays the hostname of the domain associated with the DHCPv6 pool.
<b>Network</b>	Displays the IPv6 formatted address and mask utilized with the DHCPv6 address pool. The address can be configured in the add or edit screen.
<b>Refresh Time</b>	Displays the time, in seconds, between refreshes of the DHCPv6 address pool.
<b>SIP Domain Name</b>	Displays the domain name associated with the <i>Session Initiation Protocol</i> (SIP) server which is used to prioritize voice and video traffic on a network. SIP is an application-layer control protocol that can establish, modify and terminate multimedia sessions or calls. A SIP system has several components (user agents, proxy servers, redirect servers, and registrars). User agents can contain SIP clients; proxy servers always contain SIP clients.
<b>SIP Servers</b>	Displays the IPv6 formatted address of the SIP server associated with the DHCP pool.

- 5 Select **Add** to create a new DHCPv6 pool configuration or **Edit** to modify the policy's properties of a selected DHCPv6 pool. **Delete** obsolete policies as warranted.

The screenshot shows the 'DHCPv6 Pools' configuration window. The 'General' tab is active, displaying several configuration fields:

- Name:** A text input field for the pool name.
- DNS Server:** A text input field for the IPv6 address of the DNS server.
- Domain Name:** A text input field for the domain name(s).
- Network:** A text input field for the IPv6 address and mask.
- Refresh Time:** A spinner control set to 600, with a range of (600 to 4,294,967,295).
- SIP Domain Name:** A text input field for SIP domain names.
- SIP Servers:** A text input field for IPv6 addresses of SIP servers.

At the bottom of the window are 'Reset' and 'Exit' buttons.

**Figure 11-31** DHCP Server Policy - DHCPv6 Pool - Add/Edit screen

6 Set the following **General** DHCPv6 pool parameters:

<b>Name</b>	Provide as administrator assigned name for the IPv6 pool resource from which IPv6 formatted addresses can be issued to DHCPv6 client requests. IPv6 addresses are composed of eight groups of four hexadecimal digits separated by colons.
<b>DNS Server</b>	Enter the IPv6 formatted address of the DNS server utilized by the DHCP pool.
<b>Domain Name</b>	Enter the hostname or hostnames of the domain(s) utilized with the DHCP pool. A hostname cannot contain an underscore.
<b>Network</b>	Enter the IPv6 formatted address and mask associated with the DHCPv6 pool.
<b>Refresh Time</b>	Use the spinner control to set the time, in seconds, between refreshes of the DHCPv6 address pool. The refresh time can be set from 600 - 4,294,967,295 seconds.
<b>SIP Domain Name</b>	Configure the domain name or domain names associated with the <i>Session Initiation Protocol</i> (SIP) servers used to prioritize voice and video traffic on a network. SIP is an application-layer control protocol that can establish, modify and terminate multimedia sessions or calls. A SIP system has several components (user agents, proxy servers, redirect servers, and registrars). User agents can contain SIP clients; proxy servers always contain SIP clients.
<b>SIP Servers</b>	Configure the IPv6 formatted address or addresses of the SIP servers associated with the DHCP pool.

- 7 If using DHCPv6 options in the pool, set the following within the **DHCPv6 Options Value** table

<b>Name</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select an existing DHCP option name from the existing options configured in DHCPv6 Options. If no suitable option is available click the create button to define a new option.
<b>Value</b>	Enter or modify the numeric ID setting for the selected DHCP option.

- 8 Click **OK** to save the changes. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 11.6 Setting the RADIUS Configuration

### ► Services

*Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service* (RADIUS) is a client/server protocol and software enabling remote access servers to authenticate users and authorize their access. RADIUS is a distributed client/server system that secures networks against unauthorized access. RADIUS clients send authentication requests to the local RADIUS server containing user authentication and network service access information.

RADIUS enables centralized management of authentication data (usernames and passwords). When a client attempts to associate to the RADIUS supported controller or service platform, authentication requests are sent to the RADIUS server. Authentication and encryption takes place through the use of a shared secret password (not transmitted over the network).

The local RADIUS server stores the user database locally, and can optionally use a remote user database. It ensures higher accounting performance. It allows the configuration of multiple users, and assign policies for the group authorization.

The local enforcement of user-based policies is configurable. User policies include dynamic VLAN assignment and access restrictions based on time of day. A certificate is required for EAP TTLS, PEAP and TLS RADIUS authentication (configured with the RADIUS service).

Dynamic VLAN assignment is achieved based on the RADIUS server response. A user who associates to WLAN1 (mapped to VLAN1) can be assigned a different VLAN after authentication with the RADIUS server. This dynamic VLAN assignment overrides the WLAN's VLAN ID to which the user associates.

To view RADIUS configurations:

- 1 Select **Configuration** tab from the main menu.
- 2 Select the **Services** tab from the **Configuration** menu.

The upper, left-hand side pane of the User interface displays the **RADIUS** option. The **RADIUS Group** screen displays (by default).

For information on creating the groups, user pools and server policies needed to validate user credentials against a server policy configuration, refer to the following:

- [Creating RADIUS Groups](#)
- [Defining User Pools](#)
- [Configuring RADIUS Server Policies](#)
- [RADIUS Deployment Considerations](#)

## 11.6.1 Creating RADIUS Groups

### ▶ *Setting the RADIUS Configuration*

The RADIUS server allows the configuration of user groups with common user policies. User group names and associated users are stored in a local database. The user ID in the received access request is mapped to the specified group for authentication. RADIUS groups allows the enforcement of the following policies managing user access.

- Assign a VLAN to the user upon successful authentication
- Define a start and end of time in (HH:MM) when the user is allowed to authenticate
- Define the list of SSIDs to which a user belonging to this group is allowed to associate
- Define the days of the week the user is allowed to login
- Rate limit traffic

To access RADIUS Groups menu:

- 1 Select the **Configuration** tab from the main menu.
- 2 Select the **Services** tab from the **Configuration** menu.
- 3 Select **RADIUS > Groups** from the **Configuration > Services** menu.

The browser displays a list of the existing groups.

RADIUS Group Policy	Guest User Group	Management Group	Role	VLAN	Time Start	Time Stop
group1	✗	✗		Not Set	12:00 am	11:59 pm
GUEST-USERS	✓	✗		Not Set	12:00 am	11:59 pm
guestgroup	✓	✗		Not Set	12:00 am	11:59 pm

Type to search in tables Row Count: 3

**Figure 11-32** RADIUS Group screen

- 4 Select a group from the **Group Browser** to view the following read-only information for existing groups:

<b>RADIUS Group Policy</b>	Displays the group name or identifier assigned to each listed group when it was created. The name cannot exceed 32 characters or be modified as part of the group edit process.
<b>Guest User Group</b>	Specifies whether a user group only has guest access and temporary permissions to the local RADIUS server. The terms of the guest access can be set uniquely for each group. A red "X" designates the group as having permanent access to the local RADIUS server. Guest user groups cannot be made management groups with unique access and role permissions.
<b>Management Group</b>	A green checkmark designates this RADIUS user group as a management group. Management groups can be assigned unique access and role permissions.



<b>Role</b>	If a group is listed as a management group, it may also have a unique role assigned. Available roles include: <i>monitor</i> - Read-only access. <i>helpdesk</i> - Helpdesk/support access <i>network-admin</i> - Wired and wireless access <i>security-admin</i> - Grants full read/write access <i>system-admin</i> - System administrator access
<b>VLAN</b>	Displays the groups's VLAN ID. The VLAN ID is representative of the shared SSID each group member (user) employs to interoperate within the network (once authenticated by the local RADIUS server).
<b>Time Start</b>	Specifies the time users within each listed group can access local RADIUS resources.
<b>Time Stop</b>	Specifies the time users within each listed group lose access to local RADIUS resources.

- 5 To modify the settings of an existing group, select the group and click the **Edit** button. To delete an obsolete group, select the group and click the **Delete** button. Optionally **Rename** or **Copy** group configurations as needed.

### 11.6.1.1 Creating RADIUS Groups

To create a RADIUS group:

- 1 Select the **Configuration** tab from the main menu.
- 2 Select the **Services** tab from the **Configuration** menu.
- 3 Select **RADIUS > Groups** from the **Configuration > Services** menu.
- 4 Click the **Add** to create a new RADIUS group, **Edit** to modify the configuration of an existing group or **Delete** to permanently remove a selected group.

**Figure 11-33** RADIUS Group Policy Add screen

5 Define the following **Settings** to define the user group configuration:

<b>RADIUS Group Policy</b>	If creating a new RADIUS group, assign it a name to help differentiate it from others with similar configurations. The name cannot exceed 32 characters or be modified as part of a RADIUS group edit process.
<b>Guest User Group</b>	Select this option to assign only guest access and temporary permissions to the local RADIUS server. Guest user groups cannot be made management groups with unique access and role permissions.
<b>VLAN</b>	Select this option to assign a specific VLAN to this RADIUS user group. Ensure Dynamic VLAN assignment (single VLAN) is enabled for the WLAN in order for the VLAN assignment to work properly.
<b>WLAN SSID</b>	Assign a list of SSIDs users within this RADIUS group are allowed to associate with. An SSID cannot exceed 32 characters. Assign WLAN SSIDs representative of the configurations a guest user will need to access. The parameter is not available if this RADIUS group is a management group.
<b>Rate Limit from Air</b>	Select the checkbox to set the rate limit for clients within the RADIUS group. Use the spinner to set value from 100-1,000,000 kbps. Setting a value of 0 disables rate limiting.
<b>Rate Limit to Air</b>	Select the checkbox to set the rate limit from clients within the RADIUS group. Use the spinner to set value from 100-1,000,000 kbps. Setting a value of 0 disables rate limiting.
<b>Management Group</b>	Select this option to designate this RADIUS group as a management group. This feature is disabled by default. If set as management group, assign member roles (System-Admin, Help Desk etc.) using the <i>Role</i> drop-down menu.
<b>Access</b>	Select those interfaces ( <i>Web, SSH, Telnet</i> or <i>Console</i> ) to apply to the RADIUS Group Policy. The conditions defined within the policy are applied to authentication requests on these interfaces only.
<b>Role</b>	If a group is listed as a management group, it may also have a unique role assigned. Available roles include: <i>monitor</i> - Read-only access. <i>helpdesk</i> - Helpdesk/support access. <i>network-admin</i> - Wired and wireless access. <i>security-admin</i> - Grants full read/write access. <i>system-admin</i> - System administrator access.
<b>Inactivity Timeout</b>	Enable this option to set an inactivity timeout from 60 - 86,400 seconds. If a frame is not received from a client within the set time, the current session is terminated.
<b>Session Time</b>	Enable this option to set a client session time from 5 - 144,000 minutes. This is the session time a client is granted upon successful authentication. Upon expiration, the RADIUS session is terminated.

6 Set the **Schedule** to configure access times and dates.

<b>Time Start</b>	To schedule an access time, select the <i>Restrict Access by Time</i> option. Use the spinner control to set the time (in HH:MM format) RADIUS group members are allowed access the RADIUS server resources. Select either the <i>AM</i> or <i>PM</i> radio button to set the time as morning or evening.
<b>Time Stop</b>	Use the spinner control to set the time (in HH:MM format) RADIUS group members are denied access to RADIUS server resources. Select either the <i>AM</i> or <i>PM</i> radio button to set the time as morning or evening. If already logged in, the RADIUS group user is deauthenticated from the WLAN.

<b>Days</b>	Optionally select the <i>Restrict Access by Day Of Week</i> option, and select the <i>Days</i> RADIUS group members can access RADIUS resources. This is an additional means of refining the access permissions of RADIUS group members.
-------------	--

- 7 Select **OK** to save the changes. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

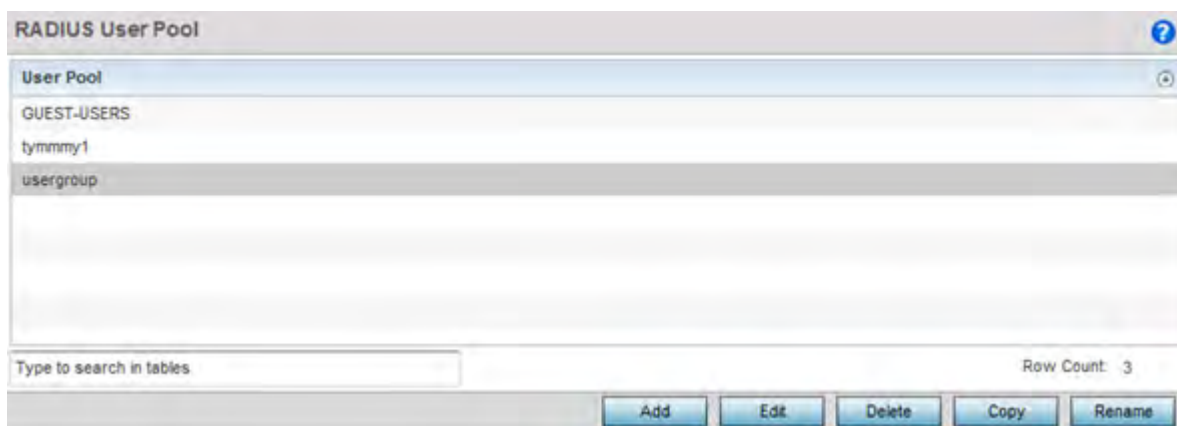
## 11.6.2 Defining User Pools

### ► *Setting the RADIUS Configuration*

A user pool defines policies for individual user access to local RADIUS resources. User or pools provide a convenient means of providing RADIUS resources based on the pool's unique permissions (either temporary or permanent). A pool can contain a single user or group of users.

To configure a RADIUS user pool and unique user IDs:

- 1 Select **Configuration** from the main menu.
- 2 Select **Services** tab from the Configuration screen.
- 3 Select **RADIUS > User Pools** from the **Configuration > Services** menu.



**Figure 11-34** *RADIUS User Pool screen*

The **RADIUS User Pool** screen lists the default pool along with any other admin created user pool.

- 4 Select **Add** to create a new user pool, **Edit** to modify the configuration of an existing pool or **Delete** to remove a selected pool.
- 5 If creating a new pool, assign it a name up to 32 characters and select **Continue**. The name should be representative of the users comprising the pool and/or the temporary or permanent access privileges assigned.

User Id	Guest User	Group	Email Id	Telephone	Start Date	Start Time	Expiry Date	Expiry Time	Access Duration (days:hrs:mins:secs)	Data Limit (KB)	Committed Downlink Rate (kbps)	Committed Uplink Rate (kbps)	Reduced Downlink Rate (kbps)	Reduced Uplink Rate (kbps)
cb	X								Till Expiry	Unlimited	-	-	-	-
daden	X								Till Expiry	Unlimited	-	-	-	-
deepakm	X								Till Expiry	Unlimited	-	-	-	-
jacthoma	X								Till Expiry	Unlimited	-	-	-	-
pbalta	X								Till Expiry	Unlimited	-	-	-	-
pepuru	X								Till Expiry	Unlimited	-	-	-	-
rajeshv	X								Till Expiry	Unlimited	-	-	-	-
sriram	X								Till Expiry	Unlimited	-	-	-	-
trevorm	X								Till Expiry	Unlimited	-	-	-	-

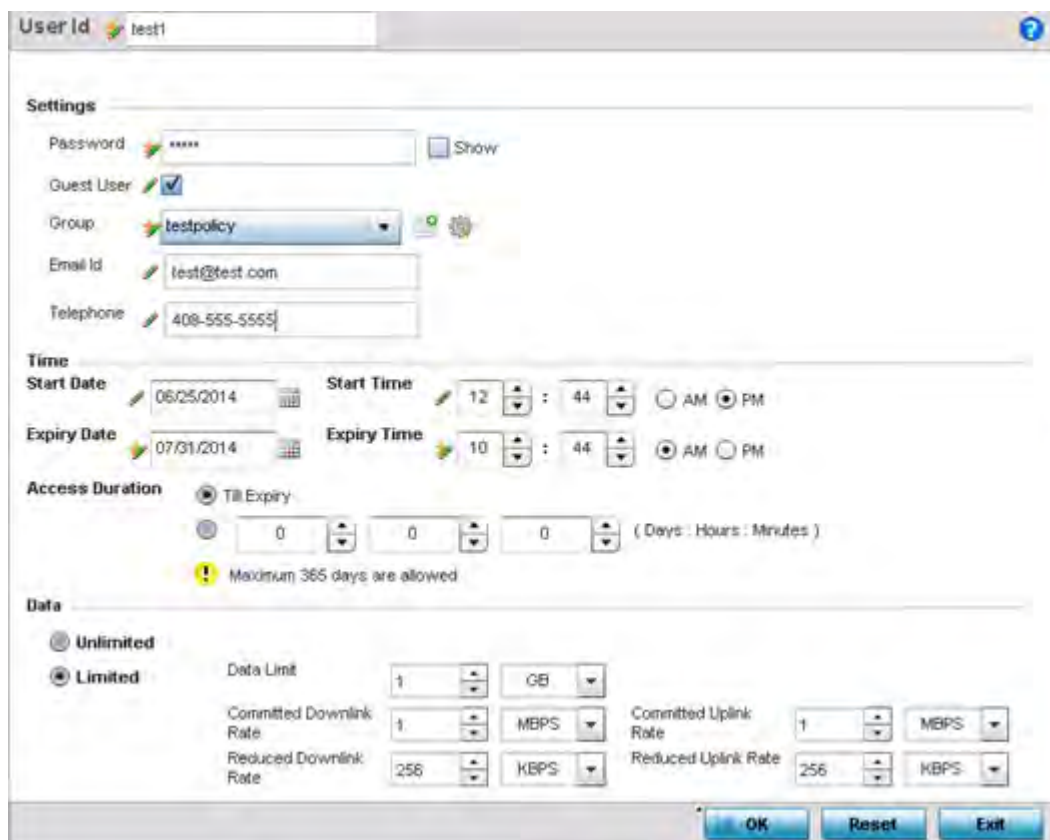
**Figure 11-35** RADIUS User Pool Add screen

- 6 Refer to the following **User Pool** configurations to discern when specific user IDs have access to RADIUS resources:

<b>User Id</b>	Displays the unique string identifying this user. This is the ID assigned to the user when created and cannot be modified with the rest of the configuration.
<b>Guest User</b>	Specifies (with a green check) the user has guest access and temporary permissions to the local RADIUS server. The terms of the guest access can be set uniquely for each user. A red "X" designates the user as having permanent access to the local RADIUS server.
<b>Group</b>	Displays the group name each configured user ID is a member.
<b>Email ID</b>	Displays the Email address (in 64 characters or less) of the client user (user ID) requesting authentication validation to the controller or service platform using this user pool.
<b>Telephone</b>	Lists the 12 character maximum telephone number of the client user (user ID) requesting authentication validation to the controller or service platform using this user pool.
<b>Start Date</b>	Lists the month, day and year the listed user ID can access local RADIUS server resources.
<b>Start Time</b>	Lists the time the listed user ID can access local RADIUS server resources. The time is only relevant to the range defined by the start and expiry date.
<b>Expiry Date</b>	Lists the month, day and year the listed user ID can no longer access (expires) local RADIUS server resources.
<b>Expiry Time</b>	Displays the time the listed user loses access to RADIUS server resources. The time is only relevant to the range defined by the start and expiry date.
<b>Access Duration (days:hrs:mins:secs)</b>	Displays the amount of time a user is allowed access when time based access privilege are applied. The duration cannot exceed 365 days.

<b>Data Limit (KB)</b>	Lists the total amount of bandwidth (in KiloBytes) consumable by each guest user.
<b>Committed Downlink Rate (kbps)</b>	Displays the download speed (in KiloBytes) allocated to the guest user. When bandwidth is available, the user can download data at the specified rate. If a guest user has a bandwidth based policy and exceeds the specified Data Limit, their speed is throttled to the Reduced Downlink Rate.
<b>Committed Uplink Rate (kbps)</b>	Displays the upload speed (in KiloBytes) allocated to the guest user. When bandwidth is available, the user can download data at the specified rate. If a guest user has a bandwidth based policy and exceeds the specified Data Limit, their speed is throttled to the Reduced Uplink Rate.
<b>Reduced Downlink Rate (kbps)</b>	Displays the reduced speed the guest utilizes (in KiloBytes) when exceeding their specified data limit, if applicable. If a guest user has a bandwidth based policy and exceeds the specified Data Limit, their speed is throttled to the Reduced Downlink Rate.
<b>Reduced Uplink Rate (kbps)</b>	Displays the reduced speed the guest utilizes (in KiloBytes) when exceeding their specified data limit, if applicable. If a guest user has a bandwidth based policy and exceeds the specified Data Limit, their speed is throttled to the Reduced Uplink Rate.

- 7 Select the **Add** button to add a new RADIUS user, **Edit** to modify the configuration of an existing user or **Delete** to remove an existing user Id.



**Figure 11-36** RADIUS User screen

8 Refer the following **Settings** to create a new user Id with unique access privileges:

<b>User Id</b>	Assign a unique character string identifying this user. The Id cannot exceed 64 characters.
<b>Password</b>	Provide a password unique to this user ID. The password cannot exceed 32 characters. Select the <i>Show</i> checkbox to expose the password's actual character string, leaving the option unselected displays the password as a string of asterisks (*).
<b>Guest User</b>	Select the checkbox to designate this user as a guest with temporary access. The guest user must be assigned unique access times to restrict their access.
<b>Group</b>	If the user Id has been defined as a guest, use the <i>Group</i> to assign the user a group with temporary access privileges. If the user is defined as a permanent user, select a group from the group list. If there's no groups listed relevant to the user's intended access, select the <i>Create</i> link (or icon for guests) and create a new group configuration suitable for the user Id's membership.
<b>Email ID</b>	Enter the Email address (in 64 characters or less) of the client user (user ID) requesting authentication validation to the controller or service platform using this user pool.
<b>Telephone</b>	Provide the 12 character maximum telephone number of the client user (user ID) requesting authentication validation to the controller or service platform using this user pool.

9 Refer the following **Time** settings to define time based guest user access privileges:

<b>Start Date</b>	Enter a start date, or use the calendar icon to select a starting date for the user's credentials to start working.
<b>Start Time</b>	Enter a start time, or use the spinner controls to select a starting time for the user's credentials to start working. Use the <i>AM</i> and <i>PM</i> buttons to apply a morning or afternoon/evening designation.
<b>Expiry Date</b>	Enter an end date, or use the calendar icon to define an expiration date for the user's credentials. Selecting this option enables the <i>Til Expiry</i> radio button.
<b>Expiry Time</b>	If using the <i>Til Expiry</i> option, enter an end time, or use the spinner controls to select an ending time for the user's credentials to expire. Use the <i>AM</i> and <i>PM</i> buttons to apply a morning or afternoon/evening designation.
<b>Access Duration</b>	Specify the time a user can access the system when time based access privilege are applied. Select <i>Til Expiry</i> to allow user access until their configured expiry date and time are met. To limit the time a user can access the captive portal during their configured time period, specify the <i>Days</i> , <i>Minutes</i> and <i>Seconds</i> the user is allowed access. The Access Duration cannot exceed 365 days.

10 To allow the guest user unlimited data usage select **Unlimited**. To limit bandwidth, select **Limited** and refer to the **Data** field to create bandwidth based access privileges:

<b>Data Limit</b>	Use the spinner control to specify the maximum bandwidth consumable by the guest user. Once a value is configured, select the measurement as either <i>GB</i> (Gigabytes) or <i>MB</i> (Megabytes).
-------------------	---



<b>Committed Downlink Rate</b>	Use the spinner control to specify the download speed dedicated to the guest user. When bandwidth is available, the user can download data at the specified rate. Once a value is configured, select the measurement as either <i>MBPS</i> (Megabytes per second) or <i>KBPS</i> (Kilobytes per second). If a guest user has a bandwidth based policy and exceeds the specified Data Limit, their speed is throttled to the defined <i>Reduced Downlink Rate</i> .
<b>Reduced Downlink Rate</b>	Use the spinner control to specify a reduced speed for guest operation when they've exceeded their specified data limit, if applicable. If a guest user has a bandwidth based policy and exceeds the specified Data Limit, their speed is throttled to the <i>Reduced Downlink Rate</i> . Once a value is configured, select the measurement as either <i>MBPS</i> (Megabytes per second) or <i>KBPS</i> (Kilobytes per second).
<b>Committed Uplink Rate</b>	Use the spinner control to specify the upload speed dedicated to the guest user. When bandwidth is available, the user is able to upload data at the specified rate. Once a value is configured, select the measurement as either <i>MBPS</i> (Megabytes per second) or <i>KBPS</i> (Kilobytes per second). If a guest user has a bandwidth based policy and exceeds the specified Data Limit, their speed is throttled to the <i>Reduced Uplink Rate</i> .
<b>Reduced Uplink Rate</b>	Use the spinner control to specify a reduced speed for guest operation when they've exceed their specified data limit, if applicable. If a guest user has a bandwidth based policy and exceeds the specified Data Limit, their speed is throttled to the <i>Reduced Uplink Rate</i> . Once a value is configured, select the measurement as either <i>MBPS</i> (Megabytes per second) or <i>KBPS</i> (Kilobytes per second).

- 11 Select **OK** to save the user Id's group membership configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

### 11.6.3 Configuring RADIUS Server Policies

#### ► *Setting the RADIUS Configuration*

A RADIUS server policy is a unique authentication and authorization configuration for receiving user connection requests, authenticating users and returning the configuration information necessary to deliver service to the requesting client and user. The client is the entity with authentication information requiring validation. The local RADIUS server has access to a database of authentication information used to validate the client's authentication request.

The RADIUS server ensures the information is correct using an authentication scheme like *PAP*, *CHAP* or *EAP*. The user's proof of identification is verified, along with, optionally, other information. A RADIUS server policy can also use an external LDAP resource to verify user credentials.

To review RADIUS existing server policies, manage the creation of new policies or manage the modification of existing policies:

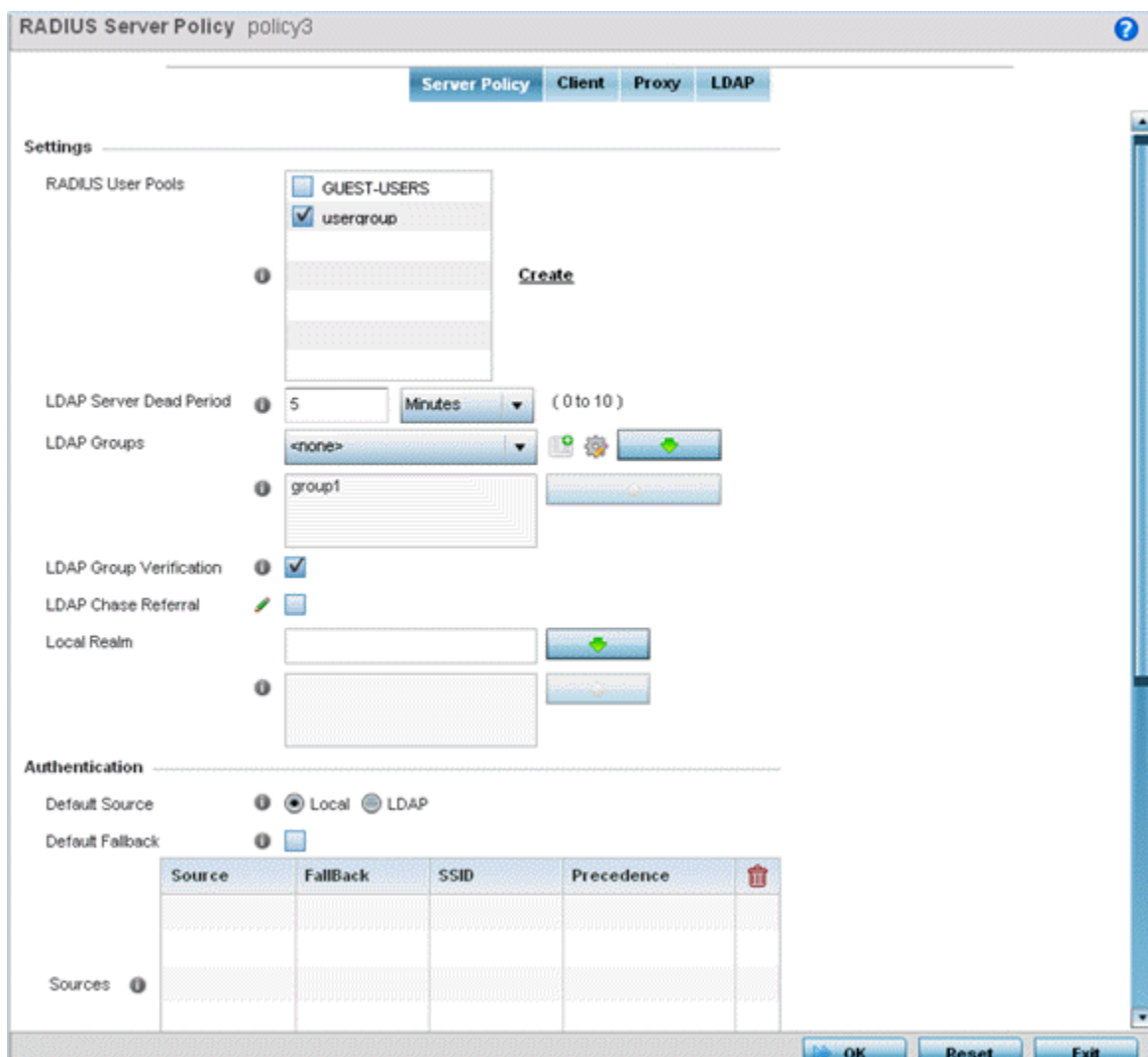
- 1 Select **Configuration** from the main menu.
- 2 Select **Services** tab from the Configuration screen.
- 3 Select **RADIUS > Server Policy** from the **Configuration > Services** menu.  
The **Server Policy Browser** lists existing server policies by group or randomly. A policy can be selected and modified from the browser.
- 4 Refer to the RADIUS Server screen to review high-level server policy configuration data.





<b>Authentication Type</b>	<p>Lists the local EAP authentication scheme used with this policy. The following EAP authentication types are supported by the local RADIUS and remote LDAP servers:</p> <p><i>All</i> - Enables both TTLS and PEAP.</p> <p><i>TLS</i> - Uses TLS as the EAP type.</p> <p><i>TTLS and MD5</i> - The EAP type is TTLS with default authentication using MD5.</p> <p><i>TTLS and PAP</i> - The EAP type is TTLS with default authentication using PAP.</p> <p><i>TTLS and MSCHAPv2</i> - The EAP type is TTLS with default authentication using MSCHAPv2.</p> <p><i>PEAP and GTC</i> - The EAP type is PEAP with default authentication using GTC.</p> <p><i>PEAP and MSCHAPv2</i> - The EAP type is PEAP with default authentication using MSCHAPv2. However, when user credentials are stored on an LDAP server, the RADIUS server cannot conduct PEAP-MSCHAPv2 authentication on its own, as it is not aware of the password. Use LDAP agent settings to locally authenticate the user. Additionally, an authentication utility (such as Samba) must be used to authenticate the user. Samba is an open source software used to share services between Windows and Linux machine.</p>
<b>CRL Validation</b>	<p>Specifies whether a <i>Certificate Revocation List</i> (CRL) check is made. A green checkmark indicates CRL validation is enabled. A red "X" indicates it's disabled. A CRL is a list of revoked certificates issued and subsequently revoked by a <i>Certification Authority</i> (CA). Certificates can be revoked for a number of reasons including failure or compromise of a device using a certificate, a compromise of a certificate key pair or errors within an issued certificate. The mechanism used for certificate revocation depends on the CA.</p>

- 6 Select the **Copy** button to copy the settings of a selected (existing) RADIUS server configuration to a new or existing policy.  
When selected, a small dialogue displays prompting the administrator to enter the name of policy to copy the existing policy settings to. Enter the name of the RADIUS server policy receiving the existing server policy settings within the **Copy To** field and select the **Copy** button to initiate the configuration copy operation. This feature streamlines the creation of RADIUS server policies using the attributes of existing server policies.
- 7 An existing RADIUS server policy can be renamed at any time by selecting it from amongst the listed policies and selecting the **Rename** button.  
This allows an administrator to simply rename a server policy without having to create (or edit) a new policy with all the same settings.
- 8 Select either **Add** to create a new RADIUS server policy, **Edit** to modify an existing policy or **Delete** to permanently remove a policy.



**Figure 11-38** RADIUS Server Policy screen - Server Policy tab

The **Server Policy** tab displays by default.

- 9 If creating a new policy, assign it a **RADIUS Server Policy** name up to 32 characters.
- 10 Configure the following **Settings** required in the creation or modification of the server policy:

<b>RADIUS User Pools</b>	Select the user pools (groups of existing client users) to apply to this server policy. If there is not an existing user pool configuration suitable for the deployment, select the <a href="#">Create</a> link and define a new configuration.
<b>LDAP Server Dead Period</b>	Set an interval in either <i>Seconds</i> (0 - 600) or <i>Minutes</i> (0 - 10) for planned LDAP server inactivity. A <i>dead period</i> is only implemented when additional LDAP servers are configured and available for LDAP failover. The default setting is 5 minutes.
<b>LDAP Groups</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select LDAP groups to apply the server policy configuration. Select the <i>Create</i> or <i>Edit</i> icons to either create a new group or modify an existing group. Use the arrow icons to add and remove groups as required.
<b>LDAP Group Verification</b>	Select the checkbox to set the LDAP group search configuration.

<b>LDAP Chase Referral</b>	<p>Select this option to enable the chasing of referrals from an external LDAP server resource.</p> <p>An LDAP referral is a controller or service platform's way of indicating to a client it does not hold the section of the directory tree where a requested content object resides. The <i>referral</i> is the controller or service platform's direction to the client a different location is more likely to hold the object, which the client uses as the basis for a DNS search for a domain controller. Ideally, referrals always reference a domain controller that indeed holds the object. However, it is possible for the domain controller to generate another referral, although it usually does not take long to discover the object does not exist and inform the client.</p> <p>This feature is disabled by default.</p>
<b>Local Realm</b>	<p>Define the LDAP performing authentication using information from an LDAP server. User information includes user name, password, and groups to which the user belongs.</p>

- 11 Set the following **Authentication** parameters to define server policy authorization settings.

<b>Default Source</b>	<p>Select the RADIUS resource for user authentication with this server policy. Options include <i>Local</i> for the local user database or <i>LDAP</i> for a remote LDAP resource. The default setting is Local.</p>
<b>Default Fallback</b>	<p>Define whether a fallback is enabled providing a revert back to local RADIUS resources if the designated external LDAP resource were to fail or become unavailable. The default fallback feature is disabled by default.</p>
<b>Authentication Type</b>	<p>Use the drop-down menu to select the EAP authentication scheme used with this policy. The following EAP authentication types are supported by the local RADIUS and remote LDAP servers:</p> <p><i>All</i> - Enables all authentication schemes.</p> <p><i>TLS</i> - Uses TLS as the EAP type</p> <p><i>TTLS and MD5</i> - The EAP type is TTLS with default authentication using MD5.</p> <p><i>TTLS and PAP</i> - The EAP type is TTLS with default authentication using PAP.</p> <p><i>TTLS and MSCHAPv2</i> - The EAP type is TTLS with default authentication using MSCHAPv2.</p> <p><i>PEAP and GTC</i> - The EAP type is PEAP with default authentication using GTC.</p> <p><i>PEAP and MSCHAPv2</i> - The EAP type is PEAP with default authentication using MSCHAPv2. However, when user credentials are stored on an LDAP server, the RADIUS server cannot conduct PEAP-MSCHAPv2 authentication on its own, as it is not aware of the password. Use LDAP agent settings to locally authenticate the user. Additionally, an authentication utility (such as Samba) must be used to authenticate the user. Samba is an open source software used to share services between Windows and Linux machine.</p>
<b>Do Not Verify Username</b>	<p>Select this option to use certificate expiration as matching criteria, as opposed to the hostname. This setting is disabled by default.</p>

<b>Enable EAP Termination</b>	Select this option to enable EAP termination with this RADIUS server policy. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Enable CRL Validation</b>	Select this option to enable a <i>Certificate Revocation List</i> (CRL) check. Certificates can be checked and revoked for a number of reasons including failure or compromise of a device using a certificate, a compromise of a certificate key pair or errors within an issued certificate. This option is disabled by default.
<b>Bypass CRL Check</b>	Select the option to bypass a <i>certificate revocation list</i> (CRL) check when a CRL is not detected. This setting is enabled by default. A CRL is a list of certificates that have been revoked or are no longer valid.
<b>Allow Expired URL</b>	Select this option to allow the use of an expired CRL. This option is enabled by default.

- 12 Select **+ Add Row** within the Authentication field to define the following **Authentication Data Source** rules for the RADIUS server policy:

<b>Precedence</b>	Use the spinner control to set the numeric precedence (priority) for this authentication data source rule. Rules with the lowest precedence receive the highest priority. Set the value between 1 - 5000. This value is mandatory.
<b>SSID</b>	Enter or modify the SSID associated with the authentication data source rule. The maximum number of characters is 32. Do not use any of these characters (< >   " & \ ? ,).
<b>Source</b>	Use the drop-down menu to define the RADIUS data source for this authentication data source rule as Local or LDAP.
<b>Fallback</b>	Select this option to fallback to the Local resource for RADIUS data authentication from LDAP for this authentication data source rule.

- 13 If using LDAP as the default authentication source, select **+ Add Row** to set **LDAP Agent** settings.

When a user's credentials are stored on an external LDAP server, the controller or service platform's local RADIUS server cannot successfully conduct PEAP-MSCHAPv2 authentication, since it is not aware of the user's credentials maintained on the external LDAP server resource. Therefore, up to two LDAP agents can be provided locally so remote LDAP authentication can be successfully accomplished on the remote LDAP resource (using credentials maintained locally).

<b>Username</b>	Enter a 63 character maximum username for the LDAP server's domain administrator. This is the username defined on the LDAP server for RADIUS authentication requests.
<b>Password</b>	Enter and confirm the 32 character maximum password (for the username provided above). The successful verification of the password maintained on the controller or service platform enables PEAP-MSCHAPv2 authentication using the remote LDAP server resource.
<b>Retry Timeout</b>	Set the number of <i>Seconds</i> (60 - 300) or <i>Minutes</i> (1 - 5) to wait between LDAP server access requests when attempting to join the remote LDAP server's domain. The default settings is one minute.
<b>Redundancy</b>	Define the <i>Primary</i> or <i>Secondary</i> LDAP agent configuration used to connect to the LDAP server domain.
<b>Domain Name</b>	Enter the name of the domain (from 1 - 127 characters) to which the remote LDAP server resource belongs.

- 14 Set the following **Session Resumption/Fast Reauthentication** settings to define how server policy sessions are re-established once terminated and require cached data to resume:

<b>Enable Session Resumption</b>	Select the checkbox to control volume and the duration cached data is maintained by the server policy upon the termination of a server policy session. The availability and quick retrieval of the cached data speeds up session resumption. This setting is disabled by default.
<b>Cached Entry Lifetime</b>	If enabling session resumption, use the spinner control to set the lifetime (1 - 24 hours) cached data is maintained by the RADIUS server policy. The default setting is 1 hour.
<b>Maximum Cache Entries</b>	If enabling session resumption, use the spinner control to define the maximum number of entries maintained in cache for this RADIUS server policy. The default setting is 128.

- 15 Select **OK** to save the settings to the server policy configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

Refer to the following to add RADIUS clients, proxy server configurations, LDAP server configurations and review deployment considerations impacting the effectiveness of the RADIUS supported deployment:

- [Configuring RADIUS Clients](#)
- [Configuring a RADIUS Proxy](#)
- [Configuring an LDAP Server Configuration](#)

### 11.6.3.1 Configuring RADIUS Clients

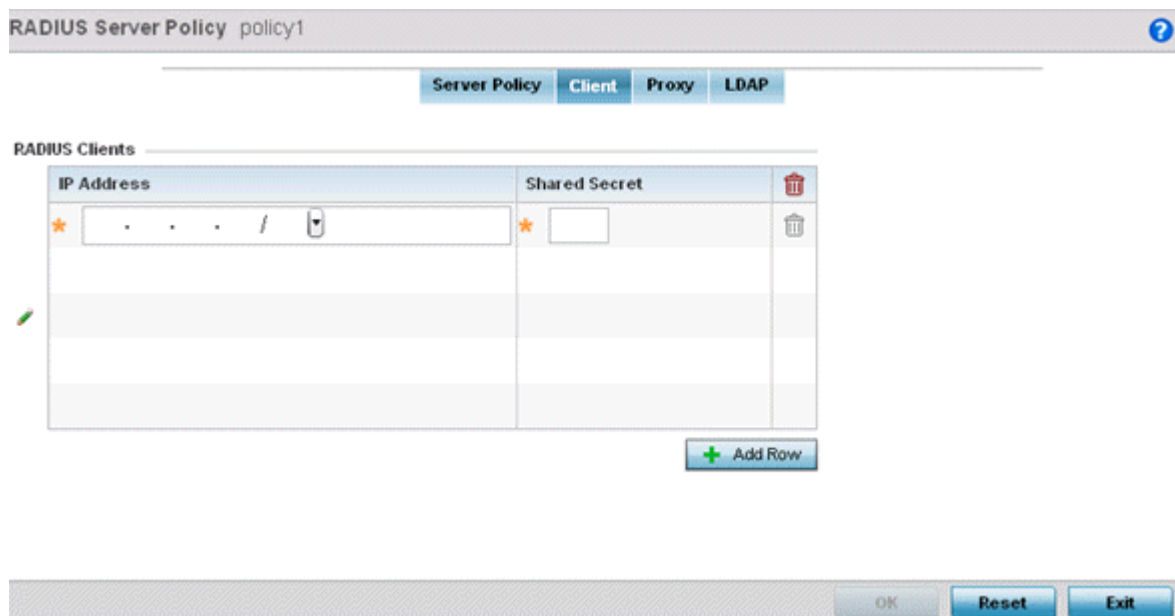
#### ▶ [Configuring RADIUS Server Policies](#)

A RADIUS client is a mechanism to communicate with a central server to authenticate users and authorize access to the network.

The client and server share a *secret* (a password). That shared secret, followed by the request authenticator, is put through a MD5 hash to create a 16 octet value which is XORed with the password entered by the user. If the user password is greater than 16 octets, additional MD5 calculations are performed, using the previous ciphertext instead of the request authenticator. The server receives a RADIUS *access request* packet and verifies the server possesses a shared secret for the client. If the server does not possess a shared secret for the client, the request is dropped. If the client received a verified *access accept* packet, the username and password are considered correct, and the user is authenticated. If the client receives a verified *access reject* message, the username and password are considered to be incorrect, and the user is not authenticated.

To define a RADIUS client configuration:

- 1 Select the **Client** tab from the RADIUS Server Policy screen.



**Figure 11-39** RADIUS Server Policy screen - Client tab

- 2 Select the **+ Add Row** button to add a table entry for a new client's IP address, mask and shared secret. To delete a client entry, select the **Delete** icon on the right-hand side of the table entry.
- 3 Specify the **IP Address** and mask of the RADIUS client authenticating with the RADIUS server.
- 4 Specify a **Shared Secret** for authenticating the RADIUS client.  
Shared secrets verify RADIUS messages with RADIUS enabled device configured with the same shared secret. Select the **Show** checkbox to expose the shared secret's actual character string, leaving the option unselected displays the shared secret as a string of asterisks (\*).
- 5 Click **OK** button to save the server policy's client configuration. Click the **Reset** button to revert to the last saved configuration.

### 11.6.3.2 Configuring a RADIUS Proxy

#### ► *Configuring RADIUS Server Policies*

A user's access request is sent to a proxy server if it cannot be authenticated by local RADIUS resources. The proxy server checks the information in the user access request and either accepts or rejects the request. If the proxy server accepts the request, it returns configuration information specifying the type of connection service required to authenticate the user.

The RADIUS proxy appears to act as a RADIUS server to the NAS, whereas the proxy appears to act as a RADIUS client to the RADIUS server.

When the RADIUS server receives a request for a user name containing a realm, the server references a table of configured realms. If the realm is known, the server proxies the request to the RADIUS server. The behavior of the proxying server is configuration-dependent on most servers. In addition, the proxying server can be configured to add, remove or rewrite requests when they are proxied.

To define a proxy configuration:



- 1 Select the **Proxy** tab from the RADIUS Server Policy screen.

The screenshot shows the 'RADIUS Server Policy' window for 'INTERNAL-AAA'. The 'Proxy' tab is selected. Under 'Proxy Retries', 'Proxy Retry Delay' is set to 5 seconds (range 5 to 10) and 'Proxy Retry Count' is set to 3 (range 3 to 6). Below is a table for 'Realms' with columns: Realm Name, IP Address, Port Number, Shared Secret, and a Delete icon. An 'Add Row' button is at the bottom right of the table. At the bottom of the window are 'OK', 'Reset', and 'Exit' buttons.

Realm Name	IP Address	Port Number	Shared Secret	

**Figure 11-40** RADIUS Server Policy screen - Proxy tab

- 2 Enter the Proxy server retry delay time in the **Proxy Retry Delay** field. Enter a value from 5 -10 seconds. This is the interval the RADIUS server waits before making an additional connection attempt. The default delay interval is 5 seconds.
- 3 Enter the Proxy server retry count value in the **Proxy Retry Count** field. Set from 3 - 6 to define the number of retries sent to the proxy server before giving up the request. The default retry count is 3 attempts.
- 4 Select the **+ Add Row** button to add a RADIUS server proxy realm name and network address. To delete a proxy server entry, select the **Delete** icon on the right-hand side of the table entry.
- 5 Enter the realm name in the **Realm Name** field. The realm name cannot exceed 50 characters. When the RADIUS server receives a request for a user name with a realm, the server references a table of realms. If the realm is known, the server proxies the request to the RADIUS server.
- 6 Enter the Proxy server IP address in the **IP Address** field. This is the address of server checking the information in the user access request and either accepting or rejecting the request on behalf of the local RADIUS server.
- 7 Enter the TCP/IP port number for the server that acts as a data source for the proxy server in the **Port Number** field. Use the spinner to select a value between 1024 - 65535. The default port is 1812.
- 8 Enter the RADIUS client shared secret password in the **Shared Secret** field. This password is for authenticating the RADIUS proxy.  
Select the **Show** checkbox to expose the shared secret's actual character string, leaving the option unselected displays the shared secret as a string of asterisks (\*).
- 9 Click the **OK** button to save the changes. Click the **Reset** button to revert to the last saved configuration.

### 11.6.3.3 Configuring an LDAP Server Configuration

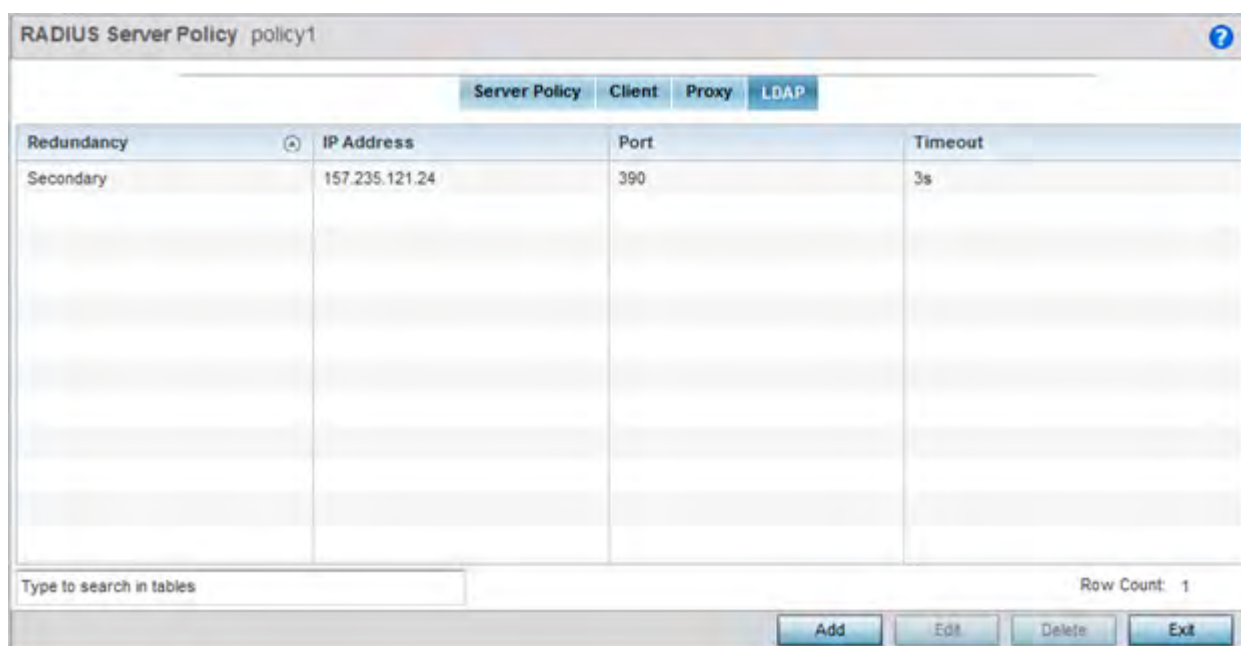
#### ► Configuring RADIUS Server Policies

Administrators have the option of using RADIUS server resources to authenticate users against an external LDAP server resource. Using an external LDAP user database allows the centralization of user information and reduces administrative user management overhead making the RADIUS authorization process more secure and efficient.

RADIUS is not just a database. It's a protocol for asking intelligent questions to a user database (like LDAP). LDAP however is just a database of user credentials that can be used optionally with the RADIUS server to free up resources and manage user credentials from a secure remote location. Local RADIUS resources provide the tools to perform user authentication and authorize users based on complex checks and logic. There's no way to perform such complex authorization checks from a LDAP user database alone.

To configure an LDAP server configuration for use with the RADIUS server:

- 1 Select the **LDAP** tab from the RADIUS Server screen.



**Figure 11-41** RADIUS Server Policy screen - LDAP tab



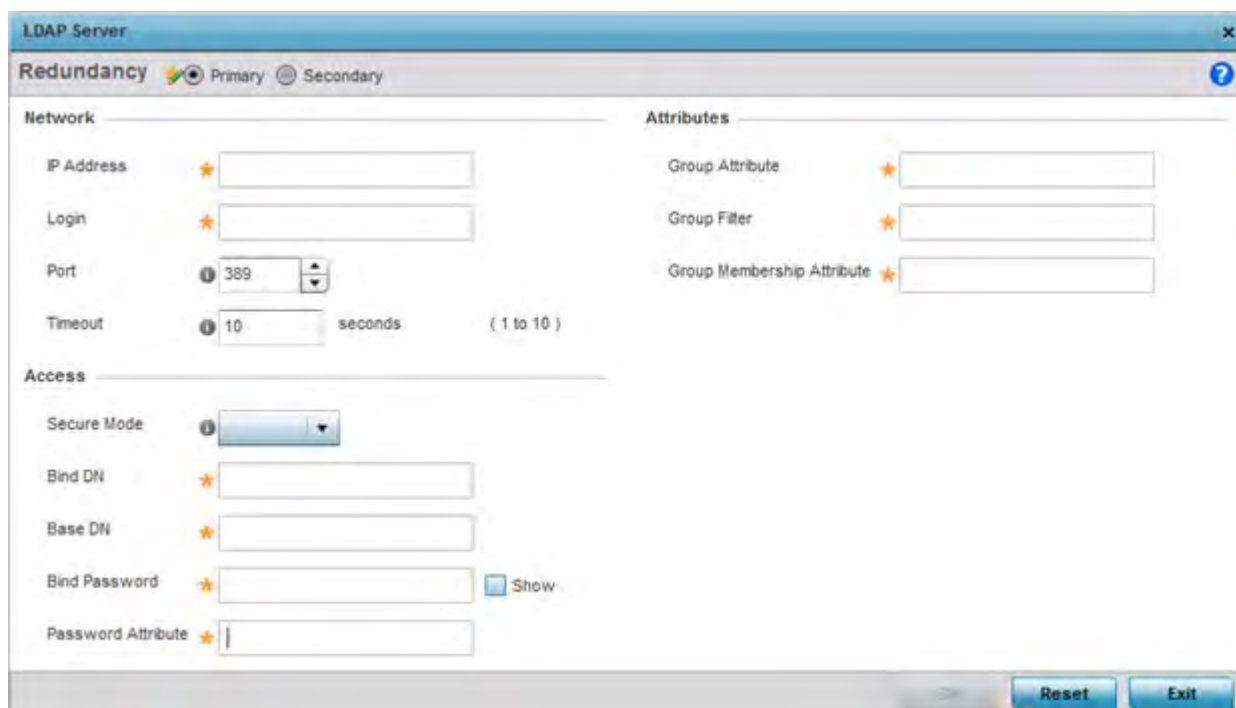
**NOTE:** If using LDAP for external authentication, PEAP-MSCHAPv2 can only be used if the LDAP server returns the password as plain text. PEAP-MSCHAPv2 is not supported if the LDAP server returns encrypted passwords. This restriction does not apply for Microsoft's Active Directory Server.

- 2 Refer to the following to determine whether an LDAP server can be used as is, a server configuration requires creation or modification or a configuration requires deletion and permanent removal.

<b>Redundancy</b>	Displays whether the listed LDAP server IP address has been defined as a <i>primary</i> or <i>secondary</i> server resource. Designating at least one secondary server is a good practice to ensure RADIUS resources are available if a primary server were to become unavailable.
<b>IP Address</b>	Displays the IP address of the external LDAP server acting as the data source for the RADIUS server.

<b>Port</b>	Lists the physical port number used by the RADIUS server to secure a connection with the remote LDAP server resource.
<b>Timeout</b>	Lists the number of seconds (1- 10) this server session waits for a connection before aborting the connection attempt with the listed RADIUS server resource.

- 3 Click the **Add** button to add a new LDAP server configuration, **Edit** to modify an existing LDAP server configuration or **Delete** to remove a LDAP server from the list of those available.



**Figure 11-42** LDAP Server Add screen

- 4 Set the following **Network** address information required for the connection to an external LDAP server resource:

<b>Redundancy</b>	Define whether this LDAP server is a <i>primary</i> or <i>secondary</i> server resource. Primary servers are always queried for connection first. However, designating at least one secondary server is a good practice to ensure RADIUS user information is available if a primary server were to become unavailable.
<b>IP Address</b>	Set the 128 character maximum IP address or FQDN of the external LDAP server acting as the data source for the RADIUS server.
<b>Login</b>	Define a unique login name used for accessing the remote LDAP server resource. Consider using a unique login name for each LDAP server provided to increase the security of the connection to the remote LDAP server.
<b>Port</b>	Use the spinner control to set the physical port number used by the RADIUS server to secure a connection with the remote LDAP server.
<b>Timeout</b>	Set an interval from 1 - 10 seconds the local RADIUS server uses as a wait period for a response from the primary or secondary LDAP server. The default setting is 10 seconds.

- 5 Set the following **Access** address information required for the connection to the external LDAP server resource:

<b>Secure Mode</b>	Specify the security mode when connecting to an external LDAP server. Use start-tls or tls-mode to connect. The start-tls mode provides a way to upgrade a plain text connection to an encrypted connection using TLS. Default port value for start-tls is 389. Default port value for stls-mode is 636.
<b>Bind DN</b>	Specify the distinguished name to bind with the LDAP server. The DN is the name that uniquely identifies an entry in the LDAP directory. A DN is made up of attribute value pairs, separated by commas.
<b>Base DN</b>	Specify a <i>distinguished name</i> (DN) that establishes the base object for the search. The base object is the point in the LDAP tree at which to start searching. LDAP DNs begin with the most specific attribute (usually some sort of name), and continue with progressively broader attributes, often ending with a country attribute. The first component of the DN is referred to as the <i>Relative Distinguished Name</i> (RDN). It identifies an entry distinctly from any other entries that have the same parent.
<b>Bind Password</b>	Enter a valid password for the LDAP server. Select the <i>Show</i> checkbox to expose the password's actual character string, leaving the option unselected displays the password as a string of asterisks (*). The password cannot 32 characters.
<b>Password Attribute</b>	Enter the LDAP server password attribute. The password cannot exceed 64 characters.

- 6 Set the following **Attributes** for LDAP groups to optimally refine group queries:

<b>Group Attribute</b>	LDAP systems have the facility to poll dynamic groups. In an LDAP dynamic group, an administrator can specify search criteria. All users matching the search criteria are considered a member of this dynamic group. Specify a group attribute used by the LDAP server. An attribute could be a group name, group ID, password or group membership name.
<b>Group Filter</b>	Specify the group filters used by the LDAP server. This filter is typically used for security role-to-group assignments and specifies the property to look up groups in the directory service.
<b>Group Membership Attribute</b>	Specify the group member attribute sent to the LDAP server when authenticating users.

- 7 Click the **OK** button to save the changes to the LDAP server configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

## 11.6.4 RADIUS Deployment Considerations

### ► *Setting the RADIUS Configuration*

Before defining the RADIUS server configuration, refer to the following deployment guidelines to ensure the configuration is optimally effective:

- Each RADIUS client should use a different shared secret. If a shared secret is compromised, only the one client poses a risk, as opposed all the additional clients that potentially share the secret password.
- Consider using an LDAP server as a database of user credentials that can be used optionally with the RADIUS server to free up resources and manage user credentials from a secure remote location.

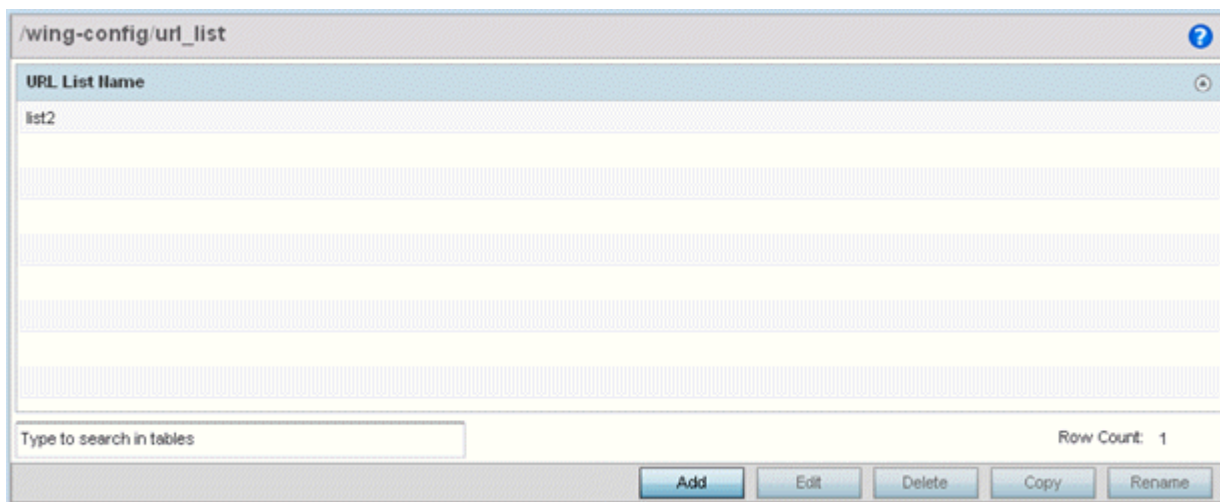
## 11.7 URL Lists

### ► Services

*URL Lists* are used to select highly utilized URLs for smart caching. The selected URLs are monitored and routed according to existing cache content policies.

To configure a URL Lists policy:

- 1 Select **Configuration** tab from the main menu.
- 2 Select the **Services** tab from the **Configuration** menu.  
The upper, left-hand, side of the user interface displays a **Services** menu pane where Captive Portal, DHCP Server Policy, RADIUS and Smart Caching configuration options can be selected.
- 3 Select **URL Lists**.  
The URL Lists screen displays existing policies. New policies can be created, existing policies can be modified, deleted or copied.



**Figure 11-43** Smart Caching - URL List Name screen

- 4 Refer to the **URL List Name** table to review the administrator assigned name applied to the URL list policy upon creation.
- 5 Select **Add** to create a URL lists policy. Select an existing policy and click **Edit** to modify, **Delete** to remove or **Copy** to copy the settings of a selected (existing) URL lists policy.

### 11.7.1 Adding or Editing URL Lists

#### ► URL Lists

Use the URL Entries screen to define URLs for smart caching. These URLs are monitored and routed according to existing cache content policies.

To add URLs to those available for smart caching:

- 1 From the URL List screen, select **Add** to create a URL lists policy or **Edit** to modify an existing policy.

**Figure 11-44** URL List Name - Add/Edit screen

- 2 Select **+ Add Row** to display configurable parameters for defining a URL and its depth.
- 3 If creating a new URL lists policy, assign it a **Name**. If editing an existing URL Lists policy, the policy name cannot be modified. The name cannot exceed 32 characters.
- 4 Set the following **URL Lists** parameters:

<b>URL</b>	Set the requested URL monitored and routed according to existing cache content policies. This value is mandatory.
<b>Depth</b>	Select the number of levels to be cached. Since Web sites have different parameters to uniquely identify specific content, the same content may be stored on multiple origin servers. Smart caching uses subsets of these parameters to recognize that the content is the same and serves it from cache. The available range is from 1 - 10. This value is mandatory.

- 5 Select **OK** to save the URL Entries list configuration. Select **Reset** to revert to the last saved configuration.

# 12 Management Access

Controllers and service platforms have mechanisms to allow/deny device access for separate interfaces and protocols (*HTTP, HTTPS, Telnet, SSH* or *SNMP*). Management access can be enabled/disabled as required for unique policies. The Management Access functionality is not meant to function as an ACL (in routers or other firewalls), where administrators specify and customize specific IPs to access specific interfaces.

Controllers and service platforms can be managed using multiple interfaces (SNMP, CLI and Web UI). By default, management access is unrestricted, allowing management access to any enabled IP interface from any host using any enabled management service.

To enhance security, administrators can apply various restrictions as needed to:

- Restrict SNMP, CLI and Web UI access to specific hosts or subnets
- Disable un-used and insecure interfaces as required within managed access profiles. Disabling un-used management services can dramatically reduce an attack footprint and free resources on managed devices
- Provide authentication for management users
- Apply access restrictions and permissions to management users

Management restrictions can be applied to meet specific policies or industry requirements requiring only certain devices or users be granted access to critical infrastructure devices. Management restrictions can also be applied to reduce the attack footprint of the device when guest services are deployed.

## 12.1 Viewing Management Access Policies

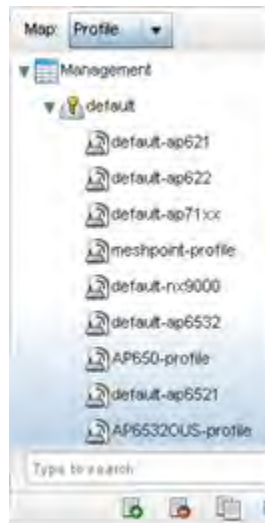
---

Management Access policies display in the lower left-hand side of the screen. Existing policies can be updated as management permissions change, or new policies can be added as needed.

To view existing Management Access policies:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Management > Management Policy** to display the main Management Policy screen and Management Browser.
- 2 Select a policy from the Management Browser or refer to the Management screen (displayed by default) to review existing Management Access policy configurations at a higher level.





**Figure 12-1** Management Browser screen

The **Management Policy** screen displays existing management policies and their unique protocol support configurations.

Management Policy	Telnet	SSHv2	HTTP	HTTPS	SIIMPv1	SIIMPv2	SIIMPv3	FTP
default	✓	✓	✓	✓	✗	✓	✓	✓

**Figure 12-2** Management Policy screen

- 3 Refer to the following **Management** access policy configurations to discern whether these existing policies can be used as is, require modification or a new policy requires creation:

A green check mark indicates controller or service platform device access is allowed using the listed protocol. A red X indicates device access is denied using the listed protocol.

<b>Management Policy</b>	Displays the name of the Management Access policy assigned when initially created. The name cannot be updated when modifying a policy.
<b>Telnet</b>	Telnet provides a command line interface to a remote host over TCP. Telnet provides no encryption, but it does provide a measure of authentication.
<b>SSHv2</b>	SSH ( <i>Secure Shell</i> ) version 2, like Telnet, provides a command line interface to a remote host. However, all SSH transmissions are encrypted, increasing their security.

<b>HTTP</b>	HTTP ( <i>Hypertext Transfer Protocol</i> ) provides access to the device's GUI using a Web browser. This protocol is not very secure.
<b>HTTPS</b>	HTTPS ( <i>Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure</i> ) provides fairly secure access to the device's GUI using a Web browser. Unlike HTTP, HTTPS uses encryption for transmission, and is therefore more secure.
<b>SNMPv1</b>	SNMP ( <i>Simple Network Management Protocol</i> ) exposes a device's management data so it can be managed remotely. Device data is exposed as variables that can be accessed and modified. SNMP is generally used to monitor a system's performance and other parameters.  SNMP v1 is easy to set up, and only requires a plain text. It does not support 64 bit counters, only 32 bit counters, and that provides little security.
<b>SNMPv2</b>	SNMP v2 is identical to version 1, but it adds support for 64 bit counters. Most devices support SNMP v2c automatically. However, there are some devices that require you to explicitly enable v2, and that poses no risk.
<b>SNMPv3</b>	SNMP v3 adds security to the 64 bit counters provided with SNMP v2. SNMP v3 adds both encryption and authentication, which can be used together or separately. Its setup is more complex than just defining a community string. But if you require security, SNMP v3 is recommended.
<b>FTP</b>	FTP ( <i>File Transfer Protocol</i> ) is a standard protocol for files transfers over a TCP/IP network.

- 4 If it's determined a Management Access policy requires creation or modification, refer to [Adding or Editing a Management Access Policy on page 12-3](#). If necessary, select an existing Management Access policy and select **Delete** to permanently remove it from the list of those available. Optionally **Rename** or **Copy** a policy as needed.

## 12.1.1 Adding or Editing a Management Access Policy

### ► [Viewing Management Access Policies](#)

To add a new Management Access policy, or edit an existing configuration:

- 1 Select **Configuration > Management > Management Policy** to display the main Management Policy screen and Management Browser.  
Existing policies can be modified by either selecting a policy from the **Management Browser** and selecting the **Edit** button.  
New policies can be created by selecting the **Add** button from the bottom right-hand side of the Management screen.
- 2 A name must be supplied to the new policy before the **Administrators, Access Control, Authentication, SNMP** and **SNMP Traps** tabs become enabled and the policy's configuration defined. The name cannot exceed 32 characters.
- 3 Select **OK** to commit the new policy name.  
Once the new name is defined, the screen's four tabs become enabled, with the contents of the **Administrators** tab displayed by default. Refer to the following to define the configuration of the new Management Access policy:
  - [Creating an Administrator Configuration](#) - Use the *Administrators* tab to create specific users, assign them permissions to specific protocols and set specific administrative roles for the network.

- *Setting an Allowed Location Configuration* - Use the *Allowed Locations* tab to administrate user roles supported in both WiNG and NSight, as a user logging into the NSight UI should also have an access control restriction based on the role they're assigned in that application.
- *Setting the Access Control Configuration* - Use the *Access Control* tab to enable/disable specific protocols and interfaces. Again, this kind of access control is not meant to function as an ACL, but rather as a means to enable/disable specific protocols (HTTP, HTTPS, Telnet etc.) for each Management Access policy.
- *Setting the Authentication Configuration* - Refer to the *Authentication* tab to set the authentication scheme used to validate user credentials with this policy.
- *Setting the SNMP Configuration* - Refer to the *SNMP* tab to enable SNMPv2, SNMPv3 or both and define specific community strings for this policy.
- *SNMP Trap Configuration* - Use the *SNMP Traps* tab to enable trap generation for the policy and define trap receiver configurations.
- *T5 PowerBroadband SNMP* - Use the *T5 PowerBroadband* tab set a unique SNMP configuration for T5 controller models.

For deployment considerations and recommendations impacting a controller or service platform's Management Access policy configuration, refer to *Management Access Deployment Considerations on page 12-36*.

### 12.1.1.1 Creating an Administrator Configuration

#### ▶ *Adding or Editing a Management Access Policy*

Management services (Telnet, SSHv2, HTTP, HTTPS and FTP) require administrators enter a valid username and password which is authenticated locally or centrally on a RADIUS server. SNMPv3 also requires a valid username and password which is authenticated by the SNMPv3 module. For CLI and Web UI users, the controller or service platform also requires user role information to know what permissions to assign.

- If local authentication is used, associated role information is defined on the controller or service platform when the user account is created.
- If RADIUS is used, role information is supplied using RADIUS vendor specific return attributes. If no role information is supplied by RADIUS, the controller or service platform applies default read-only permissions.

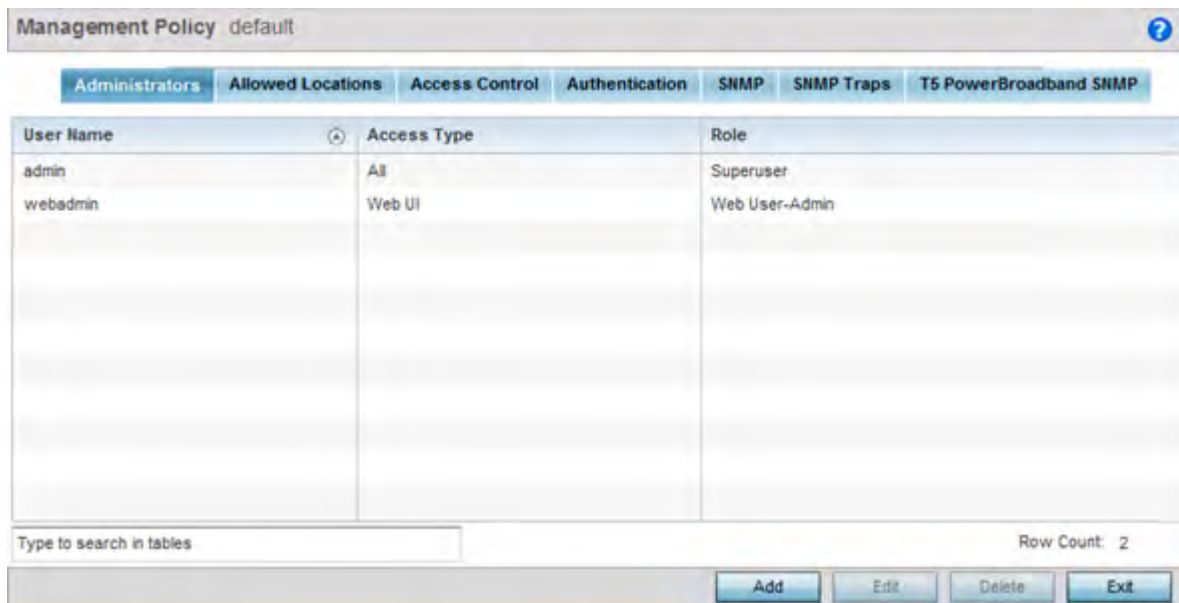
Administrators can limit users to specific management interfaces. During authentication, the controller or service platform looks at the user's access assignment to determine if the user has permissions to access an interface:

- If local authentication is used, role information is defined on the controller or service platform when the user account is created.
- If RADIUS is used, role information is supplied by RADIUS using vendor specific return attributes.

The controller or service platform also supports multiple RADIUS server definitions as well as fallback to provide authentication in the event of failure. If the primary RADIUS server is unavailable, the controller or service platform authenticates with the next RADIUS sever, as defined in the AAA policy. If a RADIUS server is not reachable, the controller or service platform can fall back to the local database for authentication. If both RADIUS and local authentication services are unavailable, read-only access can be optionally provided.

The controller or service platform authenticates users using the integrated local database. When user credentials are presented the controller or service platform validates the username and password against the local database and assigns permissions based on the associated roles assigned. The controller or service platform can also deny the authentication request if the user is attempting to access a management interface not specified in the account's access mode list.

Use the **Administrators** tab to review existing administrators, their access medium and their administrative role within the network. New administrators can be added, existing administrative configurations modified or deleted as required.



**Figure 12-3** Management Policy screen - Administrators tab

- 1 Refer to the following to review the high-level configurations of existing administrators.

<b>User Name</b>	Displays the name assigned to the administrator upon creation of their account. The name cannot be modified as part of the administrator configuration edit process.
<b>Access Type</b>	Lists the <i>Web UI</i> , <i>Telnet</i> , <i>SSH</i> or <i>Console</i> access type assigned to each listed administrator. A single administrator can have any one (or all) of these roles assigned at the same time.
<b>Role</b>	Lists the <i>Superuser</i> , <i>System</i> , <i>Network</i> , <i>Security</i> , <i>Monitor</i> , <i>Help Desk</i> , <i>Web User</i> , <i>Device Provisioning</i> or <i>Vendor Admin</i> role assigned to each listed administrator. An administrator can only be assigned one role at a time.

- 2 Select **Add** to create a new administrator configuration, **Edit** to modify an existing configuration or **Delete** to permanently remove an Administrator from the list of those available.